

SONY
MVS-8000X/7000X System (With CCP-9000 Series) Volume 1

SONY[®]

Multi Format Switcher System

MVS-8000X System

MVS-7000X System

(With CCP-9000 Series Center Control Panel)

User's Guide Volume 1 English

Software Version 11.10 or Later
1st Edition (Revised 1)

MVS-8000X System
MVS-7000X System
(SY)
4-287-527-02 (1)

Sony Corporation

<http://www.sony.net/>
Printed on recycled paper.

Printed in Japan
2011.07 32
© 2011



4287527020

NOTICE TO USERS

© 2011 Sony Corporation. All rights reserved. This manual or the software described herein, in whole or in part, may not be reproduced, translated or reduced to any machine readable form without prior written approval from Sony Corporation.

SONY CORPORATION PROVIDES NO WARRANTY WITH REGARD TO THIS MANUAL, THE SOFTWARE OR OTHER INFORMATION CONTAINED HEREIN AND HEREBY EXPRESSLY DISCLAIMS ANY IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR ANY PARTICULAR PURPOSE WITH REGARD TO THIS MANUAL, THE SOFTWARE OR SUCH OTHER INFORMATION. IN NO EVENT SHALL SONY CORPORATION BE LIABLE FOR ANY INCIDENTAL, CONSEQUENTIAL OR SPECIAL DAMAGES, WHETHER BASED ON TORT, CONTRACT, OR OTHERWISE, ARISING OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THIS MANUAL, THE SOFTWARE OR OTHER INFORMATION CONTAINED HEREIN OR THE USE THEREOF.

Sony Corporation reserves the right to make any modification to this manual or the information contained herein at any time without notice. The software described herein may also be governed by the terms of a separate user license agreement.

Functions Newly Supported in Version 11.10

The functions newly supported in the MVS-8000X/7000X system version 11.10 are as follows.

Functions relating to the switcher

Classification	Functions supported	Menu No.	See page	
			Vol. 1	Vol. 2
Signal inputs and outputs	Combination setting of format converter signal formats in units of 4 inputs	7313.4	-	121
	Frame delay mode in the format converter	7332	-	122, 178
Key	Key rotation by the resizer	1115	115	-
Frame memory	Ancillary data	7316.8	166	131
System	3D support	7331.13 7331.9 7331.10 7331.12	204	-
	3M/E mode and 4M/E mode in the M/E configuration ^{a)}	7316.11	210	-
Signal outputs	Multi Viewer	7333.9	-	183

a) In MVS-7000X only

Functions relating to the setup

Classification	Functions supported	Menu No.	See page	
			Vol. 1	Vol. 2
User setup	Source patch	7211 7212 7212.1	-	222

Functions relating to the DME

Classification	Functions supported	Menu No.	See page	
			Vol. 1	Vol. 2
Switcher connection	Connection by SDI interface	7337.7	-	196
Applying special effects (edge effects)	Flex shadow	4115	240	-

Classification	Functions supported	Menu No.	See page	
			Vol. 1	Vol. 2
Applying special effects (effects on the overall video signal)	Masking the glow effect	4174	254	-
System	Support for SD format by MKS-7470X/7471X	-	214	-

Functions Not Supported in Version 11.10

The following functions are not supported in the MVS-7000X system version 11.10.

Classification	Functions supported	Menu No.	See page	
			Vol. 1	Vol. 2
System	Support for 1080P format by MKS-7470X/7471X	-	-	-
	Key assignment for 3M/E mode or 4M/E mode	7331.13	-	-

Table of Contents

Chapter 1 MVS-8000X/7000X Functions

Introduction	10
Features of the MVS-8000X/7000X Multi Format Switcher System	11
Basic Video Processing	12
Transitions	12
Keys	14
Wipes	14
DME Wipes	15
Frame Memory	15
Color Backgrounds	15
Copy and Swap	15
Video Process	15
Color Corrector	15
Side Flags.....	15
Multi Program 2.....	16
3D Support.....	17
Creation of Special Effects and Management of Data and Operations	17
Digital Multi Effects (DME)	17
External Devices	18
Keyframes	18
Snapshots	18
Utility	18
Shotbox	18
Macros	18
Files.....	19
Setup	19

Chapter 2 Menus and Control Panel

Names and Functions of Parts of the Control Panel	20
Example Control Panel Configuration.....	20
Cross-Point Control Block.....	21

Transition Control Block	22
Device Control Block (Joystick)	25
Keyframe Control Block.....	26
Numeric Keypad Control Block	29
Auxiliary Bus Control Block	31
Menu Control Block	31
“Memory Stick”/USB Connections Block .	32
Key Control Block (MKS-8035 Key Control Module, Option)	33
Device Control Block (MKS-8031TB Trackball Module, Option).....	36
Device Control Block (MKS-8036A Search Dial Module, Option)	39
Utility/Shotbox Control Block (MKS-8033 Utility/Shotbox Module, Option)	41
Downstream Key Control Block (MKS-8032 DSK Fader Module, Option)	42
Basic Menu Operations	44
Overview	44
About the Top Menu List	44
Accessing Menus	44
Example of Displaying a Menu	45
Interpreting the Menu Screen	46
Names and Functions of Parts of the Top Menu Window	48
Names and Functions of Parts of the Numeric Keypad Window	49
Names and Functions of Parts of the Keyboard Window	49
Names and Functions of Parts of the Color Pallet Window	50
Menu Operations	52
Selecting an Item	52
Selecting a Function	52
Setting Parameters	52
Switching Between the Main Menu Site and Subsidiary Menu Site	52
Going Back to the Previous Menu	53
Returning to Default State in Function Groupings	53
Returning Knob Parameters to Default State	53
Shortcut Menu	53
Registering a Menu To the Shortcut Menu.	53
Recalling a Menu Using the Shortcut Menu	

.....	53
Customizing the Shortcut Menu	53

Setting the Independent Key Transition Type by a Menu Operation	80
Setting the Independent Key Transition Rate	80

Chapter 3 Signal Selection and Transitions

Video Processing Flow	56
Signal Selection	57
Basics of Signal Selection.....	57
Bus Selection	57
Signal Assignment and Selection.....	58
Signal Name Display	60
Transitions	61
Selecting the Next Transition.....	61
Transition Types	61
Procedure for Basic Transition Operation	62
Key Priority Setting	64
Setting the Key Priority in the Transition Control Block	64
Setting the Key Priority by a Menu Operation	65
Display of the Key Output Status and Key Priority	66
Selecting the Transition Type by a Menu Operation	67
Super Mix Settings	68
Color Matte Settings	68
Executing a Transition	70
Transition Indicator Function	70
Setting the Transition Rate.....	70
Pattern Limit	72
Executing an Auto Transition	73
Executing a Transition With the Fader Lever (Manual Transition).....	74
Combinations of Auto and Manual Transitions	74
Non-Sync State	74
Fader Lever Operation in Bus Fixed Mode	75
Transition Preview	76
Independent Key Transitions	77
Basic Independent Key Transition Operations	79

Chapter 4 Keys

Overview	82
Key Types	82
Key Modifiers	83
Key Memory	84
Key Default	85
Key Setting Operations Using Menus	85
Key Setting Menus.....	85
Key Type Setting	86
Selecting Key Fill and Key Source	87
Chroma Key Composition and Basic Settings	89
Key Adjustments (Menus)	90
Chroma Key Adjustments	90
Key Edge Modifications	93
Masks	96
Applying a DME Effect to a Key.....	97
Specifying the Key Output Destination	98
Key Modify Clear	99
Blink Function.....	99
Video Processing.....	99
Key Setting Operations with the Cross- Point Control Block	100
Applying a DME Effect to a Key.....	100
Key Setting Operations with the Key Control Block	102
Selecting the Bank and Keyer	102
Selecting the Key Type	102
Parameter Adjustment with the Knobs	102
Selecting Key Fill.....	103
Selecting Key Source	103
Key Adjustments (Key Control Block) ..	104
Key Edge Modifications	104
Masks	105
Applying a DME Effect to a Key.....	106
Other Key Setting Operations	107
Resizer	108

Two-Dimensional Transformations and Rotation of Keys	108
Resizer Interpolation Settings.....	111
Resizer Crop/Border Settings	111
Applying Resizer Effects.....	112
Setting rotation of the resizer.....	115
Key Snapshots	116
Key Snapshot Operations	116

Chapter 5 Wipes

Overview	117
Types of Wipe Pattern	117
Basic Procedure for Wipe Settings	117
Wipe Settings Menu	117
Wipe Pattern Selection	117
Pattern Mix	118
Setting Wipe Modifiers.....	120
Wipe Modify Clear.....	128
Wipe Settings for Independent Key Transitions	129
Basic Procedure for Independent Key Transition Wipe Settings.....	129
Setting Independent Key Transition Wipe Modifiers	129
Wipe Snapshots	131
Wipe Snapshot Operations With the Menus	131

Chapter 6 DME Wipes

Overview	133
Types of DME Wipe Pattern	133
DME Wipe Pattern Variation and Modifiers	135
Relation Between DME Wipes and Other Effects.....	136
Basic Procedure for DME Wipe Settings	137
DME Wipe Settings Menu.....	137
DME Wipe Pattern Selection.....	137
Setting DME Wipe Modifiers.....	139

DME Wipe Modify Clear	142
DME Wipe Settings for Independent Key Transitions	143
Basic Procedure for Independent Key Transition DME Wipe Settings	143
Setting Independent Key Transition DME Wipe Modifiers	143
Resizer DME Wipe Setting.....	145
DME Wipe Snapshots	146
DME Snapshot Operations With the Menus	146
Creating User Programmable DME Patterns	146
User Programmable DME Transition Mode	146

Chapter 7 Frame Memory

Overview	149
Still Image Operations	151
Preparations	151
Interpreting the Frame Memory Menu	151
Selecting an Input Image	153
Selecting Outputs and Target Frame Memory	154
Capturing and Saving an Input Image	154
Recalling Still Images.....	156
Image Output	157
Continuously Capturing Still Images (Record)	158
Recalling a Continuous Sequence of Still Images (Animation).....	158
Frame Memory Clip Function.....	160
Frame Memory Clip Operations	161
Preparations for Operation.....	161
Recalling Clips.....	161
Clip Playback.....	162
Clip Creation.....	164
Creating and Handling Frame Memory Folders.....	164
Clip Output	165
Recording and Playback of Ancillary Data	165

Clip Transition Operations	166
Image Data Management	168
Pair File Processing.....	168
Moving Files	168
Deleting Files	169
Renaming Files	169
External Hard Disk Drive Access	170
Hard Disk Formatting	170
Saving Files.....	170
Recalling Files	171
Managing Images Using a DDR/VTR	172
Using a DDR/VTR for High-speed Backup and Restoring.....	172
Extracting Images from Video Tape.....	173

Chapter 8 Color Backgrounds, Copy and Swap, and Other Settings

Color Background	175
Color Background Settings Menu.....	175
Basic Color Background Setting Operations	175
Copy and Swap	177
Overview of Copy and Swap	177
Copy and Swap Operations.....	178
Misc Menu Operations	179
Port Settings for Control From an External Device.....	179
Editing Keyboard Settings	180
Safe Title Settings	180
Displaying a List of Transition Rates and Changing the Settings.....	181
AUX Menu Operations	182
AUX Bus Settings.....	182
Status Menu	182
Router Control Menu Operations	183
Checking the List of Inputs for Each Destination.....	183
Switching the Source for Each Destination	183
Video Process	184
Video Process Adjustments for Each Input Signal.....	184

Video Process Adjustments on a Particular Bus	184
Video Process Memory	184
Video Process Settings.....	184

Chapter 9 Color Corrector

Preparations	186
Overall Color Corrector Operations	187
Enabling Color Corrector.....	187
Copy and Swap Operations.....	187
Color Corrector Functions	188
Input Video Processing Operations.....	188
Primary Color Correction Operations	188
Secondary Color Correction Operations ...	190
Luminance Processing Operations.....	190
Spot Color Adjustment.....	192
Output Video Processing Operations.....	193
YUV Clip Operations.....	193
RGB Clip Operations	194

Chapter 10 Special Functions

Side Flags	195
Overview	195
Side Flag Settings.....	195
Wipe Action on Images with Side Flags... ..	196
DME Wipe Action for an Image with Side Flags.....	196
Multi Program 2	198
Overview	198
Sequence of Operations in Multi Program 2	198
Basic Operations (Required).....	199
Examples of Operations in the Multi Program 2 Mode (When Sharing a Switcher Bank)	200
Optional Operations	201
Functions Added in Multi Program 2 Mode	202
Differences between Multi Program 2 Mode and Standard Mode.....	203

Restrictions on Using Multi Program 2 Mode	203
3D Support	204
Overview	204
Preparations	205
Restrictions in 3D Mode	209
Video Creation in 3D Mode	210
M/E Configuration Switching	210

Chapter 11 DME Operations

DME	213
Three-Dimensional Transformations	213
Transformation Operation Modes	215
Graphics Display	217
Three-Dimensional Parameter Display	218
Special Effects	218
Global Effects	226
Devices for DME Support	226

Three-Dimensional Transformation Operations	227
Basic Operations	227
Three-Dimensional Parameter Display	230
Entering Three-Dimensional Parameter Values	230
Graphics Display Operation	231
Canceling Virtual Images	232

Applying Special Effects (Operations Common to Special Effects)	232
--	------------

Applying Special Effects (Edge Effects)	233
Border Settings	233
Crop Settings	234
Beveled Edge Settings	235
Key Border Settings	236
Art Edge Settings	236
Flex Shadow Settings	240
Wipe Crop Settings	244
Color Mix Settings	246

Applying Special Effects (Effects on the Overall Video Signal)	247
Defocus Settings	247
Blur Settings	248

Multi Move Settings	249
Sepia Settings	250
Mono Settings	250
Posterization and Solarization Settings	250
Nega Settings	251
Contrast Settings	251
Mosaic Settings	251
Sketch Settings	251
Metal Settings	253
Dim and Fade Settings	253
Glow Settings	254
Mask Settings	254
Freeze Settings	256

Applying Special Effects (Nonlinear Effect Settings)

Settings)	257
Wave Settings	257
Mosaic Glass Settings	259
Flag Settings	259
Twist Settings	259
Ripple Settings	260
Rings Settings	263
Broken Glass Settings	263
Flying Bar Settings	264
Blind Settings	264
Split Settings	265
Split Slide Settings	265
Mirror Settings	266
Multi Mirror Settings	266
Kaleidoscope Settings	267
Lens Settings	267
Circle Settings	268
Panorama Settings	268
Page Turn Settings	268
Roll Settings	269
Cylinder Settings	269
Sphere Settings	270
Explosion Settings	270
Swirl Settings	270
Melt Settings	271
Character Trail Settings	272

Applying Special Effects (Lighting and Recursive Effects)

Lighting and Recursive Effects)	273
Lighting Settings	273

Trail Settings.....	275	PGM/PST Menu.....	319
Motion Decay Settings.....	277	Frame Memory Menu	321
Keyframe Strobe Settings	278	Color Bkgd Menu.....	321
Wind Settings.....	279	AUX Menu.....	322
Spotlighting Settings	280	CCR Menu	322
Applying Special Effects (Other Effects)	288	Copy/Swap Menu.....	323
.....		Misc Menu	323
Background Settings	288	Status Menu.....	323
Separate Sides Settings	288	DME Menu	324
Shaped Video Settings	288	Global Effect Menu.....	325
Invert Settings	289	Device Menu	325
Key Density Settings.....	290	Macro Menu	326
Key Source Selection.....	290	Key Frame Menu	326
Interpolation Settings.....	290	Effect Menu.....	327
Corner Pinning Settings	291	Snapshot Menu.....	328
Global Effect Operations	293	Shotbox Menu	329
Overview	293	File Menu	330
Operations Common to All Global Effects		Engineering Setup Menu.....	331
.....	293	User Setup Menu.....	336
Combiner Settings.....	294	Diagnostic Menu	336
Brick Settings.....	297	Using the M/E-4 Bank	337
Shadow Settings.....	299	Assigning a Button for M/E-4 Selection in the	
		Setup Menu.....	337
		Using Keys 5 to 8	338
		Assigning Buttons for Selection of Keys 5 to 8	
		in the Setup Menu.....	338
		Selecting Keys 5 to 8 for Next Transition.	339
		Menus accessed by pressing a button	
		twice	340
		Menus allowing a return to default settings	
		343
		SpotLighting.....	347
		Texture Patterns	347
		Shape Patterns	347
		Functional Differences With Models of DME	
		348
		Index	350

Appendix (Volume 1)	
Wipe Pattern List.....	301
Standard Wipes	301
Enhanced Wipes.....	302
Rotary Wipes	302
Mosaic Wipes.....	303
Random/Diamond Dust Wipes	304
DME Wipe Pattern List.....	305
DME Wipe Patterns Available in One-	
Channel Mode	305
DME Wipe Patterns Available in Two-	
Channel Mode	310
DME Wipe Patterns Available in Three-	
Channel Mode	313
Resizer DME Wipe Pattern List.....	315
Menu Tree	316
Recalling Menus	316
M/E-1 to M/E-4 Menus.....	316

MVS-8000X/7000X Functions

Chapter

1

Introduction

This manual is the User's Guide for the MVS-8000X/7000X Multi Format Switcher system.

This manual describes principally the operation of the system using the CCP-9000A of center control panels. The User's Guide for this system comprises two volumes. For the contents of each volume, see the section "Organization of This User's Guide" at the front of this volume.

Devices and system nomenclature

In this manual, when discussing the principal components of the MVS-8000X/7000X system, in place of the formal product names, abbreviated names characterizing the functions and features are sometimes used. When distinctions between system configurations must be drawn, the terms in the following table are used.

Principal components and naming

The formal product names of the principal components of the MVS-8000X/7000X system, and the terms used in this manual are as follows.

Formal product name	Term used in this manual
MVS-8000X/7000X Multi Format Switcher Processor	Switcher or switcher processor
DME Board Set MKS-7470X	DME or DME Board set or MKS-7470X/7471X
Additional DME Board MKS-7471X	
MVE-8000A Multi Format DME Processor	DME or DME processor or MVE-8000A
MVE-9000 Multi Format DME Processor	DME or DME processor or MVE-9000
CCP-9000 Center Control Panel	Control panel or center control panel
DCU-8000 (MKS-8700) Device Control Unit	DCU or MKS-8700
DCU-2000 (MKS-2700) Device Control Unit	DCU or MKS-2700

System nomenclature

The following terms are used for systems, depending on the combination of installed options, and the signal format.

System configuration and features	Term for system
System with installed option boards and settings to support HDTV format	HD system
System with installed option boards and settings to support SDTV format	SD system
A system in which the center control panel has two M/E banks	2M/E system
A system in which the center control panel has one M/E bank	1M/E system

Related manuals

MVS-8000X-C/7000X-C Switcher Processor Pack

- MVS-8000X-C/7000X-C Operation Manual
- MVS-8000X-C/7000X-C Installation Manual

MVE-8000A DME Processor Pack

- MVE-8000A Operation Manual
- MVE-8000A Installation Manual

MVE-9000-C DME Processor Pack

- MVE-9000-C Operation Manual
- MVE-9000-C Installation Manual

CCP-9000A-C Center Control Panel Pack

- CCP-9000A-C Operation Manual
- CCP-9000A-C Installation Manual

DCU-8000 Device Control Unit Pack

- DCU-8000 Operation Manual
- DCU-8000 Installation Manual

DCU-2000 Device Control Unit Pack

- DCU-2000-C Operation Manual
- DCU-2000-C Installation Manual

Features of the MVS-8000X/7000X Multi Format Switcher System

The MVS-8000X/7000X Multi Format Switcher system boasts extensible high performance and multifunctionality. The following are some of the principal features of this system.

System configuration flexibility

Multiformat support

This system supports both HDTV and SDTV signal formats. The format selection can be switched by a simple control panel operation.

Extensible system configuration

By suitable combination of options, the switcher can be configured with various inputs and outputs, and different numbers of M/E banks. The system offers the flexibility to change and expand as required.

You can connect up to two MVE-8000A or MVE-9000 extensible DME processor, which provides any number from one to eight channels, for a maximum of eight channels of DME functionality.

When the signal format is 1080P, you can also connect up to four MVE-8000A units, which provides a maximum of eight channels of DME functionality.

For the MVS-7000X, by installing the optional MKS-7470X/7471X DME board set, you can use a maximum of four channels of DME functionality.

You can use a maximum of eight channels of DME functionality in the whole switcher system.

Powerful external device interfaces

By connecting to a Sony routing switcher or similar, a large system can be built. From the control panel, it is also possible to operate other equipment, including VTRs and disk recorders.

Powerful tally system

The complete system including routing switcher provides an all-inclusive tally system. The system can be adapted to different applications and settings, using multiple tally outputs, including both on-air and recording tallies.

Comprehensive video manipulation

M/E banks

Each mix/effects bank (M/E bank) is equipped with eight keyers, and each keyer is capable not only of chroma keying, but also independent key transitions separate from the background transitions. The eight keys can be freely combined, to carry out four different program outputs.

Powerful frame memory functions

The frame memory can hold approximately 1000 frames in an HDTV system (approximately 2000 frames in 720P/59.94 format), or approximately 5000 frames in an SDTV system in 480i/59.94 format, or approximately 4000 frames in 576i/50 format, and allows eight frames (four frames in 1080P format) to be recalled simultaneously.

Link operation with DME

You can use a wide range of DME functions, including DME wipes and processed key functions as though they were part of the standard switcher functions.

Designed for use in a live broadcasting environment

High-performance user interface

The menu control block provides a large color LCD panel, with rapid touch-panel menu selection.

The source name displays have color backlit LCD displays. The signal names, and graphical representations of the patterns associated with buttons provide intuitive feedback, and allow the immediate decisions that are required in a live operating environment.

Basic Video Processing

This section introduces basic functions used for video processing on the switcher.

Transitions

In the M/E banks and PGM/PST bank, the switch from the current video stream (appearing on the corresponding program monitor) to a new video stream is referred to as a transition.

In the M/E banks and PGM/PST bank, you can change one of the images, the background, and keys 1 to 8 (downstream keys 1 to 8 in the PGM/PST bank), and also vary combinations of these simultaneously.

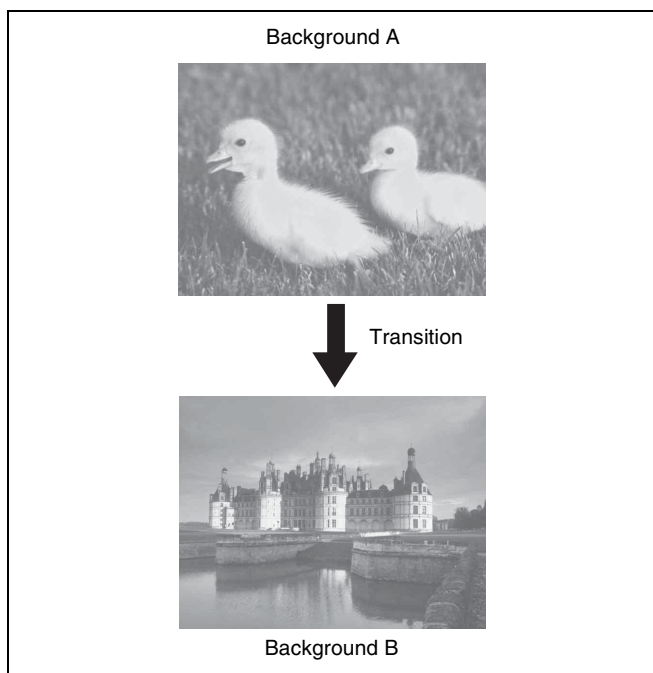
Notes

When the signal format is 1080P, four keys can be used (keys 1 to 4).

The following are examples of transition.

Changing the background

A background transition switches from the video currently selected on the background A bus (the current video) to the video selected on the background B bus (the new video).



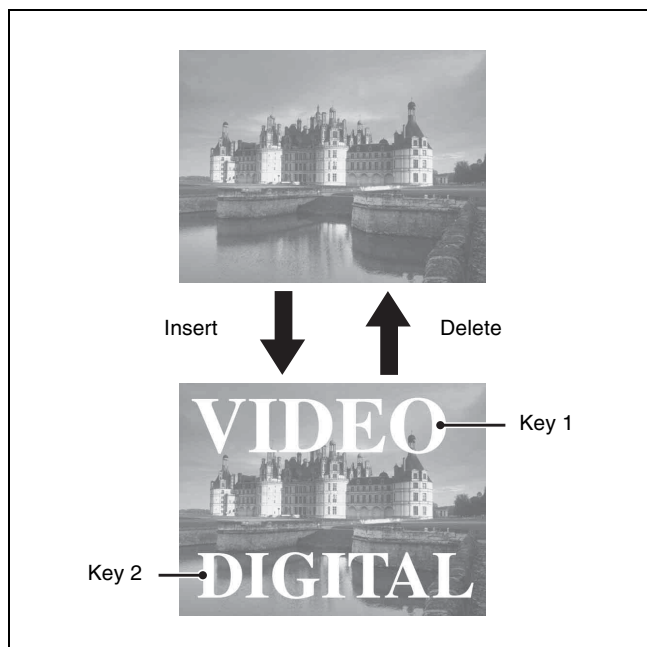
In the default selection of flip-flop mode (*see page 75*), the background always switches in the direction from the A bus to the B bus. When the transition completes, the cross-point selections on the A and B buses are interchanged.

Inserting and deleting a key

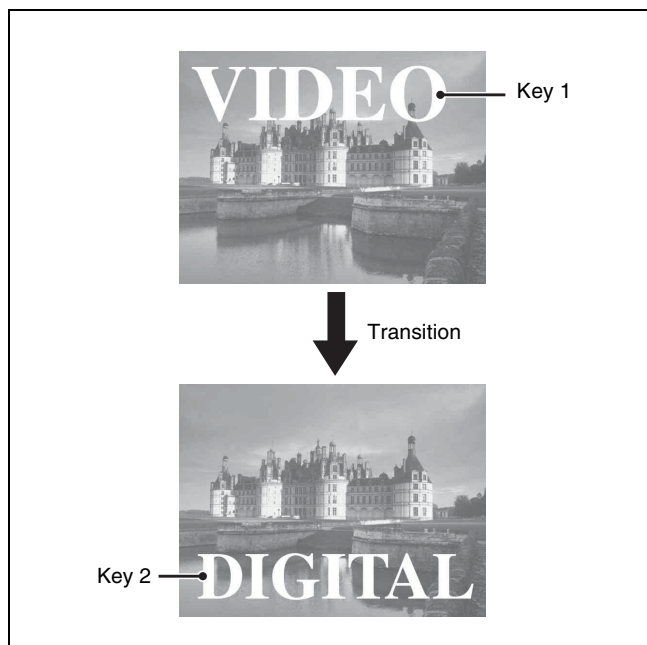
You can insert one or more of the eight keys (downstream keys on the PGM/PST bank).

If you select a key which is already inserted, the transition will delete the key.

A simultaneous combination of deleting and inserting keys is also possible.



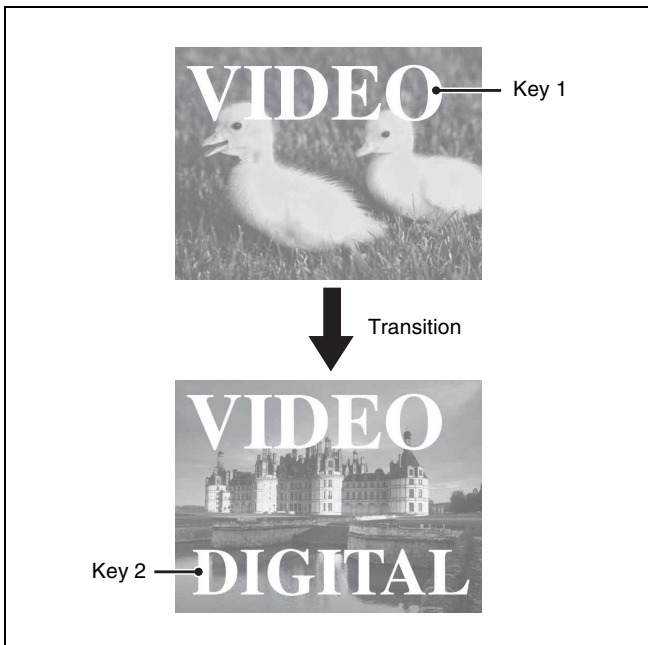
Inserting or deleting key 1 and key 2



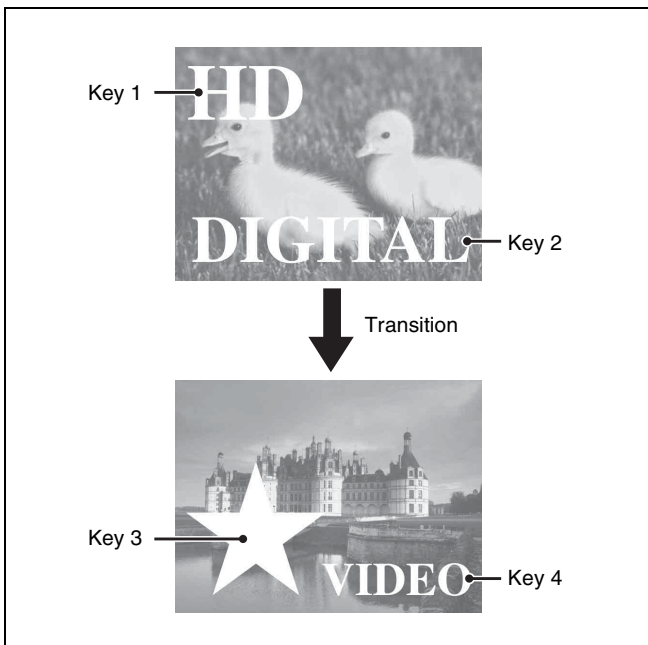
Deleting key 1 and inserting key 2

Simultaneously changing the background and keys

You can change any of the eight keys (downstream keys on the PGM/PST bank) and the background at the same time.



Changing the background and key 2 simultaneously



Changing the background and keys 1 to 4 simultaneously

Selecting the transition type determines the way in which the transition occurs. The following are the transition type.

- Mix
- NAM (non-additive mix)
- Super mix
- Preset color mix (color matte)
- Wipe
- DME wipe
- Clip transition
- Cut

There are two modes for carrying out a transition: auto transitions are carried out by a button operation, and

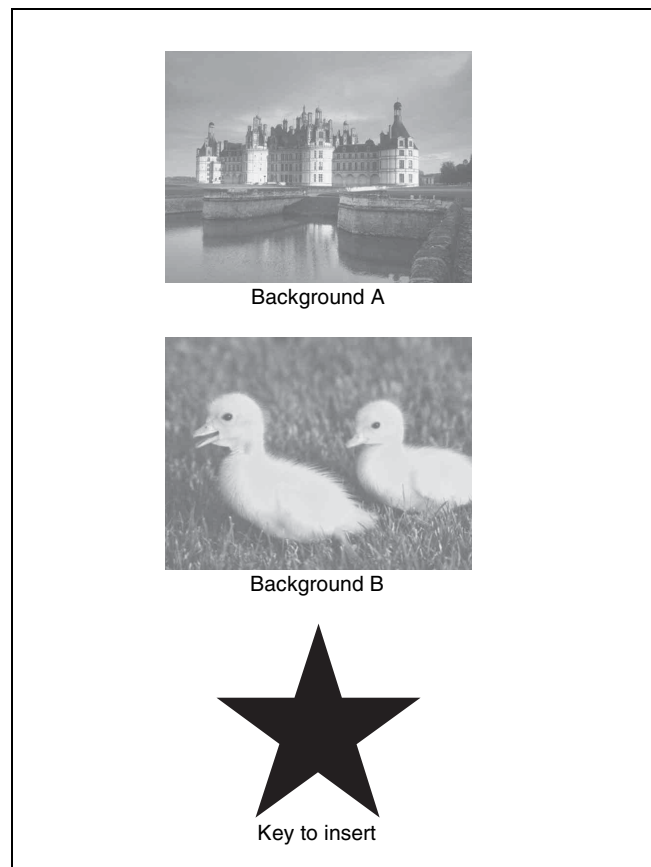
manual transitions are carried out using the fader lever. It is also possible to combine these two modes.

Independent Key Transitions

In addition to common transitions, it is possible to carry out independent transitions on the keys of the M/E banks and PGM/PST bank. These are called “independent key transitions.”

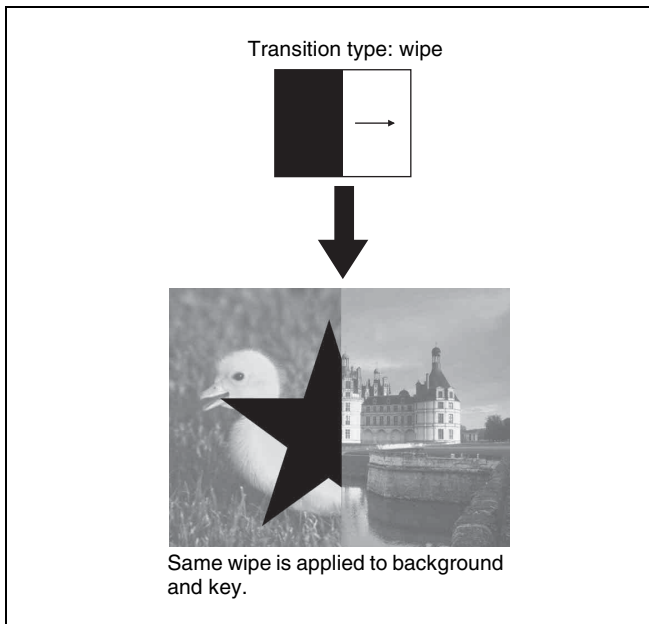
By carrying out an independent key transition in combination with a common transition, different transition types can be used for the background and keys. The following description compares the independent key transition with a common transition, taking a simultaneous change of the background and key as an example.

Video used in the transition



Effect of a common transition

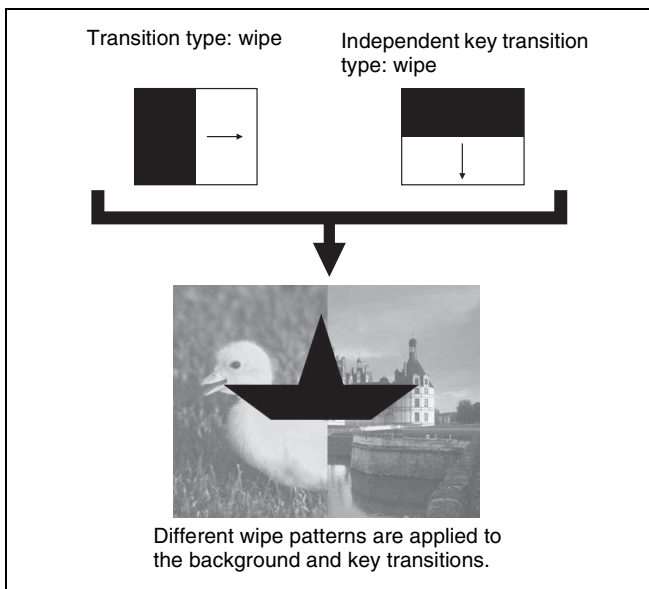
In the case shown in the previous illustration, carrying out a common transition produces the following change in the image.



Effect of a common transition

Effect of use with an independent key transition

The key is inserted with an independent key transition as the background changes with a common transition, providing the following result.



Effect of a background transition and independent key transition

For details, see Chapter 3 “Signal Selection and Transitions” (page 56).

Keys

A key is an effect in which a part of the background image is replaced by an image or superimposed text. The signal determining how the background is cut out is termed “key source,” and the signal that replaces the cut-out part is

termed “key fill.” The system component responsible for processing a key is referred to as a keyer. Each switcher bank has eight keyers, each providing the same functionality.

On each switcher bank, you can use the following key types (methods of processing the key source).

- Luminance key
- Linear key
- Color vector key
- Chroma key
- Wipe pattern key
- Key wipe pattern key

Key modifiers

You can apply borders and other modifiers to the edge of the key image.

Masks

A mask allows a part of the image to be replaced by the background or a key. To prevent unwanted holes in the background, or if a key is not the desired shape, you can correct this with a mask.

Resizer

This function allows you to apply effects, similar to a DME, such as zoom, movement, or aspect ratio change to a part of a created key. You can use the following operations.

- Two-dimensional transform of a key
- Rotation of keys
- Resizer interpolation settings
- Resizer crop/border settings
- Resizer effect settings (wide key border, drop shadow, edge enhancement, mosaic, defocus, mask)

For details, see “Keys” (page 82).

Wipes

A wipe is a transition from the current video stream to a new video stream, using a wipe pattern.

Changing the background by means of a wipe is referred to as a “background wipe,” and inserting or deleting a key with a wipe is termed a “key wipe.”

There are two types of wipe: those that can be selected in a common transition, and those that can be selected in an independent key transition.

The patterns that can be used for a wipe are as follows.

- Standard wipe patterns
- Enhanced wipes
- Rotary wipes
- Mosaic wipe pattern

- Random and diamond dust wipe patterns

You can combine two selected patterns (referred to as “main” and “sub”) to create a new pattern (pattern mix). You can also specify the wipe direction, or set the pattern position, applying various changes and modifiers to the selected wipe pattern.

For details, see “Wipes” (page 117).

DME Wipes

A DME wipe is a wipe transition that uses a DME effect to change from one video image to the next. There are two types of DME wipe: those which can be selected for a normal transition, and those which can be selected for an independent key transition. The patterns that can be used for a DME wipe are as follows.

Slide, Squeeze, Split, Door, Flip tumble, Mirror, Sphere, Character trail, Wave, Ripple, Page turn, Page roll, Frame in-out, Picture-in-picture, 2D trans, 3D trans, Sparkle, Split slide, Mosaic, Defocus, Brick, and User programmable DME

You can also specify the wipe direction, or set the pattern position, applying various changes and modifiers to the selected DME wipe pattern.

Resizer DME wipes

Using the resizer, you can carry out key DME wipes.

For details, see “DME Wipes” (page 133).

Frame Memory

Frame memory is a function for using a still image or video (frame memory clip) as material for editing. You can create a still image by capturing a frame of input video or a clip by specifying a range of input video. The created images and clips can be written to memory for playback, editing, and output.

For details, see “Frame Memory” (page 149).

Color Backgrounds

This function can be used to obtain color background video.

Two color signals generated from the dedicated generators can be switched or mixed, and then output.

For details, see “Color Background” (page 175).

Copy and Swap

This function can be used to copy and swap the settings among the M/E-1 to M/E-3, and PGM/PST banks or between keyers.

The following settings can be copied or swapped.

- Overall settings for the M/E and PGM/PST banks
- Keyer settings
- Wipe settings in a transition control block
- Wipe settings in an independent key transition control block
- DME wipe settings in a transition control block
- DME wipe settings in an independent key transition control block
- Matte color settings (color 1, color 2, and how to compose them)
- Color settings
- DME channel settings
- Format converter input settings (copy only)
- Format converter output settings (copy only)

For details, see “Copy and Swap” (page 177).

Video Process

The term “video process” is applied to adjustments to the gain, hue, black level of the input video signal. There are two types of adjustment; adjustment of an individual input signal and adjustment as image effects on a particular bus.

For details, see “Video Process” (page 184).

Color Corrector

The color corrector enables video signal color correction (black balance/white balance adjustment, gamma correction, knee correction, etc.).

The color corrector includes the following adjustments.

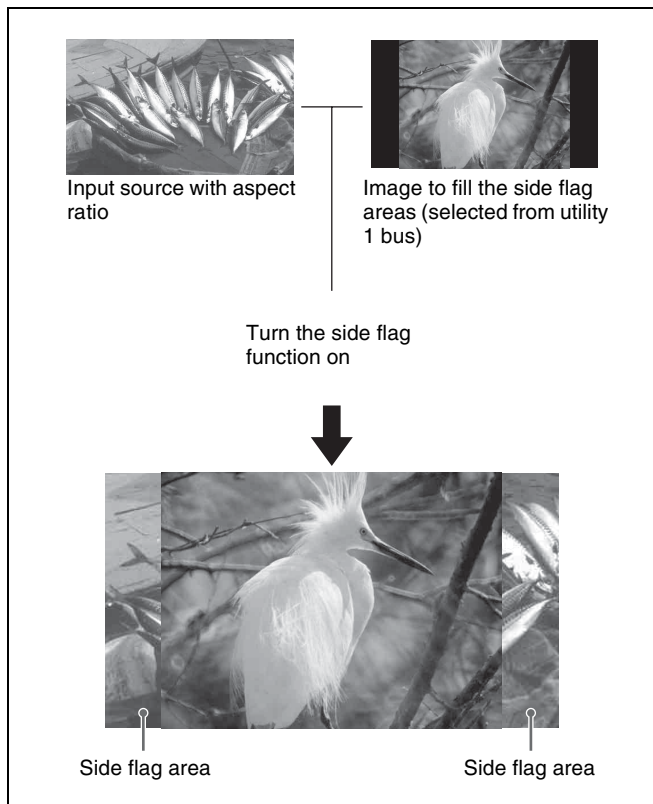
- Input video processing
- Primary color correction
- Secondary color correction
- Luminance processing
- Spot color adjustment
- Output video processing
- YUV/RGB clip

For details, see “Color Corrector” (page 186).

Side Flags

The term “side flags” refers to the areas to left and right of an image with aspect ratio 4:3 embedded within a 16:9

frame, when these areas are filled with a separate image selected from the utility 1 bus.

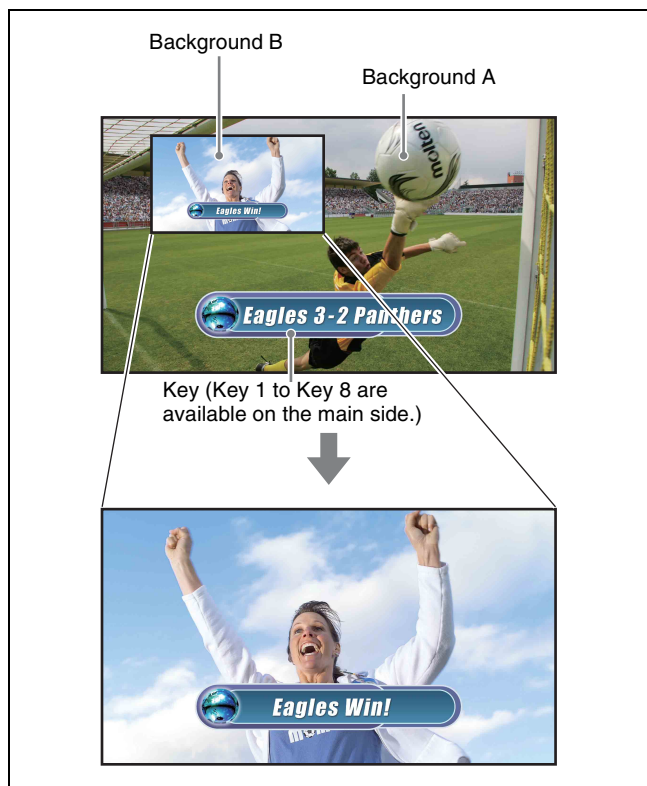


For details, see “Side Flags” (page 195).

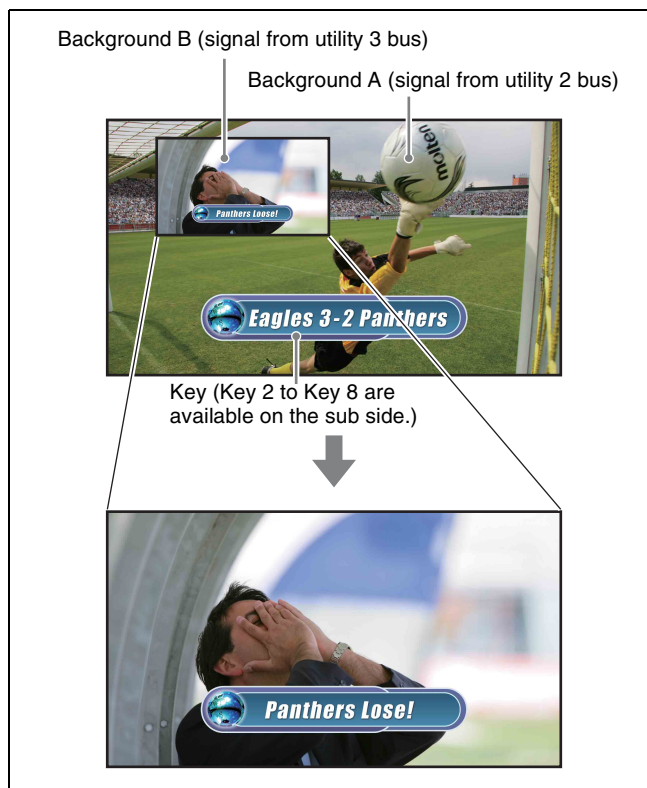
Multi Program 2

By operating the switcher in Multi Program 2 mode, a single switcher mix/effects bank can be used to create two separate video outputs, referred to as “main” and “sub.” You can set backgrounds, keys, and transitions for each of main and sub. For example, during broadcast of sports events, two versions of the scene can be provided as shown below, and switched simultaneously.

Program output for “Main”



Program output for “Sub”



For details, see “Multi Program 2” (page 198).

3D Support

Installing the BZS-8560 switcher upgrade software in an MVS-8000X/7000X, and the BZDM-8560 DME upgrade software in an MVE-8000A/MVE-9000, enables the processing of video in 3D mode.

For details, see “3D Support” (page 204).

Creation of Special Effects and Management of Data and Operations

This section introduces functions used for creation of special effects, control of external devices or switcher operations, and data management.

Digital Multi Effects (DME)

When used with the switcher, DME allows you to add three-dimensional effects such as image movement, rotation, magnification and shrinking, as well as a wide variety of special effects.

Each channel can be used on its own or in combination with other channels, which allows you to create advanced effects with more complexity.

The following types of DME special effects are available.

- **Edge effects:** Border, Crop, Beveled Edge, Key Border, Art Edge, Flex Shadow
- **Effects for entire image:** Defocus, Blur, Multi Move
- **Effects for video image:** Sepia, Mono, Posterization, Solarization, Nega, Contrast, Mosaic, Mask, Sketch, Metal, Dim and Fade, Glow
- **Freeze effects**
- **Nonlinear effects:** Wave, Mosaic Glass, Flag, Twist, Ripple, Rings, Broken Glass, Flying Bar, Blind, Split, Split Slide, Mirror, Multi Mirror, Kaleidoscope, Lens, Circle, Panorama, Page Turn, Roll, Cylinder, Sphere, Explosion, Swirl, Melt, Character Trail
- **Lighting effects:** Lighting, Spotlighting
- **Recursive effects:** Trail, Motion Decay, Keyframe Strobe
- **Background color**
- **Separate Sides** (effects for front and back sides)
- **Signal inversion** (Invert effect)
- **Key density adjustment**
- **Key source selection**

Global effects

Global effects are special effects created by combining the images of successive channels. The following types of global effects are available.

- Combiner
- Brick
- Shadow

For details, see “DME Operations” (page 213).

External Devices

In this system, you can operate while controlling the following types of external device:

- Devices supporting P-Bus (Peripheral II protocol)
- Devices supporting GPI
- VTRs
- Disk recorder (Sony disk 9-pin protocol and video disk communications protocol)
- Extended VTR (Abekas A53 protocol)

For details on the devices that can be connected, consult your Sony representative.

You can control an external device by previously registering timeline keyframes.

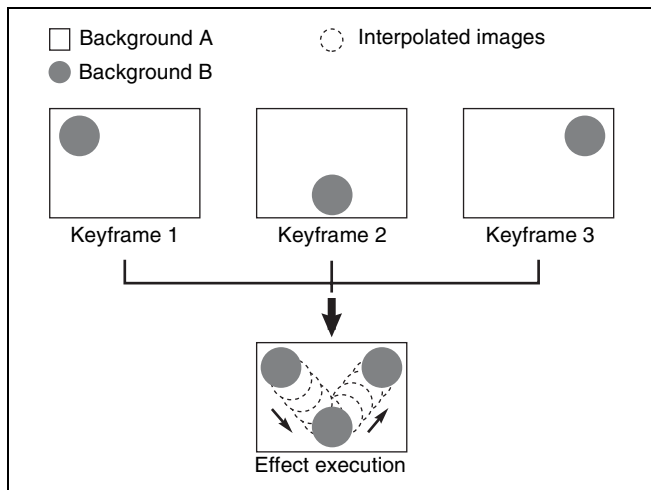
For details, see Chapter 12 “External Devices” (Volume 2).

Keyframes

A keyframe represents an instantaneous state of an image; it can be saved in a register and recalled for reuse.

By arranging a number of keyframes on the time axis, and interpolating between successive keyframes, you can create a “keyframe effect” in which there is a continuous change from each keyframe to the next.

The following figure shows three keyframes created with a wipe pattern (the circle) in different positions. This is interpolated to create the effect shown.



Example of keyframes and effect execution

You can save the sequence of keyframes representing a single effect in a register. Then by recalling this register, you can replay the same effect.

For details, see Chapter 13 “Keyframe Effects” (Volume 2).

Snapshots

The term “snapshot” refers to a function whereby the various settings required to apply a particular effect to an image are saved in a register as a set of data, for recall as required, to recover the original state.

Snapshots are divided as follows.

- Snapshots applying to a particular region (functional block of the switcher or DME)
- Master snapshot
- Key snapshot
- Wipe snapshot
- DME wipe snapshot

An individual snapshot may also have attached special conditions relating to switcher or DME operation when the snapshot is recalled.

These conditions are called “attributes” of the snapshot, and can be added when the snapshot is saved or recalled.

For details, see Chapter 14 “Snapshots” (Volume 2).

Utility

The utility function refers to a function whereby you can assign an arbitrary action or a shortcut for frequently used menu to a particular button, then instantly recall the action or menu by pressing the button.

For details, see “Utility Execution” in Chapter 15 (Volume 2).

Shotbox

The term “shotbox” refers to a function whereby for each specified region (see “Regions” in Chapter 13 (Volume 2)) any snapshot or keyframe effect can be recalled simultaneously.

For details, see “Shotbox” in Chapter 15 (Volume 2).

Macros

The term “macro” refers to the function whereby a sequence of signal selections and other operations on the control panel is saved as data in memory (macro register), so that it can be recalled as required to automatically execute the same sequence of operations.

The individual control panel operations constituting a macro are termed “events.”

Macros also provide the following functions.

Menu macros

The term “menu macro” refers to the function whereby a sequence of menu operations is saved as data in memory, so that it can be recalled as required to automatically execute the same sequence of operations.

Macro timeline

By recording macro recall and execute action on a timeline, in the same way as for keyframes in an effect, you can automatically execute them in a sequence.

Macro attachment

Macro attachment is a function whereby a macro register is assigned to a control panel button or a particular position of a fader lever, linking the execution of the button function or a fader lever operation with a macro execution.

For details, see Chapter 16 “Macros” (Volume 2).

Files

You can save register data, including setup information and snapshot information, as a file on a hard disk or memory card, and recall it as required.

You can operate on individual files or registers, or together in a batch.

Regarding frame memory, it is possible to capture image data stored in an external device into frame memory.

The following files can be saved and recalled.

- Operation mode setup data for system as a whole and individual devices
- Device status data for system startup
- Key memory setting data
- Video process memory setting data
- Keyframe effect setting data
- Snapshot setting data
- Wipe snapshot setting data
- DME wipe snapshot setting data
- Key snapshot setting data
- Shotbox setting data
- Macro setting data
- Macro attachment data
- Menu macro setting data
- Frame memory image data

For details, see Chapter 17 “Files” (Volume 2).

Setup

Various settings are required, in order to operate the switcher, control panel, DME, external devices, and so on, connected together in a single system.

This is referred to as “setup,” and you can carry out the setup operations from the Engineering Setup menu.

The settings in the Engineering Setup menu are grouped under the following headings.

System setup (System)

For details, see Chapter 18 “System Setup” (Volume 2).

Panel setup (Panel)

For details, see Chapter 19 “Control Panel Setup (Panel)” (Volume 2).

Switcher setup (Switcher)

For details, see Chapter 20 “Switcher Setup (Switcher)” (Volume 2).

DME setup (DME)

For details, see Chapter 21 “DME Setup (DME)” (Volume 2).

DCU setup (DCU)

For details, see Chapter 22 “DCU Setup (DCU)” (Volume 2).

Router/tally setup (Router/Tally)

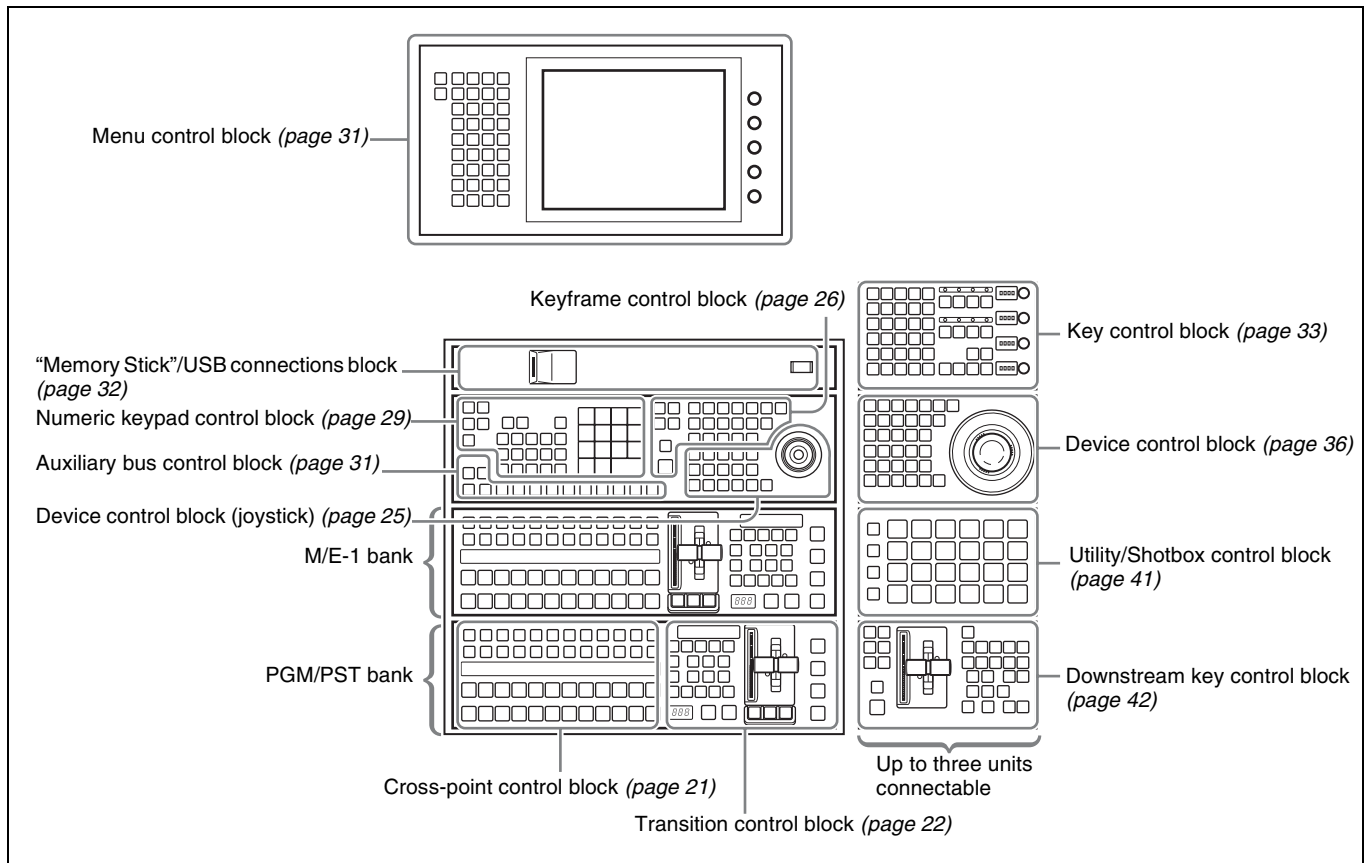
For details, see Chapter 23 “Setup Relating to Router Interface and Tally (Router/Tally)” (Volume 2).

User setup (User Setup)

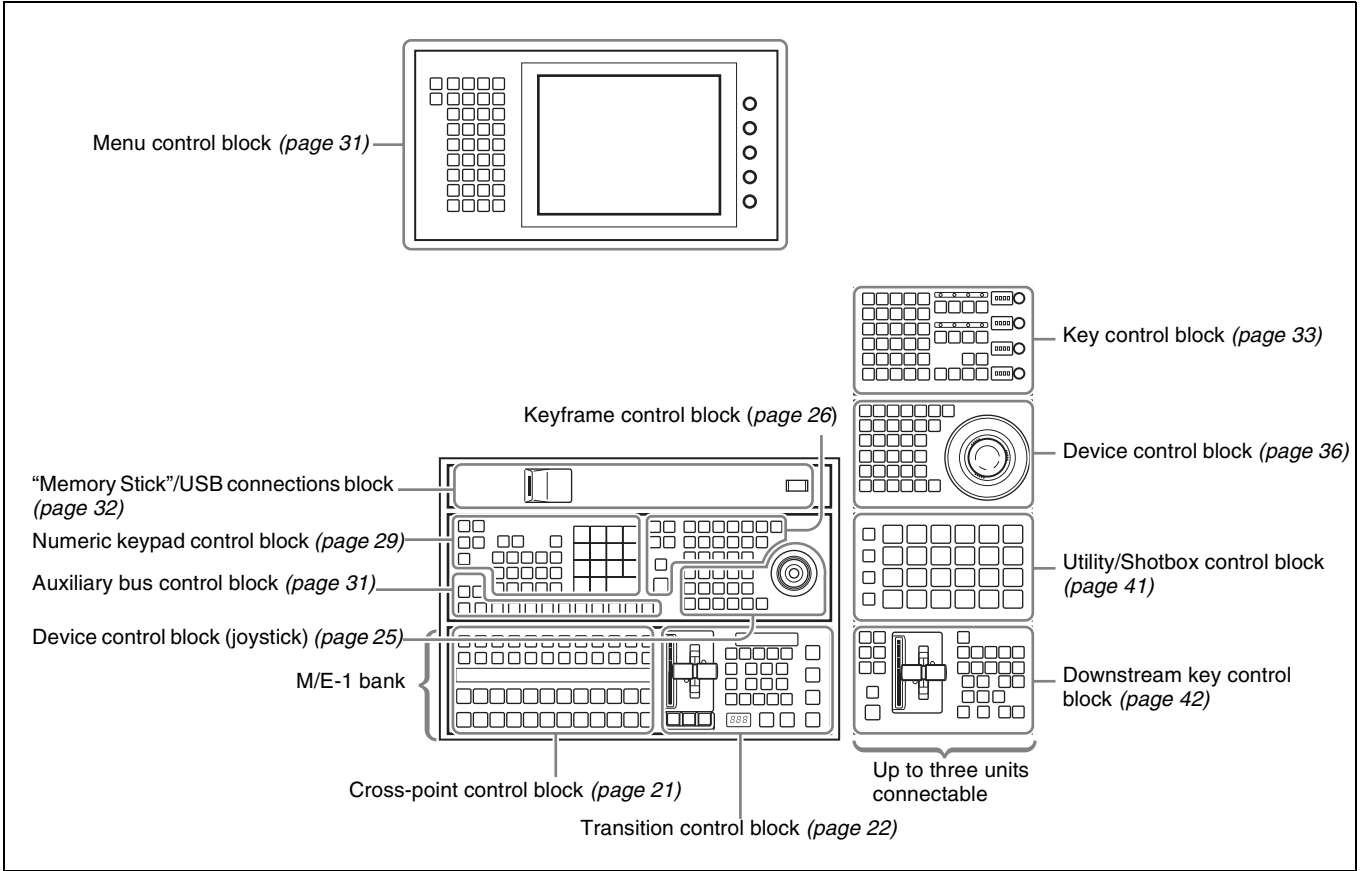
For details, see Chapter 24 “User Setup (User Setup)” (Volume 2).

Names and Functions of Parts of the Control Panel

Example Control Panel Configuration



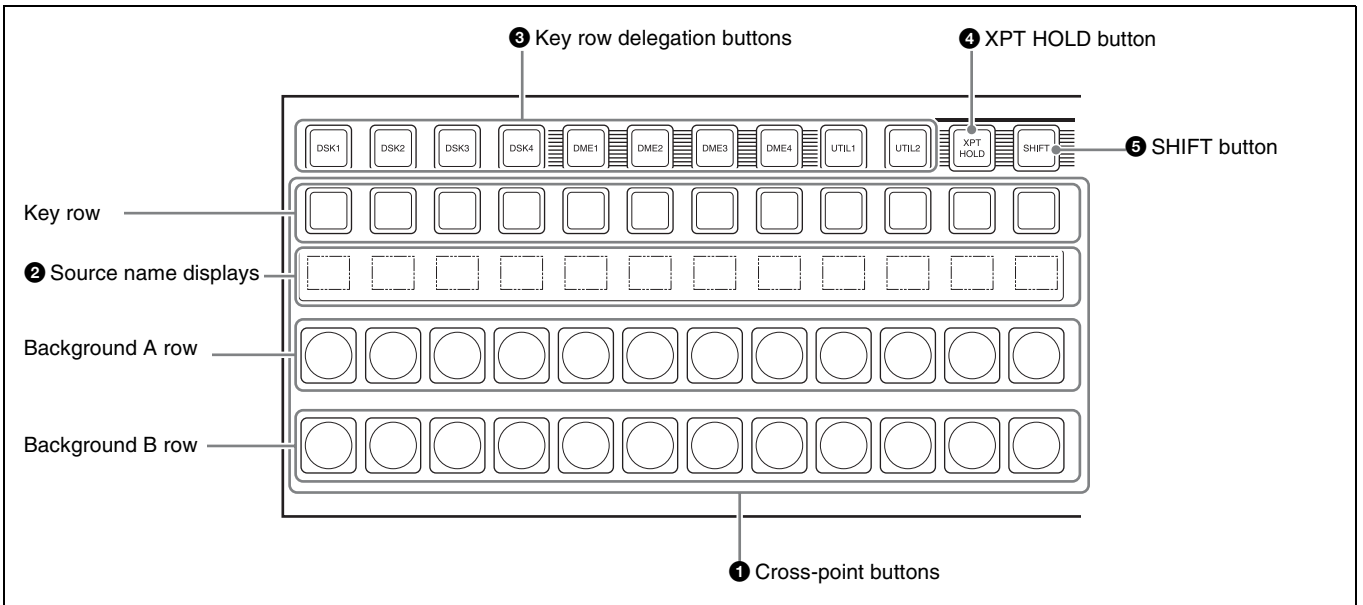
Example control panel configuration (with CCP-9000A 2M/E panel)



Example control panel configuration (with CCP-9000A 1M/E panel)

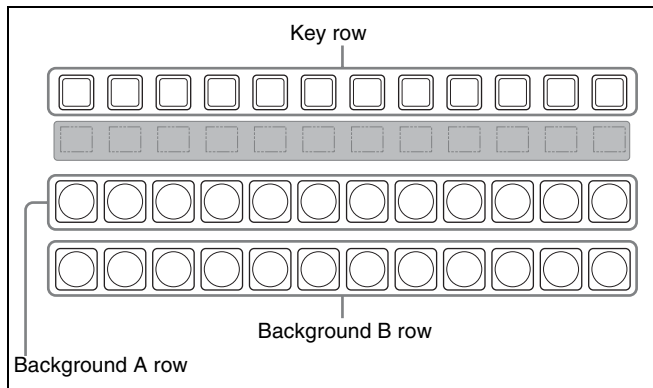
Cross-Point Control Block

In the cross-point control block, you can select the signals to be used in this M/E bank or PGM/PST bank.



❶ Cross-point buttons

These buttons select the signals used for video creation on this M/E bank or PGM/PST bank. Each row of buttons corresponds to one or more signal buses within the switcher.



Name	Description
Key row	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The buttons in this row select the bus signals specified with the key row delegation buttons ([DSK1] to [DSK8], [DME1] to [DME4], [UTIL1], or [UTIL2]) or delegation buttons in the auxiliary bus control block. The later pressed delegation button takes precedence and the selection is reflected in the key row. <p><i>For details of DSK5 to DSK8 assignment, see “Assigning Buttons for Selection of Keys 5 to 8 in the Setup Menu” (page 338) in Appendix.</i></p>
Background A row	To select the signal as the current background video on this M/E bank or PGM/PST bank.
Background B row	To select the signal as the background after the next transition on this M/E bank or PGM/PST bank.

Cross-point button numbers

Cross-point button and reentry buttons are respectively numbered (see page 59).

Assigning signals to button

You can assign a signal to each button using the Setup menu.

For details on the operation, see “Cross-Point Settings (Xpt Assign Menu)” in Chapter 19 (Volume 2).

Transition Control Block

In the transition control block, you can modify the output of the M/E bank or PGM/PST bank, and perform transitions. Both common transition and independent key transition operations are possible.

Visual indications on cross-point buttons

For details on the operation, see “Colors of lit cross-point buttons” (page 60).

❷ Source name displays

These show the names of the signals which can be selected on the cross-point buttons, in two or four characters, or in auto mode.

While the [SHIFT] button or the [SHIFT] button assigned to the column of cross-point buttons is enabled, the source name of the signal assigned to the column of cross-point buttons in shift mode appears. You can select green, orange, or yellow for the background color of the source name display, for each source separately. You can set the source name display mode and background color in a Setup menu.

❸ Key row delegation buttons

Use these buttons to assign buses to the key row, copy keys, or assign DME to keys.

❹ XPT (cross-point) HOLD button

Turning this button on enables you to recall a keyframe or snapshot while keeping the current cross-point selection unchanged.

This function is valid for the background A and B rows. By means of setup settings, you can also enable this for the following function blocks.

- Background A and B rows
- Key buses
- Utility 1 and 2 buses
- External DME bus
- DME utility 1 and 2 buses

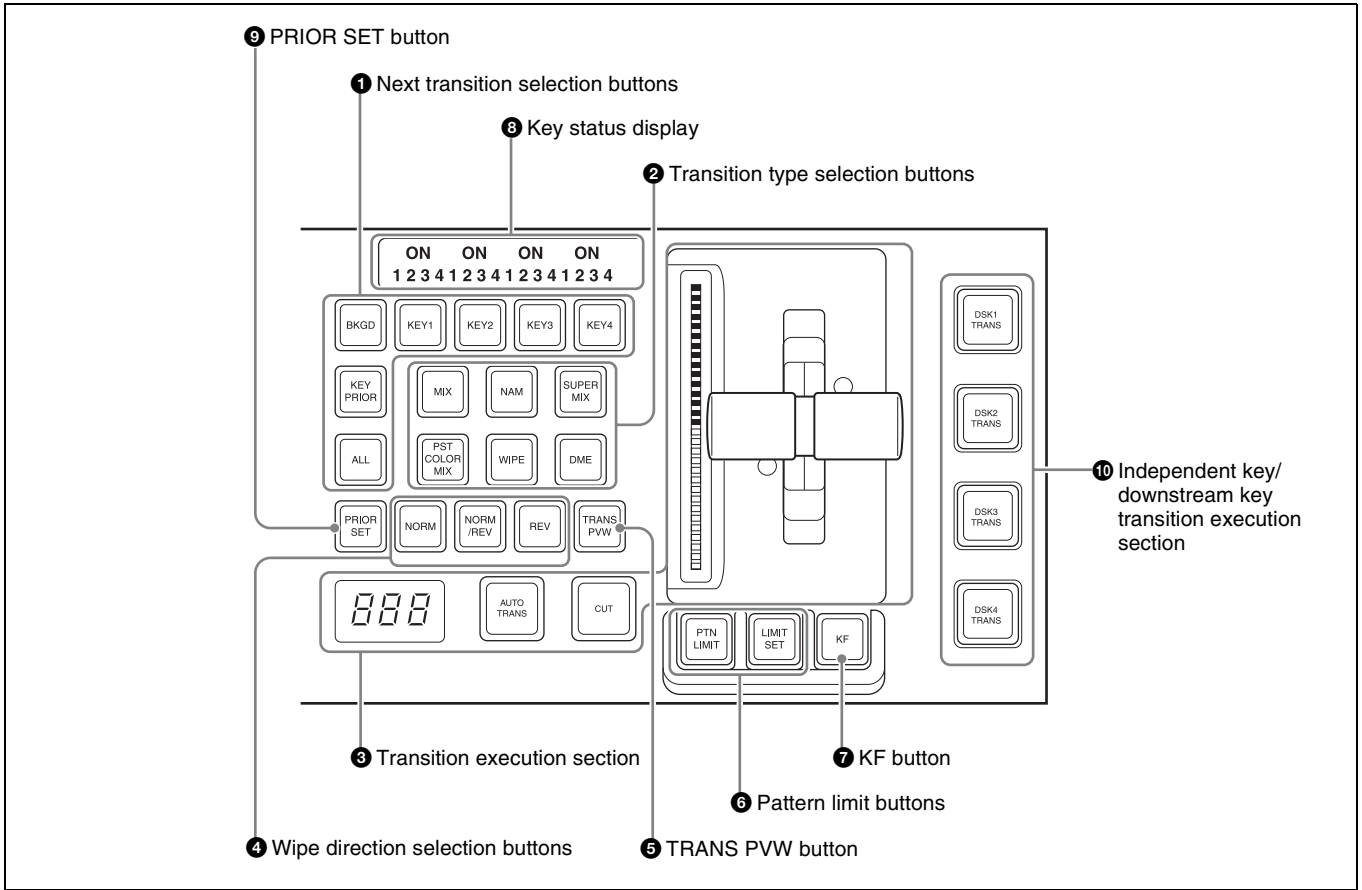
❺ SHIFT button

When this button is enabled, either the source name displays show the shifted signal names, or the shifted signals for all buses in this M/E (PGM/PST) bank are enabled.

You can select either mode in a Setup menu.

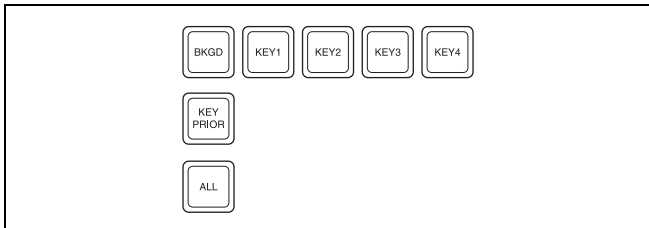
Each press of the button toggles between the enabled and disabled states.

Using a Setup menu operation, you can also make this button function as the [SHIFT] button for the whole cross-point control block inclusive of the key row and background A and B rows.



1 Next transition selection buttons

Press these buttons, turning them on, to determine what the next transition will apply to.



Name	Description
BKGD	Next transition changes the background.
KEY1 to KEY8 (DSK1 to DSK8 in the PGM/PST bank)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Press this button, turning it on, to make the next transition insert or remove the corresponding key (keys 1 to 8). If a key is currently inserted it will be removed, and vice versa. In the PGM/PST bank, this inserts or removes downstream keys 1 to 8. <p><i>For details of assignment and selection of keys 5 to 8, see the following sections in Appendix: "Assigning Buttons for Selection of Keys 5 to 8 in the Setup Menu" (page 338) and "Selecting Keys 5 to 8 for Next Transition" (page 339).</i></p>

Name	Description
KEY PRIOR (priority)	When this button is lit, the setting of the key priority after the next transition is enabled. The key priority after the next transition appears in the key status display.
ALL	Pressing this button turns on a preselected set of the [BKGD], [KEY1] to [KEY8], and [KEY PRIOR] buttons. Make this setting in a Setup menu.

2 Transition type selection buttons

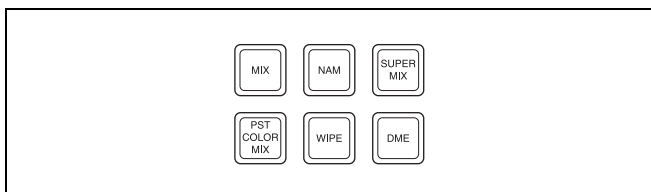
Press one of these buttons, turning it on, to determine the type of the next transition (*see page 61*).

For the method of assigning transition types, see "Transition Control Block Button Assignments" in Chapter 19 (Volume 2).

When multi-program mode is selected in the Setup menu, two or more of the following buttons may light.

For details of multi-program mode, see "Setting Transition Control Block Button Assignments" in Chapter 19 (Volume 2).

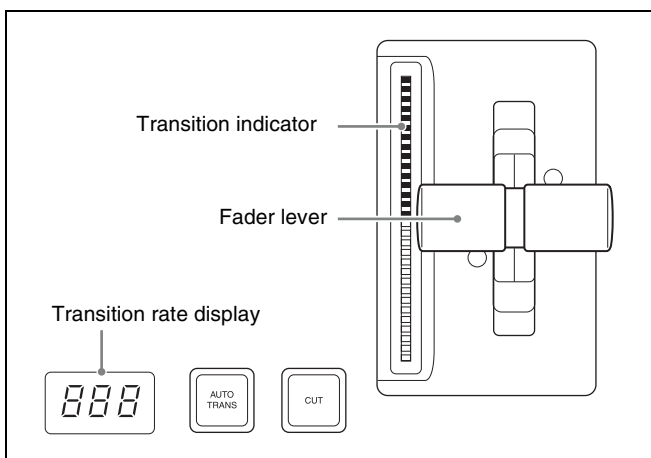
You can also assign a function to these buttons to select whether or not the fader levers are used as keyframe faders.



Name	Description
MIX	In a background transition, the new video fades in as the current video fades out.
NAM (non-additive mix)	The current and new video signals are compared, and the signal with the higher luminance level is given priority in the output.
SUPER MIX	The current video is maintained at 100% output for the first half of the transition as the new video is mixed while increasing progressively to 100%.
PST (preset) COLOR MIX	The color matte (unpatterned display) is inserted during transition, replacing the current video by the color matte, and then replacing the color matte by the new video.
WIPE	The current video is replaced by the new video, using the wipe pattern selected in the Wipe menu.
DME (DME wipe)	A wipe type of transition is carried out, using the DME effect selected in the DME Wipe menu.
FM1&2CLIP, FM3&4CLIP, FM5&6CLIP, FM7&8CLIP	A recorded clip is played back together with the transition. At this point, you can also carry out a transition (wipe or mix (dissolve)) simultaneously together with the clip.
KF (keyframe)	Press this button, turning it on, to enable using the fader lever as a keyframe fader.

3 Transition execution section

This section is used to carry out a transition and check the progress of the transition.

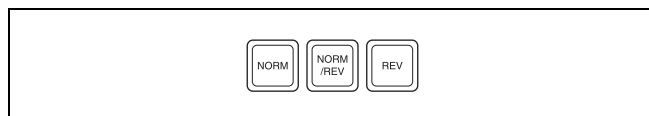


Name	Description
Transition indicator	This comprises multiple LEDs, which show the progress of the transition.

Name	Description
Fader lever	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Move up or down to carry out the transition. When the [KF] button or a transition type selection button to which the KF button function has been assigned is lit, you can use this as a keyframe fader.
Transition rate display	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> This shows the “transition rate” (the time from the beginning of a transition to its completion) set for an auto transition, in frames. You can set the transition rate using the numeric keypad control block or menu.
AUTO TRANS (transition) button	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Pressing this button carries out an auto transition of the set transition rate (duration). The transition starts immediately, and the button lights amber. When the transition completes, the button goes off.
CUT button	Pressing this button carries out the transition as a cut (i.e. instantaneously).

4 Wipe direction selection buttons

When a wipe or DME wipe is selected as the transition type, you can press to light these buttons to select the wipe direction.



Name	Description
NORM (normal)	The wipe proceeds in the direction from black to white as shown on the pattern in the lists of patterns <i>see</i> “Wipe Pattern List” (page 301) and “DME Wipe Pattern List” (page 305), or in the direction of the arrow.
REV (reverse)	The wipe proceeds in the opposite direction to that when the [NORM] button is pressed.
NORM/REV (normal/reverse)	The wipe direction alternates between normal and reverse every time a transition is executed.

5 TRANS PVW (transition preview) button

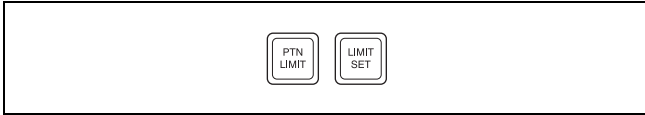
When this button is lit, you can check in advance the video changes during the transition, on the preview output from the M/E or PGM/PST bank.

During the preview, you can use the fader lever, [AUTO TRANS] button, and [CUT] button. One of the following functions of this button can be selected in a Setup mode.

- When the transition completes, the system returns to the normal mode.
- The transition preview mode is maintained while this button is pressed.
- Switching is made between the transition preview mode and normal mode every time this button is pressed.

6 Pattern limit buttons

The following buttons are used to set a pattern limit.



Name	Description
PTN (pattern) LIMIT	Pressing this button, turning it on, enables the pattern limit function.
LIMIT SET	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Use this button to set a pattern limit when the [PTN LIMIT] button is off. Move the fader lever to the position of a particular pattern size, and stop it there, then press this button to set the pattern limit range.

7 KF (keyframe) button

Pressing this button to turn it on allows you to use the fader lever as a keyframe fader.

8 Key status display

For each of the next transition selection buttons, [KEY1] to [KEY4], the corresponding ON indicator lights when the key is inserted. It also shows the priority (1 to 4) of each key.

9 PRIOR (priority) SET button

While this button is held down, you can set the key priority.

The setting mode when this button is pressed depends on whether or not the [KEY PRIOR] button is lit, as follows.

- When the [KEY PRIOR] button is off, the current key priority is set.
- When the [KEY PRIOR] button is lit, the key priority after the next transition is set.

Press the [KEY PRIOR] button as required, to switch between these two modes.

In either mode, hold down the [PRIOR SET] button, and press the button ([KEY1] to [KEY8]) corresponding to the key you want to bring to the front.

Notes

The key priority establishes a separate priority order within each of the groups of keys 1 to 4 and keys 5 to 8. You can make any setting within the groups of keys 1 to 4 or keys 5 to 8, but not for combinations of keys from different groups. For example, it is not possible to set a priority sequence of keys 1, 5, and 2.

For details, see “Setting the Key Priority in the Transition Control Block” (page 64).

The following controls are used as the independent key transition control block.

10 Independent key/downstream key transition execution section

KEY1 TRANS to KEY8 TRANS (DSK1 TRANS to DSK8 TRANS in the PGM/PST bank) buttons:

These correspond to keys 1 to 8 from top to bottom; press one to carry out an auto transition. The transition rate for an independent key transition can be set in the numeric keypad control block or in a menu.

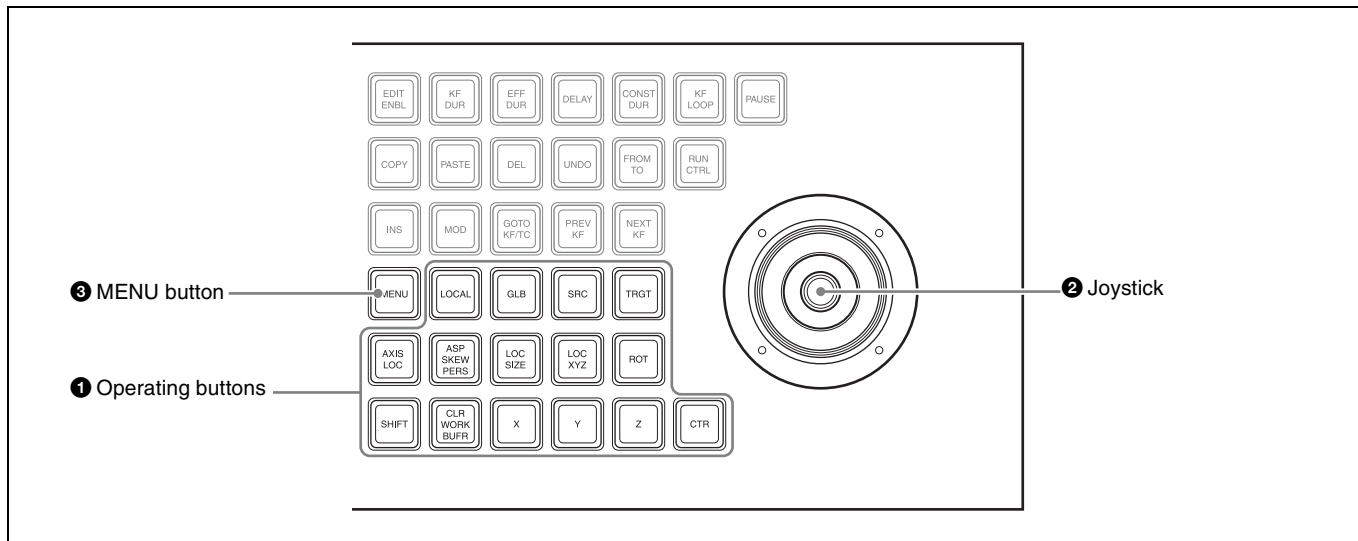
For details of assignment of keys 5 to 8, see “Assigning Buttons for Selection of Keys 5 to 8 in the Setup Menu” (page 338) in Appendix.

The color with which buttons are lit shows the status, as follows.

Lighting color	Status
Green	During a transition
Amber	Key on. Not inserted into program video (final output video from the switcher).
Red	Key on. Inserted into program video (final output video from the switcher).
Not lit	Key off.

Device Control Block (Joystick)

The joystick type device control block is used for three-dimensional transform operations using a DME.



1 Operating buttons

The functions of these buttons are equivalent to the functions in three-dimensional transform operation mode of the operating buttons of the trackball type device control block.

Notes

To select a required DME channel, use the region selection buttons in the numeric keypad control block.

Use of the [SHIFT] button

Pressing a button in the device control block while holding down the [SHIFT] button enables the shifted function of the button. Also, pressing a button in the keyframe control block while holding down the [SHIFT] button enables the shifted function of the button.

About the [CLR WORK BUFR] (clear work buffer) button

When [M/E-1] or [P/P] is selected along in the numeric region selection buttons of the keypad control block, press this button twice in rapid succession to reset all parameters of the selected M/E or P/P to their initial values. When a DME channel is selected in the region selection buttons, the operation is the same as when using a trackball type device control block in the three-dimensional transform operation mode.

2 Joystick

When the three-dimensional transform operation mode is enabled

By moving this, you can carry out operations in the x-, y-, and z-axes.

When the following buttons are held down, operation of the joystick is switched to a finer control. (fine mode)

- The button on the end of the joystick
- [SRC] button
- [TRGT] button

Depending on the settings made in the Setup menu, the operation speed multiple can be changed in fine mode.

When the effect run control mode is enabled

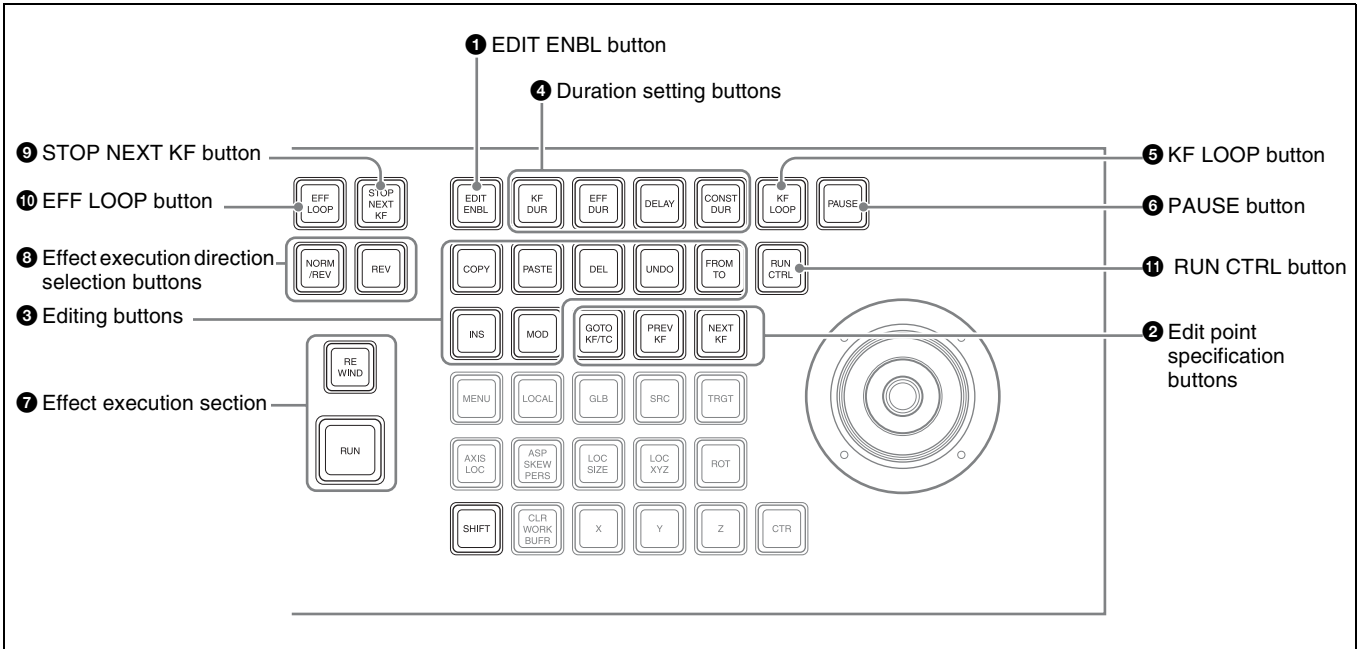
By moving the joystick sideways, you can run the keyframe effect, independent of the STOP NEXT KF, EFF LOOP, and similar settings in the keyframe control block. Move to the right to run the effect in the normal direction, and to the left for the reverse direction.

3 MENU button

The function of this button is equivalent to the function of the [MENU] button in the trackball type device control block.

Keyframe Control Block

In the keyframe control block, you can carry out effect editing and execution.

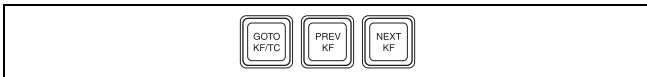


1 EDIT ENBL (edit enable) button

Press this button, turning it on, to enable effect editing operations with the keyframe control block. When macro editing is carried out, this button lights red.

2 Edit point specification buttons

The following buttons are used to set an edit point.

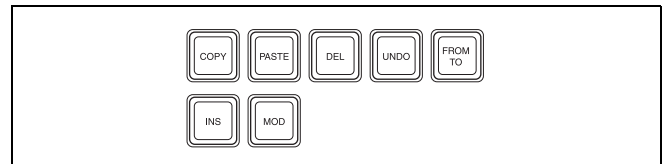


Name	Description
GO TO Kf/TC (Go to keyframe/timcode)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Press this button, turning it on, to enter a numeric value from the numeric keypad control block, and move the edit point to the specified keyframe. To move the edit point to the specified timecode position, hold down the [SHIFT] button in the device control block, then press this button, turning it on, and enter the desired numeric value from the numeric keypad control block. During macro editing, pressing this button moves the edit point to the event number specified by numeric entry with the numeric keypad control block.
PREV Kf (previous keyframe)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When this button is pressed, the edit point moves to the keyframe immediately before the current time (the position where the effect is currently stopped). During macro editing, pressing this button moves the edit point to the event immediately before the current event.

Name	Description
NEXT Kf (next keyframe)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When this button is pressed, the edit point moves to the keyframe immediately after the current time. During macro editing, pressing this button moves the edit point to the event immediately after the current event.

3 Editing buttons

The following buttons are used to edit keyframes.

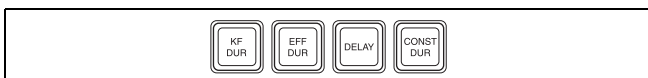


Name	Description
FROM TO	Press this button, turning it on, to enter numeric values from the numeric keypad control block, and select a specified range of keyframes (during macro editing, the specified range of events).
INS (insert)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When this button is pressed, a new keyframe is inserted after the current keyframe. Pressing this button while holding down the [SHIFT] button in the device control block inserts a new keyframe before the current keyframe. During macro editing, pressing this button moves the edit point to the event immediately after the current event. During macro editing, holding down the [SHIFT] button in the device control block and pressing this button inserts a new event before the current event.

Name	Description
MOD (modify)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When this button is pressed, the selected keyframe is modified with the values of the current keyframe. When the edit point is between two keyframes, the immediately preceding keyframe is modified. You can also select multiple keyframes, and modify them in a single operation. At this time, pressing this button while holding down the [SHIFT] button in the device control block modifies all selected keyframes with the changed values taken as relative values. During macro editing, pressing this button amends the selected event. You can also select multiple events, and edit them in a single operation.
DEL (delete)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When this button is pressed, the selected keyframe is deleted. When the edit point is between two keyframes, the immediately preceding keyframe is deleted. During macro editing, pressing this button deletes the selected event. You can also select multiple keyframes or macro events, and delete them in a single operation.
COPY	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When this button is pressed, the selected keyframe (during macro editing, macro event) is copied. You can also select multiple keyframes or macro events, and copy them in a single operation.
PASTE	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When this button is pressed, the deleted or copied keyframe (during macro editing, macro event) is inserted after the current keyframe (during macro editing, macro event). Pressing this button while holding down the [SHIFT] button in the device control block inserts the deleted or copied keyframe (during macro editing, macro event) before the current keyframe (during macro editing, macro event).
UNDO	When this button is pressed, the last executed keyframe (during macro editing, macro event) insertion, modification, or deletion, or paste operation is canceled.

4 Duration setting buttons

The following buttons are used to set the duration of a keyframe.



Name	Description
KF DUR (keyframe duration)	Press this button, turning it on, to set the keyframe duration of the selected keyframe, by numeric value entry from the numeric keypad control block.
EFF DUR (effect duration)	Press this button, turning it on, to set the effect duration from the numeric keypad control block.
DELAY	Press this button, turning it on, to enter a delay value from the numeric keypad control block.
CONST DUR (constant duration)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Select the duration mode. When this is lit, the mode is constant duration mode, and when off, variable duration mode.

5 KF LOOP (keyframe loop) button

Press this button, turning it on, to execute the effect the specified number of times through the keyframes in the specified range.

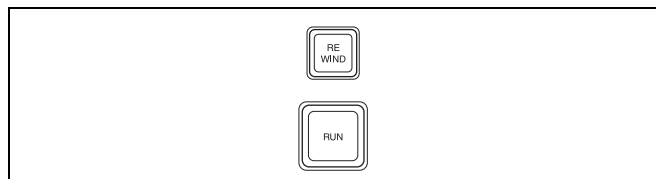
6 PAUSE button

When this button is pressed, a pause is applied to the selected keyframe.

When editing a macro, press this button, turning it on, to include a pause event in the macro. The pause length can be set in the numeric keypad control block.

7 Effect execution section

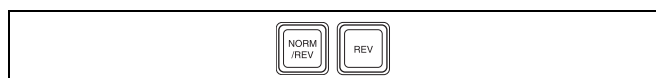
This section is used to execute an effect, and check the progress of the effect execution.



Name	Description
RUN button	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When this button is pressed, the effect is run from the first keyframe to the last keyframe. However, if a pause is set on a keyframe, the effect stops at that point. Press this button again to resume execution, and continue to the next pause point or the end of the effect.
REWIND button	When this button is pressed, the currently recalled effect is rewound to the first keyframe.

8 Effect execution direction selection buttons

The following buttons are used to set the direction of effect execution.



Name	Description
REV (reverse)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When this button is off, effect execution runs from the first keyframe to the last keyframe. When this button is lit, effect execution runs from the last keyframe to the first keyframe.
NORM/REV (normal/reverse)	Press this button, turning it on, to reverse the direction of the effect when it reaches the last keyframe or first keyframe.

9 STOP NEXT KF (stop next keyframe) button

When this button is pressed, turning it on, the effect execution range is from the current time to the next keyframe.

10 EFF LOOP (effect loop) button

When the effect reaches the last keyframe with this button on, it returns to the first keyframe and repeats.

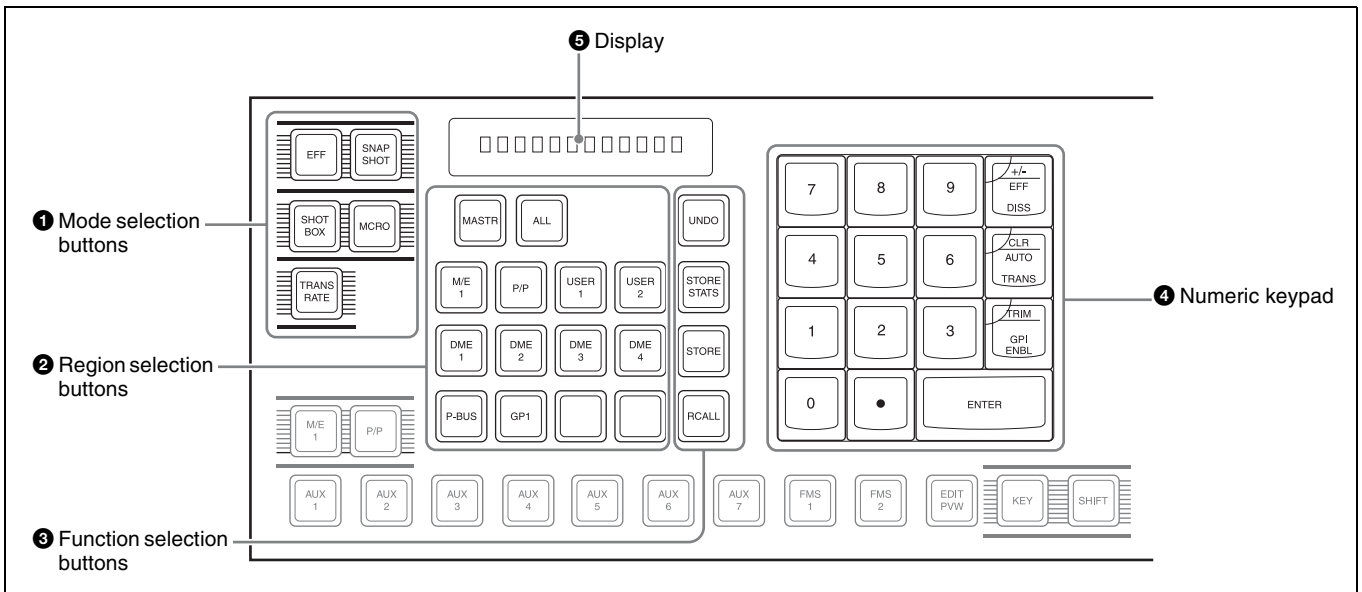
11 RUN CTRL (run control) button

When this button is on, you can execute keyframe effects without being affected by the STOP NEXT KF or EFF LOOP settings in the keyframe control block.

Numeric Keypad Control Block

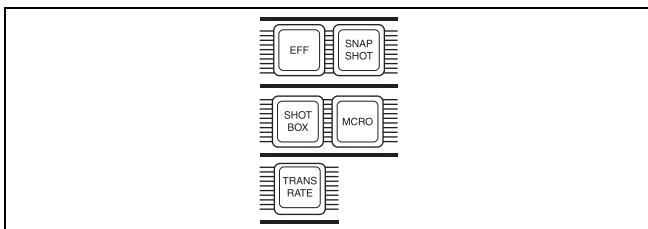
The numeric keypad control block is used for region selection, for saving and recalling snapshots, effects and shotboxes, for entering numeric values for trackball

operation and keyframe operation, and for transition rate entry.



1 Mode selection buttons

Pressing the following buttons changes the mode.



Name	Description
EFF (effect)	Press to save or recall an effect.
SNAPSHOT	Press to save or recall a snapshot.
SHOTBOX	Press to save or recall a shotbox.

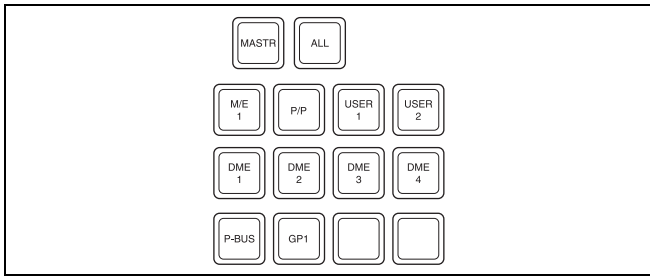
Name	Description
MCRO (macro)	Press to save, recall or edit a macro.
TRANS RATE (transition rate)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Press to set the transition rate. Hold down this button, and press one of the key delegation buttons [KEY1] to [KEY8] in the transition control block to set an independent key transition rate.

2 Region selection buttons

These select the functional block (“region”) of the control panel to which operations apply.

You can select more than one region at the same time. The first button you press is taken as the reference region, and lights green, while the next pressed button lights amber.

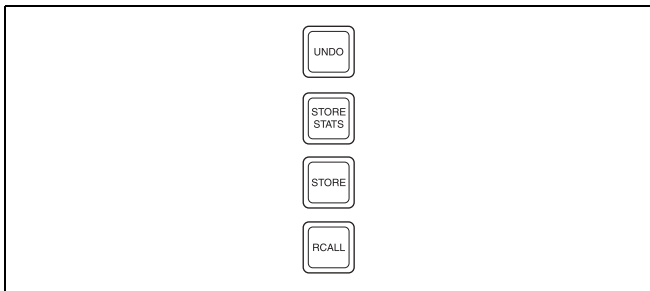
With the exception of the [MASTR] and [ALL] buttons, you can change the region assignment to the buttons as desired in the Setup menu.



Name	Description
MASTR	Press this, turning it on, to save region information in a master snapshot register or master timeline register, or to recall such region information.
ALL	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Select all regions. When any region is already selected, pressing this button makes all regions unselected
M/E 1 and P/P	Select the corresponding regions, M/E-1 and PGM/PST.
USER 1 to USER 8	Select the corresponding User regions.
DME1 to DME8	Select a DME channel.
P-Bus	Select the P-Bus region.
GPI	Select the GPI region.
RTR	Select the router region.
DEV1 to DEV12	Select the Device 1 to Device 12 regions respectively.
MCRO	Select the macro region.

3 Function selection buttons

The following buttons are used to switch the function.



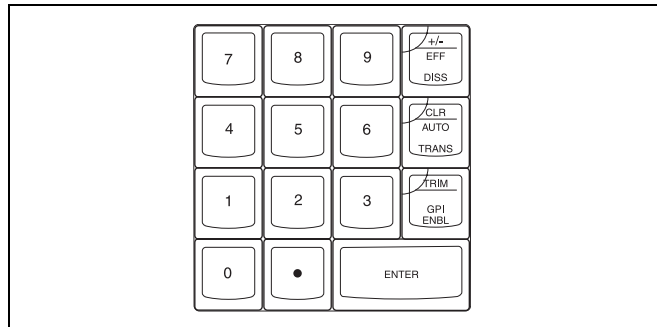
Name	Description
UNDO	After recalling a register, press this button to return to the state before recalling the register.

Name	Description
STORE STATS (store status)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> This lights amber when data is stored in a register. After saving data to a register, hold down this button and press the [UNDO] button to return the register to the state before the data was saved.
STORE ^{a)}	Press this button to switch to the mode for saving a snapshot, effect, shotbox or macro in a register.
RCALL (recall) ^{a)}	Press this button to switch to the mode for recalling a snapshot, effect, shotbox or macro from a register.

a) [STORE] button or [RCALL] button flashes amber when one or more of the regions assigned to the Region selection buttons are not selected by the Region Select menu.

4 Numeric keypad

In addition to the buttons for numeric input, this includes buttons for adding attributes to snapshots.

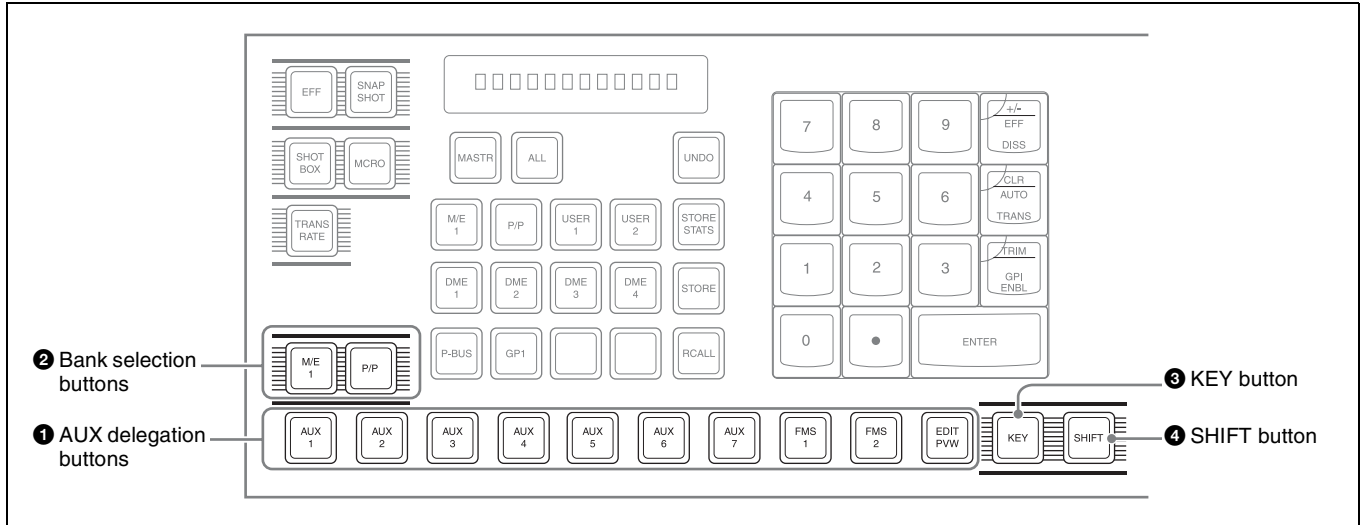


Name	Description
0 to 9	Used to input numeric digits.
. (period)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Enters the decimal point. When the [TC] button is lit, enters "00." When the [EFF] button, [SNAPSHOT] button or [SHOTBOX] button is lit, this is used to find an empty register.
+/-/EFF DISS (effect dissolve)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Invert the sign, negative or positive. When the [SNAPSHOT] button is lit, applies the effect dissolve attribute to a snapshot.
CLR/AUTO TRANS (clear/auto transition)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Clear an input value, returning to the previous state. When the [SNAPSHOT] button is lit, applies the auto transition attribute to a snapshot.
TRIM/GPI ENBL (enable)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> After entering a difference value to be added to an existing setting, press this button to confirm the change. When the [SNAPSHOT] button is lit, adds a GPI output attribute to the snapshot.
ENTER	Confirm an entered value.

5 Display

This shows the selected region name, register number and entered numeric values.

Auxiliary Bus Control Block



1 AUX delegation buttons

Press one of these buttons, turning it on, to select the bus to assign to the key row of the bank selected with the bank selection buttons.

These 10 buttons from left to right have ID numbers 1 to 10. When the [SHIFT] button is enabled, their ID numbers switch to 11 to 20. Pressing one of the buttons selects the bus assigned to the ID number. That is, you can select up to 20 buses using these AUX delegation buttons in combination with the [SHIFT] button. The assignment of buses to the ID numbers can be done in a Setup menu.

For buses that can be selected, see “Bus Selection” (page 57).

For each bank, the key row is shared between the auxiliary bus control block and cross-point control block. Priority is given to the control block in which the delegation button is last pressed. When priority is given to the cross-point control block, all these buttons go off.

2 Bank selection buttons

These select the bank for which the AUX delegation buttons are enabled.

3 KEY button

While this button is held down, you can use the cross-point row of buttons to select key signals.

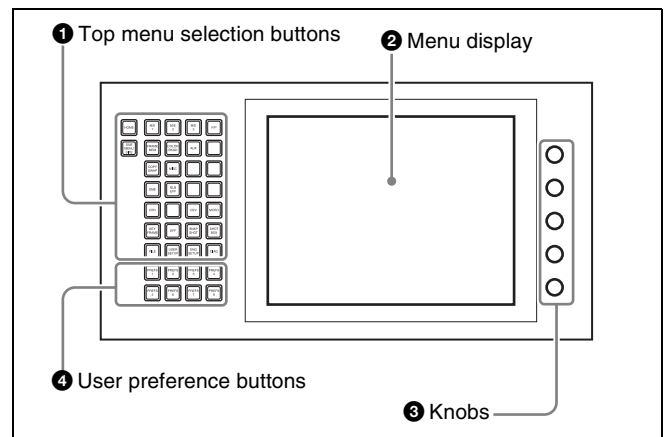
4 SHIFT button

While this button is enabled, the AUX delegation buttons have the shifted ID numbers. In a Setup menu, you can select one of the following three modes for this button.

- The button takes effect while being held down.
- Every time the button is pressed, it toggles between the shifted and unshifted states for the AUX delegation buttons.

- The button does not take effect even when pressed.

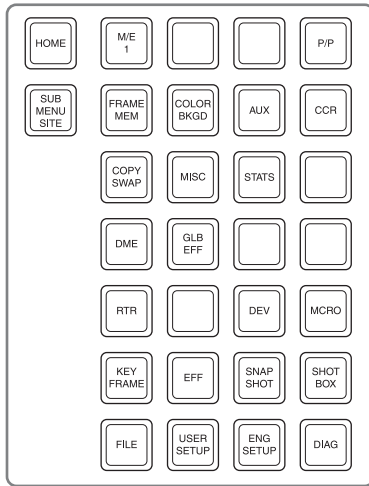
Menu Control Block



1 Top menu selection buttons

These select the menu appearing in the menu display. It is also possible to change the assignment of these buttons in setup.

For details, see “Assigning Functions to the Menu Control Block Top Menu and User Preference Buttons” in Chapter 19 (Volume 2).



2 Menu display

This shows the menu currently in use.

3 Knobs

These adjust the parameter values appearing in the menu.

4 User preference buttons

These recall the functions or menus assigned to them in the Setup menu.

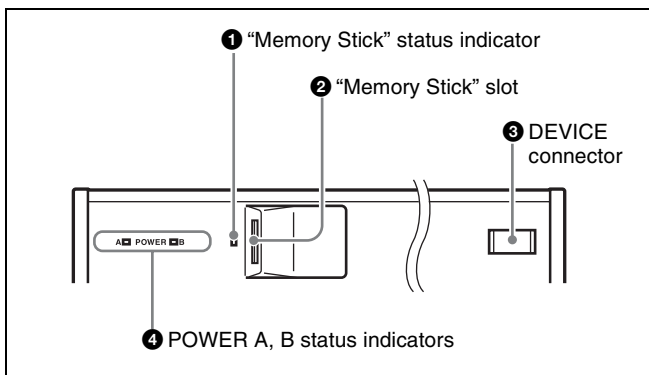
In the default setup, nothing is assigned to the [PREFS 1] to [PREFS 7] buttons.

It is also possible to change the assignment of these buttons in setup.

For details, see “Assigning Functions to User Preference Buttons” in Chapter 19 (Volume 2).

PREFS 8 button: When this button is on, control of an editor from the Remote1 port on the rear panel of the switcher is possible. However, even when it is off, control of the Edit PVW bus is always possible.

“Memory Stick”/USB Connections Block



1 “Memory Stick” status indicator

Lights in red during access to a “Memory Stick.”

Notes

Do not power the unit off or remove a “Memory Stick” when the “Memory Stick” status indicator is lit.

2 “Memory Stick” slot

Insert “Memory Sticks.” You can use it in software installation, and for saving and reading data, such as snapshot, keyframe, effect, and setup data.

See the next item, “About “Memory Sticks”” for more information about the usable “Memory Sticks” and their handling.

3 DEVICE connectors

There is a USB connector.

You can connect a device such as a mouse, keyboard, USB storage, and so on, that is equipped with a USB interface to any of these connectors.

For details on the devices that can be connected, consult your Sony representative.

4 POWER A, B status indicators

The status indicators light in green when the unit is powered on.

The POWER B status indicator does not light when the optional HK-PSU11 Power Supply Unit is not supplied in the factory configuration.

About “Memory Sticks”

Usable “Memory Sticks”

This unit has been confirmed to operate with those of the following “Memory Sticks” that have a capacity of 8 GB (gigabytes) or less. However, operation with all “Memory Sticks” is not guaranteed.

- “Memory Stick”
- “Memory Stick PRO”
- “Memory Stick Duo”
- “Memory Stick PRO Duo”

Notes

- When using a “Memory Stick PRO,” high-rate data transfer using parallel interface is not supported.
- A “MagicGate Memory Stick” can also be used, but this system does not support the MagicGate function.
- When using a “Memory Stick Duo,” be sure to use it with a “Memory Stick Duo Adaptor” (MSAC-M2 or equivalent). If you insert a “Memory Stick Duo” without using the adaptor, there is the possibility that the stick cannot be removed, resulting in a serious accident.

Handling “Memory Sticks”

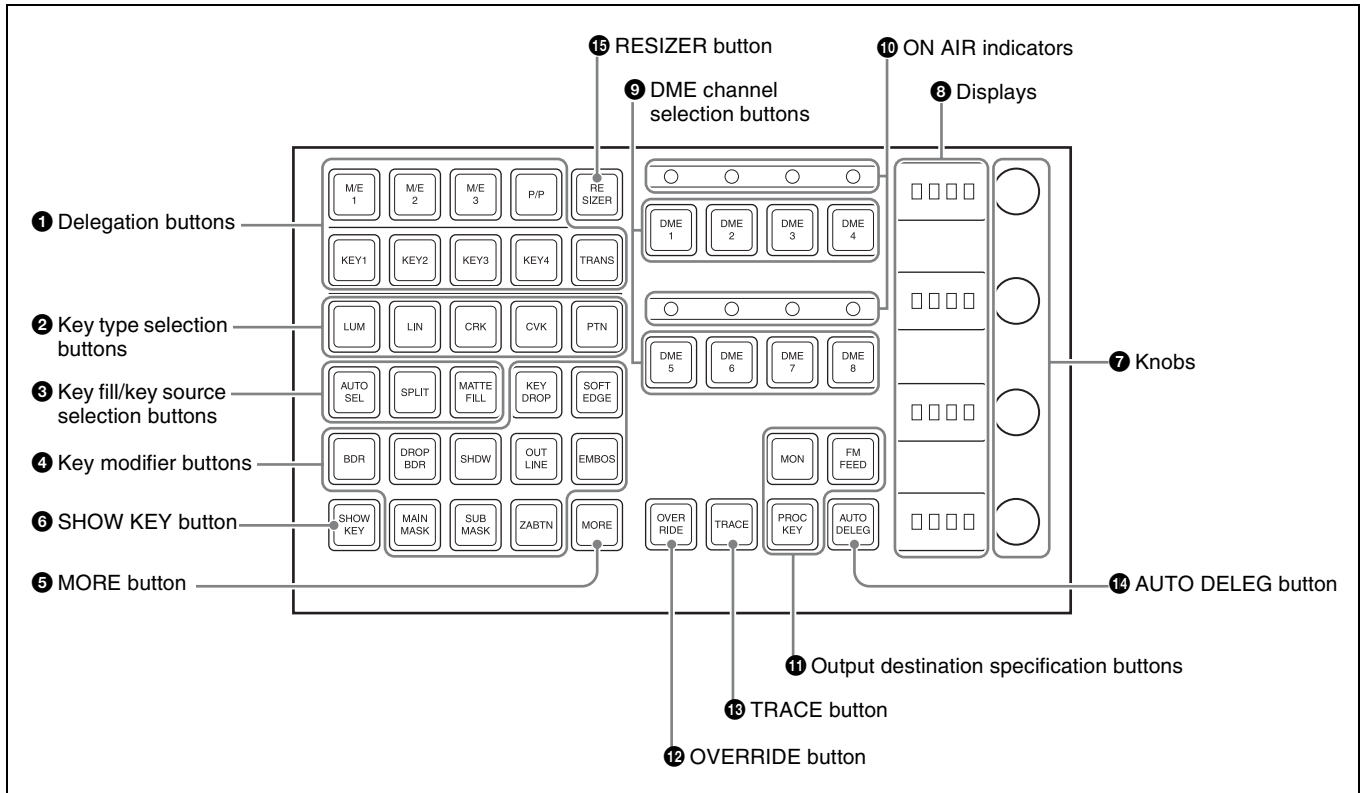
When using “Memory Sticks,” pay attention to the following points.

- Do not touch the connector of the “Memory Stick” with anything, including your finger or metallic objects.
- Do not attach anything other than the supplied label to the “Memory Stick” labeling position.
- Attach the label so that it does not stick out beyond the labeling position.
- Carry and store the “Memory Stick” in its case.
- Do not strike, bend, or drop the “Memory Stick.”
- Do not disassemble or modify the “Memory Stick.”
- Do not allow the “Memory Stick” to get wet.
- Do not use or store the “Memory Stick” in a location that is:
 - Extremely hot, such as in a car parked in the sun
 - Under direct sunlight
 - Very humid or subject to corrosive substances

Key Control Block (MKS-8035 Key Control Module, Option)

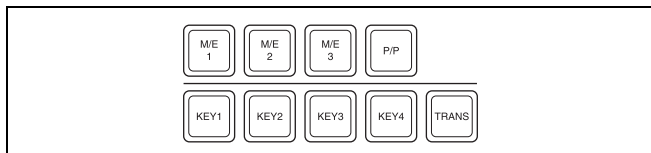
Each of the M/E and PGM/PST banks includes eight keyers (for keys 1 to 8), and you can delegate this control

block to any desired keyer. In this control block, you can adjust and modify keys.



1 Delegation buttons

Pressing the following buttons selects a keyer and an M/E or PGM/PST bank to which the key control block is delegated.



Name	Description
M/E delegation	<p>Press one of the [M/E 1] to [M/E 4], and [P/P] buttons to select the bank (the M/E bank or PGM/PST bank) to which the key control block is delegated.</p> <p><i>For details of [M/E 4] button assignment, see “Assigning a Button for M/E-4 Selection in the Setup Menu” (page 337) in Appendix.</i></p> <p>Notes</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • When the MKS-9011 1M/E Control Panel is used, only the [P/P] is enabled. • When the MKS-9012 2M/E Control Panel is used, only the [M/E-1] and [P/P] are enabled.

Name	Description
Key delegation	<p>Press one of the [KEY1] to [KEY8] buttons to delegate the key control block to the corresponding keyer.</p> <p><i>For details of assignment of keys 5 to 8, see “Assigning Buttons for Selection of Keys 5 to 8 in the Setup Menu” (page 338) in Appendix.</i></p>
TRANS	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> By pressing this button, you can check the DME channel used for DME wipes on the M/E or PGM/PST bank. Also, by pressing this button, then pressing one of the DME channel selection buttons, you can preset the DME channel to be used when a DME wipe is selected as the transition type for the next transition. When presetting the DME channel for an independent key transition, hold down this button, then press one of the [KEY1] to [KEY8] buttons, turning the two buttons on, beforehand.

② Key type selection buttons

Press one of these buttons, turning it on, to select the desired key type.

Depending on the selected key type, various parameters are displayed, and you can set the values with the knobs. The following key types can be selected.

LUM: luminance key

LIN: linear key

CRK: chroma key

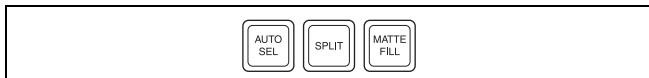
CVK: color vector key

PTN: key wipe pattern key

For details, see “Key Types” (page 82).

③ Key fill/key source selection buttons

Pressing the following buttons selects key fill and key source.



Name	Description
AUTO SEL (selection)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Use the signal selected on the key fill bus, and the paired key source signal. The setting of key fill and key source pairs is carried out in a Setup menu. To use the signal selected on the key fill bus as key source (self keying), press the [AUTO SEL] button and [SPLIT] button at the same time, so that both are off.

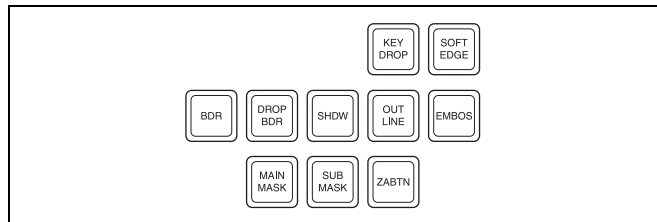
Name	Description
SPLIT	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> To use the signal selected on the key fill bus as key fill, and a signal separate from the signal assigned in a pair with key fill for key source, press this button, turning it on. To use the signal selected on the key fill bus as key source (self keying), press the [AUTO SEL] button and [SPLIT] button at the same time, so that both are off.
MATTE FILL	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> To use a color matte from the internal generator as key fill, press this button, turning it on. You can adjust the color matte using the knobs. When this button is off, the signal selected on the key fill bus is used as key fill.

④ Key modifier buttons

To add an edge modifier to the key, press one of these buttons, turning it on.

Depending on the edge type selected, parameters appear in the displays, and you can set the values with the knobs.

To select a normal edge as the edge type, turn the BDR (border), DRP BDR (drop border), SHDW (shadow), EMBOS (emboss) and OUTLINE buttons off.



Name	Description
KEY DROP ^{a)}	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When the selected edge type is “normal” and soft edge is not selected or when drop border or shadow is selected, turning this button on lowers the key fill and key source position by four or eight scan lines as set in the key menu. To select 4H or 8H, use the Key menu. When the selected edge type is “normal” and soft edge is selected or when border, outline, or emboss is selected, this button lights automatically.
BDR (border) ^{a)}	Apply a border of a uniform thickness to the whole key.
DROP BDR (drop border) ^{a)}	Apply a border to two sides of the key (for example, below and to the right, or below and to the left).
SHDW (shadow) ^{a)}	Apply a shadow to two sides of the key (for example, below and to the right, or below and to the left).
OUTLINE	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Use the outline of the key. Use the key fill signal selected for the key in the edge portions.

Name	Description
EMBOS (emboss)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Apply an embossing effect to the periphery of the key. When emboss is selected, you can use the dedicated color matte signal for the emboss function.
MAIN MASK	Press this button, turning it on, to enable the key mask using the main pattern.
SUB MASK	Press this button, turning it on, to enable the key mask using the sub pattern.
ZABTN (zabton)	Press this button, turning it on, a translucent pattern is inserted behind the key.
SOFT EDGE	Press this button, turning it on, to soften the key edge portions.

a) When one of these buttons is selected, you can use a special color matte or a signal selected on the utility 1 bus for the edge.

5 MORE button

When there are more than four parameters, this button lights amber. When it is pressed, it changes from amber to green and the fifth and subsequent parameters are assigned to the knobs, allowing them to be adjusted.

6 SHOW KEY button

While this button is held down, a key processed key source signal is output from the specified output port. You can make the output specification independently for each of edit preview and the preview of the M/E or PGM/PST bank in a Setup menu.

7 Knobs

Turn the knobs to adjust the parameter values.

8 Displays

Each display shows the initial letters of the parameter name and the parameter value (maximum three digits including a minus sign for a negative value).

9 DME channel selection buttons

Press one of these buttons, turning it on, to assign a DME channel to the keyer.

The number of valid DME channel selection buttons depends on the number of channels installed in the DME processor.

A maximum of four consecutively numbered DME channels from DME 1 to 8 can be assigned to one keyer. When the signal format is 1080P only, the consecutive channel combinations that can be selected are any of DME1 and DME2, DME3 and DME4, DME5 and DME6, or DME7 and DME8.

A DME channel assigned to a keyer cannot be selected on another keyer. However, using the override function it is possible to allocate a channel already allocated to another keyer to the currently selected keyer. If DME channel allocations have been made in a Setup menu, these buttons cannot be used to make DME channel allocations. Using

the trace function, it is possible to check which keyer a DME channel is allocated to.

Notes

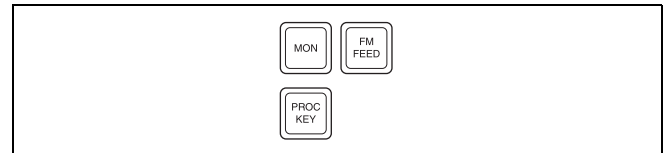
For the MKS-9011/9012, direct control of DME5 to 8 is not possible.

10 ON AIR indicators

These light red when the corresponding DME channels are included in the final program output.

11 Output destination specification buttons

Pressing the following buttons selects and checks the output signal.



Name	Description
MON (DME monitor)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Hold down this button and press the selection button for the DME channel you want to assign to the monitor output; you can then monitor the output signal on the DME monitor output. While this button is held down, the DME channel selection buttons light as follows, allowing you to check the monitor assignment. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Lit amber: DME channel that can currently be monitored Lit green: DME channel currently assigned to the monitor output
FM FEED (frame memory feed)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When you press this button, it lights momentarily amber, then for the currently selected keyer, the key processed signals are selected for frame memory sources 1 and 2. If a DME is selected on the currently selected keyer, the key fill and key source signals to which a DME effect is applied are assigned to frame memory sources 1 and 2; otherwise the key fill and key source signals are assigned. Carrying out a frame memory feed causes the [PROC KEY] button to light amber.

Name	Description
PROC KEY (processed key)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When this button is on, the key fill/source signal subjected to key processing or signal subjected to a DME effect on the currently selected keyer can be selected as a reentry signal (PROC V or PROC K) for the M/E or PGM/PST bank, on the auxiliary bus or the like. If a DME is selected on the currently selected keyer, the key fill and key source signals to which a DME effect is applied are assigned; otherwise the key fill and key source are assigned.

12 OVERRIDE button

To select a DME channel already allocated to another keyer or transition to the currently selected keyer (or transition), hold down this button, and press the DME channel selection button.

13 TRACE button

When a DME channel is already allocated to another keyer or transition, hold down this button, and press the corresponding DME channel selection button, to switch to the state in which the keyer (or transition) to which the DME channel is allocated is currently selected.

14 AUTO DELEG (auto delegation) button

When this button is on, the key delegation selection state of the key control block is linked to the next transition selection state of the transition control block.

15 RESIZER button

Enables or disables resizer.

When this is set to On, you can turn the knob to shrink, magnify, or move a key.

You can also rotate the key by pressing the following buttons assigned in the Setup menu in advance.

ROT X button: Rotate the key in the horizontal direction.

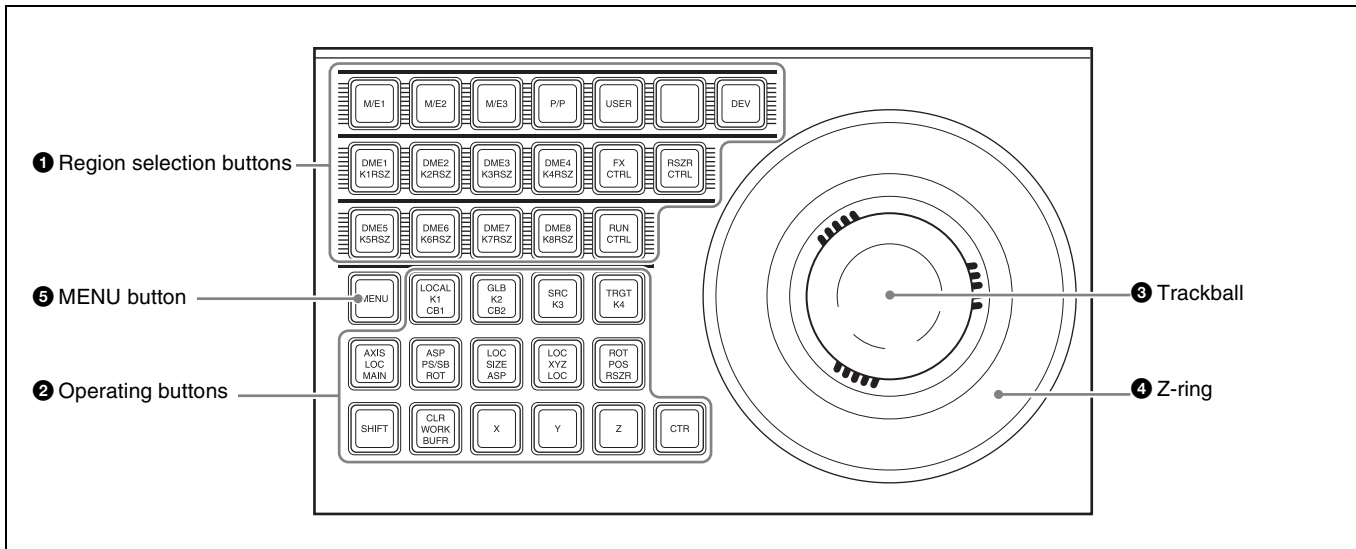
ROT Y button: Rotate the key in the vertical direction.

For details on resizer, see page 108.

Device Control Block (MKS-8031TB Trackball Module, Option)

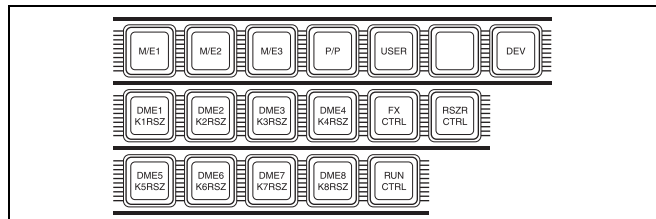
The device control block is used for three-dimensional transform operations using a DME, for wipe pattern

position setting, and for VTR/disk recorder or frame memory clip operations.



1 Region selection buttons

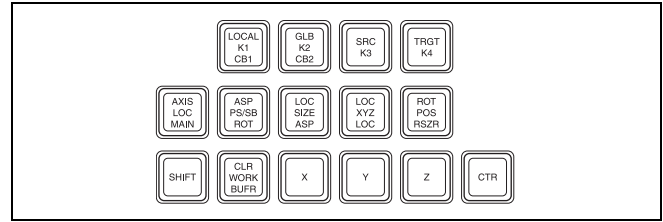
The operation mode allocated to the device control block depends on the selection state of the region selection buttons.



Selected buttons	Overview of assigned operation
[M/E 1] to [M/E 4], [P/P]	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> This enables the wipe pattern position setting (positioner) operation mode in the device control block. You can select multiple buttons simultaneously. When the MKS-9011 1M/E Control Panel is used, only the [P/P] is enabled. When the MKS-9012 2M/E Control Panel is used, only the [M/E-1] and [P/P] are enabled. <p><i>For details of [M/E 4] button assignment, see “Assigning a Button for M/E-4 Selection in the Setup Menu” (page 337) in Appendix.</i></p>
[USER]	This enables pattern position setting used for color backgrounds.
[DME 1] to [DME 8]	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> This enables the three-dimensional transform operation mode in the device control block. Press a button, turning it on, to select a DME channel. You can select multiple buttons simultaneously. The number of valid buttons depends on the number of DME processor channels installed.
[DEV]	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> This enables the VTR/disk recorder/frame memory operation mode in the device control block. Each button functions as follows. (From upper left to right in the above figure) [M/E1] to [M/E3]: DEV1 (device 1) to DEV3 (device 3) [P/P]: DEV4 (device 4) [USER]: FM1CLIP (frame memory clip 1) [FX CTRL]: FM2CLIP (frame memory clip 2) [DME1] to [DME4]: DEV5 (device 5) to DEV8 (device 8) [Unused]: FM LOOP (frame memory loop) [DME5] to [DME8]: DEV9 (device 9) to DEV12 (device 12) To exit from this mode, press the [DEV] button again, turning it off.
[RUN CTRL]	This enables the effect run control mode in the device control block.
[RSZR CTRL]	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> This enables the resizer control mode in the device control block. In resizer control mode, select the key with the region selection button [K1RSZ] to [K8RSZ]. <p><i>For details on resizer, see page 108.</i></p>
[FX CTRL]	<p>Leave this button off for operation.</p> <p><i>Alternatively, for details of operation of this button, refer to the help information for the MPES-FX01 Programmable Effector software.</i></p>

② Operation buttons

The following buttons are used to carry out the corresponding operations. Function of each button varies with the operation mode.



When the positioner operation mode is enabled

Name	Description
K1 CB1 ^{a)}	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Press this button to enable wipe pattern position setting for key 1 (DSK1). When the [USER] button is selected, pattern position setting for color background 1 is enabled.
K2 CB2 ^{a)}	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Press this button to enable wipe pattern position setting for key 2 (DSK2). When the [USER] button is selected, pattern position setting is enabled for color background 2.
K3 ^{a)}	Press this button to enable wipe pattern position setting for key 3 (DSK3).
K4 ^{a)}	Press this button to enable wipe pattern position setting for key 4 (DSK4).
MAIN ^{a)}	Press this button to enable main wipe pattern position setting for normal transitions.
SB ^{a)}	Press this button to enable sub wipe pattern position setting for normal transitions.
POS	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Press this button to enable pattern movement in the x-axis and y-axis directions with the trackball. When the [USER] button is selected, this enables the trackball to move the pattern in the x-axis and y-axis directions, and the Z-ring to adjust the size of the pattern.
X, Y, Z	These restrict the axes affected by the trackball and Z-ring to the x-, y- or z-axis.
CTR (center)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When this button is pressed, the pattern position returns to the center. When the [USER] button is selected, the pattern size also returns to 50.00.
CLR WORK BUFR	These are not used in positioner operation mode.

a) Among these buttons, you can select multiple buttons.

When the three-dimensional transform operation mode is enabled

The buttons are used for three-dimensional DME transformations.

For details, see “Three-Dimensional Transformation Operations” (page 227).

When the VTR/disk recorder/frame memory operation mode is enabled

The buttons are used for VTR control or playback of frame memory clips.

For details, see “Controlling the Tape/Disk Transport” in Chapter 12 (Volume 2).

When the resizer control mode is enabled

Name	Description
LOC SIZE (ASP: aspect)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Pressing this button and operating the trackball or Z-ring changes the aspect ratio of a key to which the resizer function is applied to. When this button is held down, the trackball or Z-ring operation is switched to a finer control. (fine mode)
LOC XYZ (LOC: location)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Pressing this button and operating the trackball or Z-ring moves, shrinks, or magnifies a key to which the resizer function is applied. When this button is held down, the trackball or Z-ring operation is switched to a finer control. (fine mode)
ROT (RSZR: resizer)	Press this button, turning it on, to enable the resizer.
ASP PS (ROT: Rotation)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Pressing this button and operating the trackball or Z-ring rotates the key to which the resizer function is applied or adjusts perspective. When this button is held down, the trackball or Z-ring operation is switched to a finer control. (fine mode)
SHIFT/CLR WORK BUFR (clear work buffer)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Pressing this button once returns the two-dimensional transformation settings to the defaults. Pressing the [CLR WORK BUFR] button twice, or holding down [SHIFT] and pressing the [CLR WORK BUFR] button returns all resizer parameter values to the defaults.
X, Y, Z	These restrict the axes affected by the trackball and Z-ring to the x-, y- or z-axis.
SHIFT/CTR (center)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Pressing this button once changes the two-dimensional transformation settings to the closest detent values. Pressing the [CTR] button twice, or holding down [SHIFT] and pressing the [CTR] button returns the two-dimensional transformation values to the defaults.

③ Trackball

The effect of operation depends on the operating mode as follows.

When the positioner operation mode is enabled

By moving this, you can move the pattern in the x-axis and y-axis directions.

When the three-dimensional transform operation mode is enabled

Move the trackball to control the x- and y-axes in a three-dimensional transform.

When the [SRC] or [TRGT] button is held down, the trackball operation is switched to a finer control. (fine mode)

When the resizer control mode is enabled

By turning the trackball, you can move in the x and y directions of the key to which the resize is applied, change the aspect ratio, and rotate around the x-axis and y-axis. When the [LOC SIZE], [LOC XYZ], or [ASP PS] button is held down, the trackball operation is switched to a finer control. (fine mode)

④ Z-ring

The effect of operation depends on the operating mode as follows.

When the positioner operation mode is enabled

When the [USER] button is selected, by turning the ring you can adjust the size of the pattern.

When the three-dimensional transform operation mode is enabled

Turn this ring to control the z-axis in a three-dimensional transform.

When the [SRC] or [TRGT] button is held down, the Z-ring operation is switched to a finer control. (fine mode)

When the effect run control mode is enabled

By turning the Z-ring, you can run the keyframe effect, independent of the STOP NEXT KF, EFF LOOP and similar settings in the keyframe control block. Turn clockwise to run the effect in the normal direction, and counterclockwise for the reverse direction.

When the VTR/disk recorder/frame memory operation mode is enabled

Turning the Z-ring controls the tape transport/disk drive/frame memory clip operations, at a speed determined by the operating buttons. Turn clockwise for the normal direction, and counterclockwise for the reverse direction.

When the resizer control mode is enabled

By turning the ring, you can zoom the key to which the resizer is applied, and change the aspect ratio and perspective.

When the [LOC SIZE], [LOC XYZ], or [ASP PS] button is held down, the trackball operation is switched to a finer control. (fine mode)

5 MENU button

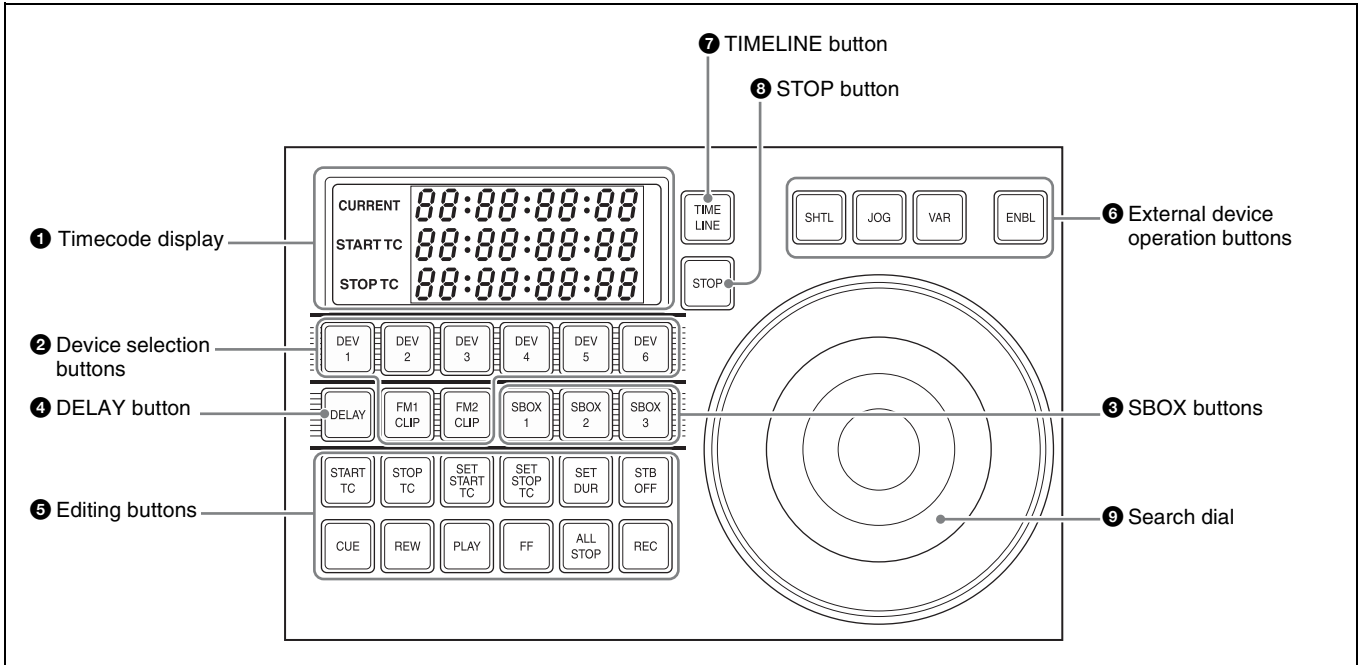
Press this button, turning it on, to enable adjusting the parameters allocated to the knobs in the menu using the trackball and Z-ring.
In the case of the DME menu, the operation applies to the selected DME channel.

In VTR/disk recorder/frame memory operation mode, press this button, setting it to On, to make it possible to carry out timeline start/stop point setting operation for the device selected with the device selection buttons (timeline setting mode).

Device Control Block (MKS-8036A Search Dial Module, Option)

Using the device control block (MKS-8036A search dial module ¹⁾, option), you can directly operate an XDCAM, disk recorder, VTR or other external device, frame memory clip, or shotbox. The device control block (MKS-8031TB track ball module, option) can be used together.

1) The product name of the MKS-8036A is "device control module," but in this manual it is referred to as "search dial module" to distinguish it from the MKS-8031TB trackball module.



1 Timecode display

This shows the current time (CURRENT) and the start and stop point timecode values for the current reference device (START TC, STOP TC). When you press a device selection button, the button lights, selecting the assigned device as the reference device, and displaying its setting value.

In the case of the [SBOX] buttons, the display does not change. When the operation applies to a VTR/disk recorder, the displayed setting value depends on whether the [TIMELINE] button is on or off, as follows.

When the [TIMELINE] button is on: Displays the start and stop points of the last set keyframe on the timeline. When the keyframe number is changed and the last register and keyframe change, the display also changes. (timeline setting mode)

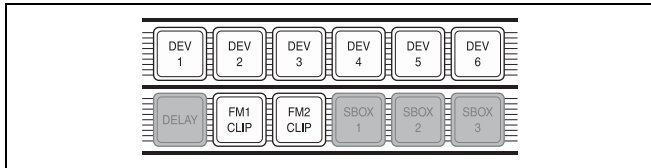
When the [TIMELINE] button is off: Displays the Cueup & Play (rewind action) start and stop points.

2 Device selection buttons

These buttons are used for selecting assigned external devices or frame memory clips. Each button can only be assigned to a single device. Carry out the assignment in the Setup menu.

For details, see "Assigning Functions to the Device Control Block" in Chapter 19 (Volume 2).

To select an assigned device, press the corresponding button, which lights green. To select more than one device simultaneously, hold down the button for the first selection, while pressing the buttons for the other selections in turn. The second and subsequent selected buttons light amber. If you press another button without holding down the first selected button, the second button will be the reference device and light green.



Name	Description
DEV1 to DVE6	Assign external devices DEV1 to DEV12.
FM1 CLIP, FM2 CLIP	Assign frame memory clips FM1 to FM8.

3 SBOX (shotbox) buttons

Assign a shotbox saved in registers 1 to 99. When you press a button, the assigned shotbox is selected, and executed.

Carry out the assignment in the Setup menu.

For details, see “Assigning Functions to the Device Control Block” in Chapter 19 (Volume 2).

You can freely assign the portions for device selection, SBOX, and DELAY buttons in setup.

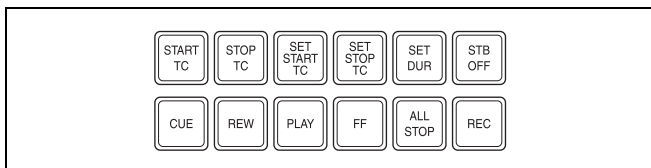
4 DELAY button

When pressed, this button lights green, the numeric keypad control block display changes to DELAY__ : , and you can set the start delay time for the selected device. The setting range is from 00:00 to 59:29 (depends on the video format). This button goes off when another timecode setting button ([START TC], [STOP TC], [SET START TC], [SET STOP TC], or [SET DUR]) is pressed. The DELAY button can be set as a device selection button or an SBOX button in the Setup menu. Carry out the assignment in the Setup menu.

For details, see “Assigning Functions to the Device Control Block” in Chapter 19 (Volume 2).

5 Editing buttons

These carry out Cueup & Play (rewind action) operations on material, and timeline settings. These operations are only valid while a device is selected with the device selection buttons.

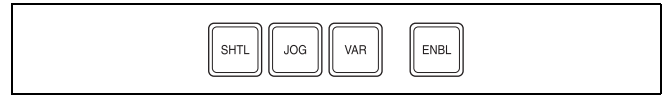


Name	Description
START TC	Press this button to set the timecode of the start point at that time. The timecode of the start point is updated to the current time each time this button is pressed. When the device the operation applies to is a VTR/disk recorder, the start point updated by the setting of the [TIMELINE] button is as follows. When the [TIMELINE] button is On: start point of the timeline When the [TIMELINE] button is Off: start point of Cueup & Play
STOP TC	Press this button to set the timecode of the stop point at that time. The timecode of the stop point is updated to the current time each time this button is pressed. When the device the operation applies to is a VTR/disk recorder, the stop point updated by the setting of the [TIMELINE] button is as follows. When the [TIMELINE] button is On: stop point of the timeline When the [TIMELINE] button is Off: stop point of Cueup & Play
SET START TC, SET STOP TC, SET DUR	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When pressed, these buttons light green, “START TC”, “STOP TC” or “DUR” appears in the numeric keypad control block display, and you can enter a timecode from the numeric keypad. If you enter a numeric value and press the [ENTER] button, the button goes off, whereas if you press the [ENTER] button without entering a numeric value the numeric keypad control block display shows “--:--:--”. If the timecode has been set correctly, the entered numeric value appears in the timecode display. To exit the numeric value entry mode, either repeat pressing the same button, or press a different numeric keypad control block linked button, or a mode selection button such as the [EFF] and [SNAPSHOT] buttons in the numeric keypad control block.
STB (standby) OFF	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When pressed, this button flashes amber, and the device selected with the device selection buttons exits from the standby mode. This button cannot be used for frame memory clip operations.
CUE	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When pressed, this button flashes amber together with the [ALL STOP] button, and the device selected with the device selection button is cued up to the start point of the material. When more than one device is selected, the amber flashing continues until the reference device is cued up, and when the cueing up is finished, this button lights green.
REW	When pressed, this button lights amber, and material of the device selected with the device selection buttons is rewind.

Name	Description
PLAY	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When pressed, this button lights amber, and the device selected with the device selection buttons plays. The playback stops not only if the [STOP] button is pressed, but also if any of the [STB OFF], [SHTL], [JOG], [CUE], [REW], [PLAY], [FF], and [ALL STOP] buttons is pressed. When the [VAR] button is pressed while the device is playing back, the device plays at one times normal speed in variable mode.
FF	When pressed, this button lights amber, and the material of the device selected with the device selection buttons is fast forwarded.
ALL STOP	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When pressed, all device material playback stops. During cueing up of any of the devices, this button flashes amber, and when all cueing up operations are completed, it lights green.
REC	When pressed simultaneously with the [PLAY] button, this button lights red (the [PLAY] button lights amber), and the image from the selected device is recorded.

6 External device operation buttons

Pressing the following buttons selects the search dial mode.



Name	Description
ENBL (enable)	When this is pressed, turning it on, the search dial [VAR], [JOG], and [SHTL] button operations are enabled.
VAR (variable)	Sets the search dial to variable mode.
JOG	Sets the search dial to jog mode.
SHTL (shuttle)	Sets the search dial to shuttle mode.

7 TIMELINE button

Press to switch the device selected with the device selection buttons to timeline setting mode.

8 STOP button

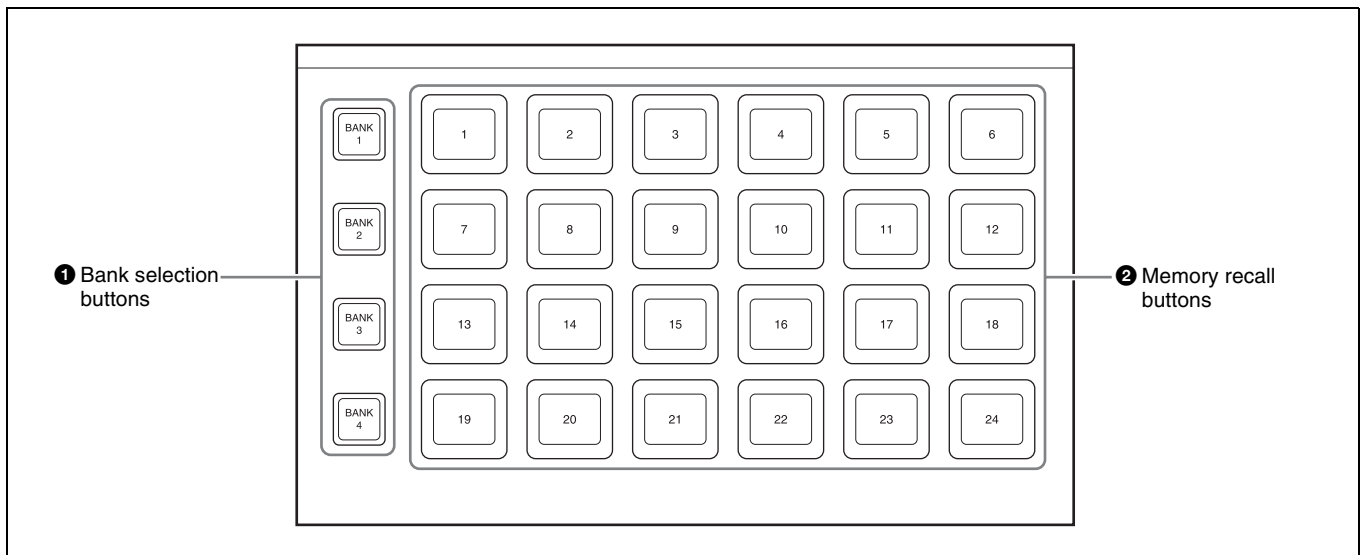
When pressed, this lights amber, and operation of the device selected with the device selection buttons stops.

9 Search dial

Use this for search and other operations on the material of an external device.

For details, see “Controlling Tape/Disk Transport” in Chapter 12 (Volume 2).

Utility/Shotbox Control Block (MKS-8033 Utility/Shotbox Module, Option)



1 Bank selection buttons

Press any of the [BANK1] to [BANK4] buttons to select a bank of 24 memory recall buttons. The selected button lights amber.

2 Memory recall buttons

You can use these buttons to recall frequently used menus, utility functions, shotbox registers, or macro registers that you have assigned.

When a utility function is allocated to a button, the button lights orange (or green depending on the status), and the allocated function name appears.

Pressing the button executes the allocated function. When the function constitutes a switching on/off operation, the button lights green; otherwise, it only momentarily lights green.

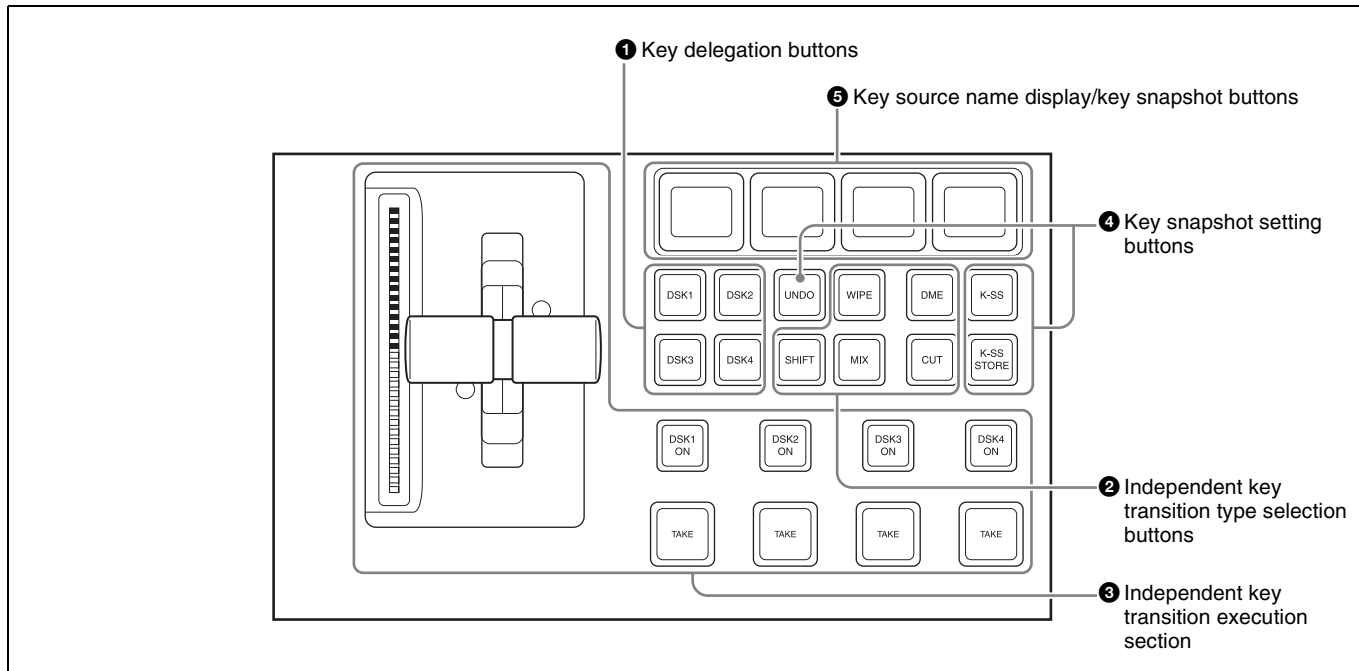
When a shotbox register or macro register recall is assigned to a button, the button lights orange, and the assigned register name appears. (If the register is empty, the button goes off.) In the case of a shotbox function, pressing the button executes the assigned shotbox

function, and the button lights yellow. In the case of a macro register, pressing the button executes the assigned macro, and the button flashes yellow.

You can also assign enabling and disabling of macro attachment to use as the MCRO ATTCH ENBL button. You can make a setup setting such that when MCRO ATTCH ENBL is On, the buttons for which a macro attachment is set light.

For details, see “Assigning a Function to a Memory Recall Button in the Utility/Shotbox Control Block” in Chapter 19 (Volume 2).

Downstream Key Control Block (MKS-8032 DSK Fader Module, Option)



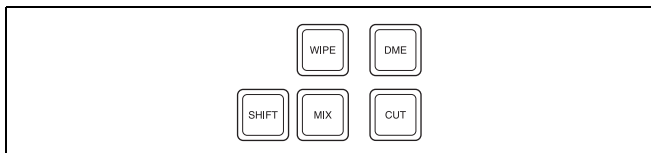
1 Key delegation buttons

Press one of the [DSK1] to [DSK4] buttons to delegate this control block to the corresponding keyer.

When the MKS-9012 2M/E Control Panel is used, using the Setup menu, it is possible to assign these to DSK5 to DSK8 or M/E keys 1 to 8.

2 Independent key transition type selection buttons

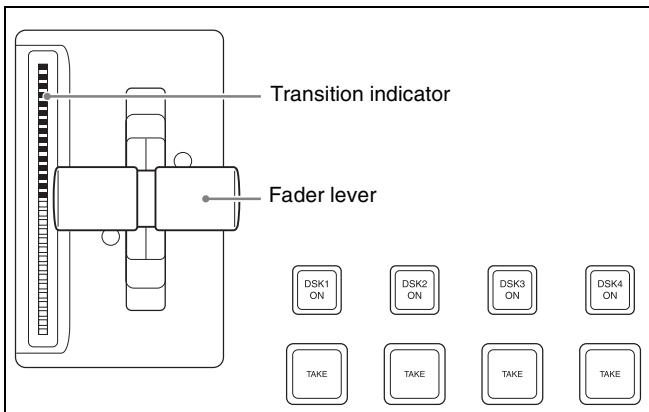
Press one of these buttons, turning it on, to select the downstream key transition type.



Name	Description
MIX	Carry out a dissolve with the key selected with the key delegation buttons.
WIPE	Carry out a wipe with the key selected with the key delegation buttons.
DME	This switches the key selected with the key delegation buttons, using a DME wipe.
CUT	Instantaneously insert or delete the key selected with the key delegation buttons.
SHIFT	When setting is made in the Setup menu to allow a different transition type for inserting or deleting a key, it is possible to display and set the transition after the next transition while this button is held down.

3 Independent key transition execution section

This section is used to carry out an independent key transition, and check the progress of the transition.



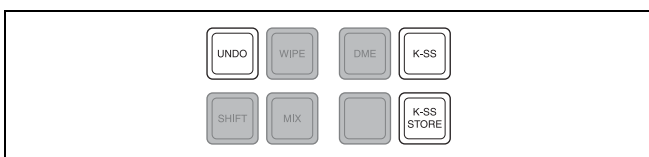
5 Key source name display/key snapshot buttons

These display the selected source name for each corresponding keyer. In snapshot mode, they correspond to registers 1 to 4 of the selected keyer, and pressing the button saves or recalls a key snapshot.

Name	Description
DSK1 (downstream key 1) ON to DSK4 ON buttons	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Press these to instantaneously cut the downstream keys 1, 2, 3, and 4 in or, when the downstream keys are already inserted, cut them out. When the key corresponding to the button appears in the final program output, the button lights red, and otherwise lights amber.
TAKE buttons	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> These correspond to downstream keys 1, 2, 3, and 4 from left to right; press to execute an auto transition. The transition starts immediately, and the button lights amber. When the transition completes, the button goes off.
Fader lever	Move this vertically to carry out a manual downstream key transition.
Transition indicator	This comprises multiple LEDs, which show the progress of the downstream key transition.

4 Key snapshot setting buttons

Pressing the following buttons carries out key snapshot operations.



Name	Description
K-SS (key snapshot)	This enables key snapshot mode.
K-SS STORE (key snapshot store)	To save a key snapshot, hold down this button, and press the key source name display/key snapshot button for the register you want to save.
UNDO (key snapshot recall undo)	This undoes the last key snapshot recall.

Basic Menu Operations

Overview

In the MVS system, all detailed settings for basic operations such as transitions, keys, wipes, and DME are made in menus.

About the Top Menu List

When the control panel is powered on, the top menu list appears as shown below.



You can also display this by selecting VF1 'Top Menu List' after pressing the [HOME] button at the upper left in the top menu selection button area of the menu control block.

To display the top menu from the top menu list

In the same way as for the top menu selection buttons in the menu control block, press each button to display the particular top menu in the menu display.

Notes

- The arrangement of buttons in the top menu list and the default arrangement of the top menu selection buttons may be different.
- Changing the top menu selection button assignment in setup has no effect on the top menu list.

To shut down the menus

Press the [Shutdown] button at the lower right. This operation is the same as the shut down operation in the top menu window (*see page 48*).

Accessing Menus

You can use any of the following methods to access a menu, and the initially displayed menu page depends on the method used.

Pressing a top menu selection button in the menu control block

This displays the page you last accessed in the particular menu. After initially powering on the system, however, the page of VF1 - HF1 of the particular menu is always selected.

For details of the menus which can be recalled, see "Menus accessed from a top menu selection button" (page 45).

For details of the VF buttons and HF buttons, see "Interpreting the Menu Screen" (page 46).

Pressing a button other than a top menu button twice in rapid succession

Depending on the button, this may display a fixed page or the page selected last time you accessed the menu.

For details of the menus which can be recalled, see "Menus accessed by pressing a button twice" (page 340).

Press the menu page selection button at the top left of the menu display

The top menu window appears; press the top menu selection button for the particular menu, or enter the menu number with the numeric keypad, and press the Enter button.

Menus accessed from a top menu selection button

Buttons	Menus	Function	See
HOME	Home	Recalling menus using the top menu list or shortcut menu	Top menu list: <i>page 44</i> Shortcut menu: <i>page 53</i>
M/E 1	M/E-1	Transition, keys, and wipe settings for the M/E-1 bank	<i>page 67</i> (transitions), <i>page 83</i> (keys), <i>page 117</i> (wipes)
P/P	PGM/PST	Transition, downstream key, and wipe settings for the PGM/PST bank	
FRAME MEM	Frame Memory	Frame memory settings	<i>page 151</i>
COLOR BKGD	Color Bkgd	Color background settings	<i>page 175</i>
AUX	Aux	AUX bus settings	<i>page 182</i>
CCR	CCR	Color corrector settings	<i>page 186</i>
COPY SWAP	Copy/Swap	Copy and swap settings	<i>page 177</i>
MISC	Misc	Settings for side flag, safe title, transition settings, and connection to external devices	<i>page 180</i>
STATS	Status	Status display	<i>page 182</i>
DME	DME	DME special effect settings	<i>page 232</i>
GLB EFF	Global Effect	Global effect settings	<i>page 293</i>
RTR	Router	Router settings	<i>page 183</i>
DEV	Device	Settings for external device operation	Chapter 12 (Volume 2)
MCRO	Macro	Macro register and macro timeline settings	Chapter 16 (Volume 2)
KEY FRAME	Key Frame	Keyframe settings	Chapter 13 (Volume 2)
EFF	Effect	Keyframe effect register settings	Chapter 13 (Volume 2)
SNAP SHOT	Snapshot	Snapshot register settings	Chapter 14 (Volume 2)
SHOTBOX	Shotbox	Shotbox register settings	Chapter 15 (Volume 2)
FILE	File	File settings	Chapter 17 (Volume 2)
USER SETUP	User setup	User setup settings	Chapter 24 (Volume 2)
ENG SETUP	Engineering Setup	Setup functions	Chapter 18 to Chapter 23 (Volume 2)
DIAG	Diagnosis	Status information display	Chapter 25 (Volume 2)

Example of Displaying a Menu

To display, for example, the M/E-1 >Key1 >Type menu, use either of the following operations.

- Press the top menu selection button [M/E 1], then press the VF1 ‘Key1’ button and the HF1 ‘Type’ button in that order.
- Press the menu page number button in the upper left corner of the menu screen to display the top menu window, then enter the page number of the M/E-1 >Key1 >Type menu, which is 1111, and press the [Enter] button.

For details of the menu page numbers, see “Menu Tree” (page 316).

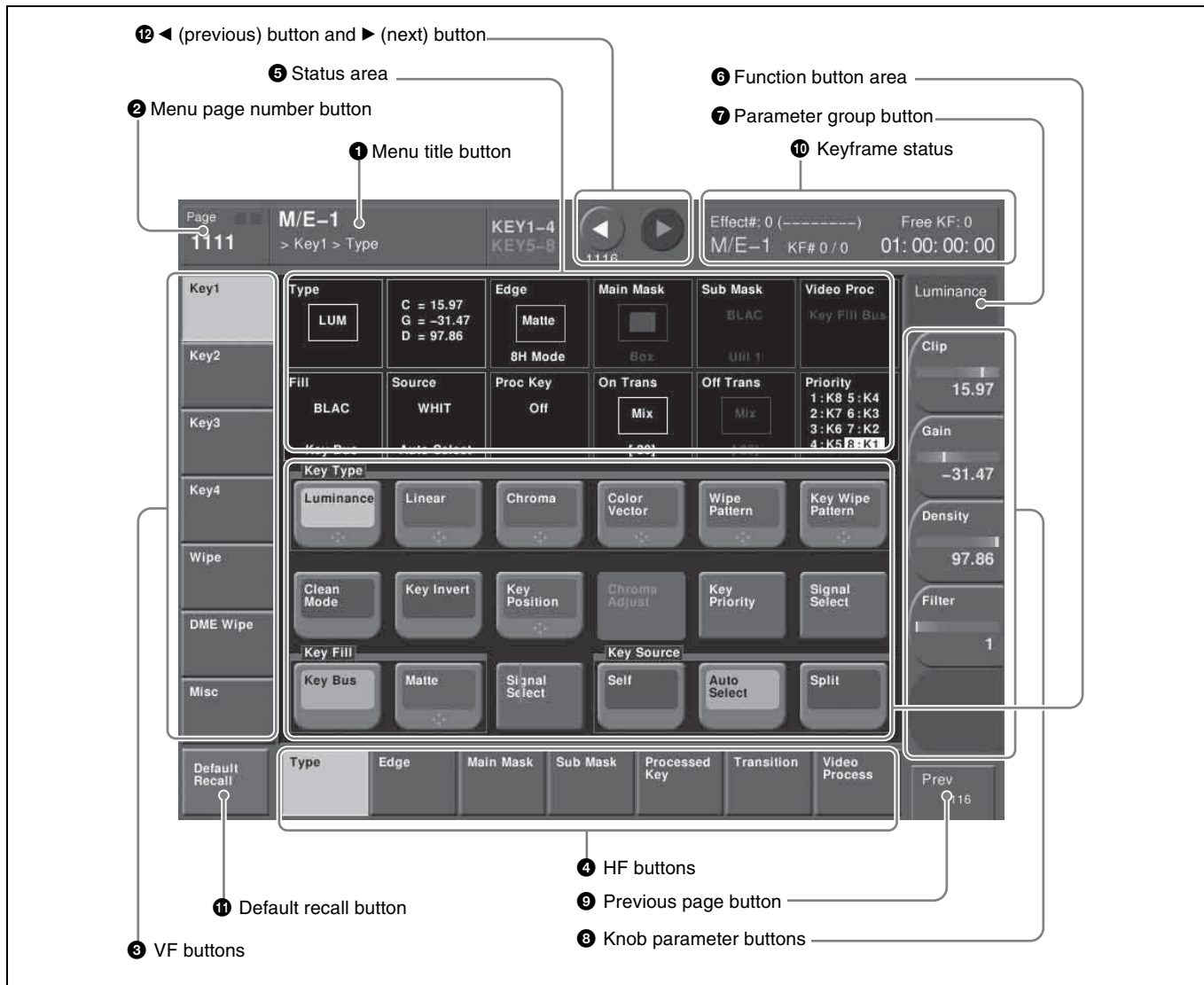
The M/E-1 >Key1 >Type menu appears in the menu display as follows.



Interpreting the Menu Screen

The menu screen consists of the following principal parts. When buttons on the screen are lit or represented in a depressed state, this indicates that the corresponding item or function is selected (set on).

The following describes the M/E-1 >Key1 >Type menu screen as an example.



M/E-1 >Key1 >Type menu

1 Menu title button

This shows the title of the menu screen. You can set different colors for the main menu site and subsidiary menu site (*see page 52*).

Switching the VF buttons between the Key1 to Key4 and Key5 to Key8 button displays

Switch the displays with the [KEY1-4] and [KEY5-8] menu title buttons.

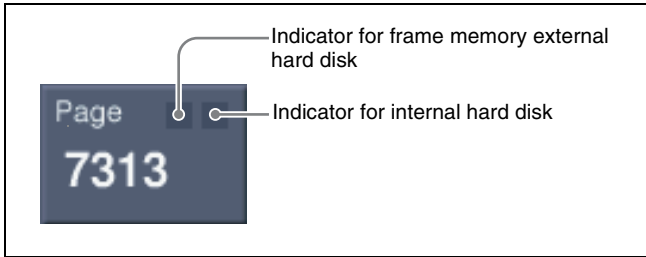


When [KEY1-4] is lit, Key1 to Key4 buttons appear in VF1 to VF4.

When [KEY5-8] is lit, Key5 to Key8 buttons appear in VF1 to VF4.

2 Menu page number button

This shows the menu screen page number. When you press this button, the top menu window (*see page 48*) appears. You can enter the page number for the desired menu, or press one of the top menu selection buttons in the window, to display that menu. While the system is accessing the hard disk, the indicator lights red.



Notes

When the indicator is lit, do not power off the switcher, or disconnect the USB cable ¹⁾.

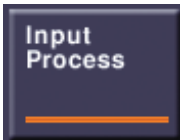
1) When an external hard disk drive is connected

3 VF buttons

These indicate the larger subdivisions of this menu. Depending on the selected item, the menu screen contents including the HF button indications change.

4 HF buttons

These indicate the items within the menu. Depending on the selected item, the menu indications change. Depending on the function, if any one is on, the status is shown by an orange bar, as in the following figure.



5 Status area

This shows the status of the settings items controlled by the selected menu. An orange frame appears around the parameter area relating to the displayed menu. For each of the twelve areas, pressing the display jumps to the related menu.

6 Function button area

This shows the functions which can be operated in the currently selected menu by means of buttons. Each function button corresponds to a function which can be set in the currently selected menu. Press it to enable the function, to display a parameter group and adjust the parameters with the knobs, or to execute the function. These buttons are in groups by function. In the screen example shown on the previous page, the [Key Bus] and [Matte] function buttons constitute the <Key Fill> group.

7 Parameter group button

This displays parameter group names for which the knobs can make adjustments, the current parameter setting page number, and the total number of the parameter setting pages. (Example: Color Vector 1/2)
When there are more than five parameters within the same parameter group, press this button to display the sixth and

subsequent parameters, which can then be controlled by the knobs.

8 Knob parameter buttons

These show the parameters currently controlled by the knobs and their values. Pressing one of these buttons displays the numeric keypad window (see page 49), and you can then enter a new value for the corresponding parameter with the numeric keypad.

9 Previous page button

This shows the page number of the previously displayed menu screen. Press it to go back to that page. When the indication [Parent] appears, this displays the parent directory.

10 Keyframe status

This shows the keyframe status of the reference region. Pressing this button switches the menu screen as follows.

When a menu other than the Key Frame menu is currently shown: The menu screen switches to the Key Frame menu.

When the Key Frame menu is currently shown: The menu screen switches to the menu that was on the screen immediately before the Key Frame menu. In some parts of menus such as the File menu, this functions as a “Region selection area,” for selecting the region to which operations apply.

11 Default recall button

This only appears in those menus for which the default recall function is available.

For details of the menus which can be initialized, see “Menus allowing a return to default settings” (page 343) in Appendix.

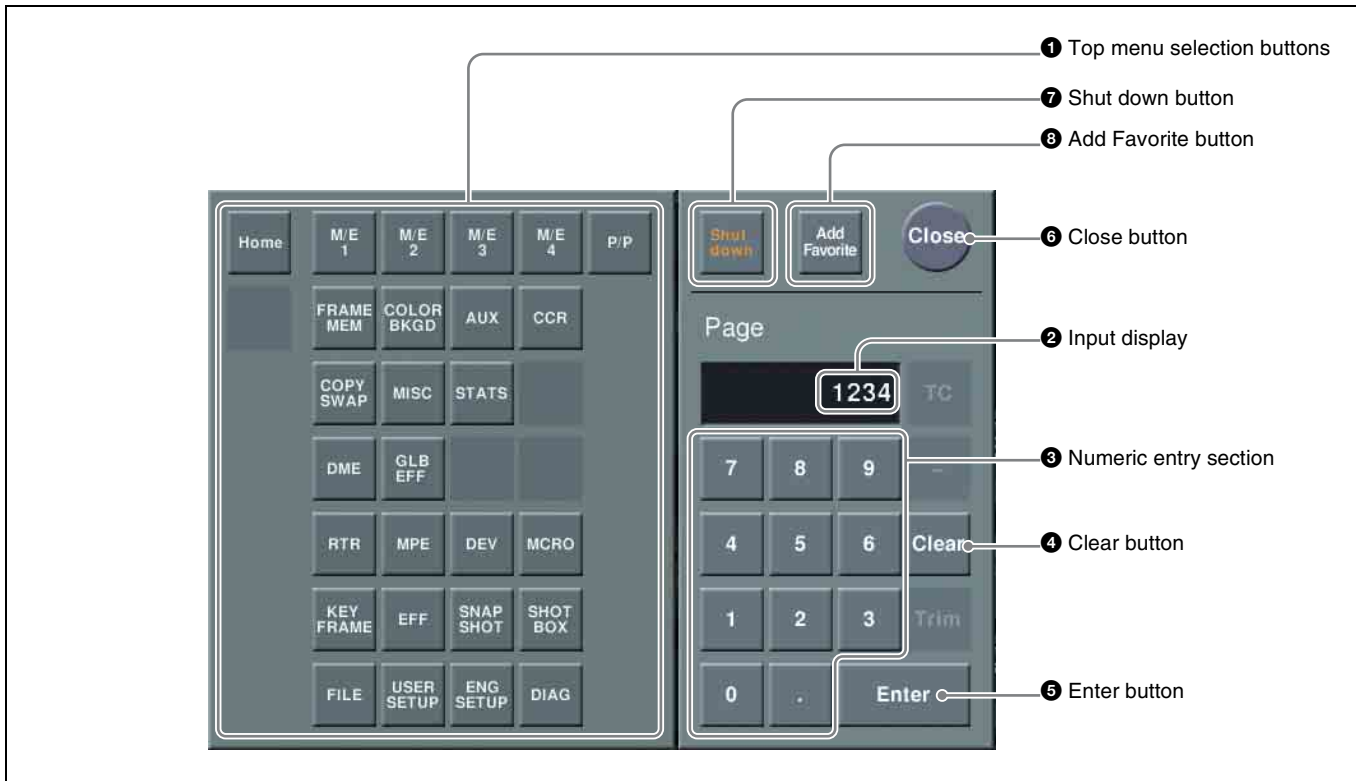
Press this button, turning it on, then press a VF button or knob parameter button to return the settings to their default values, in the following groupings.

- Function grouping: the functions within an HF menu under the VF button
- Knob parameters (parameters currently controlled by the knobs)

12 ◀ (previous) button and ▶ (next) button

The ◀ button returns to the previous menu. Press the ▶ button to continue to the next menu.

Names and Functions of Parts of the Top Menu Window



1 Top menu selection buttons

These are the same as the top menu selection buttons in the menu control block. Pressing one of these buttons closes the top menu window and displays the selected menu in the menu display.

2 Input display

This shows the page number entered with the numeric entry section.

3 Numeric entry section

Enter a page number.

4 Clear button

Press this to clear the input display.

5 Enter button

Pressing this button without entering a page number closes the top menu window with the current menu remaining in the menu display.

If you enter a page number then press this button, this confirms the value in the input display. If it is a correct page number, the top menu window closes, and the menu display shows the new menu. If it is not correctly set, the input display changes color.

6 Close button

Press this to close the top menu window.

7 Shut down button

Shuts down the menus.

Notes

Be sure to shut down the menus before powering off the control panel.

Shutting down the menus

1 In the menu screen, press the menu page number button to open the top menu window.

2 Press [Shut down].

A confirmation message appears.

3 Press [Yes].

This shuts down the menu system after a while, and the menu display changes to black. Now power off the system.

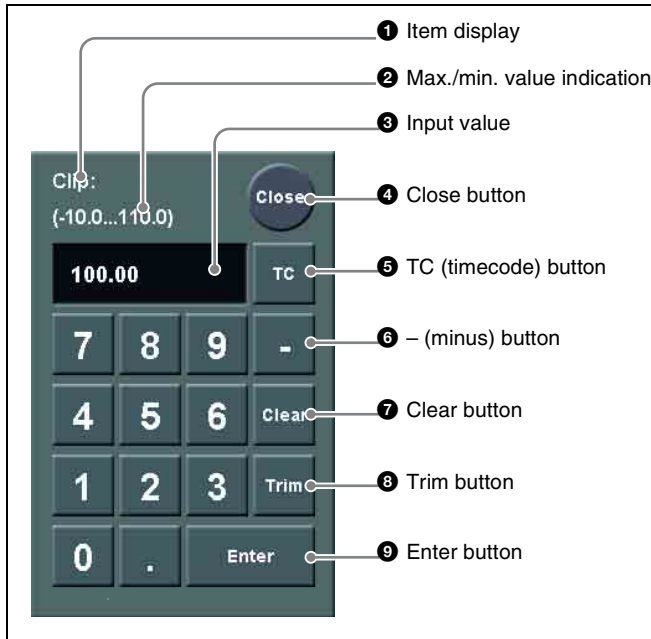
To restart menu operations

Power on the control panel once more.

4 Add Favorite button

Pressing this button allows the currently displayed menu to be registered to the Shortcut menu (*see page 53*).

Names and Functions of Parts of the Numeric Keypad Window



1 Item display

This is the name of the parameter being set in the numeric keypad window.

2 Max./min. (maximum/minimum) value indication

This shows the maximum and minimum settings of the parameter.

3 Input value

This is the value being input into the numeric keypad window.

4 Close button

This closes the numeric keypad window.

5 TC (timecode) button

When the numeric keypad window is opened for a setting requiring a timecode value to be entered, this button appears in a depressed state.

You can enter a timecode value in the range that depends on the signal format.

00:00:00:00 to 23:59:59:nn,

where nn = (number of frames per second) – 1.

6 - (minus) button

This toggles the sign of the entered value. When it is pressed, the value is negative.

7 Clear button

This clears the input. It does not change the parameter setting.

8 Trim button

After entering the difference from the current value, press this button to confirm the numeric input.

9 Enter button

This confirms the entered value.

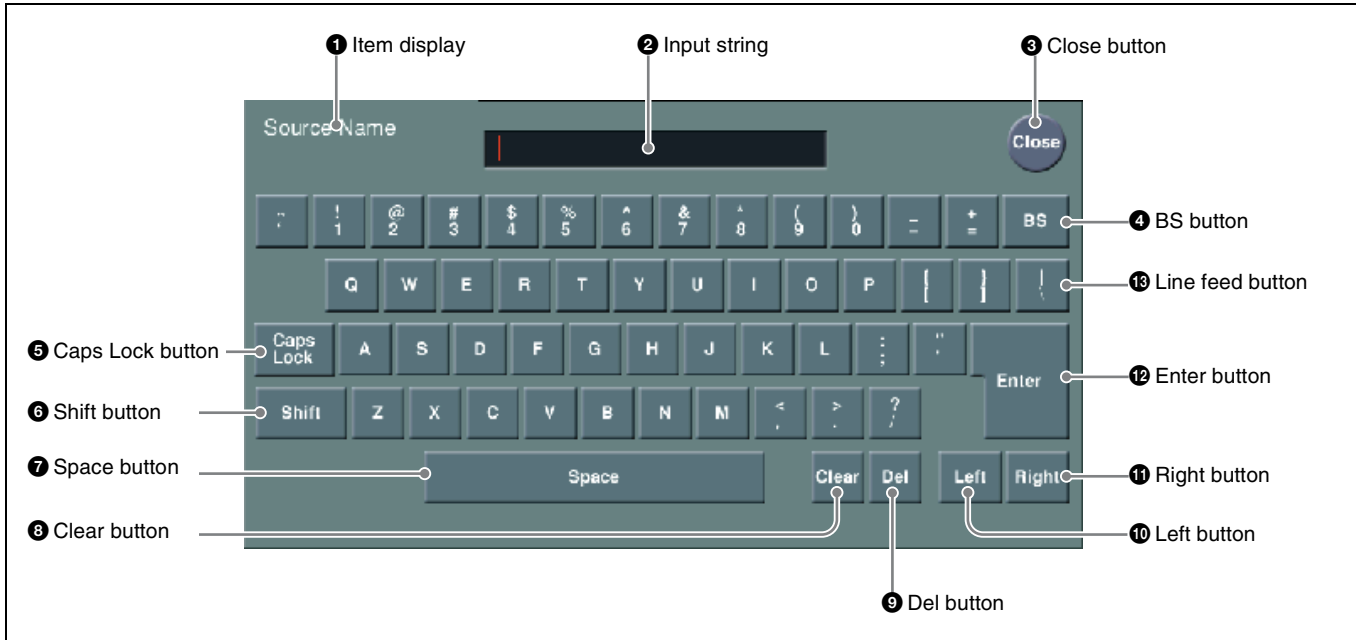
If correctly set, the numeric keypad window closes. If not correctly set, the input display changes color.

Names and Functions of Parts of the Keyboard Window

Notes

Except when changing source names, the following characters cannot be used.

space, \, /, :, ;, , (comma), . (dot), <, >, *, ?, ", |

**1 Item display**

This is the name of the parameter being set in the keyboard window.

2 Input string

This is the character string being input in the keyboard window.

3 Close button

This closes the keyboard window.

4 BS button

This clears the character immediately before the cursor in the input string.

5 Caps Lock button

This enables input of capital letters only.

Notes

You can enter items to be displayed on the control panel LCD using lowercase letters, but these will be converted to capitals for display.

MS-DOS does not distinguish case in filenames, and therefore you are recommended to enter filenames in capital letters.

6 Shift button

This selects the characters on the shift side of the keys. The shift is released when you enter a character.

7 Space button

This enters a space character.

8 Clear button

This clears all of the characters in the input string.

9 Del button

This clears the character immediately after the cursor in the input string.

10 Left button

This moves the cursor one character to the left in the input string.

11 Right button

This moves the cursor one character to the right in the input string.

12 Enter button

This sets the input string as a parameter value, and closes the keyboard window if the value has been entered correctly. If the value has not been entered correctly, the display color changes.

13 Line feed button

After pressing the Shift button, press this button to feed a line. The input string shows “|”.

Names and Functions of Parts of the Color Palette Window

When a parameter is assigned to the knobs as a combination of luminance, saturation, and hue, pressing a

knob parameter button displays a color palette window.



❶ Color palette buttons

Press one of these to enter the corresponding color in the display.

By default the following settings are available.

First row: white, yellow, cyan, green

Second row: magenta, red, blue, black

Third row: all black

❷ Operation buttons

Set: If you press any color palette button with this button held down, the color shown in the color display is assigned to the color palette button.

Copy: If you press a color palette button with this button held down, the color is used as the source for copying. Next press a different color palette button to copy to that button.

Swap: If you press two color palette buttons in sequence with this button held down, the two colors are swapped.

Default: If you press any color palette button with this button held down, the color palette button is set to the default color.

❸ Color display

This shows the setting color, and the parameters (LUM, SAT, and HUE).

By adjusting the parameters with the knobs, you can create any color.

If a parameter value is outside the permitted range for RGB (0 to 255), the indication “Illegal Color” appears, and this is adjusted to a value in range.

Cancel: Pressing this button returns to the state when the color palette window was opened.

❹ Numeric keypad

Use this to enter numeric values for parameters.

For details of use, see page 49.

Menu Operations

Selecting an Item

1 Press the VF button (1 to 7) for the desired group of items.

The HF button (1 to 7) indications change to show the items within the selected group.

2 Press the HF button for the desired item.

The indications in the status area and function button area change, and you can now make various changes to the selected item.

Selecting a Function

Press the appropriate function button within the function button area.

Shape and color of the button

Pressing the button turns it on, and it lights, showing the state.



Lit pale blue: The function is enabled, and the parameters can currently be adjusted with the knobs.

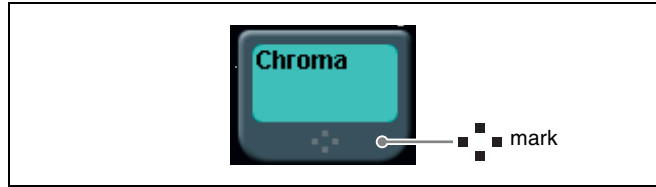
Lit orange: The function is enabled.

Lit purple: Execution button. Pressing the button immediately executes the function. (Example: [Auto Start] button in the Chroma Adjust menu)



Pressing a button of this type displays a further menu, allowing more detailed settings. (Example: [Chroma Adjust] button in the Type menu)

Setting Parameters



This marking on a function button indicates that there are parameters which can be adjusted with the knobs. Pressing this function button assigns parameters to the knobs.

You can set the parameter values by either of the following methods.

- Turn the knob (1 to 5) corresponding to the parameter, to adjust the value.
- Press the knob parameter buttons (1 to 5) corresponding to the parameter. This displays the numeric keypad window allowing you to enter the desired value.

In the description of specific setting procedures, the knob adjustment is described, as follows.

Example: When wipe pattern key is selected

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Size	Pattern size	0.00 to 100.00
2	Soft	Edge softness	0.00 to 100.00
3	Density	Key density	0.00 to 100.00

When the [MENU] button in the device control block is lit, you can use the trackball and Z-ring to control the parameters.

- Move the trackball on the x-axis to control the parameter for knob 1 or on the y-axis to control the parameter for knob 2. Moving up or to the right increases the parameter value, and moving down or to the left decreases the parameter value.
- Use the Z-ring to adjust the parameter for knob 3. Turning clockwise increases the parameter value, and turning counterclockwise decreases the parameter value.

Switching Between the Main Menu Site and Subsidiary Menu Site

For menu transitions, you can store two separate versions in the main and subsidiary menu sites.

By switching sites, and pressing the ◀ button and the ▶ button you can trace the history in each menu.

To switch the subsidiary menu site on and off

Assign [SUB MENU SITE] to a menu control block top menu selection button or user preference button.

To switch to the subsidiary menu site, press this button, turning it on.

For details, see “Assigning Functions to the Menu Control Block Top Menu and User Preference buttons” in Chapter 19 (Volume 2).

Going Back to the Previous Menu

To return to the last displayed menu, press the previous page button.

Returning to Default State in Function Groupings

- 1 Press the [Default Recall] button, turning it on.

This enters the menu default recall mode.

- 2 Press the VF button you want to return to the default state.

This returns the settings within the function grouping to the default state, and the [Default Recall] button goes off.

Notes

The default state of the settings depends on the setting of the initial status mode, set in the Setup menu of system setup, as follows.

User: The state when [Initial Status Define] is executed.

Factory: Factory default settings

Returning Knob Parameters to Default State

- 1 Press the [Default Recall] button, turning it on.

This enters the menu default recall mode.

- 2 Press the knob parameter button you want to return to the default state.

This returns the knob parameter value to the default state, and the [Default Recall] button goes off.

For details, see the table, “Knob parameters subject to restriction on default recall” on page 345.

Notes

The default recall function does not return the horizontal (H) and vertical (V) position settings to their default state individually. Returning the horizontal (H) position to its default state also returns the vertical (V) position to its default state automatically, and vice versa.

Shortcut Menu

Registering a Menu To the Shortcut Menu

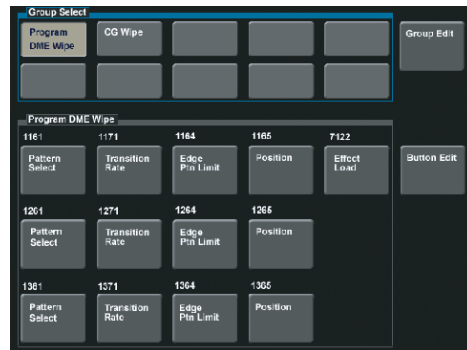
- 1 In the Home >Favorites >Shortcut menu, select the desired group.
- 2 Display the menu you want to register, and then press the [Add Favorite] button.

The currently displayed menu is automatically registered to a blank button.

Recalling a Menu Using the Shortcut Menu

- 1 In the Home menu, select VF2 ‘Favorites’ and HF1 ‘Shortcut.’

The following menu appears.



- 2 In the [Group Select] box, select the group. The group buttons appear.
- 3 Press the button for the desired menu.

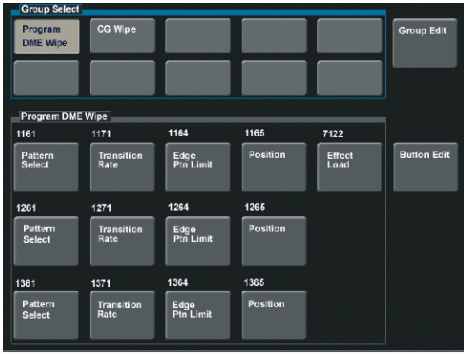
Customizing the Shortcut Menu

Assign frequently used menus to buttons, to create a “Favorites” menu.

To create a menu group

- 1 In the Home menu, select VF2 ‘Favorites’ and HF1 ‘Shortcut.’

The following menu appears.



2 Press [Group Edit].

The following menu appears.



3 With the cursor, select the group name (in this case a blank button) for the operation.

4 Press [Rename].

A keyboard window appears.

5 Enter a group name (maximum 24 characters), and press Enter.

This confirms the group name.

To copy a menu group

1 In the Home >Favorites >Group Edit menu, press the button for the copy source group.

2 Press [Copy].

3 Press the button for the copy destination group.

4 Press [Paste].

This copies the menu group settings.

To delete menu group settings

1 In the Home >Favorites >Group Edit menu, select the group to be deleted.

2 Press [Clear].

A confirmation message appears.

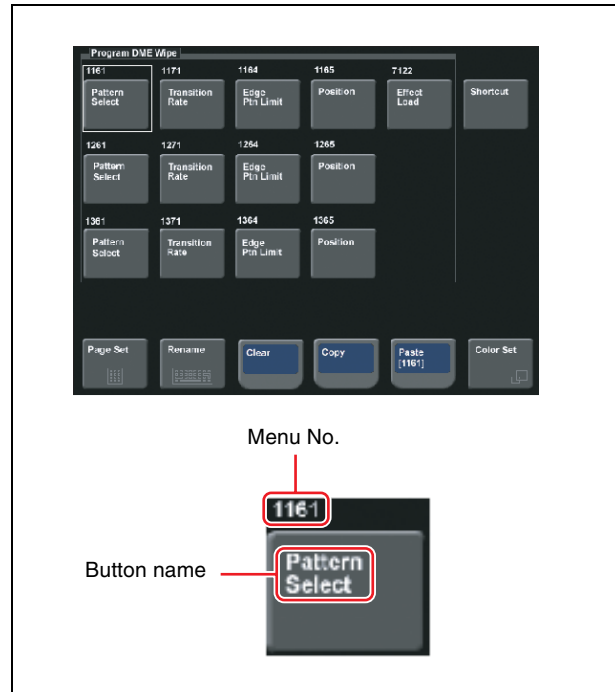
3 Press [Yes].

This deletes the settings.

To register a menu on a button

You can register 15 buttons in one group.

1 In the Home >Favorites >Shortcut menu, press [Button Edit].



2 Move the cursor to the position where you want to display the button. To change the content of an already displayed button, press the button to select it.

3 Press [Page Set].

A page number input window appears.

4 Enter the page number for the menu you want to register.

5 Press [Rename].

A keyboard window appears.

6 Enter the button name (maximum 24 characters).

7 To change the button color, press [Color Set].

Button color samples appear.

8 Press the desired color.

This completes the assignment of the menu to the button.

- 9 Repeat steps 2 to 8 to complete the “Favorites” menu.

To copy button settings

- 1 In the Home >Favorites >Button Edit menu, press the copy source button to select it.
- 2 Press [Copy].
- 3 Press the copy destination button to select it.
- 4 Press [Paste].

This copies the button settings.

To delete button settings

In the Home >Favorites >Button Edit menu, press [Clear]. This deletes the button settings.

Notes

The shortcut menu settings are handled as part of the control panel setup. You can recall and save them in the same way as setup data.

To register a menu macro on a button

See “Recalling a Menu Macro Register and Executing a Menu Macro” in Chapter 16 (Volume 2).

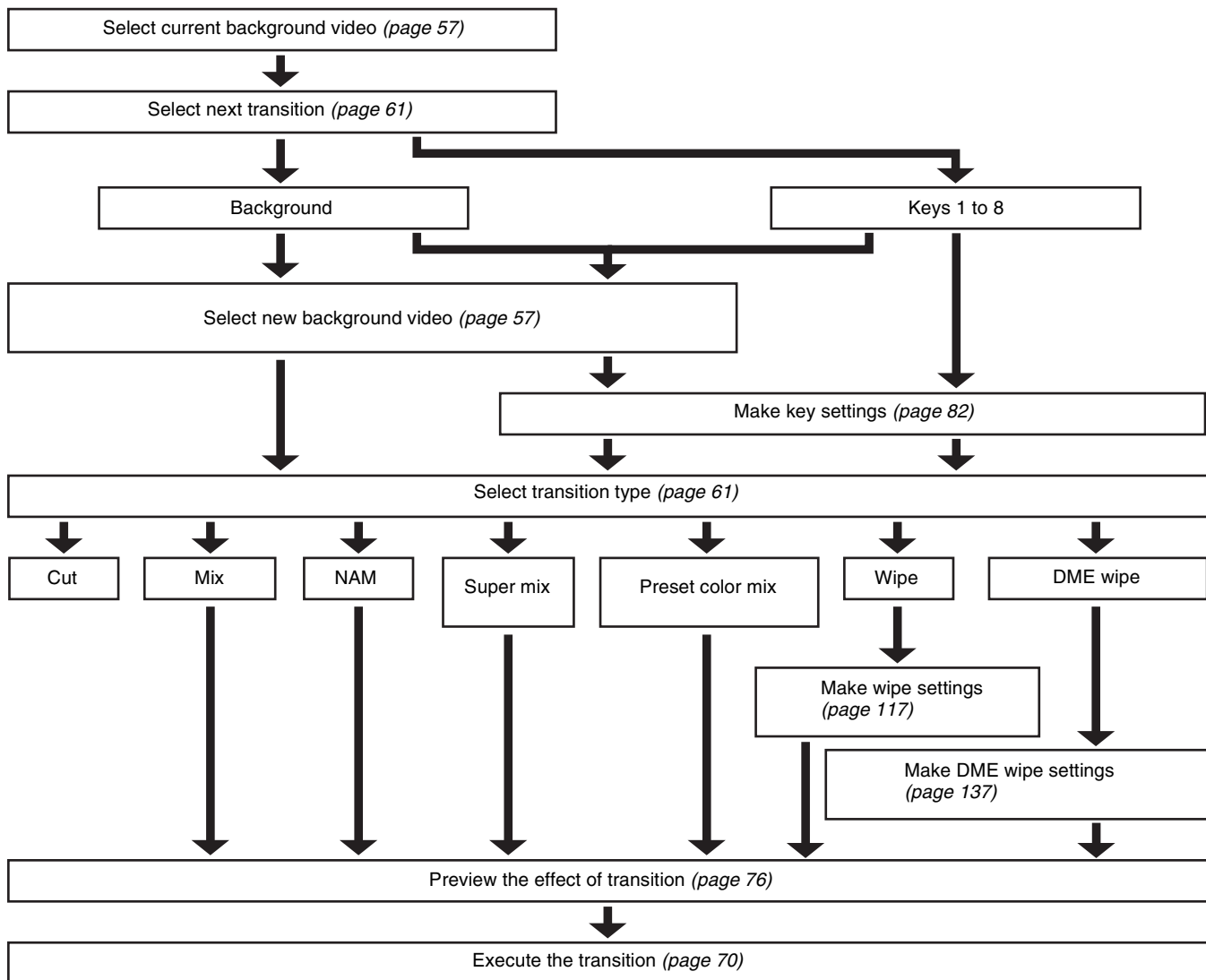
To execute a menu macro with a button

See “Recalling a Menu Macro Register and Executing a Menu Macro” in Chapter 16 (Volume 2).

Video Processing Flow

The switch from the current video stream (appearing on the corresponding program monitor) to a new video stream is referred to as a transition.

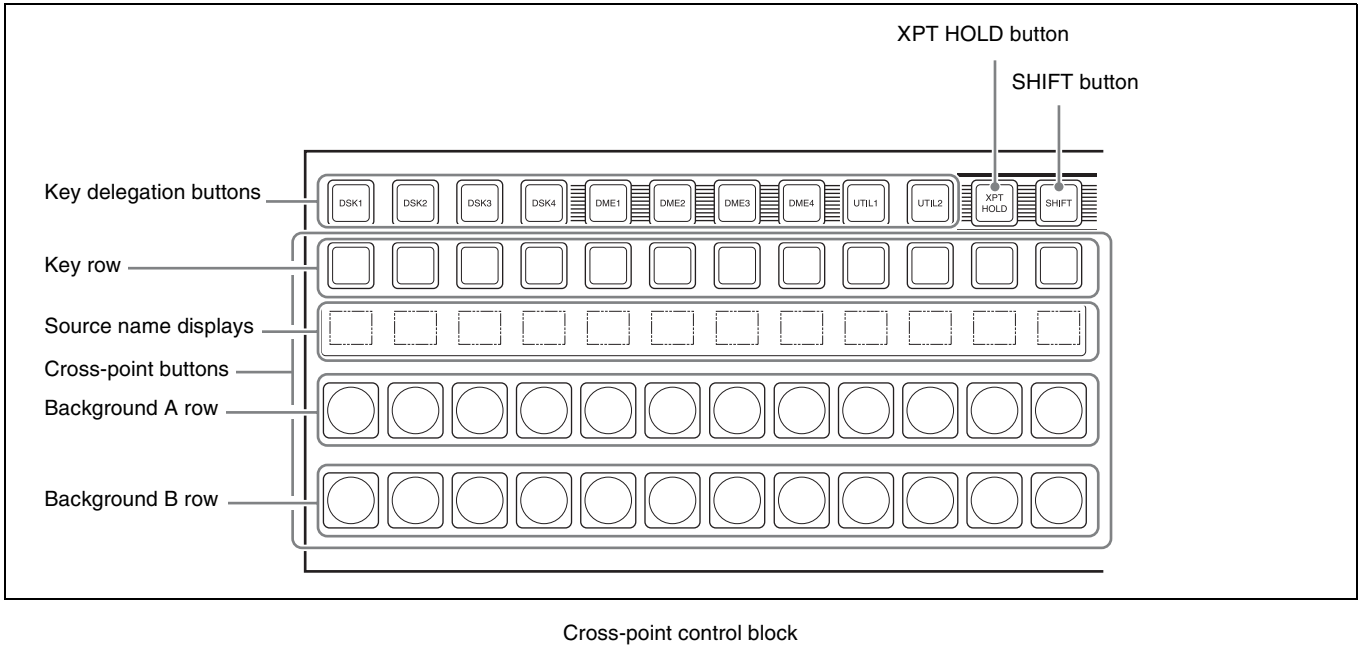
The following illustration shows the flow of operations for carrying out a transition on an M/E bank or the PGM/PST bank.



Signal Selection

You carry out signal selection with the cross-point buttons in the cross-point control block of the M/E bank or PGM/

PST bank, and the buttons in the auxiliary bus control block.



Basics of Signal Selection

Each of the M/E bank and auxiliary bus control block has cross-point buttons.

These buttons are identified by numbers common to all of the banks and block, and a signal is assigned to each number.

The basis of signal selection is to select, in a cross-point button row, the cross-point button to which is assigned the desired signal.

Bus Selection

The key row is shared by multiple buses. To assign a bus to the cross-point buttons in the auxiliary bus control block, press one of the AUX delegation buttons to select the bus.

The following table illustrates the correspondence between buses and cross-point button rows, and the delegation operations.

Bank	Bus name	Cross-point button row	Delegation operation
M/E-1	Background A bus	Background A row	–
	Background B bus	Background B row	–
	Key 1 bus	Key row	Turn on the button to which the corresponding key is assigned.
	Key 2 bus		
	Key 3 bus		
	Key 4 bus		
	Key 5 bus ^{a)}		
	Key 6 bus ^{a)}		
	Key 7 bus ^{a)}		
Key 8 bus ^{a)}			

Bank	Bus name	Cross-point button row	Delegation operation
PGM/PST	Program bus	Program row	–
	Preset bus	Preset row	–
	DSK 1 bus	DSK row	Turn on the button to which the corresponding key is assigned.
	DSK 2 bus		
	DSK 3 bus		
	DSK 4 bus		
	DSK 5 bus ^{a)}		
	DSK 6 bus ^{a)}		
	DSK 7 bus ^{a)}		
	DSK 8 bus ^{a)}		
M/E-1, PGM/PST	Utility 1 bus	Key row	Turn on the [UTIL1] button
	Utility 2 bus		Turn on the [UTIL2] button
	DME 1 video bus		Turn on the [DME1] button ^{b)}
	DME 2 video bus		Turn on the [DME2] button ^{b)}
	DME 3 video bus		Turn on the [DME3] button ^{b)}
	DME 4 video bus		Turn on the [DME4] button ^{b)}
Auxiliary bus control block ^{c)}	AUX1 to AUX48 buses	The key row of the bank selected with the bank selection buttons in the auxiliary bus control block	Turn on the appropriate buttons in accordance with the signal assignment made in the Setup menu.
	Frame memory source 1 and frame memory source 2 buses		
	DME 1 to DME 4 video buses		
	DME 1 to DME 4 key buses		
	Edit preview bus		
	M/E-1 UTILITY 1 and M/E-1 UTILITY 2 buses		
	P/P UTILITY 1 and P/P UTILITY 2 buses		
	M/E-1 Key 1 fill to M/E-1 Key 8 fill buses		
	M/E-1 Key 1 source to M/E-1 Key 8 source buses		
	DSK 1 fill to DSK 8 fill buses		
	DSK 1 source to DSK 8 source buses		
	M/E-1 external DME bus		
	P/P external DME bus		
	DME UTILITY 1 and DME UTILITY 2 buses		

a) An assignment is required for keys 5 to 8.

b) To turn on the [DME1] to [DME4] buttons requires one of the [KEY1] to [KEY8] and [DSK1] to [DSK8] buttons to be on.

c) An assignment to the delegation buttons is required in setup, to assign the bus for operations.

Signal Assignment and Selection

Assigning signals to buttons

Each cross-point button has a button number, to which you assign a signal.

In addition to the signals input to the following connectors, you can also select signals generated within the switcher.

- The PRIMARY INPUTS connectors on the rear panel of the switcher (1 to 144 in MVS-8000X, 1 to 80 in MVS-7000X)
- The PREMIUM INPUTS 1 to 20 connectors (only in MVS-8000X)
- The FC INPUTS 1 to 16 connectors (only in MVS-8000X)

Each button has assigned to it a video signal and a key signal, forming a pair. You can set these video and key combinations in a Setup menu.

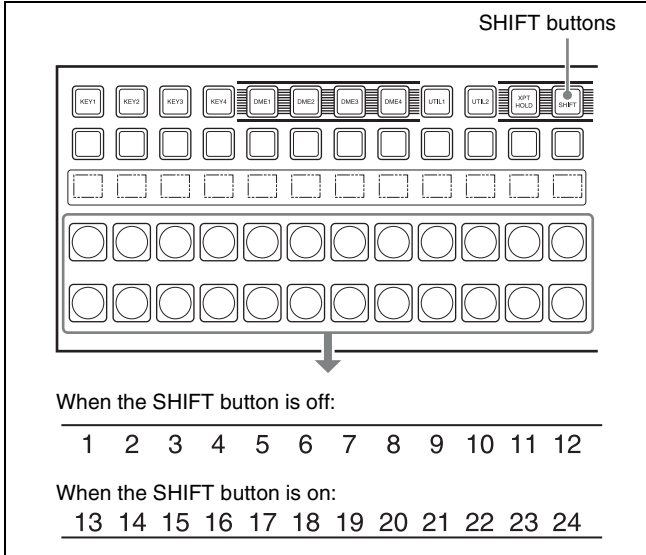
For details of Setup menu operations, see “Creating Cross-Point Assign Tables” in Chapter 19 (Volume 2).

Cross-point button control block button numbers

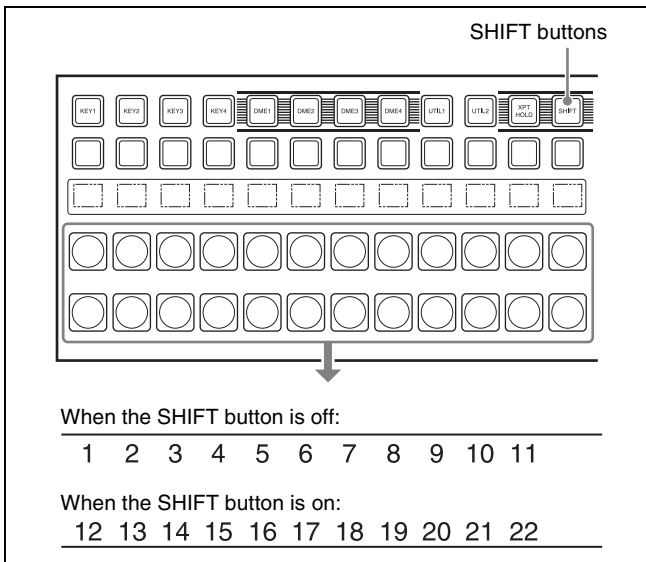
On the M/E and PGM/PST banks, each cross-point button has two button numbers, and you use the [SHIFT] button to switch between these numbers.

The button numbers are as follows.

Button numbers when all 12 buttons are used as cross-point buttons



Button numbers when the rightmost buttons (12th buttons) are used as SHIFT buttons



Notes

You can use the rightmost button (number 12) as a [SIDE FLAG] button. In this case, the shift button moves one to

the left, to number 11, and the button numbers are offset by one.

For details of the [SIDE FLAG] button, see “Assigning a Cross-Point Button to Enable/Disable Side Flags” in Chapter 19 (Volume 2).

Inhibiting cross-point button operations

For each cross-point button, you can temporarily inhibit operations.

Notes

This setting is cleared when you reset the control panel.

Assigning a button to the function of disabling cross-point button operation

You can assign the button to be used for the operation to a user preference button, in setup. The [Inhibit All Clear] function is also assigned to this button.

For details, see “Assigning Functions to User Preference Buttons” in Chapter 19 (Volume 2).

Buses for which operations can be inhibited

This setting applies to the auxiliary bus control block and the cross-point buttons in each switcher bank.

For example, if you make the setting for one cross-point button in a switcher bank, this inhibits operation of all cross-point buttons with the same number in the following buses.

The corresponding name also disappears from the source name display.

- Background A, background B
- Keys 1 to 8
- Utility 1, Utility 2
- DME utility 1, DME utility 2
- External DME

To inhibit operation of a cross-point button

Hold down the button which “Inhibit Set” is assigned, and press the cross-point button whose operation you want to inhibit.

The button you pressed flashes amber, and this makes the operation inhibited.

Notes

Even when you inhibit operation of a cross-point button, macro attachment settings are still possible.

For details, see “Setting and Canceling a Macro Attachment” in Chapter 16 (Volume 2).

To clear a cross-point button operation inhibit setting

Hold down the button to which “Inhibit Set” is assigned, and press the button whose operation is inhibited (flashing amber).

This clears the operation inhibit setting for the button you pressed.

To clear all operation inhibit settings

Press the button to which “Inhibit Set” is assigned and the button to which “Inhibit All Clear” is assigned simultaneously.

Selection of signals linked with the audio mixer

When you select a signal in a switcher bank background A row or AUX bus control block which is set to be linked with the audio mixer, the program output of the audio mixer follows the signal selection.

For details of the setting, see “Making Settings for Audio Mixer” in Chapter 19 (Volume 2).

Notes

- For details of audio mixers that can be connected, contact your Sony service or sales representative.
- When the signal is switched with a snapshot, keyframe, and so on, the audio mixer is not linked.
- When bus fixed mode is selected in setup (*see page 75*), the audio mixer program output is linked to the bus output as the background.

Signal Name Display

You can attach a name (source name) to each signal assigned to a cross-point button, with a maximum of 16 characters.

- The source name displays in the cross-point control block and auxiliary bus control block show the source names of the video signals assigned to numbers 1 to 12 (or 11).
- To display the source names for shifted numbers (13 to 24 or 12 to 22), press the [SHIFT] button to the right of the key row delegation buttons.
- To display the source names of the key signals assigned to button numbers, hold down one of the key delegation buttons [KEY1] to [KEY8] or [DSK1] to [DSK8] buttons or, for the auxiliary bus control block, hold down the [KEY] button.

Colors of lit cross-point buttons

In a particular row of cross-point buttons, only the last pressed button is effective, and lights amber or red. The amber indicates the “low tally” state, and the red indicates

the “high tally” state, to indicate whether or not the selected signal appears in the final output video.

Significance of colors of lit cross-point buttons

Color	State	Significance
Amber	Low tally	Does not appear in final output video
Red	High tally	Appears in final output video

Transitions

Selecting the Next Transition

To execute a transition, it is first necessary to decide how the image will be changed as a result of the transition. This selection is carried out using the next transition selection buttons (see page 23) in the transition control block of each M/E or PGM/PST bank.

For details of operations, see “Procedure for Basic Transition Operation” (page 62).

Transition Types

Selecting the transition type determines the way in which the transition occurs.

Carry out the type selection with the transition type selection buttons in the transition control block of each M/E or PGM/PST bank.

For details of this operation, see “Procedure for Basic Transition Operation” (page 62).

The following are the transition types.

Mix

This is a dissolve, in which the new video progressively fades in over the current video, with the sum of the two video outputs maintained constant. At the mid-point of the transition (when the fader lever is in the center position), the output of each is 50%.

This transition type can also be selected for an independent key transition. In this case, the key either dissolves in or dissolves out similarly, with the progress of the transition.

NAM (non-additive mix)

In this dissolve, the current video and new video signals are compared, and the signal with the higher luminance level is given priority in the output. The current video is maintained at 100% output for the first half of the transition as the new video increases progressively to 100%, then the current video is progressively reduced from 100% to zero in the second half with the new video maintained at 100% output.

Notes

This transition type is not available for an independent key transition.

Super mix

In this dissolve, the current video is maintained at 100% output for the first half of the transition as the new video is mixed while increasing progressively to 100%, then the current video is progressively reduced from 100% to zero in the second half with the new video maintained at 100% output.

Notes

This transition type is not available for an independent key transition.

For details on super mix settings, see page 68.

Preset color mix

This is a two-stage dissolve, comprising two transitions, the first a dissolve to a color matte, and the second from the color matte to the new video.

In the first transition, the current video is replaced by the color matte in a mix (dissolve), then in the second transition the color matte is replaced by the new video also in a mix (dissolve).

Notes

This transition type is not available for an independent key transition.

For details on color matte settings, see page 68.

Wipe

A wipe replaces the current video by the new video according to a predetermined pattern. This transition type can also be selected for an independent key transition.

For details, see Chapter 5 “Wipes” (page 117).

DME wipe

Using a DME effect, it is possible to obtain a transition to a new image from the current image, as in a wipe. You can also use this transition type as an independent key transition.

For details, see Chapter 6 “DME Wipes” (page 133).

Clip transitions

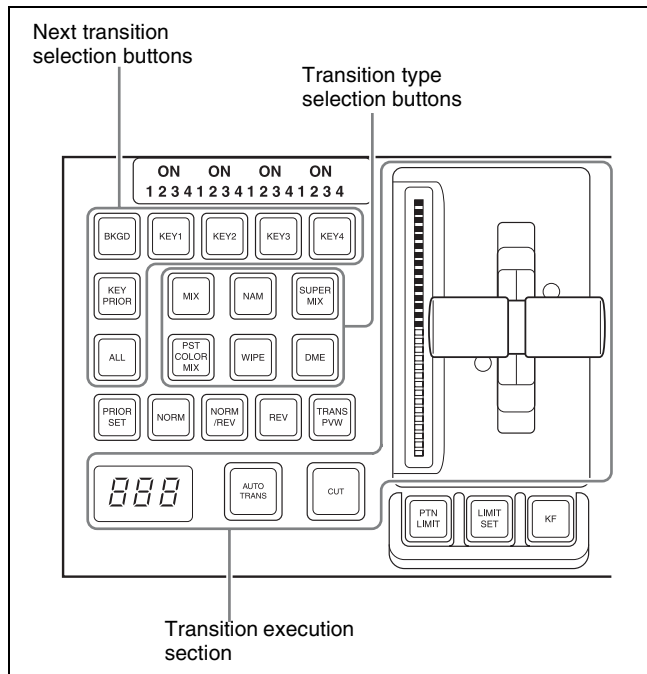
Linked to a mix (dissolve) or wipe transition, a frame memory clip (movie) is played back.

Cut

A cut switches instantaneously from the current video to the new video. When the next transition is a key transition, the key cuts in or out instantaneously.

Procedure for Basic Transition Operation

The positions of the principal buttons used for basic transition operation are as follows.



Transition control block

- 1 In the cross-point control block, select the background video with the background A row of cross-point buttons.
- 2 Select the way in which the transition will affect the image, using the next transition selection buttons in the transition control block.

For an overview, see “Selecting the Next Transition” (page 61).

To change the background: Press the [BKGD] button, turning it on.

To insert or delete a key: Press one of the [KEY 1] to [KEY 4] buttons (or [DSK 1] to [DSK 4] buttons in the PGM/PST bank), turning it on.

For details of the operation to select [Key 5] to [Key 8], see “Assigning Buttons for Selection of Keys 5 to 8 in the Setup Menu” (page 338) in Appendix.

To enable the key priority setting, which determines the key overlay order after the transition: Press the [KEY PRIOR] button, turning it on.

You can press more than one button at the same time.

To change the keys and background presets in Setup menus simultaneously: Press the [ALL] button.

To allocate a particular next transition button to the [ALL] button function, see “Setting the Operation Mode of the [ALL] Button in the Transition Control Block” in Chapter 19 (Volume 2).

- 3** For the transition to change the key priority, set the priority for after the transition.

When using keys 1 to 8, see “Priority Setting for Keys 1 to 8” (page 66). For details of the key priority setting operation, see “Key Priority Setting” (page 64).

- 4** Select the new video used for the transition.

- In the background B row of cross-point buttons, select the new background video.
- When inserting a key, select the key signal, and make any required settings.

For details of key settings, see Chapter 4 “Keys” (page 82).

To carry out a cut transition, skip to step **7**; otherwise continue to step **5**.

- 5** Select one of the transition type selection buttons in the transition control block.

To carry out a dissolve to the new video: Press one of the [MIX], [NAM], [SUPER MIX], and [PST COLOR MIX] buttons, turning it on.

To carry out a wipe: Press the [WIPE] or [DME] button, turning it on.

To carry out a transition while playing back a frame memory clip: Press one of the buttons corresponding to the clip to be used (FM1&2CLIP, FM3&4CLIP, FM5&6CLIP, and FM7&8CLIP).

You can also use the Misc >Transition menu to select a desired transition type for the M/E or PGM/PST bank. (See “Selecting the Transition Type by a Menu Operation” (page 67).)

For an overview, see “Transition Types” (page 61).

Notes

The transition type selection buttons in the transition control block can be interchanged in the setup menu.

For details, see “Overall Control Panel Settings (Config Menu)” in Chapter 19 (Volume 2).

- 6** Make the required settings, according to the selected transition type.

For details of the settings, see the relevant section.

Super mix: “Super Mix Settings” (page 68)

Preset color mix: “Color Matte Settings” (page 68)

Wipe: “Basic Procedure for Wipe Settings” (page 117)

DME wipe: “Basic Procedure for DME Wipe Settings” (page 137)

Clip transition: “Clip Transition Operations” (page 166)

Using the transition preview function (see page 76), you can check the transition on the preview monitor.

- 7** Carry out the transition in the transition execution section.

For a gradual transition such as a mix (dissolve) or wipe: Press the [AUTO TRANS] button, or operate the fader lever.

To execute a transition by pressing the [AUTO TRANS] button, first set the transition rate (specified as the duration of the transition). (See “Setting the Transition Rate” (page 70).)

When you have selected a wipe or DME wipe as the transition type, you can also set the transition range. (See “Pattern Limit” (page 72).)

For an instantaneous transition: Press the [CUT] button.

For details, see “Executing a Transition” (page 70).

Transition linked to the audio mixer

If the video signal selected in the background B row is linked to the audio mixer in setup, then the audio mixer sound changes with the transition. That is, pressing the [AUTO TRANS] button gives a cross fade, and pressing the [CUT] button gives an instantaneous sound switch.

For details of setup, see “Making Settings for Audio Mixer” in Chapter 19 (Volume 2).

Notes

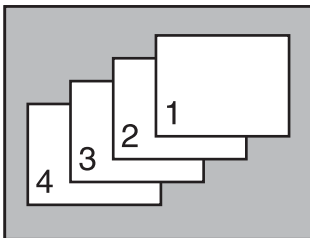
- The audio mixer is not linked to a snapshot or key frame transition.
- The audio mixer is not linked to a transition using the fader lever.
- If the bus-fixed mode (see page 75) is selected in the setup menu, and the fader lever is in the lowest position, there is a cross fade from the audio selected on the B row to the audio selected on the A row.
- The audio mixer is not linked to a key transition.
- In the following cases, the audio and video may be out of sync.
 - When carrying out a cross fade in some DME wipes (for example, “picture in picture”)
 - When executing a preset color mix in two-stroke mode
- For details of audio mixers that can be used, contact your Sony service or sales representative.

Key Priority Setting

If a number of keys are already inserted in the current video, you can check or change the key priority, that is to say, the order in which the keys are overlaid.

When a key priority ([KEY PRIOR]) is selected as the next transition, you can also change the key priority in the new video.

The key priority values go from 1 to 4, with a higher priority key being “in front” as seen on the screen.



Priority sequence on the screen

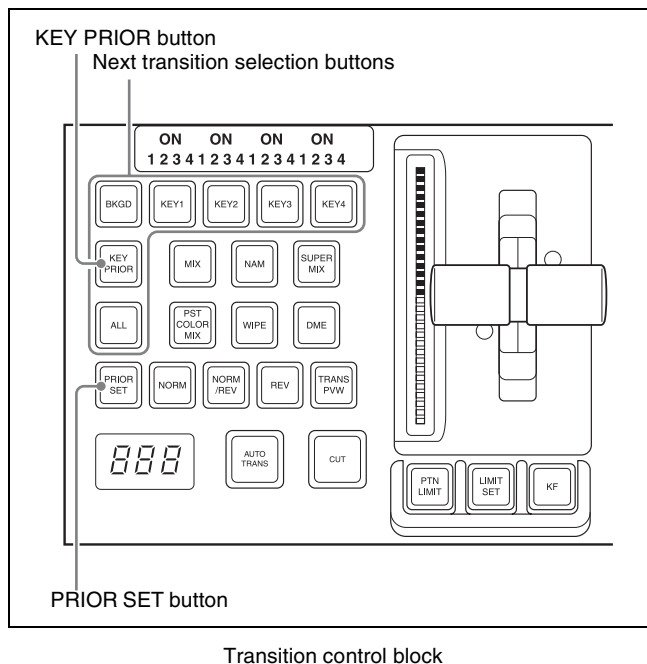
There are two ways of setting the priority: either using the [PRIOR SET] button in the transition control block, or using the Misc menu to access the Key Priority menu for the M/E or PGM/PST bank.

Notes

When the operating mode is set to multi program, the key priority setting cannot be made.

Setting the Key Priority in the Transition Control Block

The positions of the buttons used for the operation are as follows.



Changing the currently inserted key priority

- 1 If the next transition selection button [KEY PRIOR] is on, press another next transition selection button to turn the [KEY PRIOR] button off.

(When the [KEY PRIOR] button is on, the transition control block switches to the mode for changing the key priority for after the transition.)

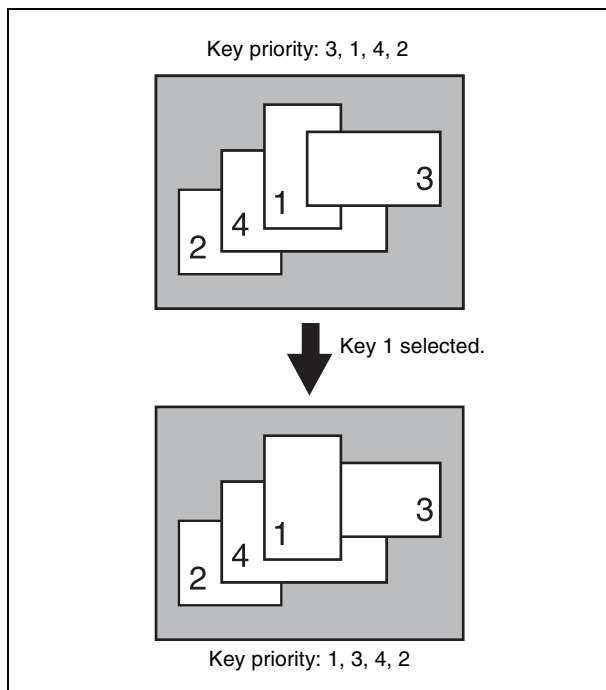
- 2 Holding down the [PRIOR SET] button, press the one of the next transition selection buttons [KEY1] to [KEY4] ([DSK1] to [DSK4] buttons in the PGM/PST bank) for the key to appear on top.

Notes

- To select [Key5] to [Key8], or [DSK5] to [DSK8] requires an assignment (*see page 338*).
- The key priority establishes a separate priority order within each of the groups of keys 1 to 4 and keys 5 to 8. You can make any setting within the groups of keys 1 to 4 or keys 5 to 8, but not for combinations of keys from different groups.
For example, it is not possible to set a priority sequence of keys 1, 5, and 2.

The selected key now appears on top, on the program monitor.

The priority of keys other than the selected one does not change.



To change the priority of more than one key, repeat this operation as required.

Changing the key priority for after the transition

When executing a transition, turning on the next transition selection button [KEY PRIOR] causes the keys to be rearranged based on the set priority.

To set the key priority for after the transition, use the following procedure.

- 1 In the transition control block, hold down the [PRIOR SET] button and press the [KEY PRIOR] button to turn it on. Do not release the [PRIOR SET] button before advancing to step 2.

The [KEY PRIOR] button lights green, and it becomes possible to change the key priority setting for after the transition.

- 2 Hold down the [PRIOR SET] button, and press the one of the next transition selection buttons [KEY1] to [KEY4] ([DSK1] to [DSK4] buttons in the PGM/PST bank) for the key you want to bring to the front after the transition.

To set the priority to be the same as before the transition, press the [BKGD] button.

Notes

- The [BKGD] button is only effective when in the mode for changing the key priority for after the transition.

- To select [Key5] to [Key8], or [DSK5] to [DSK8] requires an assignment (*see page 338*).
- The key priority establishes a separate priority order within each of the groups of keys 1 to 4 and keys 5 to 8. You can make any setting within the groups of keys 1 to 4 or keys 5 to 8, but not for combinations of keys from different groups. For example, it is not possible to set a priority sequence of keys 1, 5, and 2.

When the next transition selection button [KEY PRIOR] is on, the selected key appears on top on the preview monitor. The priority of keys other than the selected one does not change.

- 3 To change the priority of more than one key, repeat the previous operation as required.
- 4 Execute the transition.
The keys are rearranged based on the set priority.

Setting the Key Priority by a Menu Operation

When using keys 1 to 8, set the priority separately for the two groups (*see page 66*).

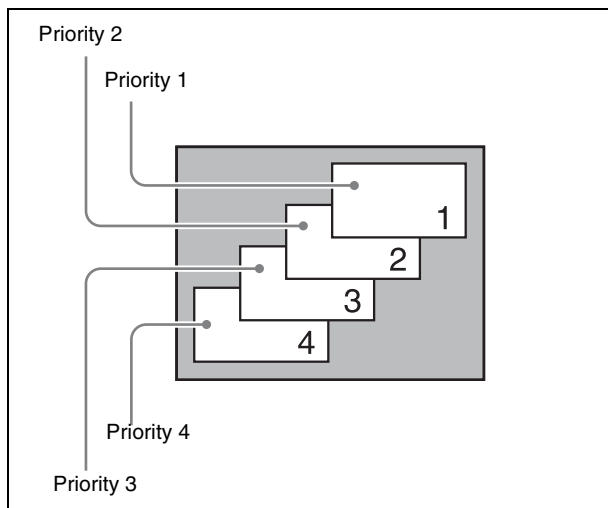
Changing the priority of the currently inserted keys

- 1 In the M/E or PGM/PST menu, select first VF7 'Misc,' then HF3 'Key Priority.'

The Key Priority menu appears.

- 2 For each of <Priority1>, <Priority2>, <Priority3>, and <Priority4>, select a key, to determine the key priority sequence.

The keys are inserted in the key priority sequence with priority 1 at the front.



Notes

It is not possible to select the same key for two or more priority numbers.

The keys appear in the set order on the program monitor.

Changing the key priority for after the transition

1 In the M/E or PGM/PST menu, select first VF7 ‘Misc,’ then HF4 ‘Next Key Priority.’

The Next Key Priority menu appears.

2 For each of <Priority1>, <Priority2>, <Priority3>, and <Priority4>, select a key, to determine the key priority sequence.

For details of the key priority sequence, see the figure shown for step 2 in the previous item (see page 65).

The keys appear in the set order on the preview monitor.

3 Execute the transition.

The keys are rearranged in the set order on the program monitor.

Display of the Key Output Status and Key Priority

You can check whether keys are currently output, and the key priority setting, using the key status display in the transition control block of the M/E or PGM/PST bank. The display is above the next transition selection buttons [KEY1] to [KEY4] ([DSK1] to [DSK4] buttons in the PGM/PST bank).

Notes

You can change the assignment of the next transition selection buttons [KEY1] to [KEY4]. If this is changed, the output status and priority is shown for the assigned key.

Display of the key output status

When a key is included in the output from the M/E or PGM/PST bank, the corresponding ON indicator lights.

Key priority display

The key priority is indicated by numerals 1 to 4 lighting. The topmost key as seen on the program monitor is priority 1, and the keys underneath are numbered 2, 3, 4 away from the viewer (see page 65).

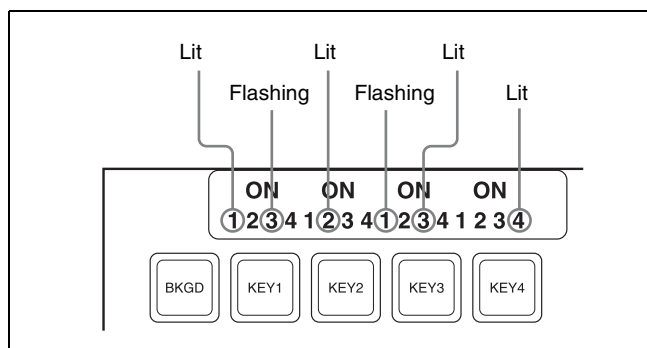
To display the key priority for after the transition, press the [KEY PRIOR] button in the transition control block, turning it on. For keys for which the priority after the transition is different from the current priority, the corresponding numerals 1 to 4 flash. For a key with the same priority, the indication remains on.

Example key status display given when the [KEY PRIOR] button is pressed:

Current key priority: 1, 2, 3, 4

Key priority after the transition: 3, 2, 1, 4

Indicators: 1, 3 (flashing), 2, 1 (flashing), 3, 4



Example key status display (showing the key priority after the transition)

Priority Setting for Keys 1 to 8



Set the priority for each of the groups consisting of keys 1 to 4 and keys 5 to 8.

- 1** In the VF7 'Misc' menu, select HF3 'Key Priority,' to display the Key Priority menu.
- 2** In <Higher Group>, press the button for the group you want to be higher.

The button you pressed lights green, and this becomes the reference group.
- 3** Set the reference group priority.
- 4** In <Higher Group>, select the other group.
- 5** Set the priority for the other group.

Selecting the Transition Type by a Menu Operation

You can also select the required transition type by a menu operation.

- 1** In the M/E or PGM/PST menu, select first VF7 'Misc,' then HF1 'Transition.'
- The Transition menu appears.
- 2** Select the required transition type in the <Transition Type> group.

The parameter settings can now be adjusted with the knobs according to the selected transition type.

For details, see the following.

- "Super Mix Settings" (page 68)
- "Color Matte Settings" (page 68)
- "Setting the Transition Rate" (page 70)

Notes

When multi-program mode is selected in the Setup menu, there may be cases in which two or more transition types have been selected.

For details, see "Setting the Operation Mode" in Chapter 20 (Volume 2).

Super Mix Settings

You can set the output levels of the current and new video signals at the mid-point of the transition, in the range 0 to 100%.

Notes

This transition type is not available for an independent key transition.

- 1 In the M/E or PGM/PST menu, select first VF7 'Misc,' then HF1 'Transition.'

The Transition menu appears.

- 2 Select [Super Mix] in the <Transition Type> group.
- 3 Turn the knobs to adjust the output levels.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
2	A Gain	Background A output level	0.00 to 100.00%
3	B Gain	Background B output level	0.00 to 100.00%

Color Matte Settings

You can specify the color matte by luminance, saturation, and hue values.

Also, in place of a color matte you can use an image selected on the utility 2 bus.

Notes

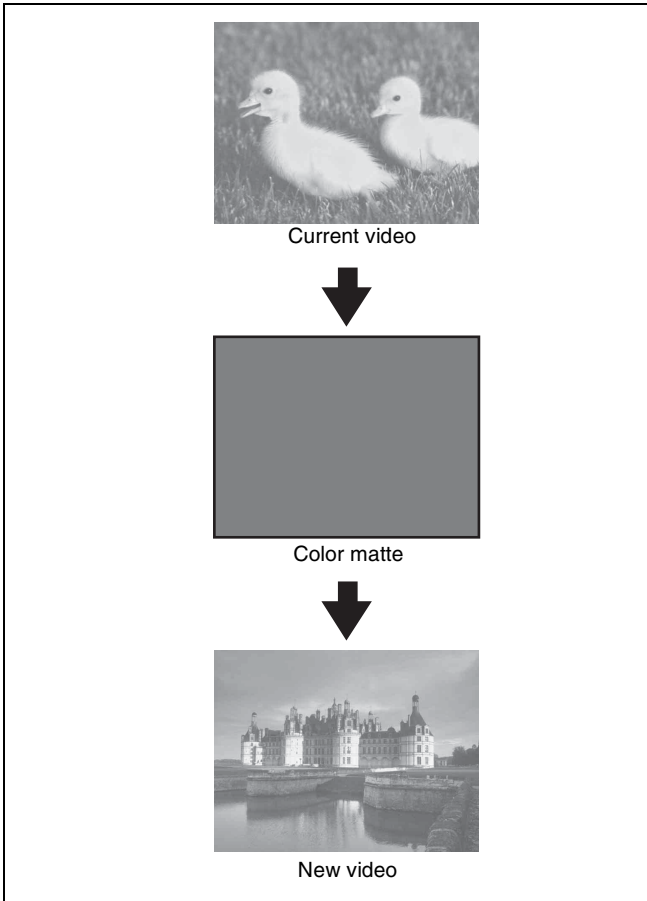
- This transition type is not available for an independent key transition.
- In the multi-program mode, you can use a preset color mix only when selecting the background for the next transition.

One-stroke mode and one-time mode

- You can make a setting such that a preset color mix is carried out in a single transition. This is called "one-stroke mode."
When the bus fixed mode is selected with a Setup menu setting, a preset color mix is always carried out in the one-stroke mode.
- You can also make a setting such that when a preset color mix is completed, the next transition switches to the previous transition type automatically. This is called "one-time mode."

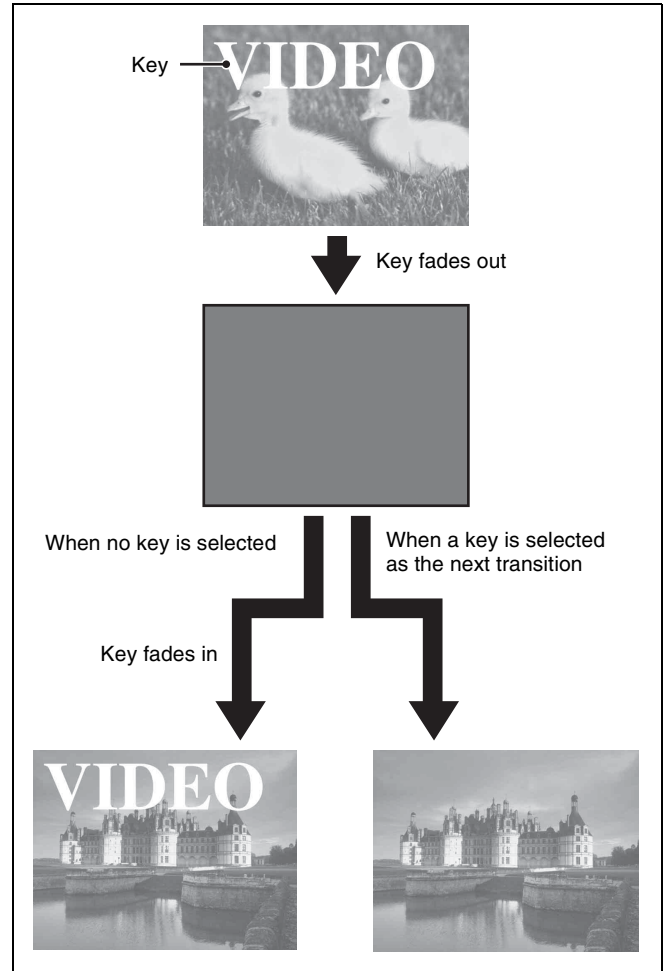


When only the background is changed



Preset color mix (changing background only)

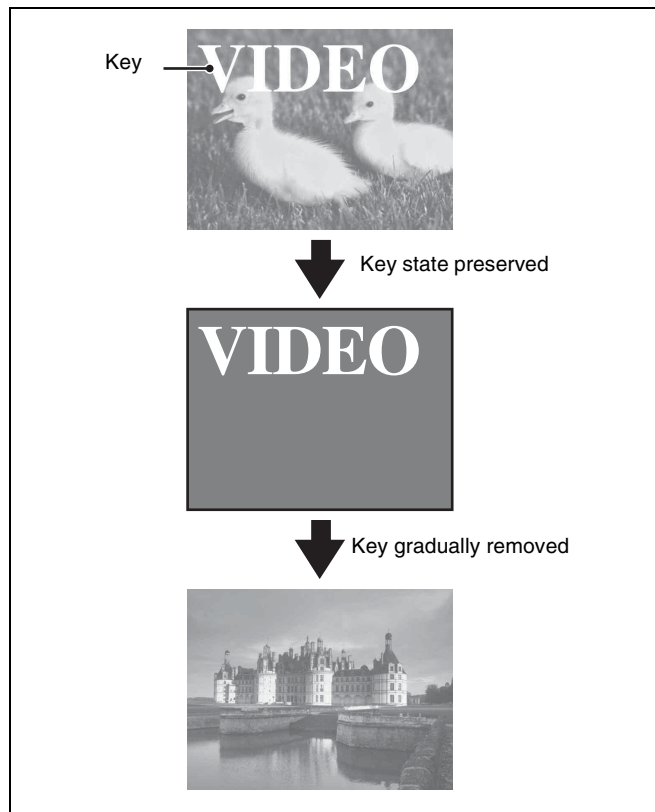
When a key is inserted



Preset color mix (transition including key)

By means of a Setup menu setting, it is possible to preserve the key state while carrying out the color matte mix.

When, with a key inserted, a key is selected in the next transition



Preset color mix (when set to preserve key state)

Setting the color matte

- 1 In the M/E or PGM/PST menu, select first VF7 ‘Misc,’ then HF1 ‘Transition.’

The Transition menu appears.

- 2 Select [Preset Color Mix] in the <Transition Type> group.
- 3 In the <Preset Color Mix Fill> group, select one of the following.

Flat Color: monochrome color matte

Utility 2 Bus: signal selected on the utility 2 bus

- 4 When “Flat Color” is selected, turn the knobs to adjust the color matte.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
2	Luminance	Luminance	0.00 to 100.00
3	Saturation	Saturation	0.00 to 100.00
4	Hue	Hue	359.99 to 0.00

Executing a Transition

There are two modes of executing a transition: an auto transition by button operation or a manual transition using the fader lever.

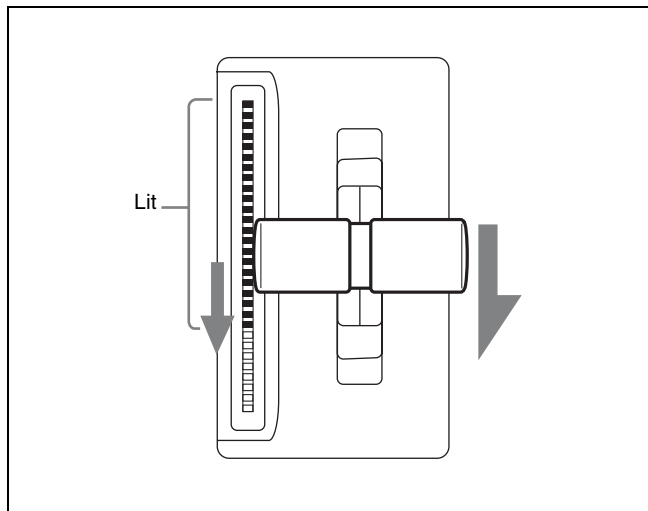
It is also possible to combine both methods, taking control with the fader lever of an auto transition which has partly completed, or complete a transition started with the fader lever as an auto transition.

By combining common transitions with independent key transitions, different transition types can be applied to the background and keys, for example allowing a key wipe combined with a background dissolve.

When the audio mixer is linked in setup, you can carry out an auto transition, and also switch the sound with the audio mixer (see page 63).

Transition Indicator Function

In each of the M/E banks and PGM/PST bank, to the left of the fader lever is a transition indicator composed of multiple LEDs. This indicator shows the state of the transition, whether auto or manual, by which LEDs are lit.



Transition indicator

For example, in the previous illustration, it can be seen that the transition is more than half completed. When the transition is completed, all of the LEDs go off.

Setting the Transition Rate

There are two ways of setting the transition rate: using the numeric keypad control block to enter a numeric value, or using the Misc menu to access the Transition menu for the M/E or PGM/PST bank.

You can also display the transition rate and independent key transition rate for each of the M/E and PGM/PST banks, and change the settings (*see page 181*).

Notes

When a clip transition is selected as the transition type, it is not possible to set the transition rate.

Frame input mode and timecode input mode

For numeric input of the transition rate value, there are two modes: frame input mode and timecode input mode. The frame input mode is selected automatically when the frame display mode is selected. The timecode input mode is selected automatically when the timecode display mode is selected.

Frame input mode: The entered value is a number of frames.

Example: Entering 123 constitutes an entry of 123 frames

Timecode input mode: The entered value is a timecode value.

Example: Entering 123 constitutes an entry of 1 second 23 frames.

Notes

Whereas you can enter a value of up to 999 in frame input mode, a value not smaller than 10 seconds cannot be entered in timecode input mode.

Frame display mode and timecode display mode

For the transition rate display in the transition control block, there are two modes: frame display mode and timecode display mode. You can select one of these modes in setup.

For details, see “Setting the Transition Rate Display Mode” in Chapter 19 (Volume 2).

Notes

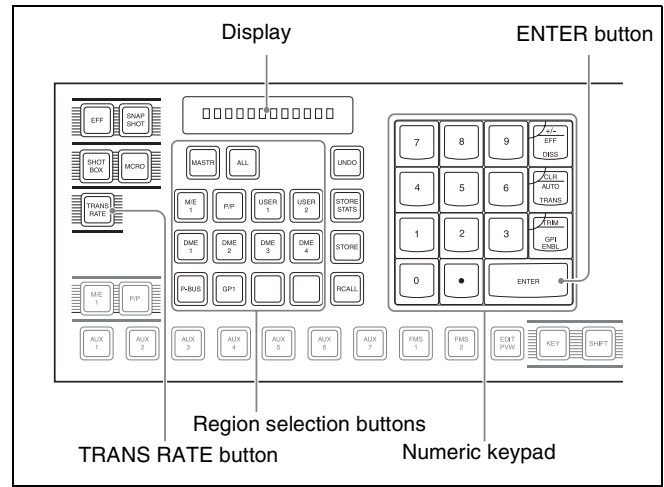
The setting is common to all banks of the switcher.

Frame display mode: Values are shown as from 0 to 999 frames. In this display mode, a value entered in timecode input mode is converted for display as a number of frames.

Timecode display mode: Values are shown as timecode values, consisting of seconds and frames. In this display mode, a value entered in frame input mode is converted for display as a timecode value. If the value consists of four or more digits, the last digit is not shown.

Example: A value of 9 seconds 23 frames appears as “9.23” and a value of 10 seconds 1 frame appears as “10.0.”

Setting the transition rate in the numeric keypad control block



- 1** In the numeric keypad control block, press the [TRANS RATE] button.
- 2** Press the region selection button for the M/E or PGM/PST bank for which you want to set the transition rate, turning it on.

The numeric keypad control block display now shows the selected region name and the current transition rate setting for the region.
- 3** With the numeric keypad, enter the transition rate.
 - Enter a value of up to three digits.
 - To clear the entry, press the [CLR] button.
- 4** Press the [ENTER] button.

This confirms the entry, and the selected region name and the set transition rate appear in the numeric keypad control block display. The transition control block display of the same bank (M/E or PGM/PST) also shows the setting.

To enter a difference from the current value
 After pressing the [+/-] button, enter the difference and press the [TRIM] button.
 To change the sign (+ or -), press the [+/-] button.

Setting the transition rate by a menu operation

- 1 In the switcher bank, select first VF7 ‘Misc.’ then HF1 ‘Transition.’

The Transition menu appears.

- 2 Select any transition type in the <Transition Type> group.

- 3 Turn the knob to set the transition rate.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Transition Rate	Transition Rate	0 to 999 (frame count)

Displaying the transition rates in a menu and changing the settings

For each of the M/E and PGM/PST banks, you can display the transition rate and independent key transition rate, and change the settings (*see page 181*).

Pattern Limit

When a wipe or DME wipe pattern is selected for the transition, you can specify the range of movement of the wipe pattern through the course of the transition, for each bank independently.

When the pattern limit function is enabled, carrying out a transition results in the following effect for example settings.

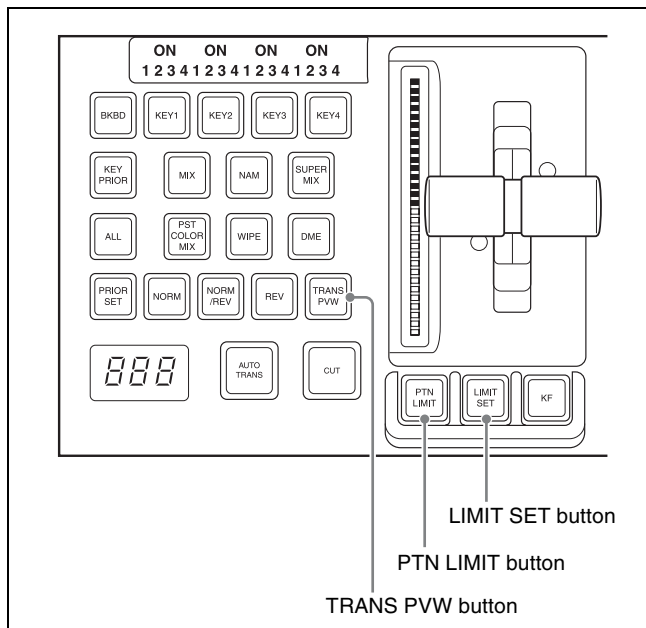
- When the limit value is set to 50%, the effect at the end of the transition is the same as when the fader lever is at the center position in the normal case (with the pattern limit function disabled); the wipe pattern does not complete.
- When the limit value is set to 0%, the wipe effect is completely disabled, and carrying out the transition produces no change in the image.
- When the limit value is set to the maximum 100%, the image changes in exactly the same way as when the pattern limit function is off, but when the transition is completed, the cross-point selections on the background A and B buses do not interchange.

There are two ways of setting a pattern limit: either by operating the fader lever to save the fader position, or by using the Wipe menu or DME Wipe menu to access the Edge/Direction menu for the M/E or PGM/PST bank.

Notes

- A pattern limit only applies when a wipe or DME wipe is selected as the transition type.

- A pattern limit cannot be applied to an independent key transition (*see page 77*).



Transition control block

Setting the pattern limit with the fader lever

- 1 Move the fader lever to the position corresponding to a particular pattern size.

- First make sure that the [PTN LIMIT] button is off.
- To check the pattern size on the preview monitor, first press the [TRANS PVW] button, to select the transition preview mode (*see page 76*).

- 2 Press the [LIMIT SET] button.

This sets the current fader lever position as the pattern limit.

Setting the pattern limit by a menu operation

- 1 When a wipe is selected as the transition type, in the M/E or PGM/PST menu, select first VF5 ‘Wipe,’ then HF4 ‘Edge/Direction.’

When a DME wipe is selected as the transition type, in the M/E or PGM/PST menu, select first VF6 ‘DME Wipe,’ then HF4 ‘Edge/Direction.’

The Edge/Direction menu appears.

- 2 Press the [Pattern Limit] button, turning it on.

- 3 Turn the knobs to adjust the following parameters.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Pattern Limit	Pattern limit	0.00 ^{a)} to 100.00 ^{b)} %

a) 0.00%: Executing the transition does not change the video output at all.

b) 100.00%: The transition is the same as when no pattern limit is set, but the cross-point button selections of the background A and B buses do not interchange when the transition completes.

Executing a pattern limit transition

1 Press the [PTN LIMIT] button, turning it on.

The button you pressed lights amber.

2 Carry out the transition.

The transition progresses as far as the set pattern limit. Even if the transition completes, the cross-point button assignments of the background A and B buses do not interchange.

3 Carry out the transition once again.

The status before the previous transition is restored.

To cancel the pattern limit

To cancel the pattern limit after completion of step **3** in the previous procedure, press the [PTN LIMIT] button, turning it off.

If after carrying out step **2** in the previous procedure, the pattern limit has been reached, carry out the following procedure.

1 Press the [PTN LIMIT] button.

The button you pressed lights green.

2 Carry out the transition.

The [PTN LIMIT] button goes off, and the pattern limit state is released.

Depending on the way in which the transition was executed, the action will be as follows.

- When you press the [CUT] button, the pattern limit is immediately released, and the image switches instantaneously.
- When you press the [AUTO TRANS] button, until the state of the next transition, the transition is carried out over the duration given by the transition rate.
- When you move the fader lever, the transition is carried out from the pattern limit state to the state before the pattern limit transition was carried out. Moving the fader lever even a little synchronizes the fader lever position with the transition state, and you can move the fader lever either in the forward direction or in the reverse direction.

Depending on the Setup settings, the transition may be executed at the instant you press the [PTN LIMIT] button, and the button goes off. In this case, execution continues for the time specified by the dedicated transition rate in the menu setting, as far as the state of the next transition.

For details of the setting, see “Selecting the Bank to Make the Settings” in Chapter 20 (Volume 2).

To set the transition rate when the pattern limit is released

1 In the <Pattern Limit Release> group of the Edge/Direction menu, select one of the following.

Auto Trans Rate: Use the transition rate set in the transition rate control block

Independ Trans Rate: Independent transition rate

2 If you selected “Independ Trans Rate” in step **1**, adjust the following parameter.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Transition Rate	Independent transition rate	0 to 999 (frames)

Executing an Auto Transition

The following two modes can be used for auto transition.

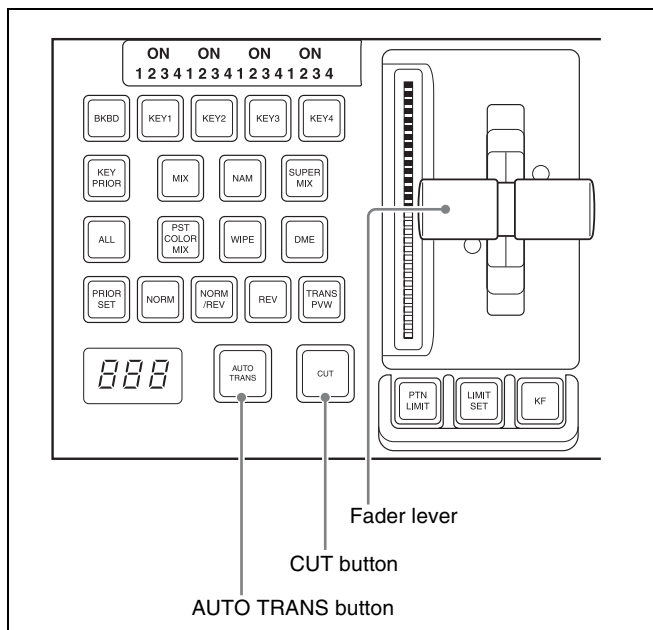
Cut

A cut switches instantaneously from the current video to the new video. When the next transition is a key transition, the key cuts in or out instantaneously.

Auto transition

The transition from the current video to the new video is carried out automatically at a constant rate, using the transition effect selected as the transition type.

You can set the transition rate in advance (*see page 70*).



Transition control block

To execute a transition on the M/E or PGM/PST bank by a button operation, use the following procedure in the transition control block.

To carry out an instantaneous cut transition: Press the [CUT] button.

To carry out a gradual transition: Press the [AUTO TRANS] button.

This executes the transition at the preset transition rate (see page 70).

While the transition is executing, the [AUTO TRANS] button lights amber. When it completes the button goes off.

To complete a partially executed transition instantaneously: Press the [CUT] button.

The [AUTO TRANS] button goes off.

Executing a Transition With the Fader Lever (Manual Transition)

Using the fader lever, you can manually control the progress of the transition. Moving the fader lever from one end of its travel to the other completes the transition.

To execute a manual transition with the transition control block fader lever, use the following procedure.

To carry out the transition completely: Move the lever over the full range of its travel.

To pause a partly executed transition: Stop moving the fader lever.

To resume a paused transition: Resume moving the fader lever.

Combinations of Auto and Manual Transitions

Using the [AUTO TRANS] button, the [CUT] button, and the fader lever, use the following procedures.

Moving the fader lever during an auto transition

During an auto transition started by pressing the [AUTO TRANS] button, operating the fader lever immediately enables the fader lever, and the [AUTO TRANS] button goes off. Thereafter, the fader lever controls the progress of the transition.

Executing an auto transition after partly moving the fader lever

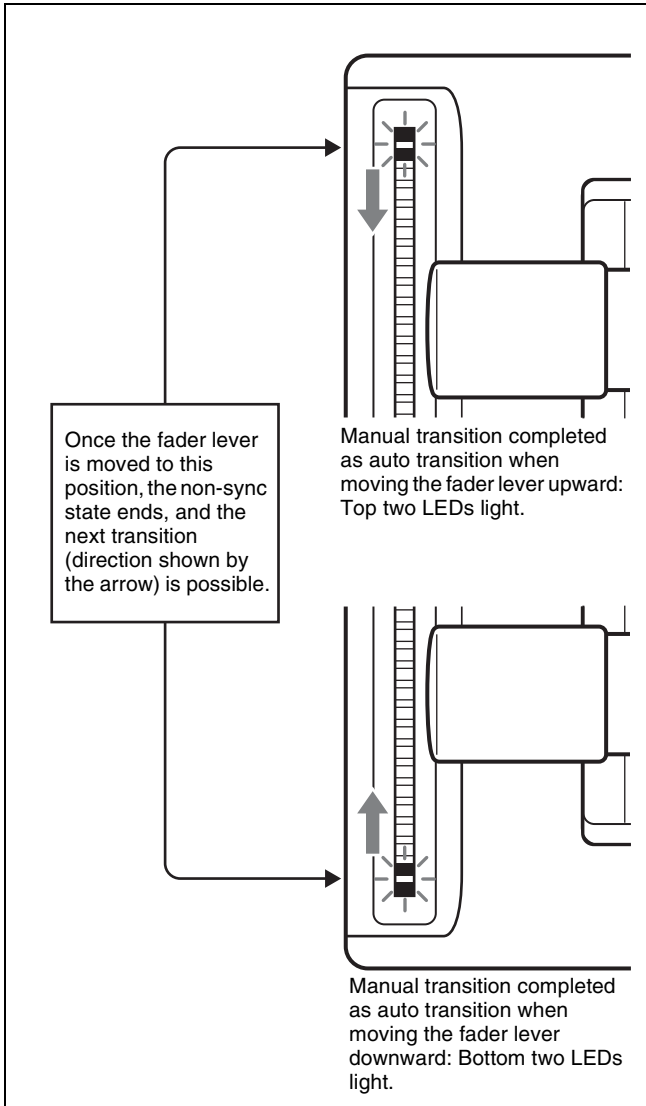
- Press the [CUT] button to instantaneously complete the transition.
- Press the [AUTO TRANS] button to complete the rest of the transition at the preset transition rate. If the transition rate is set to 100 frames, and the fader lever has moved through $\frac{1}{4}$ of the transition, then the remaining $\frac{3}{4}$ of the transition is carried out in 100 frames.

Non-Sync State

If the fader lever is in an intermediate position when a transition is completed as an auto transition, then the lever position no longer agrees with the transition state. This is termed a non-sync state.

In a non-sync state, two lit LEDs indicate the position from which a normal transition can be carried out. This is either at one end position or both end positions of the fader lever travel.

Moving the fader lever toward the position of the lit LEDs does not carry out a transition, but when the fader lever reaches the end position the non-sync state is released, and it is now possible to carry out the next transition.



- If the fader lever is moved in the direction away from the lit LEDs, this carries out the next transition, over the remaining part of the fader lever travel.
- Even in a non-sync state, you can carry out an auto transition by pressing the [AUTO TRANS] button. During the auto transition, the indicators show the transition progress in the usual way, but when the transition completes, they once again indicate the non-sync state.

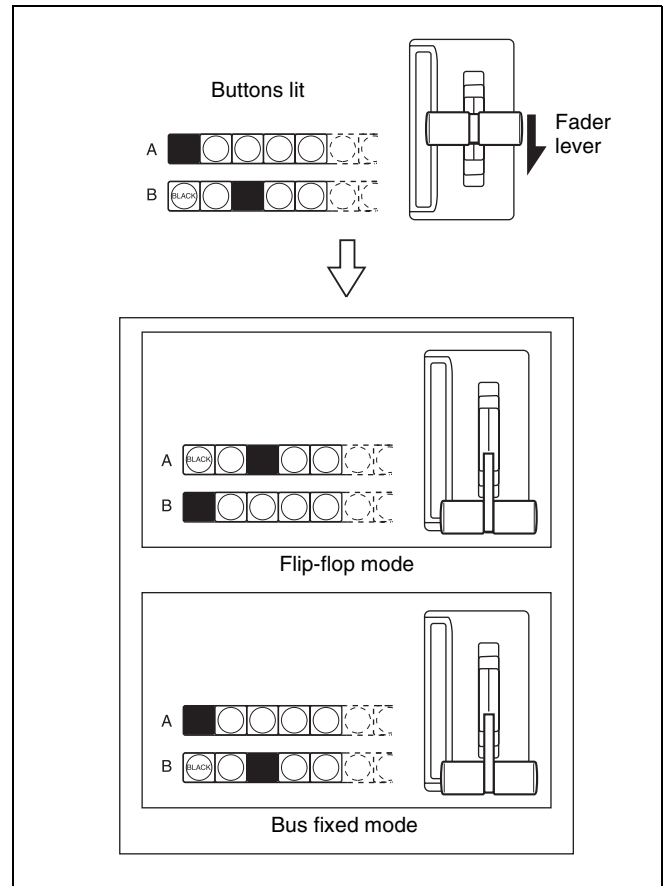
Fader Lever Operation in Bus Fixed Mode

Flip-flop mode and bus fixed mode

The following describes the difference between flip-flop mode and bus fixed mode, taking an M/E bank as an example; the functionality is the same, however, on the PGM/PST bank.

Normally, when a background transition is carried out on an M/E bank, the signals selected on the A and B rows of cross-point buttons are interchanged at the end of the transition. That is to say, except during a transition, the background output is always from the background A bus. This is called “flip-flop mode.”

The alternative is known as “bus fixed mode,” in which there is no bus interchange. In this mode, when the fader lever is at the top of its travel the output from the A bus is always 100%, and when the fader lever is at the bottom of its travel the output from the B bus is 100%.



Flip-flop mode and bus fixed mode

In the bus fixed mode there is a fixed relationship between the position of the fader lever and the signal output on each bus. Depending on the direction of the transition, the fader lever must therefore always be moved in a particular direction, as shown in the following table. This does not affect an auto transition, which is executed regardless of the fader lever direction.

Next transition	Transition direction	Fader lever movement
Background	A → B	Downward
	B → A	Upward
Keys 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, and 8	On → Off (deletion)	Downward
	Off → On (insertion)	Upward

- When a transition applies to a combination of more than one of the background and keys 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, and 8, then the transition for all of these must be in the same direction complying with the above table.
- If as a result of an auto transition, for example, the fader lever position does not agree with the signal output, this is a non-sync state (*see page 74*) and LEDs light at both end positions of the fader lever travel. Moving the fader lever does not carry out a transition, but when the fader lever reaches the end position the non-sync state is released, and it is now possible to carry out the next transition. If the fader lever is moved in the direction away from the lit LEDs, this carries out the next transition, over the remaining part of the fader lever travel.

Transition Preview

With the preview output of the M/E banks and PGM/PST bank, you can check the effect of a transition in advance. To carry out a transition preview, press the [TRANS PVW] button in the transition control block.

Notes

In multi-program mode, DSK mode or bus fixed mode (*page 75*), it is not possible to carry out a transition preview.

Carrying out a transition preview

- 1 In the M/E or PGM/PST bank transition control block, press the [TRANS PVW] button.

The [TRANS PVW] button lights green, and the switcher is now in the transition preview mode. At this point, the preview output is the same as the program output before the [TRANS PVW] button was pressed.

- 2 Operate the fader lever, or press the [AUTO TRANS] button or [CUT] button.

On the preview monitor, you can check the effect of the transition.

To terminate a transition preview

There are three modes for a transition preview. To terminate a transition preview, carry out the operation which depends on the mode, and press the [TRANS PVW] button, turning it off.

Lock: Toggling the [TRANS PVW] button on and off switches between the transition preview mode and the normal mode.

Hold: The preview mode obtains only while the [TRANS PVW] button is held down.

One Time: Each time a transition ends, it reverts to the normal mode.

Set the transition preview mode in the following combinations.

For details, see “Setting the Button Operation Mode” in Chapter 19 and “Settings Relating to Video Switching (Transition Menu)” in Chapter 20 (Volume 2).

Transition Preview mode	Switcher setup (Transition menu) <Transition Preview> group	Panel setup (Operation >Custom Button menu) <Trans Pvw> group
Lock	Normal	Lock
Hold	Normal	Hold

Transition Preview mode	Switcher setup (Transition menu) <Transition Preview> group	Panel setup (Operation >Custom Button menu) <Trans Pvw> group
One Time	One Time	–

Notes

- During a transition, whether executed with the [AUTO TRANS] button or the fader lever, it is not possible to press the [TRANS PVW] button.
- In bus fixed mode (*see page 75*), transition previews are not available.

Independent Key Transitions

What is an independent key transition?

In addition to common transitions, it is possible to carry out independent transitions on the keys of the M/E banks and PGM/PST bank. These are called “independent key transitions.”

By carrying out an independent key transition in combination with a common transition, different transition types can be used for the background and keys. It is also possible to use different transition types for key insertion and key deletion by means of a Setup menu setting (*see page 79*).

Combining other transitions with independent key transitions

When you set a common transition and a key independent transition for the same key, you can apply two different effects such as a wipe and mix (dissolve) (*see page 61*) to the key simultaneously.

When carrying out such a combination of transitions simultaneously on a key as auto transitions (*see page 73*), the result depends on the timing of pressing the respective [AUTO TRANS] buttons.

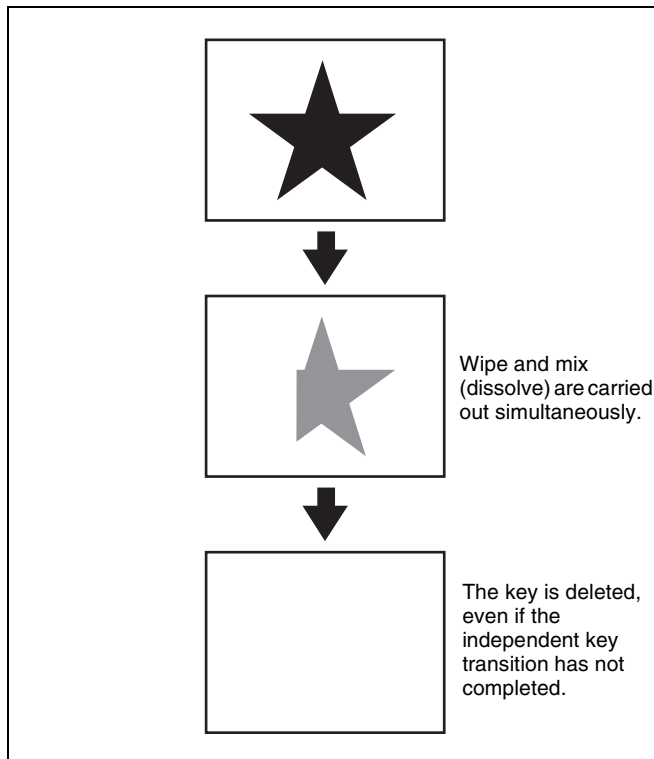
Simultaneous execution

If the [AUTO TRANS] buttons for the two transitions are pressed simultaneously, the following is the result.

Note that in both cases the common transition is a wipe and the independent key transition is a mix (dissolve).

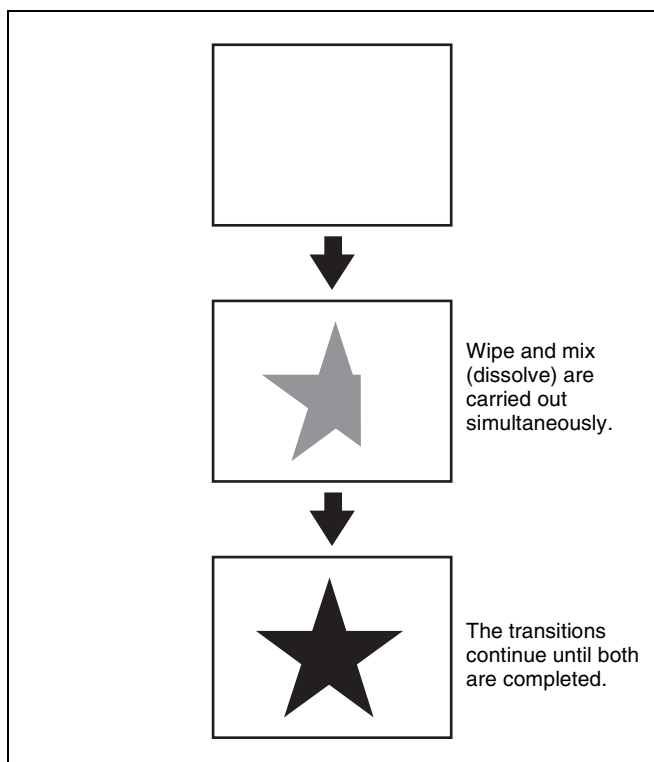
Deleting a key with simultaneous transitions: With the key inserted, it is deleted simultaneously with the two transitions.

When the common transition completes, even if the independent key transition is still not completed, the two end simultaneously.



Deleting a key with simultaneous transitions

Inserting a key with simultaneous transitions: With the key not inserted, it is inserted simultaneously with the two transitions. If the common transition or independent key transition ends first, the other continues to completion.



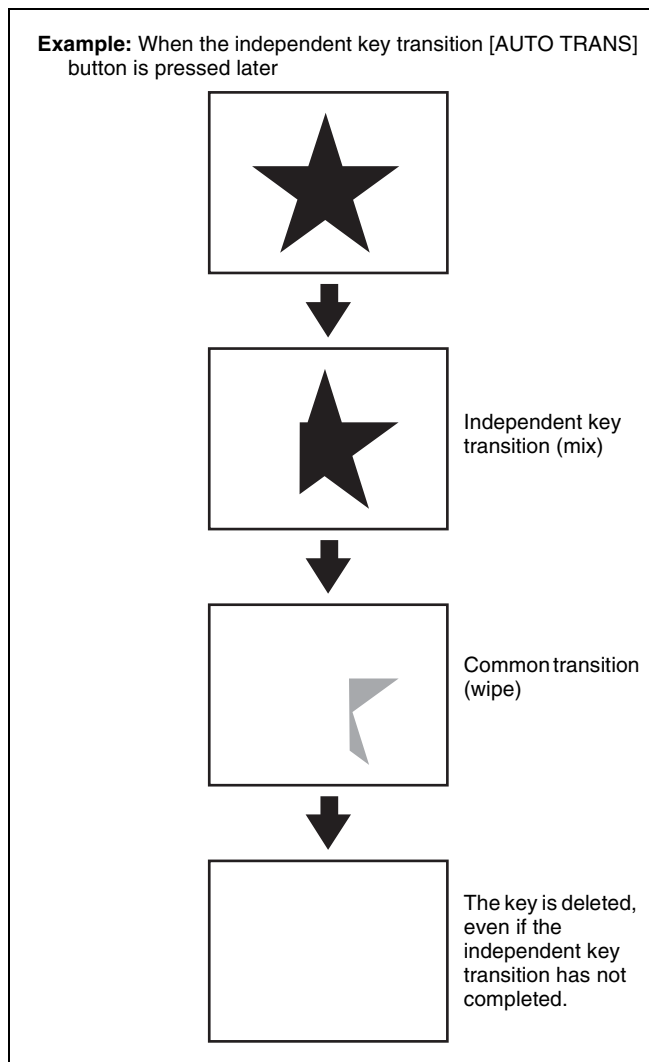
Inserting a key with simultaneous transitions

Time offset execution

If the [AUTO TRANS] buttons for the two transitions are pressed with a time offset, the following is the result. Note that in both cases the common transition is a wipe and the independent key transition is a mix (dissolve).

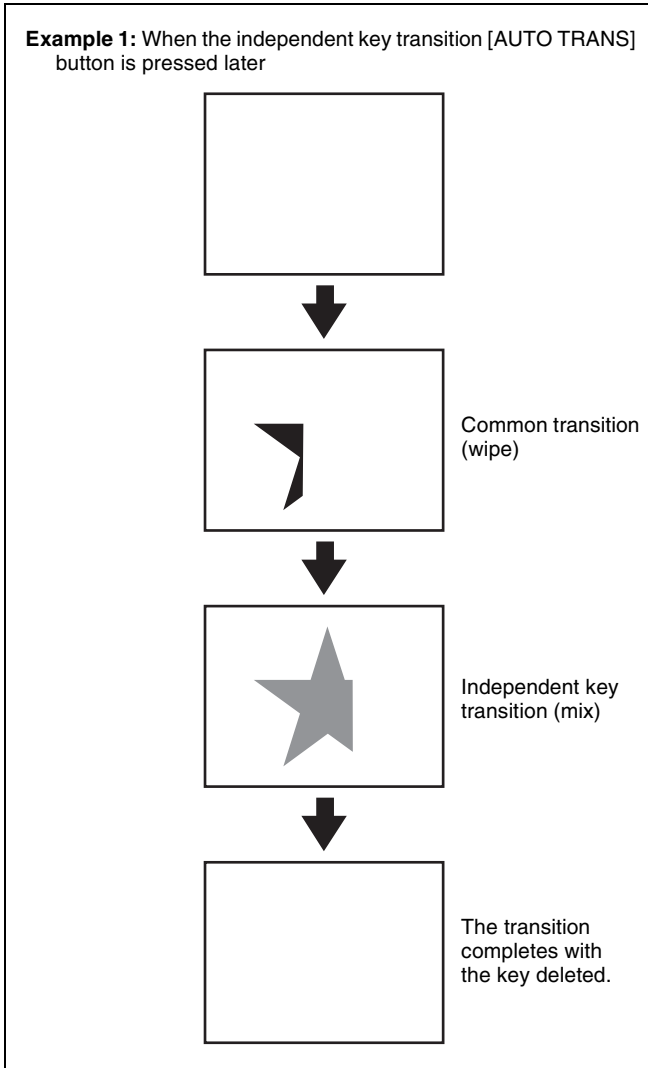
Time offset execution with the key inserted: With the key inserted, it is deleted with the two transitions acting with a time offset.

Whichever button is pressed first, when the common transition completes, even if the independent key transition is still not completed, the two end simultaneously.

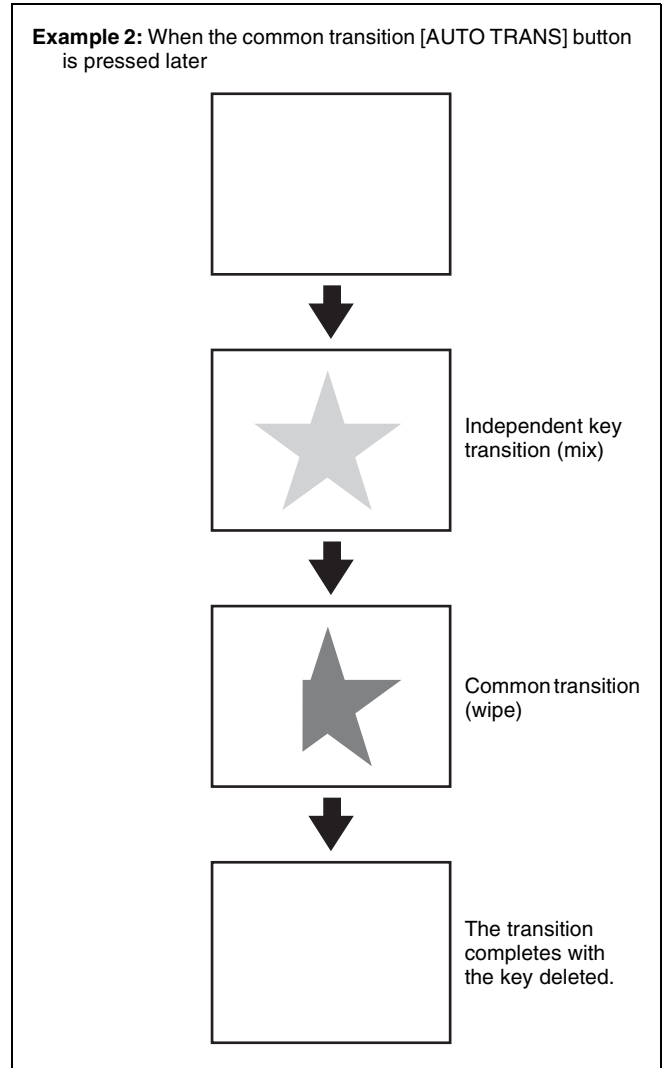


Time offset execution with the key inserted

Time offset execution with the key not inserted: With the key not inserted, it is inserted with the transition whose [AUTO TRANS] button is pressed first. Since the key is then in the inserted state, with the transition whose [AUTO TRANS] button is pressed later, the key is deleted. When the key is completely deleted, both transitions complete.

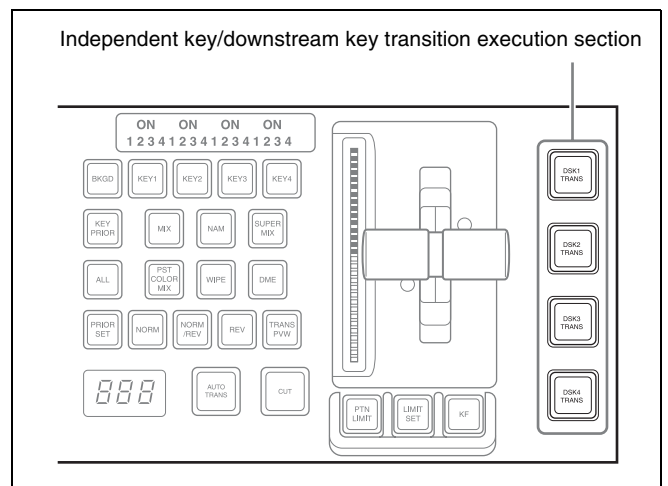


Time offset execution with the key not inserted



Time offset execution with the key not inserted

Basic Independent Key Transition Operations



Transition control block

You can set independent transitions for the keyers on the M/E or PGM/PST bank.

To execute an independent key transition, press the appropriate button in the independent key/downstream key transition execution section of the transition control block. The color with which buttons are lit shows the status, as follows.

Lit green: During a transition

Lit amber: Key inserted

Lit red: Key inserted into final output video

Not lit: Key not inserted

To select the transition type and set the transition rate, use a menu operation.

Notes

- In an independent key transition, the pattern limit function is not available.
- The buttons for [Key5] to [Key8] and [DSK5] to [DSK8] require previous assignment in the Setup menu (*see page 338*).

Setting the Independent Key Transition Type by a Menu Operation

You can also select the required independent key transition type by a menu operation.

- 1 In the M/E or PGM/PST menu, select first the desired one from VF1 ‘Key1’ to VF4 ‘Key4,’ then HF6 ‘Transition.’

The Transition menu for the selected appears.

- 2 Select the required transition type in the <Transition Type> group.

If, in the Setup menus, you set insertion/deletion as independent modes, make the settings for insertion in the <On Transition Type> group, and the settings for deletion in the <Off Transition Type> group.

Setting the Independent Key Transition Rate

There are two ways of setting the transition rate: using the numeric keypad control block to enter a numeric value, or using the Key menu to access the Transition menu for the M/E or PGM/PST bank.

You can also display the transition rate and independent key transition rate for each of the M/E and PGM/PST banks, and change the settings (*see page 181*).

When the setup selection is for separate transition rates for inserting or deleting a key, you can set both rates independently. For example, with the system in the state

with the key not inserted, the transition rate setting applies to key insertion.

Setting the independent key transition rate in the numeric keypad control block

- 1 In the numeric keypad control block, hold down the [TRANS RATE] button, and in the independent key transition control block, press the delegation button [KEY1] to [KEY8] ([DSK1] to [DSK8] in the PGM/PST bank) for the key for which you want to set the transition rate.

The numeric keypad control block changes to the mode for inputting the independent key transition rate, and its display now shows the corresponding region name and the current transition rate set for the region.

- 2 With the numeric keypad, enter the transition rate.

- Enter a value of up to three digits.
- To clear the entry value, press the [CLR] button.

For details of frame input mode and timecode input mode, see page 71.

- 3 Press the [ENTER] button.

This confirms the entry, and the selected region name and the set transition rate appear in the numeric keypad control block display.

To enter a difference from the current value

After pressing the [+/-] button, enter the difference and press the [TRIM] button.

To change the sign (+ or -), press the [+/-] button.

Setting the independent key transition rate by a menu operation

- 1 In the M/E or PGM/PST menu, select first the desired one from VF1 ‘Key1’ to VF4 ‘Key4,’ then HF6 ‘Transition.’

The Transition menu for the selected key appears.

- 2 Select any transition type in the <Transition Type> group.

If, in the Setup menus, you set insertion/deletion as independent modes, make the settings for insertion in the <On Transition Type> group, and the settings for deletion in the <Off Transition Type> group.

- 3 Turn the knob to set the transition rate.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Transition Rate	Transition rate	0 to 999 (frame count)

Displaying the independent key transition rates in a menu and changing the settings

For each of the M/E and PGM/PST banks, you can also display the transition rate and independent key transition rate, and change the settings (*see page 181*).



Overview

A key is an effect in which a part of the background image is replaced by an image or superimposed text. The signal determining how the background is cut out is termed “key source,” and the signal that replaces the cut-out part is termed “key fill.”

The system component responsible for processing a key is referred to as a keyer.

Each M/E bank and the PGM/PST bank has eight keyers, and all of these keyers provide the same functions.

Notes

When the signal format is 1080P, four keyers can be used (keys 1 to 4).

Key Types

The key type indicates the manner in which the key source signal is used to cut out the background. In each bank, you can use the following key types. You can select the key type using the key type selection buttons in the key control block, or by a setting in the Type menu for the keyer (*see page 86*).

Luminance key

The background is cut out according to the luminance (Y) of the key source signal, and at the same time the key fill signal is cut out and then added to the background signal.

Linear key

This is a type of luminance key, but there is a reduced variability in gain, allowing more precise adjustment.

Color vector key

The key signal is created from a combination of the luminance and chrominance components of the key source signal. When perfect keying is not possible with a luminance key, this allows a key signal to be created even if the luminance level is low, provided that the colors have high saturation.

Clean mode

In a luminance key, linear key or color vector key, you can enable the clean mode. When the clean mode is on, the key source does not affect the key fill, which is added unchanged to the background. This improves the keyed image quality, but means that the part of the key fill signal which is not to be inserted must be completely black, or it will color the background. You set the clean mode with the Type menu of the respective keyer.

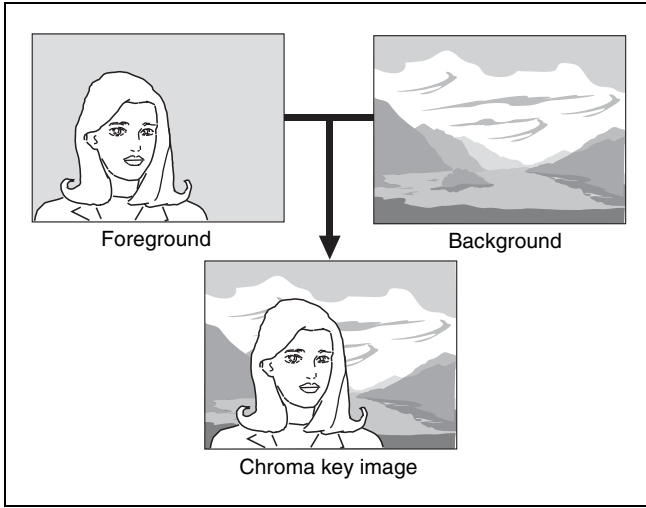
For details, see “Setting the key type in a menu” (page 86).

Note that in the following situations, the clean mode goes off, and cannot be turned on.

- When the key type is a pattern key
- When key inversion is on
- When the key fill is a matte
- When the key edge is an outline
- When the key edge is normal with soft edge being on
- When fine key is on
- When the key positioner is on

Chroma key

A key signal based on a particular color is used to cut out the background, and the key fill is then inserted. The inserted signal is also referred to as the foreground, and the composite image is called a chroma key image.



For details of chroma key, see (page 89) and (page 90) .

Wipe pattern key

This uses the wipe pattern selected for a transition as the key source.

Key wipe pattern key

This uses the wipe pattern selected for an independent key transition as the key source.

Note on wipe pattern modifiers

In a wipe pattern key or key wipe pattern key, you can apply various modifications, depending on the pattern used, and the modifiers in common with a wipe. However, modifiers which relate to the wipe direction and edge are not reflected.

Key Modifiers

Edge modifiers

You can apply borders and other effects to the edge of the key (see pages 93 and 104).

Name	Effect	Image
Normal	This is the state with no key edge modifiers applied.	

Name	Effect	Image
Border	This applies a uniform width border to the edge of the key. You can adjust the border width and density. You can also enable the separate edge function, and adjust the top, bottom, left, and right border widths separately.	
Drop border	This applies a border below and to the right for example, of the key. You can adjust the border width, position, and density.	
Shadow	This applies a shadow below and to the right for example, of the key. You can adjust the shadow width, position, and density.	
Outline	This uses the outline of the original key as the key. You can adjust the width and density of the outline. You can also enable the separate edge function, and adjust the top, bottom, left, and right outline widths separately.	
Emboss	This applies an embossing effect to the outline of the key. You can adjust the width and position of the embossing and the density. You can adjust the density separately for key fill and key edge. When embossing is on, the Fine Key and zabton functions go off.	—
Soft edge	This softens the edge of the key.	—
Zabton	This inserts a translucent pattern behind a key. You can adjust the pattern size, softness, density and color.	—

Edge type and key fill/key source position

The key edge modification function has two modes: a mode (“key drop ON mode”) in which the key fill/key source position moves downward, and a mode (“key drop OFF mode”) in which it does not move downward.

Key drop ON mode: The key fill/key source position moves downward by eight scan lines or four scan lines. When a drop border or shadow is selected, it is possible to apply a border to the top edge of the key.

Key drop OFF mode: The key fill/key source position does not move. When a drop border or shadow is selected, it is not possible to apply a border to the top edge of the key.

In the key drop ON mode, a menu setting selects between the mode (“4H mode”) in which the key fill/key source position is lowered by four scan lines, and the mode (“8H mode”) in which the key fill/key source position is lowered by eight scan lines.

When Fine Key is on, the edge width is forced to the range 0.00 to 4.00.

Note that in the following situations, the key drop mode is forcibly turned on.

- When the edge type is border, outline, or emboss
- When the edge type is normal with soft edge being on
- When Fine Key is on

To fix key fill / key source in key drop off mode

Switch frame delay mode on.

Regardless of the fine key and edge type settings, key fill and key source are fixed in key drop off mode. In this mode key image has a one-frame delay.

Notes

This function uses the resizer, and therefore the normal effect of the setting is not obtained while using DME wipe or other effect that uses the resizer.

Edge fill

When a border, drop border, or shadow modifier is selected, you can select a signal to fill these edge effects. The edge fill may be either the signal from the dedicated color matte generator, or the signal currently selected on the utility 1 bus.

In the case of an outline, there is no edge fill signal selection, because the key fill signal fills the outline, and the rest of the image remains as the background.

For the emboss effect, in place of the edge fill signal, the emboss fill matte 1 and emboss fill matte 2 signals are used.

Masks

A mask is used to inhibit the effect of a key over a part of the image. This allows parts of the background which

would otherwise be keyed to be protected, or to correct the key if it is not of the desired shape.

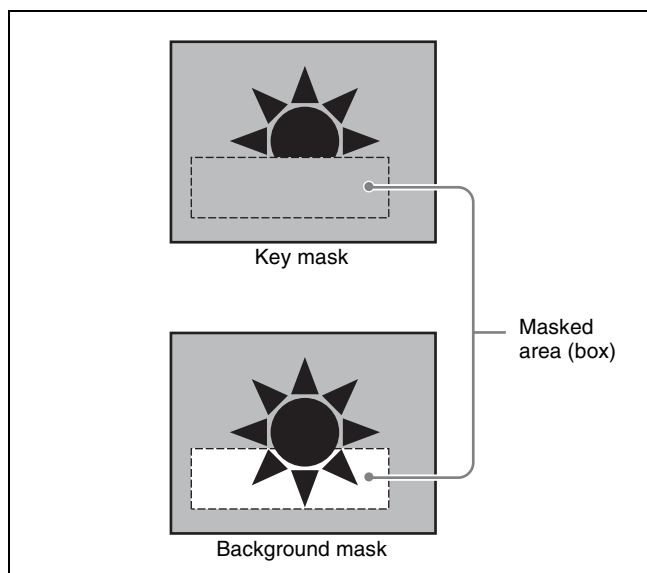
For details of masking operations, see “Masks” (pages 96 and 105).

Key mask and background mask

There are two types of mask: a key mask and a background mask.

Key mask: This masks out a part of the key, which will result in the background appearing.

Background mask: This masks out a part of the background, which will result in the key fill appearing.



Main mask and subsidiary (“sub”) mask

Each keyer allows two masks to be used simultaneously, and these are referred to as the main mask and the sub mask. The signal that determines the mask shape and size is termed the mask source, and different sources are used for the main mask and sub mask.

Main mask: This uses the signal from the dedicated box generator provided on each keyer, or the signal from the dedicated pattern generator as the mask source.

When the box generator is selected, a rectangular mask is formed. You can adjust the positions of the four sides of the box separately.

When the pattern generator is selected, you can select the pattern and apply modifiers.

Sub mask: This uses the wipe generator signal or the signal selected on the utility 1 bus, as the mask source. When the wipe generator is selected, the patterns and the pattern modifiers are the same as in a wipe transition.

Key Memory

The key memory function allows the keyer settings on each cross-point button to be automatically stored, so that

the next time the same cross-point button is selected these settings are recalled automatically.

There are two modes for key memory: simple mode and full mode.

The parameters stored in each mode are as follows.

Simple mode: key type, clean mode (including the plane setting for chroma keying), key position, key inversion, and adjustment values for the particular key type (Clip, Gain, Density, Filter, etc. This includes color vector key, wipe pattern key, key wipe pattern key, and chroma key. However, in the case of a chroma key, it excludes color cancel, Y balance, foreground CCR, window, and shadow.)

Full mode: All settings except transition (the same parameters as simple mode, Fine Key, key modifiers, main and sub mask settings, chroma key detailed settings, and so on)

For the settings for these modes, see “Selecting the Bank to Make the Settings” in Chapter 20 (Volume 2).

Key Default

With a simple operation you can return the key adjustment values to their defaults.

The adjustment values which can be returned to their default values are as follows.

- Adjustment values for the particular key type (Clip, Gain, Density, Filter, etc.)
In the case of chroma keying, all adjustment values return to their default values.
- Key position
- Key inversion
- Clean mode

For details, see “Returning the key adjustment values to their defaults” (page 107).

For the menu operation to return the key adjustment values to their defaults, see “Returning to Default State in Function Groupings” (page 53).

Key Setting Operations Using Menu

There are two ways of making key settings: either using menus, or using the key control block.

This section describes basic procedures for making key settings using the menus, taking the M/E-1 >Key1 menu as an example.

Operations in the Key menu are the same for all banks (M/E-1 to M/E-3 and PGM/PST).

For details of the method of using the key control block, see “Key Setting Operations with the Key Control Block” (page 102).

Key Setting Menus

The key setting menu for each bank (M/E-1 to M/E-3 and PGM/PST) are as follows.

Bank	Keys set	Menus
M/E-1	Keys 1 to 8	M/E-1 >Key1 to 8
PGM/PST	Downstream keys 1 to 8	PGM/PST >DSK1 to 8

Notes

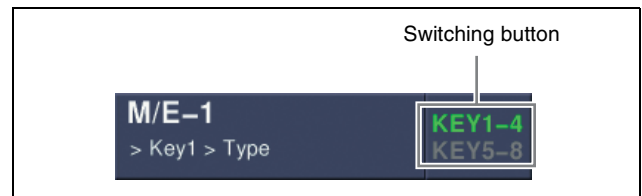
When the signal format is 1080P, only keys 1 to 4 can be used.

Accessing a key setting menu

For example, to access the M/E-1 >Key1 menu, carry out any of the following procedures.

- In the menu control block, select the top menu selection button [M/E 1], then press VF1 ‘Key1.’

If VF1 ‘Key5’ is shown, press the [KEY1-4] switching button at the top of the menu, turning it on, then press VF1 ‘Key1.’



- In the M/E-1 bank transition control block, press the KEY1 next transition selection button twice in rapid succession.
- Press the [KEY1] button in the key delegation row of the M/E-1 bank twice in rapid succession.

- In the key control block, press the M/E delegation button [M/E1], then press the key delegation button [KEY1] twice in rapid succession.

Note that you can access the DSK menus by pressing the button for the corresponding key in the downstream key control block twice in rapid succession.

Notes

- To select [M/E 4] with the top menu selection buttons, it is first necessary to assign a button in the Setup menu (*see page 337*).
- To select [Key5] to [Key8], and [DSK5] to [DSK8] in the key control block, a previous assignment in the Setup menu is required (*see page 338*).

Key Type Setting

Setting the key type in a menu

- 1 In the M/E-1 >Key1 menu, select HF1 ‘Type.’
The Type menu appears.

- 2 In the <Key Type> group, select the key type.

Luminance: luminance key

Linear: linear key

Chroma: chroma key

Color Vector: color vector key

Wipe Pattern: wipe pattern key

Key Wipe Pattern: key wipe pattern key

- 3 Carry out the following settings as required, depending on the key type selected in step 2.

To enable clean mode (*see page 82*) for a luminance key, linear key or color vector key: Select [Clean Mode] so that it is set on.

When clean mode is enabled, key fill is added to the background without cutting out with key source.

When chroma key is selected: Select [Chroma Adjust] to access the Chroma Adjust menu (*see page 90*), and make the required settings.

When a wipe pattern key is selected: In the M/E-1 >Wipe menu (*see page 117*), select the pattern and set any modifiers, then return to the M/E-1 >Key1 menu.

When a key wipe pattern key is selected: In the M/E-1 >Key1 > Transition >Wipe Adjust menu (*see page 129*), carry out pattern selection and modifier setting, then return to the M/E-1 >Key1 >Type menu.

Notes

For a wipe pattern selected for a wipe pattern key or key wipe pattern key, the [Edge] and [Direction] modifier settings are not available.

- 4 Set the parameters.

When a luminance key or linear key is selected

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Clip	Reference level for generating the key signal	+109.59 to -7.31
2	Gain	Key sensitivity	-100.00 to +100.00
3	Density	Key density	0.00 to 100.00
4	Filter	Filter coefficient	1 to 9 ^{a)}

a) Setting this value to 1, produces the “through” state in which no filter is applied. The larger the value, the more strongly the filter applies.

When a chroma key is selected

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
3	Density	Key density	0.00 to 100.00

When a color vector key is selected

Parameter group [1/2]

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Y Clip	Reference level for creating luminance signal	+109.59 to -7.31
2	Y Gain	Luminance signal sensitivity	-100.00 to +100.00
3	C Clip	Reference level for creating chrominance signal	100.00 to 0.00
4	C Gain	Chrominance signal sensitivity	-100.00 to +100.00
5	Density	Key density	0.00 to 100.00

Parameter group [2/2]

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Y Filter	Luminance signal filter coefficient	1 to 9
2	C Filter	Chrominance signal filter coefficient	1 to 9

When a wipe pattern key or key wipe pattern key is selected

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Size	Pattern size	0.00 to 100.00

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
2	Soft	Degree of edge softness	0.00 to 100.00
3	Density	Key density	0.00 to 100.00

5 Make the following settings as required.

To invert the black and white sense of the key source: Press [Key Invert], turning it on.

To adjust the horizontal position or key source width for a luminance key, linear key, or chroma key: Press [Key Position], turning it on, and set the parameters.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	H Phase	Key horizontal position	-4.00 to +4.00
2	Left	Key left edge position	-4.00 to +4.00
3	Right	Key right edge position	-4.00 to +4.00

To set the key priority: Press [Key Priority] or select VF7 ‘Misc’ and HF3 ‘Key Priority’ to access the Key Priority menu.

For details, see “Setting the Key Priority by a Menu Operation” (page 65).

Selecting Key Fill and Key Source

Notes

In the case of the MVS-8000X, only the premium inputs (inputs to the switcher PREMIUM INPUTS connectors 1 to 20) can be selected as key signals on the M/E-4 bank.

Selecting key fill and key source

To select key fill and key source for key 1 on the M/E-1 bank, use the following procedure.

- 1** In the M/E-1 >Key1 menu, select HF1 ‘Type.’
The Type menu appears.
- 2** In the <Key Fill> group, select either of the following for use as key fill.
Key Bus: signal selected on the key 1 fill bus
Matte: signal from the dedicated color matte generator
- 3** If you selected [Key Bus] in step **2**, press the key delegation button [KEY1] in the cross-point control block and select the key fill signal in the key row.

- 4** If you selected [Matte] in step **2**, in the same Type menu, press the [Matte Adjust] button to display the Matte Adjust menu, then adjust the single-color or two-color combination color matte. Select whether to use a single-color matte or a two-color combination in the <Fill Matte> group.

Flat Color: Adjust color 1 with the following parameters.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Luminance	Luminance	0.00 to 100.00
2	Saturation	Saturation	0.00 to 100.00
3	Hue	Hue	359.99 to 0.00

Mix Color: Carry out a color mix. Adjust color 1 and color 2, and select a mix pattern (*see the next section*).

- 5** In the <Key Source> group, specify the key source selection mode.

Self: The key fill bus signal is automatically selected as the key source.

When the key type is selected as chroma key, select [Self].

Auto Select: The signal allocated, being paired with the key fill bus signal, to a cross-point button is automatically selected as the key source. The setting of key fill and key source pairs is carried out in the Setup menu.

For details, see “Cross-Point Settings (Xpt Assign Menu)” in Chapter 19 (Volume 2).

Split: You can select a key source signal independently of the key source automatically selected in Auto Select mode.

- 6** When [Split] was selected in step **5**, hold down the [KEY1] button and press the appropriate button in the key row to select the key source signal.

To select the video signal assigned to the button, turn off the [KEY] button in the AUX bus control block, and to select the key signal, turn on the [KEY] button before pressing the button in the key row.

Notes

- Carrying out a [KEY] button operation in the AUX bus control block requires the [KEY] button operating mode (Key Source Bus Select Mode) to be set. With the factory default setting (Key), the [KEY] button is always off, and it is only possible to select a key signal assigned to a button as the key source signal.

For details, see “Setting the Button Operation Mode” in Chapter 19 (Volume 2).

- When [Split] is selected, the key memory function (see page 84) is disabled.

To select a video signal assigned to a cross-point button

By selecting the key source bus with an auxiliary bus control block AUX delegation button, and pressing the cross-point button, it is possible to select the video signal assigned to the cross-point button.

(If you press the cross-point button with holding down [KEY], the key signal assigned to the cross-point button.)

Notes

In the above operation, the following settings must have been made.

- Assigning the key source bus to an AUX delegation button
For details, see “Auxiliary Bus Control Block Settings (Aux Assign Menu)” in Chapter 19 (Volume 2).
- Setting the [KEY] button operating mode
For details, see “Setting the Button Operation Mode” in Chapter 19 (Volume 2).

Selecting key source and key fill in the menu

Selecting key source

For example, to select the key source for M/E-1 key 1, use the following procedure.

- 1 In the <Key Fill> group of the M/E-1 >Key1 >Type menu, hold down [Key Bus].
- 2 Press [Signal Select].

The Signal Select menu appears.



- 3 In the <Target> group, press [Source].
- 4 In the <Key Source> group, select the key source selection mode (Self, Auto Select, or Split).

See step 5 in “Selecting Key Fill and Key Source” (page 87).

- 5 If you selected [Split], using any of the following methods, select the key source signal.
 - Press directly on the list on the right.
 - Press the arrow keys to scroll the reverse video cursor.
 - Turn the knob.

Knob	Parameter	Setting	Values
1	No	Button number	1 to 300

- 6 In the <Assign> group, select the video signal or key signal from the V/K pair to assign to the key source.

- 7 Press [Set Xpt].

This selects the key source signal.

Selecting key fill

For example, to select the key fill for M/E-1 key 1, use the following procedure.

- 1 In the M/E-1 >Key1 >Type menu status area, press “Fill.”

The Signal Select menu appears.

- 2 In the <Target> group, press [Fill].
- 3 Select the fill signal from the list on the right.
- 4 Press [Set Xpt].

This selects the key fill signal.

Carrying out a color mix for key fill

When [Matte] is selected for key fill, you can combine color 1 and color 2. For the combination, you can use not only a key wipe generator pattern, but also the dedicated pattern for key edge color mix.

- 1 In the <Key Fill> group of the Type menu, select [Matte] and press [Matte Adjust].

The Matte Adjust menu appears.

- 2 Select [Mix Color] in the <Fill Matte> group.
- 3 Adjust the following parameters.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Size	Pattern size	0.00 to 100.00
2	Soft	Softness of the edge of the pattern	0.00 to 100.00

- 4 Select the combining pattern in the <Mix Pattern> group.

Key Wipe: The wipe pattern selected for an independent key transition is used for combination. You can change this pattern by pressing [Pattern Select] to open the menu for key wipe pattern selection (Pattern Select menu), and make adjustments by pressing [Pattern Adjust] to open the menu for pattern adjustment (Wipe Adjust menu).

Key Edge Pattern: Combine using the dedicated pattern selected for the color mix in the key edge fill. You can change this pattern by pressing [Pattern Select] to open the menu for edge color mix dedicated wipe pattern selection (Mix Pattern Select menu), and make adjustments by pressing [Pattern Adjust] to open the menu for pattern adjustment (Matte Adjust menu).

For details, see “Carrying out a color mix for the key edge fill matte” (page 94).

- 5 In the Type menu, adjust color 1 and color 2.

To adjust color 1, select [Color1], and to adjust color 2, select [Color2], then adjust the following parameters.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Luminance	Luminance	0.00 to 100.00
2	Saturation	Saturation	0.00 to 100.00
3	Hue	Hue	359.99 to 0.00

- 6 To interchange color 1 and color 2, press the [Color Invert] button, turning it on.

Chroma Key Composition and Basic Settings

In creating a chroma key image, either a normal mix or an additive mix can be used. To select which, use the Type >Chroma Adjust menu for the keyer.

Normal mix: The foreground is cut out with the key signal, and then combined with the background, which has also been cut out with the key signal.

Additive mix: The background, which has been cut out with the key signal, is combined with the unshaped foreground. This is effective for a natural-looking composite when the scene includes glass or other translucent objects.

Plane function

In an additive mix, the foreground is not shaped by the key signal, and variations in the (blue) background appear in the composite image. To prevent this, it is possible to set a

particular luminance level for the background, and any parts below this level are cut forcibly.

Composing an image by chroma keying

- 1 In the M/E-1 >Key1 menu, select HF1 ‘Type.’
- 2 Select [Chroma] in the <Key Type> group.
It becomes possible to adjust the key density (*see page 86*).
- 3 Select [Chroma Adjust].
The Chroma Adjust menu appears.
- 4 Carry out auto chroma key adjustments.
Also carry out manual adjustments if necessary to obtain an optimum chroma key image.
- 5 In the <Mix Mode> group, select [Normal Mix] or [Additive Mix] depending on the desired type of chroma key composition.

When using an additive mix for chroma keying, the (typically blue) background parts of the foreground video must be converted to black. For this, use the color cancel function (*see page 91*).

Using the plane function

In an additive mix, since no key is applied to the foreground, any variations in the (typically blue) background may appear in the composite image. To avoid this, a particular luminance level can be set for the (blue) background, and regions of lower luminance forcibly cut.

- 1 In the Chroma Adjust menu, set [Plane] on.
- 2 Adjust the following parameter.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Luminance	Luminance level	0.00 to 100.00

Key Adjustments (Menus)

This section describes key adjustments made by a menu operation.

You can adjust the following functions by a menu operation.

- Chroma Key Adjustment (page 90)
- Key Edge Modifications (page 93)
- Masks (page 96)
- Applying a DME effect to a key (page 97)
- Specifying the Key Output Destination (page 98)
- Key Modify Clear (page 99)
- Blink Function (page 99)
- Video Processing (page 99)

Chroma Key Adjustments

Methods of adjusting the composite obtained from chroma keying include automatic adjustment with the auto chroma key function, and manual adjustment carrying out the necessary processing separately. The optimum results will be obtained by first carrying out adjustments with the auto chroma key function, then making any fine adjustments as required.

The following manual adjustments are possible.

Key active

When this function is off, only the foreground is output and you can make adjustments of color cancel (*see the next paragraph*).

Color cancel

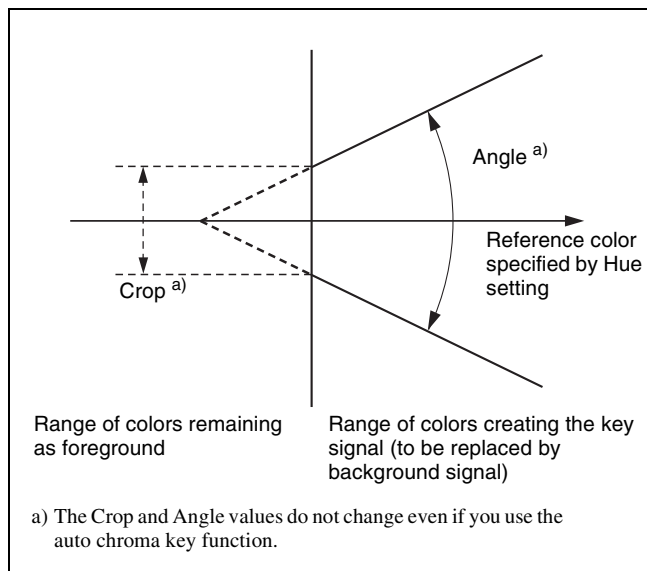
If the foreground image includes shades of the background color, turn this function on to remove the color from the foreground image.

Chroma key window

You can adjust the range over which the key signal is determined as matching the specified hue. When this adjustment is off the default ranges are used.

Chroma keying generates a key signal based on a particular color (reference color) in the foreground (typically a plain blue background), and the “window” refers to the range of colors which are regarded as matching this specified reference color to create the key signal.

As seen on a vectorscope (that is, in the hue-saturation color space), the range for this matching corresponds to a truncated sector. This range is specified by two parameters: the “Angle” parameter, which determines the range of the hue parameter, and the “Crop” parameter, which determines the degree of truncation (*see the following figure*).



Window adjustment

Y balance

In normal chroma keying, the key signal is based on the chrominance component only, and all elements of the foreground with the same hue are replaced by the background. Using the Y balance function, you can specify a luminance level range within which the key is active, and replace the specified part by the background.

You can use the Y balance function independently on the key signal for the composition and the key signal for the color cancel function. When applied to the key signal for the composition, this produces the foreground with the color cancel effect applied. This can therefore be used to provide an impression of smoke, for example.

When the Y balance function is applied to the color cancel key, the relevant part is output in its original color without canceling, and therefore it is possible to combine colors which are the same color as the background (i.e. typically blue) in the foreground.

Chroma key shadow

This function provides a more realistic treatment when the shadow of an object in the field of view falls on the blue background. Since parts of the blue background darker than a specified intensity are treated as shadows, there is no effect on cutting out of the foreground.

Video signal adjustment

You can vary the foreground signal gain, or change the hue. There are separate adjustments for the gain of the overall video signal, and Y and C components.

Making auto chroma key adjustments

Auto chroma key is an automatic adjustment function which allows you to specify a part of the foreground video (for example, the blue background color) and use it as a reference for creating the chroma key image.

- 1 In the M/E-1 >Key1 menu, select HF1 'Type,' then select [Chroma] in the <Key Type> group.
- 2 Select [Chroma Adjust].
The Chroma Adjust menu appears.
- 3 Select [Sample Mark] in the <Auto> group.
The foreground video only appears on the monitor, with a white box-shaped sample selector.
- 4 Adjust the position and size of the sample selector, to specify the color to be used as the basis of chroma keying (typically a blue background).

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Position H	Horizontal position	-100.00 to +100.00 ^{a)}
2	Position V	Vertical position	-100.00 to +100.00 ^{a)}
3	Size	Size	1.00 to 100.00

a) The setting ranges depend on the signal format, screen aspect ratio, and size settings.

- 5 Select [Auto Start] in the <Auto> group.
This executes an auto chroma key based on the color specified by the sample selector, and displays the composite image on the monitor.

Making key active adjustments

When the key active function is on, the composite image is output to the monitor, and you can watch the monitor while manually adjusting the keying. When the key active function is off, only the foreground image appears. Set this off when manually adjusting color cancel (*see the next section*).

- 1 In the Chroma Adjust menu, set [Key Active] on.
- 2 Adjust the following parameters.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Clip	Chroma key reference level	0.00 to 100.00
2	Gain	Key gain	-100.00 to +100.00
3	Hue	Hue	359.99 to 0.00
4	Density	Density	0.00 to 100.00
5	Filter	Filter coefficient	1 to 9

Making color cancel adjustments

If the background color is leaking into the foreground video, turning the color cancel function on allows you to eliminate this leakage.

- 1 In the Chroma Adjust menu, turn [Key Active] off.
Only the foreground image appears on the monitor.
- 2 In the <Color Cancel> group, set [Color Cancel] on.
- 3 Adjust the following parameters.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Luminance	Luminance	0.00 to 100.00
2	Saturation	Saturation	0.00 to 100.00
3	Hue	Hue	359.99 to 0.00
5	Filter	Filter coefficient	1 to 9

- 4 Set [Key Active] on.
The chroma key composite image now appears in the monitor.

Making key signal adjustments for color cancel

When the color cancel function is set on, you can adjust the key signal for color cancel.

- 1 In the <Color Cancel> group of the Chroma Adjust menu, set [Color Cancel] on.
- 2 In the <Color Cancel> group, set [Cancel Key] on.
The cancel key is now on, and you can now adjust the key signal for color cancel.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Clip	Color cancel key reference level	0.00 to 100.00
2	Gain	Color cancel key gain	-100.00 to +100.00

- 3 Make the following settings, as required, in the <Color Cancel> group.

When setting [Key Position] on and adjusting the color cancel key edge position

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	H Phase	Move left and right edges of the color cancel key simultaneously	Left edge position value shown

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
2	Left	Move left edge of the color cancel key	-3.00 to +3.00
3	Right	Move right edge of the color cancel key	-3.00 to +3.00

When setting [Window] on and adjusting the detection range of the color cancel key

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Crop	Crop value	100.00 to 0.00
2	Angle	Angle value	180.00 to 0.00

For details of the crop and angle parameters, see “Chroma key window” (page 90).

When setting [Y Balance] on and adjusting the ratio in which Y balance is added to the color cancel key

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Mixture	Ratio of Y balance key	0.00 to 100.00

Adjusting the window

Setting the window (*see page 90*) function on allows you to adjust the detection range used to determine the key signal. When this function is off, the default range is used for the key.

After making sure that the values of Clip, Gain, and Hue are adjusted appropriately, use the following procedure to make the window adjustment.

- 1 In the Chroma Adjust menu, set [Window] on.
- 2 Adjust the following parameters.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Crop	Crop value	100.00 to 0.00
2	Angle	Angle value	180.00 to 0.00

Adjusting the Y balance

Setting the Y balance (*see page 90*) on allows you to specify that, even if the hue is the same, only portions of a particular luminance will be replaced by the background.

- 1 In the Chroma Adjust menu, set [Y Balance] on.
- 2 Adjust the following parameters.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Clip	Luminance range	0.00 to 100.00

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
2	Gain	Key gain	-100.00 to +100.00
3	Luminance	Luminance	0.00 to 100.00

Adjusting the chroma key shadow

This function allows a shadow falling on the (typically blue) background color to be rendered more realistically. Since portions of the (blue) background of less than a certain luminance are treated as shadows, there is no effect on cutting out of the foreground.

- 1 In the Chroma Adjust menu, set [Shadow] on.
- 2 Adjust the following parameters.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Luminance	Reference luminance for shadows	0.00 to 100.00
2	Gain	Shadow key gain	-100.00 to +100.00
3	Density	Shadow opacity	0.00 to 100.00
4	Soft	Shadow softness	0.00 to 100.00

Notes

When chroma key shadow is on, key edge is changed to normal, and soft edge is switched off.

Adjusting the video signal

You can change the gain of the foreground signal, or vary the Hue. There are separate adjustments for the gain of the whole video signal, or Y and C individually.

- 1 In the Chroma Adjust menu, set [FRGD CCR] on.
- 2 Adjust the following parameters.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Video Gain	Overall gain of video signal	-100.00 to +100.00
2	Y Gain	Y signal gain	-100.00 to +100.00
3	C Gain	C signal gain	-100.00 to +100.00
4	Hue	Hue offset amount	-180.00 to +180.00

Key Edge Modifications

To modify the key edge of key 1 on the M/E-1 bank, use the following procedure.

- 1 In the M/E-1 >Key1 menu, select HF2 'Edge.'

The Edge menu appears.

- 2 Select the edge type (*see page 83*) in the <Edge> group.

Normal: unadorned edge

Border: edge with border applied

Drop Border: edge with drop border applied

Shadow: edge with shadow applied

Outline: edge used as outline

Emboss: embossing effect applied to edge

If you select [Normal], skip to step 7.

- 3 Set the border width and other parameters.

When border or outline is selected: The setting parameters depend on the key type and whether the separate edge function is enabled or not. To enable the separate edge function, press [Separate Edge], setting it on.

- **Separate edge off**

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Width	Width	0.00 to 8.00 ^{a)} (0.00 to 100.00) ^{b)}
3	Density	Density	0.00 to 100.00

a) In the "4H mode" and when [Fine Key] (*page 94*) is on, the setting value range is 0.00 to 4.00.

b) When a wipe pattern key or key wipe pattern key is selected as the key type

- **Separate edge on**

The left, right, top, and bottom border or outline widths can be adjusted independently. The separate edge function is only valid when a luminance key, linear key, or chroma key is selected as the key type.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Top	Top edge width	0.00 to 8.00 ^{a)}
2	Left	Left edge width	0.00 to 8.00 ^{a)}
3	Right	Right edge width	0.00 to 8.00 ^{a)}
4	Bottom	Bottom edge width	0.00 to 8.00 ^{a)}
5	Density	Density	0.00 to 100.00

a) In the "4H mode" and when [Fine Key] (*page 94*) is on, the setting value range is 0.00 to 4.00.

When drop border or shadow is selected: The setting parameter values depend on the on/off setting of key drop and the selection of 4H mode/8H mode (*see page 84*).

- **"Key drop off" mode**

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Width	Width	0.00 to 8.00 ^{a)}
2	Position	Position	359.99 to 180.00
3	Density	Density	0.00 to 100.00

- **"Key drop on" mode**

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Width	Width	0.00 to 8.00 ^{a)}
2	Position	Position	359.99 to 0.00
3	Density	Density	0.00 to 100.00

a) In the "4H mode" and when [Fine Key] (*page 94*) is on, the setting value range is 0.00 to 4.00.

When emboss is selected:

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Width	Width	0.00 to 4.00
2	Position	Position	359.99 to 0.00
3	Density ^{a)}	Density	0.00 to 100.00

a) The Density adjustment only affects the key edge. This can be adjusted separately from Key Density, and if Key Density is set to 0.00, the embossed edge effect only can be applied.

To make edge fill adjustments, carry out the settings in step 6.

- 4 Select the edge fill signal in the <Edge Fill> group.

Utility 1 Bus: signal selected on the utility 1 bus
Matte: signal from dedicated color matte generator.
 It becomes possible to adjust color 1.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Luminance	Luminance	0.00 to 100.00
2	Saturation	Saturation	0.00 to 100.00
3	Hue	Hue	359.99 to 0.00

When the edge type is outline, in place of the edge fill signal, the selected key fill signal fills the outline, and elsewhere remains as the background.

- 5 Carry out the following operation, depending on the selection in step 4.

When [Utility 1 Bus] is selected: Press the key delegation button [UTIL1], turning it on, and select the signal in the key row.

When [Matte] is selected: Press [Matte Adjust] in the same EDGE menu, to display the Matte Adjust

menu, and adjust a single color or two-color combination color matte.

You can select whether to use a single color matte or a two-color combination color matte in the <Edge Matte> group.

For the color mix operation, see “Carrying out a color mix for the key edge fill matte” (page 94).

- 6** When emboss is selected for the edge type, adjust the color in the <Emboss Fill> group.

To adjust matte 1 press [Matte1], and to adjust matte 2 press [Matte2], then adjust the following parameters.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Luminance	Luminance	0.00 to 100.00
2	Saturation	Saturation	0.00 to 100.00
3	Hue	Hue	359.99 to 0.00

- 7** To make the edge soft, press [Soft Edge] to set it on, and adjust the softness.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Soft	Edge softness	0.00 to 100.00

For a normal edge, when [Soft Edge] is enabled, [Key Drop] is kept on.

- 8** To make separate fine adjustments to the positions of the left, right, top, and bottom of the source edge, press [Fine Key], to set it on, and adjust the following parameters.

Parameter group [1/2]

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Top	Key top edge position	-2.00 to +2.00
2	Left	Key left edge position	-2.00 to +2.00
3	Right	Key right edge position	-2.00 to +2.00
4	Bottom	Key bottom edge position	-2.00 to +2.00

Parameter group [2/2]

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	H Phase	Key horizontal position	Left edge position value shown
2	V Phase	Key vertical position	Top edge position value shown

Notes

In the emboss function it is not possible to set [Fine Key] on.

- When the edge type is normal, drop border or shadow, enabling the [Fine Key] function keeps [Key Drop] on.
- When applying a border to the key edge, enabling the [Fine Key] function halves the border width setting range.

To fix key fill and key source in key drop off mode

- 1** In the Edge menu, press [Key Delay Mode].

The Key Delay Mode menu appears.

- 2** Press [Frame Delay], setting it to On.

Notes

This function uses the resizer, and therefore the expected result of the setting may not be obtained if conditions do not allow the resizer to be used.

Carrying out a color mix for the key edge fill matte

When you select ‘Matte’ for the edge fill of a border, drop border, or shadow, you can create a combination of color 1 and color 2 using a wipe pattern generated by the dedicated pattern generator.

- 1** In the <Edge Fill> group of the Edge menu, select [Matte], then press [Matte Adjust].

The edge fill Matte Adjust menu appears.

- 2** In the <Edge Matte> group, select [Mix Color], turning it on.

- 3** Adjust the following parameters.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Size	Pattern size	0.00 to 100.00
2	Soft	Softness of pattern edge	0.00 to 100.00
3	Pattern	Pattern number	1 to 24 ^{a)}

a) The patterns are the same as standard wipes. (For details, see “Wipe Pattern List” in (page 301).)

To select the pattern, display the Mix Pattern Select menu by pressing [Mix Pattern] in the edge fill Matte Adjust menu.

After selecting one of the patterns (standard wipe patterns 1 to 24) displayed in the Mix Pattern Select menu, you can adjust the following parameters.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Size	Pattern size	0.00 to 100.00
2	Soft	Softness of pattern edge	0.00 to 100.00

4 Adjust color 1 and color 2.

To adjust color 1 press [Color 1], and to adjust color 2 press [Color 2], turning it on respectively, and adjust the following parameters.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Luminance	Luminance	0.00 to 100.00
2	Saturation	Saturation	0.00 to 100.00
3	Hue	Hue	359.99 to 0.00

5 If required, set the pattern modifiers.

When turning [Position] on and setting the pattern position

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Position H	Horizontal position	-200.00 to +200.00 ^{a)}
2	Position V	Vertical position	-200.00 to +200.00 ^{a)}

a) See page 123.

When turning [Multi] on and replicating the pattern

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	H Multi	Number of repetitions of pattern horizontally	1 to 63
2	V Multi	Number of repetitions of pattern vertically	1 to 63
3	Invert Type	Replication layout	1 to 4 ^{a)}

a) See page 125.

When turning [Aspect] on and setting the aspect ratio of the pattern

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Aspect	Aspect ratio	-100.00 to +100.00 ^{a)}

a) See page 125.

When turning [Angle] on in the <Rotation> group and inclining the pattern

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Angle	Angle of pattern rotation	-100.00 to +100.00 ^{a)}

a) See page 124.

When turning [Speed] on in the <Rotation> group and rotating the pattern at a constant speed

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Speed	Rotation rate of pattern	-100.00 to +100.00 ^{a)}

a) See page 124.

6 To interchange color 1 and color 2, press [Color Invert], turning it on.

Applying the zabton effects

1 In the Edge menu, press [Zabton], turning it on.

2 Adjust the following parameters.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Size	Pattern size	0.00 to 100.00
2	Soft	Pattern edge softness	0.00 to 100.00
3	Density	Density	0.00 to 100.00

Notes

If in the pattern selection described below you select “Mask Pattern,” and “Box” for the main mask, the “Size” parameter here cannot be adjusted. Set “Size” in the Main Mask menu.

3 To adjust the pattern and color, press [Zabton Adjust].

The Zabton Adjust menu appears.

4 In the <Zabton Pattern> group, select the pattern.

Key Wipe: Use a key wipe.

You can change this pattern by pressing [Pattern Select] to open the menu for key wipe pattern selection (Pattern Select menu), and make adjustments by pressing [Pattern Adjust] to open the menu for pattern adjustment (Wipe Adjust menu).

Key Edge Pattern: Use a color mixing pattern for key edge.

You can change this pattern by pressing [Pattern Select] to open the menu for edge color mix dedicated wipe pattern selection (Mix Pattern Select menu), and make adjustments by pressing [Pattern Adjust] to open the menu for pattern adjustment (Matte Adjust menu).

Mask Pattern: Use the main mask Box or Pattern.

You can also press [Pattern Select], and in the corresponding pattern adjustment menu, change the pattern.

- 5 To adjust the color, press [Zabton Color] and adjust the following parameters.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Luminance	Luminance	0.00 to 100.00
2	Saturation	Saturation	0.00 to 100.00
3	Hue	Hue	359.99 to 0.00
4	Density	Density	0.00 to 100.00

Masks

There are two masks, which can be used to mask off unneeded parts of a key or background, or to remove defects, and these are known as the main mask and subsidiary mask.

You can either use the main mask and subsidiary mask independently, or at the same time.

Using the main mask

For example, to use the main mask for key 1 on the M/E-1 bank, use the following procedure.

- In the M/E-1 >Key1 menu, select HF3 'Main Mask.'
The Main Mask menu appears.
- In the <Mask Type> group, select the mask type.
Key Mask: Masks a part of a key.
Bkgd Mask: Masks a part of a background.
- In the <Mask Source> group, select the mask source.
Box: signal from the dedicated box generator
Pattern: signal from the dedicated pattern generator
- Set the mask source parameters.

When a box is selected

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Top	Top position	-100.00 to +100.00
2	Left	Left position	-100.00 to +100.00
3	Right	Right position	-100.00 to +100.00
4	Bottom	Bottom position	-100.00 to +100.00
5	Soft	Box softness	0.00 to 100.00

When a pattern is selected

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Size	Pattern size	0.00 to 100.00

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
2	Soft	Edge softness	0.00 to 100.00
5	Pattern	Pattern number	1 to 24 ^{a)}

a) The pattern is the same as a standard wipe. (See "Wipe Pattern List" in Appendix (Volume 1) (page 301).)

To select the pattern, display the Mask Ptn Select menu by pressing the [Mask Ptn Select] button in the Main Mask menu.

After selecting one of the patterns (standard wipe patterns 1 to 24) displayed in the Mask Ptn Select menu, you can adjust the following parameters.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Size	Pattern size	0.00 to 100.00
2	Soft	Edge softness	0.00 to 100.00

- To invert the black and white sense of the mask source, press the [Mask Invert] button, turning it on.
- When a pattern is selected as the mask source, set the pattern modifiers as required.

When turning [Position] on and setting the pattern position

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Position H	Horizontal position	-200.00 to +200.00 ^{a)}
2	Position V	Vertical position	-200.00 to +200.00 ^{a)}

a) See page 123.

When turning [Multi] on and replicating the pattern

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	H Multi	Number of repetitions of pattern horizontally	1 to 63
2	V Multi	Number of repetitions of pattern vertically	1 to 63
3	Invert Type	Replication layout	1 to 4 ^{a)}

a) See page 125.

When turning [Aspect] on and setting the aspect ratio of the pattern

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Aspect	Aspect ratio	-100.00 to +100.00 ^{a)}

a) See page 125.

When turning [Angle] on in the <Rotation> group and setting the angle of the pattern rotation

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Angle	Pattern angle	-100.00 to +100.00 ^{a)}

a) See page 124.

When turning [Speed] on in the <Rotation> group and setting the rate of pattern rotation

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Speed	Rate of pattern rotation	-100.00 to +100.00 ^{a)}

a) See page 124.

Using the subsidiary mask

For example, to use the subsidiary mask for key 1 on the M/E-1 bank, use the following procedure.

1 In the M/E-1 >Key1 menu, select HF4 ‘Sub Mask.’

The Sub Mask menu appears.

2 In the <Mask Type> group, select the mask type.

Key Mask: Masks a part of a key.

Bkgd Mask: Masks a part of a background.

3 In the <Mask Source> group, select the mask source.

Wipe: wipe pattern selected for a transition

If you select [Wipe], select the pattern and make modifier settings in the M/E-1 >Wipe menu (see page 117), then return to this M/E-1 >Key1 menu. In the case of a wipe pattern selected for a mask, the modifier [Edge] and [Direction] settings are not available.

Utility 1 Bus: signal selected on the utility 1 bus

When you selected [Utility 1 Bus], press the key delegation button [UTIL1], turning it on, in the M/E-1 bank and select the signal in the key row.

4 Set the mask source parameters.

When wipe is selected

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Size	Pattern size	0.00 to 100.00
2	Soft	Edge softness	0.00 to 100.00

When utility 1 bus is selected

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Clip	Reference level for creating mask signal	+109.59 to -7.31

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
2	Gain	Gain	-100.00 to +100.00

5 To invert the black and white sense of the mask source, press the [Mask Invert] button, turning it on.

Applying a DME Effect to a Key

Notes

- When the SDI interface is used to connect the DME, DME effects (including DME wipes) can be used in only one place for one M/E bank.
- When the dedicated interface is used to connect the DME, the number of keys to which DME effects (including DME wipes) can be applied simultaneously for one M/E bank varies as follows depending on the execution mode of the DME wipe pattern selected for the background.
- MVS-8000X

Applicable block	Key to which DME effects are applied	DME wipe pattern for background	Number of keys to which DME effects can be applied simultaneously
Other than M/E-4	Keys 1 to 4	No DME wipe used	2
		One-channel mode	1
		Two- or three-channel mode	0
	Keys 5 to 8	-	2 ^{a)}
M/E-4	Keys 1 to 4	No DME wipe used	2 ^{b)}
		One-channel mode	1 ^{c)}
		Two- or three-channel mode	0
	Keys 5 to 8	-	0

Key to which DME effects are applied	DME wipe pattern for background	Number of keys to which DME effects can be applied simultaneously
Keys 1 to 4	No DME wipe used	2
	One-channel mode	1
	Two- or three-channel mode	0
Keys 5 to 8	-	2 ^{a)}

- a) 0 when the system signal format is 1080P.
- b) 1 when the system signal format is 1080P and the DME input/output signal format is set to dual link mode.
- c) 0 when the system signal format is 1080P and the DME input/output signal format is set to dual link mode.

- When combining DMEs connected via the dedicated interface and the SDI interface, you can increase the number of keys to which DME effects are applied simultaneously. (Requires a setting in setup.)
For details, see “Setting DME and Switcher Interfaces” in Chapter 20 (Volume 2).

Assigning a DME to a key

- 1 In the M/E-1 >Key1 menu, select HF5 ‘Processed Key.’

The Processed Key menu appears.

- 2 In the <DME Select> group, select the DME channel (DME1 to DME8) to be used.

The lit colors of [DME1] to [DME8] indicate the DME assignment.

Lit green: Shows the DME assigned to the currently selected key.

Lit amber: Shows the DME assigned to a key other than the currently selected key.

Off: DME is not assigned.

To select a DME being used by another keyer

Press [Override], turning it on, then select the DME channel.

The later selection is valid, and the button lights green. You can check the DME operating status in the Status menu (see page 182).

Selecting the video signal for the DME assigned to a key

For the operating procedure, see “Selecting the video signal for a DME assigned to a key” (page 101).

Assigning a DME output signal as a monitor signal

- 1 In the Processed Key menu, press [Monitor].
The Monitor menu appears.
- 2 Press [Monitor Set], turning it on.
- 3 In the <DME Select> group, select the DME channel (DME1 to DME8) to be used.

This assigns the selected DME output to DME MON V and DME MON K.

The colors with which [DME1] to [DME8] are lit show the key assignment status.

Lit green: DME currently being monitored

Lit amber: DME that can be monitored

Off: Unassigned DME

Specifying the Key Output Destination

Using the key processed keyer signals (external processed key)

To select the key processed keyer key fill and key source signals on the AUX bus or edit preview bus, press [Ext Proc Key] turning it on, in the Processed Key menu.

This assigns the key fill and key source signals for M/E-1 key 1 to reentry signals PROC V and PROC K.

When a DME is selected on the keyer, the key fill and key source signals to which a DME effect is applied are assigned.

Notes

You cannot select the PROC V and PROC K signals using the cross-point selection buttons of the M/E or PGM/PST bank.

Using the key processed keyer signals or signals to which a DME effect is applied in frame memory (frame memory feed)

To use the key processed keyer key fill and key source signals on the frame memory source buses, in the Processed Key menu, press [FM Feed]. [Ext Proc Key] turns on, and the key fill and key source signals processed on the currently selected keyer are automatically assigned to frame memory source buses 1 and 2. When a DME is selected on the keyer, the key fill and key source signals to which a DME effect is applied are assigned.

Key Modify Clear

A simple button operation or a menu operation returns the key settings to the initial status settings. Press [Default Recall] at the lower left of the menu display, turning it on, then press the corresponding VF button (VF1 to VF4) to return the key settings to their initial status.

For details of the initial status, see “Saving User-Defined Settings” in Chapter 18 (Volume 2). For the menu operation to return the key state to that set in initial status, see “Returning to Default State in Function Groupings” (page 53).

Blink Function

With the blink function, you can obtain the following effects.

Key blink: The key is alternately inserted and deleted at regular intervals. You can set the period of blinking, and the proportion of each cycle for which the key is inserted.

Edge blink: The key fill and key edge fill signals are interchanged at regular intervals. You can set the period of blinking, and the proportion of each cycle for which the original state holds.

The blink settings are in the Transition menu for each key.

Using the blink function

For example, to make the required settings for key 1 on the M/E-1 bank, use the following procedure.

- 1** In the M/E-1 >Key1 menu, select HF6 ‘Transition.’
The Transition menu appears.
- 2** In the <Blink> group, select [Key Blink] or [Edge Blink] to set it on.
- 3** Set the blink parameters.

When key blink is selected

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Blink Rate	Length of blink cycle	1 to 100
2	Duty	Proportion of cycle for which key inserted	0.00 to 100.00

When edge blink is selected

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Blink Rate	Length of blink cycle	1 to 100

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
2	Duty	Proportion of cycle for which original state holds	0.00 to 100.00

Video Processing

You can adjust the luminance and hue of the selected key fill signal.

For example, to apply video processing to the signal selected on the M/E-1 bank key 1 fill bus, use the following procedure.

- 1** In the M/E-1 >Key1 menu, select HF7 ‘Video Process.’
The Video Process menu appears.
- 2** Press [Video Process], turning it on.
- 3** Adjust the following parameters.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Video Gain	Video gain	-200.00 to +200.00
2	Y Gain	Luminance gain	-200.00 to +200.00
3	C Gain	Chrominance gain	-200.00 to +200.00
4	Hue Delay	Hue delay	-180.00 to +180.00
5	Black Level	Luminance black level	-7.31 to +109.59

To return adjustment values to their defaults
Press [Unity].

Key Setting Operations with the Cross-Point Control Block

You can make a key signal selection using the cross-point control block of the M/E-1 or PGM/PST bank including the relevant key.

Applying a DME Effect to a Key

Checking the DME status

As an example, to check the DME status for M/E1 key 1, hold down the key row delegation button [KEY1] in the M/E1 bank.

While the button is held down, the [DME1] to [DME4] buttons light, and the colors with which they light indicate the status, as follows.

Lit green: A DME is assigned to M/E1 key 1. In the M/E1 independent key transition and transition control blocks, the transition type for KEY1 is set to a DME wipe.

Lit amber: A DME is assigned to an M/E1 key other than key 1.

In the independent key transition and transition control blocks, the transition type for other than key 1 of M/E-1 is set to a DME wipe.

Not lit: No DME is assigned, or a DME wipe is not selected.

You can check the DME operating status in the Status menu (*see page 182*).

Assigning DMEs to a key

As an example, to assign DME1 and DME2 to key 1, in the cross-point control block, hold down the key row delegation button [KEY1] and press the buttons ([DME1] to [DME4]) for the DME channels to be used.

In this case, press [DME1], followed by [DME2]. The buttons pressed ([DME1] and [DME2]) light green and the DMEs are assigned to key 1.

Notes

- If the DME is selected on another keyer, the later selection takes precedence and the button lights green. By a setting in the Setup menu, you can make the first selection take precedence.
For details, see “Setting the Button Operation Mode” in Chapter 18 (Volume 2).

- When assigning two or more DMEs to a key, use consecutive channels.

Notes

On the MVS-800X, when the signal format is 1080P, the combination of two consecutively numbered DME channels that can be selected is DME1 and DME2, DME3 and DME4, DME5 and DME6, or DME7 and DME8. It is not possible to combine three or more DME channels.

On the MVS-7000X, when the signal format is 1080P, the above restriction also applies if using the MVE-8000A. There is no such restriction for the MKS-7470X/7471X.

- When the SDI interface is used to connect the DME, DME effects (including DME wipes) can be used in only one place for one M/E bank.
- When the dedicated interface is used to connect the DME, the number of keys to which DME effects (including DME wipes) can be applied simultaneously for one M/E bank varies as follows depending on the execution mode of the DME wipe pattern selected for the background.
- MVS-8000X

Applicable block	Key to which DME effects are applied	DME wipe pattern for background	Number of keys to which DME effects can be applied simultaneously
Other than M/E-4	Keys 1 to 4	No DME wipe used	2
		One-channel mode	1
		Two- or three-channel mode	0
	Keys 5 to 8	-	2 ^{a)}
M/E-4	Keys 1 to 4	No DME wipe used	2 ^{b)}
		One-channel mode	1 ^{c)}
		Two- or three-channel mode	0
	Keys 5 to 8	-	0

- MVS-7000X

Key to which DME effects are applied	DME wipe pattern for background	Number of keys to which DME effects can be applied simultaneously
Keys 1 to 4	No DME wipe used	2
	One-channel mode	1
	Two- or three-channel mode	0
Keys 5 to 8	-	2 ^{a)}

- a) 0 when the system signal format is 1080P.
- b) 1 when the system signal format is 1080P and the DME input/output signal format is set to dual link mode.
- c) 0 when the system signal format is 1080P and the DME input/output signal format is set to dual link mode.

- When combining DMEs connected via the dedicated interface and the SDI interface, you can increase the number of keys to which DME effects are applied simultaneously. (Requires a setting in setup.)
For details, see “Setting DME and Switcher Interfaces” in Chapter 20 (Volume 2).

Ending a DME assignment

As an example, to end the assignment of a DME to key 1, in the cross-point control block, hold down the key row delegation button [KEY 1] and press the DME button ([DME1] to [DME4]) that is lit green. The button goes off, and this ends the assignment.

Selecting the video signal for a DME assigned to a key

When using the dedicated interface, proceed as follows.

- 1** In the cross-point control block, press the key row delegation button [KEY 1].
 The assigned DME button lights amber.
- 2** Press the DME button (one of [DME1] to [DME4]) lit amber, which then lights green.
- 3** To select the video signal for the side of the DME image that is currently visible, make the signal selection in the key row.
- 4** To select the video signal for the side of the DME image that is currently not visible (the back side), hold down the DME button (one of [DME1] to [DME4]) and make the signal selection in the key row.

When two or more DME channels are assigned, select the video signal for each DME in the same way.

When using the SDI interface

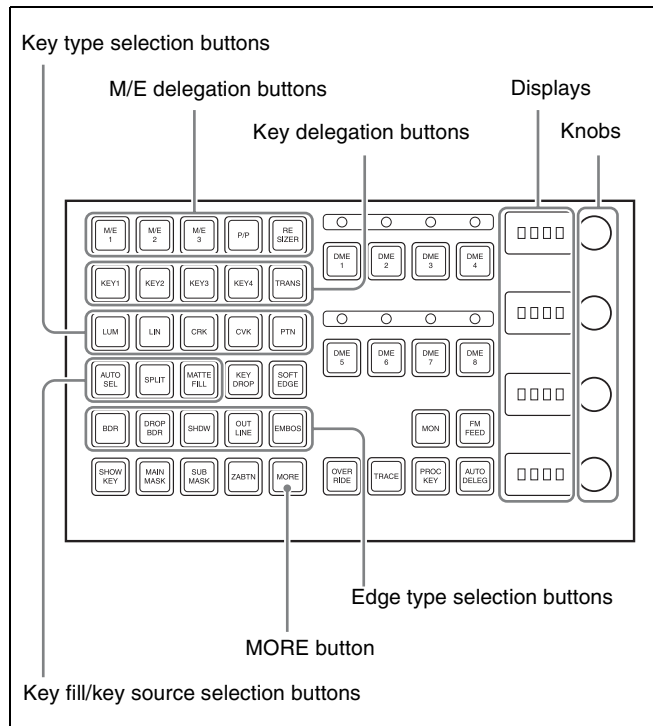
For keyer channels 3 and 4, select the video signals on the AUX bus assigned in a Setup menu (Engineering Setup >Switcher >Device Interface >DME Setting >DME SDI Interface).

In setup (Engineering Setup >Switcher >Device Interface menu), if “Dual DME units” is selected, the second channel video signal is also selected on the AUX bus.

For details, see “Interfacing With External Devices (Device Interface Menu)” in Chapter 19 (Volume 2).

Key Setting Operations with the Key Control Block

This section describes the basic procedures for key settings using the key control block.



Notes

To select [M/E 4], [Key5] to [Key8], and [DSK5] to [DSK8] in the key control block, a previous assignment in the Setup menu is required (see page 338).

Selecting the Bank and Keyer

To make key settings, first select the bank (from M/E-1 to M/E-3 and PGM/PST) and keyer, then assign them to the key control block.

For example, to set key 1 on M/E-1 with the key control block, use the following procedure.

1 Using the M/E delegation buttons in the key control block, press the [M/E1] button, setting it on.

2 Using the key delegation buttons in the key control block, press the [KEY1] button, setting it on.

This assigns the key control block to M/E-1 key 1.

Selecting the Key Type

To select the key type, press one of the key type (see page 82) selection buttons in the key control block.

[LUM] button: luminance key

[LIN] button: linear key

[CRK] button: chroma key

[CVK] button: color vector key

[PTN] button: key wipe pattern key

When using a wipe pattern key as the key type, in the <Key Type> group of the Type menu for the keyer, select [Wipe Pattern] and make the settings.

The button you pressed lights green, and you can now adjust the parameters with the knobs. The display beside each knob shows the first letter of the parameter name and the three-digit setting value.

Parameter Adjustment with the Knobs

When the button for a function requiring parameter settings is pressed (that is, on), you can set the parameters with the four knobs. If there are more than four values to be assigned to the knobs, the [MORE] button lights amber. At this point, press the [MORE] button, which turns green, to assign the fifth and subsequent parameters to the knobs, so that the parameter settings can be made.

When the [LUM] or [LIN] button is lit green

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Clip	Reference level for generating the key signal	+109 to -7
2	Gain	Key sensitivity	-100 (shown as -00) to +100
3	Density	Key density	0 to 100
4	Filter	Filter coefficient	1 to 9

When the [CRK] button is lit green

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Clip	Chroma key reference level	0 to 100
2	Gain	Key sensitivity	-100 (shown as -00) to +100
3	Hue	Hue	0 to 359
4	Density	Key density	0 to 100

- When [Key Active] is off, only the parameters Hue and Density are displayed.
- When both [Key Active] and [Color Cancel] are off, only the parameter Density is displayed.

When the [CVK] button is lit green

Parameter group [1/2]

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Y Clip	Reference level for Y signal	+109 to -7
2	Y Gain	Y signal sensitivity	-100 (shown as -00) to +100
3	C Clip	Reference level for chrominance signal	100 to 0
4	C Gain	Chrominance signal sensitivity	-100 (shown as -00) to +100

Parameter group [2/2]

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Y Filter	Y signal filter coefficient	1 to 9
2	C Filter	Chrominance signal filter coefficient	1 to 9
4	Density	Key density	0 to 100

When the [PTN] button is lit green

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Size	Pattern size	0 to 100
2	Soft	Edge softness	0 to 100
3	Density	Key density	0 to 100

Selecting Key Fill

Select whether to use a color matte as key fill, or the signal on the key fill bus.

When using a color matte: Press the [MATTE FILL] button, setting it on. The button lights green, and you can now set the parameters with the knobs.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Luminance	Color 1 luminance	0 to 100
2	Saturation	Color 1 saturation	0 to 100
3	Hue	Color 1 hue	359 to 0

When [Mix Color] is selected in the key fill Matte Adjust menu, you can further adjust color 2.

When [Mix Color] is on, and the [MORE] button is lit amber

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Luminance	Color 1 luminance	0 to 100
2	Saturation	Color 1 saturation	0 to 100
3	Hue	Color 1 hue	359 to 0
4	Size	Pattern size	0 to 100

When [Mix Color] is on, and the [MORE] button is lit green

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Luminance	Color 2 luminance	0 to 100
2	Saturation	Color 2 saturation	0 to 100
3	Hue	Color 2 hue	359 to 0
4	Soft	Edge softness	0 to 100

When using the key fill bus signal: Press the [MATTE FILL] button, turning it off.

To select the key fill signal, use the key bus buttons in the cross-point control block.

Selecting Key Source

- To use the key source paired with the key fill signal selected on the key fill bus, press the [AUTO SEL] button, turning it on. The pairing of the cross-point buttons for key fill and key source is carried out in the Setup menu.
For details, see “Cross-Point Settings (Xpt Assign Menu)” in Chapter 19 (Volume 2).
- To select key source independently of the key fill signal selected on the key fill bus and paired with key source, hold down the key delegation button [KEY 1], then press the desired key row button in the cross-point control block.
- To use as key source the same signal as the key fill signal selected on the key fill bus, select the SELF mode by pressing the [AUTO SEL] button and [SPLIT] button simultaneously so that both are off. When chroma key is selected as the key type, select the SELF mode.

Key Adjustments (Key Control Block)

This section describes the various key adjustments provided by the control panel key control block.

Key Edge Modifications

To apply a modification to the key edge (*see page 83*), press one of the edge type selection buttons in the key control block.

[BDR] button: border

[DROP BDR] button: drop border

[SHDW] button: shadow

[OUTLINE] button: outline

[EMBOS] button: emboss

The pressed button lights green, and you can now adjust the parameters with the knobs. The display beside each knob shows the first letter of the parameter name and the three-digit setting value.

Setting the border parameters

When the [BDR] button is lit green, the parameter settings depend on the key type and whether the separate edge function is active. To activate the separate edge function, press [Separate Edge], setting it on, in the Edge menu for the key.

Separate edge off

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Width	Border width	0 to 8 ^{a)} (0 to 100) ^{b)}
4	Density	Border density	0 to 100

a) In the “4H mode” and when [Fine Key] (*page 94*) is on, the setting value range is 0 to 4.

b) When a wipe pattern key or key wipe pattern key is selected as the key type

Separate edge on

The border width settings can be made independently for left, right, top, and bottom sides. The separate edge function is only available when luminance key, linear key, or chroma key is selected as the key type.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Top	Top edge width	0 to 8 ^{a)}
2	Left	Left edge width	0 to 8 ^{a)}
3	Right	Right edge width	0 to 8 ^{a)}
4	Bottom	Bottom edge width	0 to 8 ^{a)}

a) In the “4H mode” and when [Fine Key] (*page 94*) is on, the setting value range is 0 to 4.

To adjust the edge fill color

When [BDR] is selected, the [MORE] button lights amber. Pressing the [MORE] button to turn it green then allows you to adjust the edge fill color parameters with the knobs.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Luminance	Luminance	0 to 100
2	Saturation	Saturation	0 to 100
3	Hue	Hue	359 to 0
4	Density	Density	0 to 100

Setting the drop border or shadow parameters

When the [DROP BDR] or [SHDW] button is lit green, the parameter settings differ between the “key drop OFF” and “key drop ON” modes (*see page 84*) as shown below. Switching between these two modes is made by turning the [KEY DROP] button on or off.

“Key drop OFF” mode

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Width	Width	0 to 8 ^{a)}
2	Position	Position	359 to 180
4	Density	Density	0 to 100

a) In the “4H mode” and when [Fine Key] (*page 94*) is on, the setting value range is 0 to 4.

“Key drop ON” mode

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Width	Width	0 to 8 ^{a)}
2	Position	Position	359 to 0
4	Density	Density	0 to 100

a) In the “4H mode” and when [Fine Key] (*page 94*) is on, the setting value range is 0 to 4.

To adjust the edge fill color

When [DROP BDR] or [SHDW] is selected, the [MORE] button lights amber. Pressing the [MORE] button to turn it green then allows you to adjust the edge fill color parameters with the knobs.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Luminance	Luminance	0 to 100
2	Saturation	Saturation	0 to 100
3	Hue	Hue	359 to 0
4	Density	Density	0 to 100

Setting the outline parameters

When the [OUTLINE] button is lit green, the parameter settings depend on the key type and whether the separate

edge function is active. To activate the separate edge function, press [Separate Edge], setting it on, in the Edge menu for the key.

Separate edge off

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Width	Outline width	0 to 8 ^{a)} (0 to 100) ^{b)}
4	Density	Outline density	0 to 100

a) In the “4H mode” and when [Fine Key] (page 94) is on, the setting value range is 0 to 4.

b) When a wipe pattern key or key wipe pattern key is selected as the key type

Separate edge on

The outline width settings can be made independently for left, right, top, and bottom sides. The separate edge function is only available when luminance key, linear key, or chroma key is selected as the key type.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Top	Top edge width	0 to 8 ^{a)}
2	Left	Left edge width	0 to 8 ^{a)}
3	Right	Right edge width	0 to 8 ^{a)}
4	Bottom	Bottom edge width	0 to 8 ^{a)}

a) In the “4H mode” and when [Fine Key] (page 94) is on, the setting value range is 0 to 4.

When [Outline] is selected with separate edge on, the [MORE] button lights amber. Pressing the [MORE] button to turn it green then allows you to adjust the key fill density parameter with a knob.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
4	Density	Outline density	0 to 100

Setting the embossing parameters

When the [EMBOS] button is lit green, adjust the following parameters.

Knob	Parameter	Setting values
1	Width	0 to 4
2	Position	359 to 0
4	Density	0 to 100

Selecting a normal edge

When all five edge type selection buttons are off, a normal edge is selected. If one of the buttons is lit, press it, turning it off.

Softening the edge

Press the [SOFT EDGE] button, turning it on. The button lights green, and you can now adjust the softness with the knob.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Soft	Edge softness	0 to 100

- For a normal edge, when [SOFT EDGE] is enabled, “Key Drop” mode turns on.
- When a luminance key or linear key is selected as the key type, and clean mode is enabled, enabling [SOFT EDGE] ends the clean mode.

Applying the zabton effects

When the [ZABTN] button is lit green, adjust the following parameters.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Size	Pattern size	0 to 100
2	Soft	Pattern edge softness	0 to 100

Press the [MORE] button lit amber, changing it to green, then adjust the following parameters.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Luminance	Luminance	0 to 100
2	Saturation	Saturation	0 to 100
3	Hue	Hue	359 to 0
4	Density	Density	0 to 100

Masks

Using the main mask

In the key control block, press the [MAIN MASK] button, turning it on.

The parameter settings depend on the mask source selected as [Box] or [Pattern] in the <Mask Source> group of the Main Mask menu for the key.

When box is selected

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Top	Top position	–100 (shown as –00) to +100
2	Left	Left position	–100 (shown as –00) to +100
3	Right	Right position	–100 (shown as –00) to +100
4	Bottom	Bottom position	–100 (shown as –00) to +100

When box is selected and the [MORE] button is lit amber, there are more settings. Press the [MORE] button, so that it changes from amber to green to make the extra setting.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Soft	Box softness	0 to 100

When pattern is selected

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Size	Pattern size	0 to 100
2	Soft	Edge softness	0 to 100
3	Pattern	Pattern number	1 to 24 ^{a)}

a) The pattern is the same as a standard wipe. (See “Wipe Pattern List” (page 301).)

Using the subsidiary mask

In the key control block, press the [SUB MASK] button, turning it on. The parameter settings depend on the mask source selected as [Wipe] or [Utility 1 Bus] in the <Mask Source> group of the Sub Mask menu for the key.

When wipe is selected

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Size	Pattern size	0 to 100
2	Soft	Edge softness	0 to 100

When utility 1 bus is selected

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Clip	Reference level for creating mask signal	+109 to -7
2	Gain	Gain	-100 (shown as -00) to +100

Applying a DME Effect to a Key

Notes

- When the SDI interface is used to connect the DME, DME effects (including DME wipes) can be used in only one place for one M/E bank.
- When the dedicated interface is used to connect the DME, the number of keys to which DME effects (including DME wipes) can be applied simultaneously for one M/E bank varies as follows depending on the execution mode of the DME wipe pattern selected for the background.

- MVS-8000X

Applicable block	Key to which DME effects are applied	DME wipe pattern for background	Number of keys to which DME effects can be applied simultaneously
Other than M/E-4	Keys 1 to 4	No DME wipe used	2
		One-channel mode	1
		Two- or three-channel mode	0
	Keys 5 to 8	-	2 ^{a)}
M/E-4	Keys 1 to 4	No DME wipe used	2 ^{b)}
		One-channel mode	1 ^{c)}
		Two- or three-channel mode	0
	Keys 5 to 8	-	0

- MVS-7000X

Key to which DME effects are applied	DME wipe pattern for background	Number of keys to which DME effects can be applied simultaneously
Keys 1 to 4	No DME wipe used	2
	One-channel mode	1
	Two- or three-channel mode	0
Keys 5 to 8	-	2 ^{a)}

a) 0 when the system signal format is 1080P.

b) 1 when the system signal format is 1080P and the DME input/output signal format is set to dual link mode.

c) 0 when the system signal format is 1080P and the DME input/output signal format is set to dual link mode.

- When combining DMEs connected via the dedicated interface and the SDI interface, you can increase the number of keys to which DME effects are applied simultaneously. (Requires a setting in setup.)
For details, see “Setting DME and Switcher Interfaces” in Chapter 20 (Volume 2).

Assigning a DME to a key

- 1 In the key control block, press the delegation buttons [M/E1] and [KEY1].

- 2 Using the DME channel selection buttons, select the DME channel (DME1 to DME8) for applying the effect.

The lit colors of the [DME1] to [DME8] buttons indicate the DME assignment.

Lit green: Shows the DME assigned to the currently selected key.

Lit amber: Shows the DME assigned to a key other than the currently selected key.

Off: DME is not assigned.

To select a DME being used by another keyer

Press [Override], turning it on, then select the DME channel.

The later selection is valid, and the button lights green.

You can check the DME operating status in the Status menu (*see page 182*).

Selecting the video signal for the DME assigned to a key

For the operating procedure, see “Selecting the video signal for a DME assigned to a key” (page 101).

Assigning the DME output signal to a monitor signal

- 1 Holding down the output destination specification button [MON] in the key control block, use the DME channel selection buttons to select the DME channel (DME1 to DME8) you want to use.

The selected DME output is assigned to DME MON V and DME MON K.

- 2 To check the DME assignment status, hold down just the [MON] button.

While it is held down, the lit color of the [DME1] to [DME8] buttons shows the key assignment status.

Lit green: Shows the DME currently being monitored.

Lit amber: Shows a DME which can be monitored.

Off: DME is not assigned.

Other Key Setting Operations

Using an external processed key

You can select and use the key processed keyer key fill and key source signals on the AUX buses.

- 1 Select the keyer to be allocated.

- 2 In the key control block, press [PROC KEY], turning it on.

The button lights amber, and on the currently selected keyer, the key fill and key source are assigned to reentry signals PROC V and PROC K.

When a DME is selected on the currently selected keyer, the key fill and key source signals to which the DME effect is applied are assigned to PROC V and PROC K.

Notes

You cannot select the PROC V and PROC K signals using the cross-point selection buttons of the M/E or PGM/PST bank.

Using a frame memory feed

When you press the [FM FEED] button in the key control block, it lights momentarily amber, then the key fill and key source signals processed in the currently selected keyer are assigned to frame memory sources 1 and 2.

If a DME is selected on the currently selected keyer, then the key fill and key source signals to which a DME effect is applied are assigned to frame memory sources 1 and 2. Carrying out a frame memory feed causes the [PROC KEY] button to light amber.

Using the show key function

While the [SHOW KEY] button is held down, the key-processed key source signal appears on the specified output. (Show key mode)

Even when the [SHOW KEY] button is released, for a preset time the show key mode is maintained. You can specify the output to which the show key function is applied and set the time for which the show key mode is maintained after releasing the button in a Setup menu.

For details see “Settings for the Show Key Function” in Chapter 20 (Volume 2).

Using the auto delegation function

To couple the selection in the key delegation buttons of the independent key transition control block so that the key control block delegation selection is automatically switched, in the key control block press the [AUTO DELEG] button, turning it on.

Returning the key adjustment values to their defaults

Holding down a key type button ([LUM], [LIN], [CRK], [CVK], or [PTN]) recalls the key default values (*page 85*).

Key modify clear

When an M/E delegation button is held down, holding down a key delegation button together returns the key settings to the initial status settings.

For details of the initial status, see “Saving User-Defined Settings” in Chapter 18 (Volume 2).

Resizer

Resizer allows you to apply DME-like effects such as image shrinking, magnification and movement, rotation as well as change of the aspect ratio, to the processed key. The following functions are available.

- Two-dimensional transformations of keys (page 108)
- Key rotation around on the x- or y-axis
- Resizer interpolation settings (page 111)
- Resizer crop/border settings (page 111)
- Resizer effect settings (page 112)
(wide key border, drop shadow, edge enhance, mosaic, defocus, mask)

Notes

- The image of the key manipulated by resizer has a one-frame delay.
- Some effects of resizer are different from what you would expect of DME effects.

Restrictions on the use of effects

There are restrictions on combined use of resizer effects themselves and that with DME wipes.

For details, see “Impossibility of simultaneous use within the same keyer” (page 115).

Relation between resizer and other effects

You cannot apply DME effects to a key for which the resizer function is enabled. When one of the three functions – resizer, DME wipe and DME effects – is enabled, the other two are disabled.

Two-Dimensional Transformations and Rotation of Keys

Notes

When the screen aspect ratio is 4:3 in HD format, when the resizer is used to shrink a video image, this is applied to the 16:9 screen including the added video on the left and right sides. Use the crop function as required to extract the 4:3 image.

Menu operations for key shrinking, magnification, rotation and movement

For example, to shrink, magnify, rotate or move key 1 of the M/E-1 bank, use the following procedure.

- 1 In the M/E-1 >Key1 >Processed Key menu, press [Resizer], turning it on.
- 2 Adjust the following parameters with the knobs.

Parameter group [1/2]

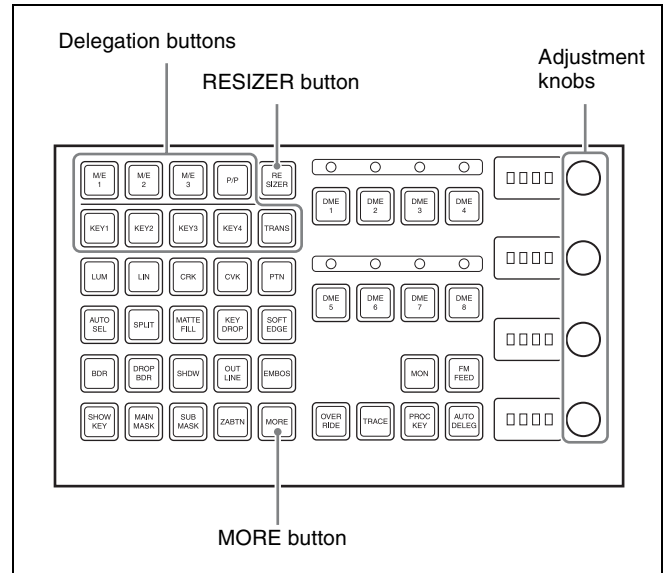
Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Location X	Move key horizontally	HD -99.9999 to +99.9999
			SD 4:3 -33.3333 to +33.3333
			SD 16:9 -24.9999 to +24.9999
2	Location Y	Move key vertically	HD -99.9999 to +99.9999
			SD 4:3 -33.3333 to +33.3333
			SD 16:9 -24.9999 to +24.9999
3	Size	Magnify or shrink key	0.0000 to 99.9999
4 a)	Rotation X	Rotate key horizontally	-99.9999 to +99.9999
4 b)	Rotation Y	Rotate key vertically	-99.9999 + 99.9999
5	Perspective	Change perspective	0.0000 to 1.0000

- a) [X] is turned on in the <Rotation> group of the Rotation menu.
 b) [Y] is turned on in the <Rotation> group of the Rotation menu.

Parameter group [2/2]

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Aspect X	Change aspect ratio horizontally	0.0000 to 99.9999
2	Aspect Y	Change aspect ratio vertically	0.0000 to 99.9999
3	Aspect Ratio	Change aspect ratio horizontally and vertically at a time	0.0000 to 2.0000

Key control block (MKS-8035 Key Control Module, option) operations for key shrinking, magnification, rotation and movement



- 1 Use the delegation buttons to select the key to which you want to apply a resizer function.
- 2 Press the [RESIZER] button, turning it on.
- 3 Adjust the following parameters with the knobs.
(To switch between displaying parameter group 1/2 and 2/2, press the [MORE] button.)

Parameter group [1/2]

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	X	Move key horizontally	HD -99 to +99
			SD 4:3 -33 to +33
			SD 16:9 -24 to +24
2	Y	Move key vertically	HD -99 to +99
			SD 4:3 -33 to +33
			SD 16:9 -24 to +24
3	S	Magnify or shrink key	0.0 to 99

Parameter group [2/2]

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	X	Change aspect ratio horizontally	0.0 to 99

Parameter group [2/2]

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
2	Y	Change aspect ratio vertically	0.0 to 99
3	R	Change aspect ratio horizontally and vertically at a time	0.0 to 2.0

4 To specify the direction of rotation, press the [ROT X] or [ROT Y] button, turning it on.

Notes

To enable the [ROT X] and [ROT Y] buttons, it is necessary to assign functions in advance.

For details, see Chapter 19 “Assigning Functions to Key Control Block Buttons” (Volume2).

5 Turn the knobs to adjust the following parameters.

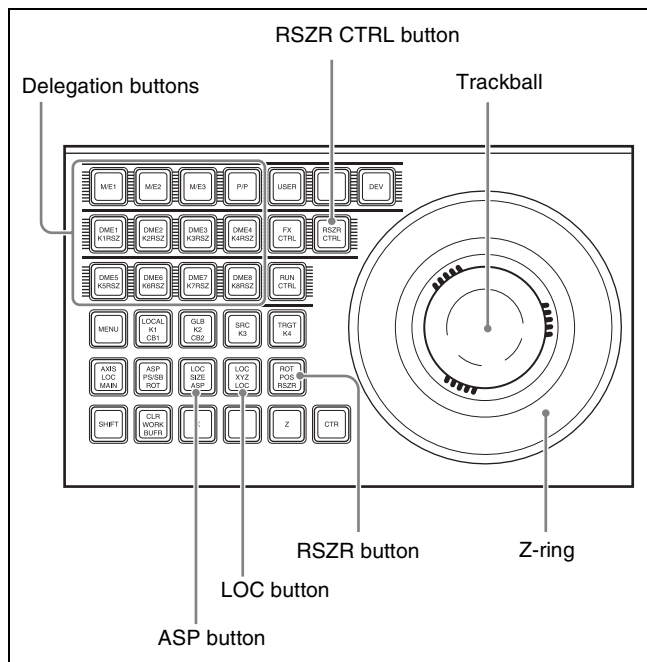
- When [ROT X] is lit

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Rotation X	Rotate key horizontally	-99 to +99
4	Perspective	Change perspective	0 to 99

- When [ROT Y] is lit

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
2	Rotation Y	Rotate key vertically	-99 to +99
4	Perspective	Change perspective	0 to 99

Device control block (MKS-8031TB Trackball Module, option) operations for key shrinking, magnification, rotation and movement



1 Press the [RSZR CTRL] button, turning it on.

2 Press the delegation button to select the key.

3 Press the [RSZR] button, turning it on.

- 4**
- To change the aspect ratio, turn on the [LOC SIZE(ASP)].
 - To shrink, magnify, or move the key, turn on the [LOC XYZ(LOC)].
 - To rotate the key, turn on the [ASP PS (ROT)] button. To specify the direction of rotation, press [X] or [Y]. To adjust perspective, press [Z].

Hold these buttons down while carrying out the operation of step **5** to enable fine adjustment (fine mode).

5 Use the trackball for the operation.

For details of parameters, see steps **3** and **5** of “Key control block (MKS-8035 Key Control Module, option) operations for key shrinking, magnification, rotation and movement” (page 109).

Entering parameters

This operation is the same as DME three-dimensional parameter input.

For details, see “Entering Three-Dimensional Parameter Values” (page 230).

Resetting parameters

This operation is the same as DME three-dimensional parameter resetting.

For details, see “Entering Three-Dimensional Parameter Values” (page 230).

Clearing resizer effects

To clear two-dimensional transform and rotation parameters only and set the initial state

In the device control block, press the [CLR WORK BUFR] button in the operation buttons.

To clear all resizer parameters, and set the initial state

In the device control block, press the [CLR WORK BUFR] button in the operation buttons, twice in rapid succession.

For the initial state, you can select either the factory default settings or user settings.

For details of how to make this selection, see “Selecting the State After Powering On (Start Up Menu)” in Chapter 18 (Volume 2).

Resizer Interpolation Settings

For example, to make the interpolation settings for key 1 of the M/E-1 bank, use the following procedure.

- 1** In the M/E-1 >Key1 >Processed Key menu, press [Resizer], turning it on.
- 2** Press [Resizer Process].
The Resizer Process menu appears.
- 3** In the <Video Field/Frame Mode> and other groups, make the interpolation settings.

This operation is the same as when making the DME interpolation settings for MVS-8000A.

For details, see Chapter 11 “Interpolation Settings” (page 290).

However, the following points are different from the operation for MVE-8000A.

- [Interpolation Mode] can be set for any type of signal formats.
- The anti-moire filter cannot be set.

Resizer Crop/Border Settings

Making a crop setting for a key for which resizer is on

For example, to make the crop settings for key 1 of the M/E-1 bank, use the following procedure.

- 1** In the M/E-1 >Key1 >Processed Key menu, press [Resizer], turning it on.
- 2** Press [Border/Crop].
The Border/Crop menu appears.
- 3** Press [Crop], turning it on.
- 4** Set the parameters.

These settings are the same as those for crop of DME. For details, see “Crop Settings” (page 234).

Notes

If mosaic or defocus is enabled, and in the <Mosaic/Defocus Mode> group you select Video/Key, then the crop is disabled.

Applying a border to a key for which resizer is on

For example, to add the border for key 1 of the M/E-1 bank, use the following procedure.

- 1** In the M/E-1 >Key1 >Processed Key menu, press [Resizer], turning it on.
- 2** Press [Border/Crop].
The Border/Crop menu appears.
- 3** Press [Border], turning it on.
- 4** Set the parameters.

The valid ranges of the parameter values depend on the combination of signal format (SD/HD) and aspect ratio (4:3/16:9) selected in the system, as follows.

SD format

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	H	Simultaneously adjust width of left and right borders	0.00 to 4.00

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
2	V	Simultaneously adjust width of top and bottom borders	0.00 to 3.00 (4:3) 0.00 to 2.25 (16:9)
3	All	Simultaneously adjust width of all four borders	Value of H shown
5	Density	Density of the borders	0.00 to 100.00

HD format

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	H	Simultaneously adjust width of left and right borders	0.00 to 12.00 (4:3) 0.00 to 16.00 (16:9)
2	V	Simultaneously adjust width of top and bottom borders	0.00 to 9.00
3	All	Simultaneously adjust width of all four borders	Value of H shown
5	Density	Density of the borders	0.00 to 100.00

To apply color to a border

- 1 In the <Border Mode> group of the Border/Crop menu, press [Flat Color].
- 2 Adjust the following parameters.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Luminance	Luminance	0.00 to 100.00
2	Saturation	Saturation	0.00 to 100.00
3	Hue	Hue	359.99 to 0.00

To soften the inner edge of a border

- 1 In the Border/Crop menu, press [Border Soft].
- 2 Adjust the following parameters.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Inner Soft	Border inner softness	0.00 to 100.00

To apply a beveled light edge

- 1 In the <Border Mode> group of the Border/Crop menu, press [Beveled Light Edge].
- 2 Adjust the following parameters.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Top	Top edge	-100.00 to +100.00
2	Left	Left edge	-100.00 to +100.00
3	Right	Right edge	-100.00 to +100.00
4	Bottom	Bottom edge	-100.00 to +100.00
5	All	Four edges	Value of Left shown

- 3 Press [Border Soft].
- 4 Adjust the following parameters.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Inner Soft	Border inner softness	0.00 to 100.00
2	Bound Soft	Border boundary softness	0.00 to 100.00

To apply a beveled color edge

- 1 In the <Border Mode> group of the Border/Crop menu, press [Beveled Color Edge].
- 2 In the <Color Adjust> group, select the edges for adjustment among the [Top], [Left], [Right], and [Bottom] edges. To select all the four edges, press [All].
- 3 Set the color parameters.
For details, see "To apply color to a border" (page 112)
- 4 Press [Border Soft].
- 5 Adjust the following parameters.

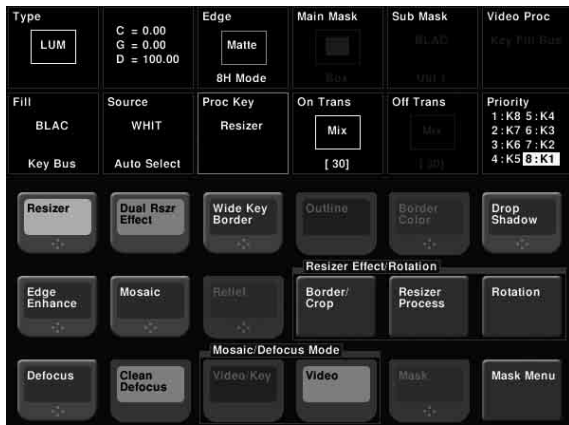
Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Inner Soft	Border inner softness	0.00 to 100.00
2	Bound Soft	Border boundary softness	0.00 to 100.00

Applying Resizer Effects

For example, to apply effects to key 1 of the M/E-1 bank, use the following procedure.

- 1 In the M/E-1 >Key1 >Processed Key menu, press [Resizer], turning it on.
- 2 Press [Enhanced Effect].

The Enhanced Effect menu appears.



Applying a wide key border

- 1 In the M/E-1 >Key1 >Processed Key >Enhanced Effect menu, press [Dual Rszr Effect], turning it on.
- 2 Press [Wide Key Border], turning it on.
- 3 Adjust the following parameters.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	H	Simultaneously adjust border width of left and right edges	0.00 to 100.00
2	V	Simultaneously adjust border width of upper and lower edges	0.00 to 100.00
3	All	Simultaneously adjust border width of all four edges	Value of H shown
4	Soft ^{a)}	Softness of border	0.00 to 100.00
5	Density	Density of border	0.00 to 100.00

a) Shared with the drop shadow “Soft” value.

- 4 To add an outline, press [Outline], turning it on.
- 5 To adjust the border color, press [Border Color].
- 6 Set the color parameters.

For details, see “To apply color to a border” (page 112).

Applying a drop shadow

- 1 In the M/E-1 >Key1 >Processed Key >Enhanced Effect menu, press [Dual Rszr Effect], turning it on.
- 2 Press [Drop Shadow], turning it on.
- 3 Set the parameters.

The valid ranges of the parameter values depend on the combination of signal format (SD/HD) and aspect ratio (4:3/16:9) selected in the system, as follows.

SD format

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	H	Horizontal position of shadow	-8.00 to +8.00
2	V	Vertical position of shadow	-6.00 to +6.00 (4:3) -4.50 to +4.50 (16:9)
3	Size	Shadow size	0.00 to 2.00
4	Soft ^{a)}	Softness of shadow	0.00 to 100.00
5	Density	Density of shadow	0.00 to 100.00

a) Shared with the wide key border “Soft” value.

HD format

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	H	Horizontal position of shadow	-24.00 to +24.00 (4:3) -32.00 to +32.00 (16:9)
2	V	Vertical position of shadow	-18.00 to +18.00
3	Size	Shadow size	0.00 to 2.00
4	Soft ^{a)}	Softness of shadow	0.00 to 100.00
5	Density	Density of shadow	0.00 to 100.00

a) Shared with the wide key border “Soft” value.

Edge enhancement

Adjusting the gain sharpens the image.

- 1 In the M/E-1 >Key1 >Processed Key >Enhanced Effect menu, press [Edge Enhance], turning it on.
- 2 Adjust the following parameters.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	H	Horizontal gain adjustment	0.00 to 100.00
2	V	Vertical gain adjustment	0.00 to 100.00
3	All	Both horizontal and vertical adjustment	H value is displayed

Applying a mosaic

1 In the M/E-1 >Key1 >Processed Key >Enhanced Effect menu, press [Mosaic], turning it on.

2 Set the parameters.

This operation is the same as the DME mosaic setting. For more details, see “Mosaic Settings” (page 251).

3 In the <Mosaic/Defocus Mode > group, select the signal to which to apply the mosaic effect.

Video/Key: Video signal and key signal

Video: Video signal only

Notes

If mosaic is enabled, and in the <Mosaic/Defocus Mode> group you select Video/Key, then the crop and mask are disabled.

4 Set the parameters.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	H	Horizontal defocusing	0.00 to 100.00
2	V	Vertical defocusing	0.00 to 100.00
3	All	Horizontal and vertical defocusing	H value shown

To make the mosaic like a relief pattern

1 With [Mosaic] on, press [Relief], turning it on.

2 In addition to the mosaic parameters, set the following parameters.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
3	Gain	Relief depth of mosaic cells	0.00 to 100.00
4	Angle	Light source direction	-8.00 to +8.00

Defocusing

1 In the M/E-1 >Key1 >Processed Key >Enhanced Effect menu, press [Defocus], turning it on.

2 Set the parameters.

This operation is the same as the defocusing setting when using the DME with the DME dedicated interface (see page 247).

However, <Mosaic/Defocus Mode> appears in place of <Defocus Mode>.

Notes

If defocus is enabled, and in the <Mosaic/Defocus Mode> group you select Video/Key, then the crop and mask are disabled.

Applying a mask to mosaic or defocus

1 In the M/E-1 >Key1 >Processed Key >Enhanced Effect menu, press [Dual Rszr Effect], turning it on.

2 Press [Mask], turning it on.

This enables the mask function.

To make the mask settings, continue with steps **3** and following.

3 Press [Mask Menu].

The Mask menu appears.

4 In the <Mask Source> group, select either of [Box] and [Circle].

Box: Use a box pattern as the mask signal.

Circle: Use a circle pattern as the mask signal.

5 Set the parameters.

The valid ranges of the parameter values depend on the combination of signal format (SD/HD) and aspect ratio (4:3/16:9) selected in the system, as follows. The parameters are the same as for drop shadow.

For more details, see “Applying a drop shadow” (page 113), except that knobs 3 and 5 are as follows.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
3	Size	Size	0.00 to 100.00
5	Aspect	Aspect ratio	-100.00 to +100.00

The rotation and inversion operations are the same as for a DME mask setting.

For more details, see “Mask Settings” (page 254).

Notes

- When a mask effect is applied to a border, the boundary becomes discontinuous, giving an unnatural effect. Avoid applying a mask to a border.
- If mosaic or defocus is enabled, and in the <Mosaic/Defocus Mode> group you select Video/Key, then the mask is disabled.

Restrictions on resizer effects

Restrictions on the use of effects

Of the resizer effects, using mask, drop shadow, or wide key border requires two units of hardware for the resizer function.

These are called “dual resizer effects”.

In a dual resizer effect, predetermined combinations, key 1 and key 2, key 3 and key 4, key 5 and key 6, key 7 and key 8 are used.

For example, if either of key 1 and key 2 has resizer set to On, the other key cannot be used for a dual resizer effect. The same restriction applies when using a resizer DME wipe in place of resizer.

Impossibility of simultaneous use within the same keyer

The following combinations of resizer effects cannot be simultaneously on.

- Mosaic and edge enhance
- Defocus and wide key border
- Mask and drop shadow
- Mask and wide key border

Setting rotation of the resizer

Notes

Either X or Y direction must be specified for rotation. You cannot make rotation by combining both directions.

When rotating key 1 of the M/E-1 bank, for example, use the following procedure.

- 1** Select M/E-1 >Key1 >Processed Key menu, press [Resizer], turning it on.
- 2** Press [Rotation], turning it on.
The Rotation menu appears.
- 3** Press [X] or [Y] in the <Rotation> group to select the direction of rotation.
- 4** Turn the knobs to adjust the following parameters.

- When [X] is on

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Rotation X	Rotate key horizontally	-99.0000 to +99.0000
4	Perspective	Change perspective	0.0000 to 99.9999

- When [Y] is on

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
2	Rotation Y	Rotate key vertically	-99.0000 to +99.0000
4	Perspective	Change perspective	0.0000 to 99.9999

Canceling Virtual Images

If an extreme degree of perspective is set for an image, the part of the image which is beyond the imaginary view point of view is wrapped around to show the other side of the image on the monitor screen. You can press [Wrap Around], turning it on, to make a setting not to show the virtual images.

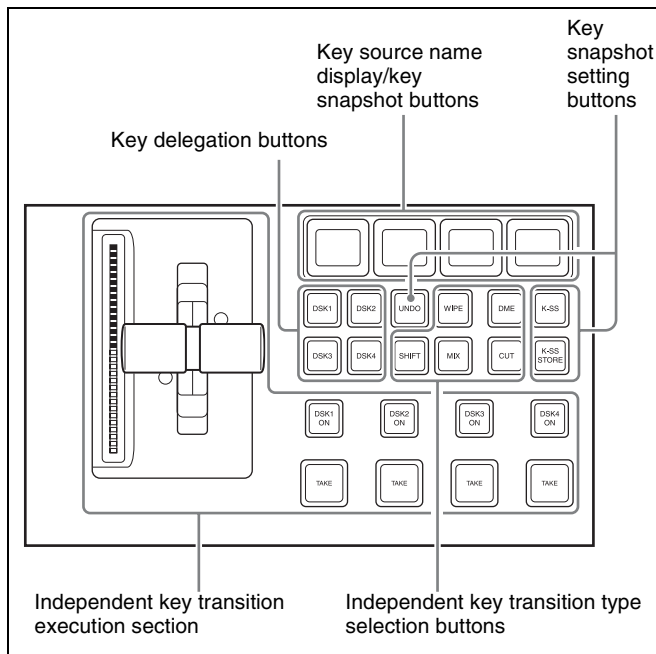
Key Snapshots

Key settings other than the key on/off status and the key priority can all be instantaneously saved in a dedicated register, for recall when required. A key snapshot comprises three values: a cross-point button number, key memory full mode, and independent key transition, and can be called in any combination.

There are four key snapshot registers for each keyer.

Key Snapshot Operations

Key snapshot operations are carried out in the downstream key control block (MKS-8032 DSK Fader Module). Each keyer is provided with four dedicated key snapshot registers.



Downstream key control block (MKS-8032)

Notes

To select [Key5] to [Key8] or [DSK5] to [DSK8] in the downstream key control block, a previous assignment in the Setup menu is required (*see page 338*).

Saving a key snapshot

For example, the following procedure saves the state of the DSK1 settings.

- 1 Press the key delegation button [DSK1], turning it on.
- 2 Press the [K-SS] button, turning it on.

The system switches to key snapshot mode, and the key source name display/key snapshot buttons show the status of registers 1 to 4 for DSK1.

Off: Nothing is saved in the register.

Lit orange: Settings are saved in the register.

For a register holding a snapshot, the register name is shown as up to eight characters.

- 3 Hold down the [K-SS STORE] button, and press the key source name display/key snapshot button corresponding to the register in which you want to save the snapshot.

The key source name display/key snapshot button which you pressed lights yellow.

Notes

If you save a key snapshot in a register for which the button is lit orange or yellow, the existing contents of the register are overwritten.

Recalling a key snapshot

For example, the following procedure recalls the state of the DSK1 settings.

- 1 Press the key delegation button [DSK1], turning it on.
- 2 Press the [K-SS] button, turning it on.
- 3 Press the key source name display/key snapshot button corresponding to the register you want to recall.

The button you pressed lights yellow, and this recalls the key snapshot.

To cancel the recall, press the [UNDO] button.

Overview

A wipe is a transition from the current video stream to a new video stream, using a wipe pattern. Changing the background by means of a wipe is referred to as a “background wipe,” and inserting or deleting a key with a wipe is termed a “key wipe.” There are two types of wipe: those that can be selected in a common transition, and those that can be selected in an independent key transition (*see page 129*).

Types of Wipe Pattern

The patterns that can be used for a wipe are divided into a number of groups, as follows. Note that only the standard wipe patterns can be used for an independent key transition.

For wipe patterns, see “Wipe Pattern List” in Appendix (Volume 1) (page 301).

Standard wipe patterns

Patterns consisting of straight lines vertically, horizontally, or diagonally, and circular patterns.

Enhanced wipes

More complex shapes such as hearts, stars, and round corners.

Rotary wipes

These patterns involve rotation of the image about a point.

Mosaic wipe pattern

This divides the image into small tiles.

Random and diamond dust wipe patterns

These patterns consist of small random tiles, or fine particles.

Basic Procedure for Wipe Settings

You carry out wipe setting operations principally using the Wipe menu for each of the M/E-1 to M/E-3 and PGM/PST banks.

This section describes the basic procedures for wipe settings, taking the M/E-1 >Wipe menu as an example.

Wipe Settings Menu

Accessing the wipe settings menu

To access the M/E-1 >Wipe menu, use either of the following operations.

- In the menu control block, select the top menu selection button [M/E 1], and press VF5 ‘Wipe.’

Notes

To select [M/E-4], a previous assignment in the Setup menu is required.

- In the transition control block of the M/E-1 bank, press the transition type selection button [WIPE] twice in rapid succession.

Wipe Pattern Selection

Selecting a wipe pattern by a menu operation

- 1 In the M/E-1 >Wipe menu, select HF1 ‘Main Pattern.’
The Main Pattern menu appears.

- 2** Select the wipe pattern group with the pattern group selection button.

Standard: standard wipes

Enhanced: enhanced wipes

Rotary: rotary wipes

Mosaic1 to Mosaic3: mosaic wipes

Random/Dust: random/diamond dust wipes

The patterns from the selected pattern group appear on the screen.

For details of wipe patterns, see “Types of Wipe Pattern” (page 117) and “Wipe Pattern List” (page 301).

- 3** Press the button to select the desired pattern.

- 4** The parameters change according to the selected pattern, and you can adjust the pattern.

When a polygon wipe is selected (pattern number 49)

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	No	Number of points	3 to 64
2	Star Rate	Angularity of star	-100.00 to +100.00 ^{a)}

a) A value of -100.00 completely removes the star “rays,” leaving a circle; at +100.00 the “rays” are at their sharpest.

When a mosaic wipe is selected (pattern numbers 200 to 203, 206 to 213, 224 to 247, 250 to 257, 260 to 269)

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	H Tile No	Number of tiles horizontally	2 to 36
2	V Tile No	Number of tiles vertically	2 to 18

When a karaoke wipe is selected (pattern numbers 220 to 223)

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Start	Position of start tile	-100.00 to +100.00 ^{a)}
2	Row No	Number of rows of tiles	1 to 36
3	Phase	Delay for next row	-100.00 to +100.00 ^{b)}

a) At -100.00 tiles appear from the top (or left edge) of the screen; at +100.00 from the bottom (or right edge) of the screen.
 b) At -100.00 all rows appear simultaneously; at +100.00 until one row of tiles is completely displayed, the next row does not start to appear.

When a random wipe is selected (pattern number 273)

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	H Size	Tile width	0.00 to 100.00
2	V Size	Tile height	0.00 to 100.00
3	Volatility	Rate of tile generation	0.00 to 100.00

When a diamond dust wipe is selected (pattern number 274)

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	H Size	Particle width	0.00 to 100.00
2	V Size	Particle height	0.00 to 100.00
3	Flash Rate	Rate of generation of particles	0.00 to 100.00

Notes

When Flash Rate is set to 0.00, you cannot change the pattern. In this state, adjusting H Size or V Size has no effect on the pattern.

For details of a pattern mix, see the next section.

For details of applying pattern modifiers, see “Setting Wipe Modifiers” (page 120).

Pattern Mix

You can create a new pattern by combining two selected patterns (main and “sub”).

Notes

It is not possible to apply a pattern mix to an independent key transition.

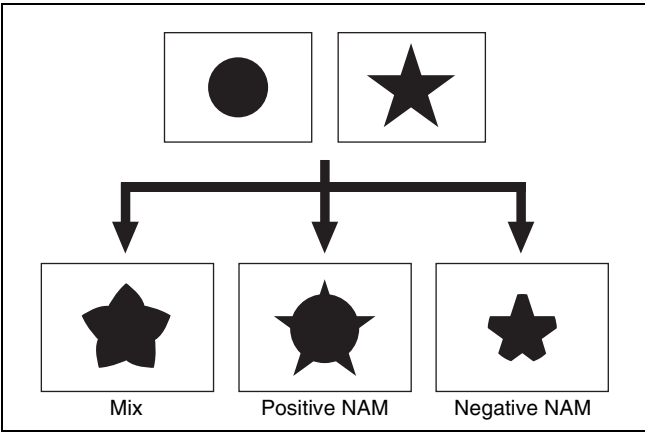
Types of pattern mix

There are four ways in which patterns can be combined in a pattern mix, as follows.

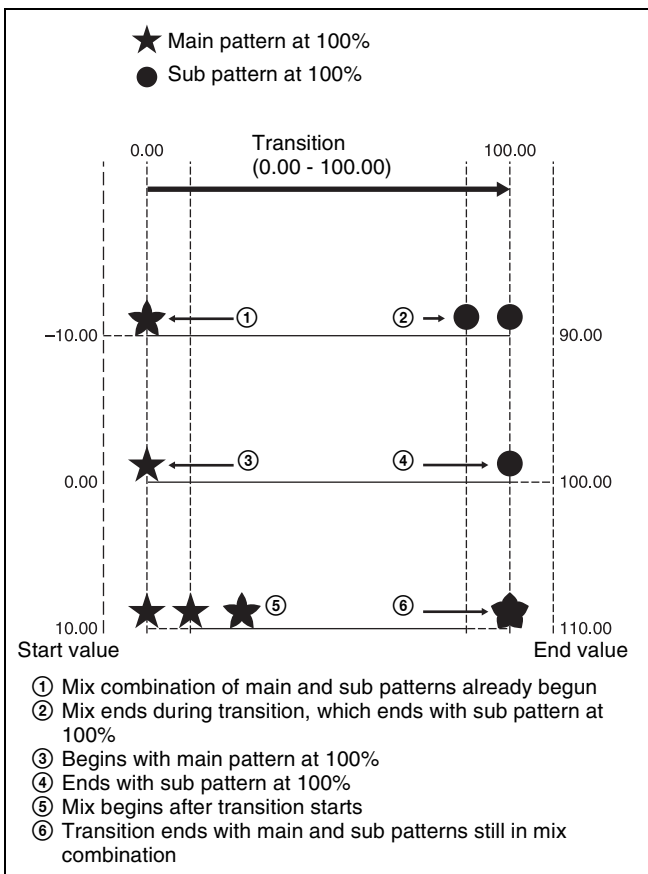
Mix: The effect of the sub pattern is applied to the main pattern, modifying the outline or nature of the main pattern.

Positive NAM (+Nam): Creates a pattern with an outline which contains all points within the outlines of either of the main pattern and the sub pattern.

Negative NAM (-Nam): Creates a pattern with an outline which contains all points within the outlines of both of the main pattern and the sub pattern.



Morphing: As the transition progresses, the pattern morphs from the main pattern, through the “mix” combination, to the sub pattern.



- Parameter settings
Start: Point in the course of the transition at which the main pattern is at 100%
End: Point in the course of the transition at which the sub pattern is at 100%
- A value of 0.00 corresponds to the beginning of the transition, and a value of 100.00 to the end of the transition.
- A negative Start value signifies that the main and sub patterns are already combined when the transition starts.

- An End value of 100.00 or more signifies that the main and sub patterns are still combined when the transition complete.
- If the Start and End values are the same, the main and sub patterns are interchanged instantaneously at the corresponding point in the transition.
- If End is less than Start, as the transition proceeds, it changes from the sub pattern to the main pattern.

Dust mix

You can apply the effect of a diamond dust wipe to a selected pattern. You can also apply the diamond dust wipe effect to the pattern resulting from a pattern mix (*see page 120*).

When the pattern mix function is off, turning dust mix on results in the main pattern and the diamond dust pattern being mixed. This state is the same as a pattern mix when the diamond dust pattern is selected for the sub pattern.

Main and sub modifier link function

When carrying out a pattern mix, it is possible to link the modifier settings for the main pattern and sub pattern. There are two modes for this function.

FULL LINK (fully linked) mode

In this mode, all modifier settings are the same for the main pattern and sub pattern.

Changing the modifier settings for one pattern automatically changes the settings for the other.

SEMI LINK (semi-linked) mode

Only the parameter settings of the modifiers are linked. The modifier on/off settings are not linked. When the parameter values for the modifiers of the main pattern and sub pattern are different, then after this link mode is selected, changing the value of a parameter for one pattern changes the value of the parameter for the other pattern to maintain the same difference between the two.

Notes

When carrying out a wipe transition using a pattern mix, it is recommended that you set the modifier link function to FULL LINK mode.

If the link function is off, or SEMI LINK mode is selected, the desired effect may not be obtained at the start or end of the transition.

Combining two patterns

Select a main pattern in the Main Pattern menu, then use the following procedure.

- 1 In the M/E-1 >Wipe menu, select HF3 ‘Sub Pattern.’

The Sub Pattern menu appears.

- 2** In the same way as for the main pattern, select the sub pattern.

The patterns that can be selected for the sub pattern depend on the pattern selected for the main pattern (*see the following table*).

Yes: Combination possible **No:** Combination not possible

Main pattern	Sub pattern				
	Standard	Enhanced	Rotary	Mosaic	Random/diamond dust
Standard	Yes	Yes	No	Yes	Yes
Enhanced	Yes	Yes	No	Yes	Yes
Rotary	No	No	No	No	No
Mosaic	Yes	Yes	No	No	Yes
Random/diamond dust	Yes	Yes	No	Yes	No

- 3** Select HF2 'Pattern Mix.'

The Pattern Mix menu appears.

- 4** In the <Pattern Mix> group, select the type of pattern mix (*see page 118*).

Mix: mix
+Nam: positive Nam
-Nam: negative Nam
Morphing: morphing

- 5** Depending on the selection in step 4, set the following parameters.

When mix, positive Nam, or negative Nam is selected

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Mix Ratio	Proportion of sub pattern to the main pattern	0.00 to 100.00

When morphing (*see page 119*) is selected

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
2	Start	Point in transition at which main pattern is at 100%	-50.00 to +150.00
3	End	Point in transition at which sub pattern is at 100%	-50.00 to +150.00

- 6** In the <Main/Sub Link> group, make the main/sub modifier link function settings (*see page 119*).

Full: fully linked mode
Semi: semi-linked mode

Applying the effect of a diamond dust wipe to the selected pattern (Dust mix)

- 1** In the Pattern Mix menu, press [Dust Mix], turning it on.
- 2** Set the following parameters as required.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Mix Ratio	Proportion of diamond dust pattern in mix	0.00 to 100.00
2	H Size	Particle width	0.00 to 100.00
3	V Size	Particle height	0.00 to 100.00
4	Flash Rate	Rate of generation of particles	0.00 to 100.00

You can also apply the dust mix function to the pattern generated by a pattern mix.

Notes

When a random/diamond dust wipe (pattern numbers 270-274) is selected, the dust mix function is not available.

Setting Wipe Modifiers

You can apply various modifiers to the wipe pattern: setting the wipe direction, pattern position, and so on. Note that the available modifiers may depend on the pattern you are using (*see page 128*).

Main pattern and sub pattern modifiers

You can make independent settings of the modifiers for the main pattern and sub pattern.

- To set the modifiers for the main pattern, in the M/E-1 >Wipe menu, select HF5 'Main Modify,' and make the settings in the Main Modify menu.
- To set the modifiers for the sub pattern, select HF6 'Sub Modify,' and make the settings in the Sub Modify menu. Operations in the Main Modify menu and Sub Modify menu are the same.

Independently set modifiers for the main pattern and sub pattern

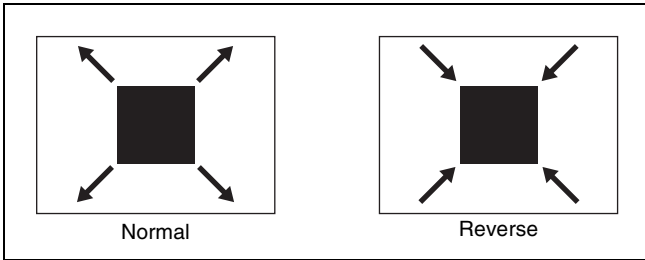
- Positioner
- Rotation
- Aspect ratio
- Pattern replication (MULTI)
- Pairing

- Modulation
- Spring
- Spiral

The following sections show examples of modifying the main pattern.

Specifying the wipe direction (Direction)

You can specify the direction of the wipe: the regular direction is referred to as “normal,” and the other direction as “reverse.” You can also select alternating directions each time the transition is completed (normal/reverse mode).



To specify the wipe direction in a menu

- 1 In the M/E-1 >Wipe menu, select HF4 ‘Edge/Direction.’

The Edge/Direction menu appears.

- 2 In the <Direction> group, specify the wipe direction.

Normal: regular direction

Normal/Reverse: alternate between regular and reverse for each transition

Reverse: reverse direction to normal

To specify the wipe direction with a button in the transition control block

In the transition control block of each of the M/E-1 to M/E-3 and PGM/PST banks, press the following direction selection buttons.

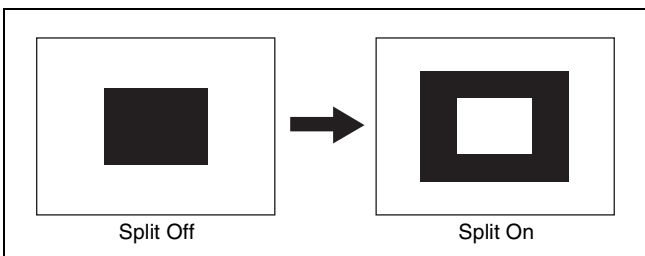
NORM: Normal

NORM/REV: Normal/reverse

REV: Reverse

Splitting the wipe pattern (Split)

This splits the pattern, making the parts of the wipe move in opposite directions.



The parameter Split No specifies the number of splits. The parameter Spacing specifies the spacing between adjacent patterns.

- 1 In the M/E-1 >Wipe menu, select HF4 ‘Edge/Direction.’

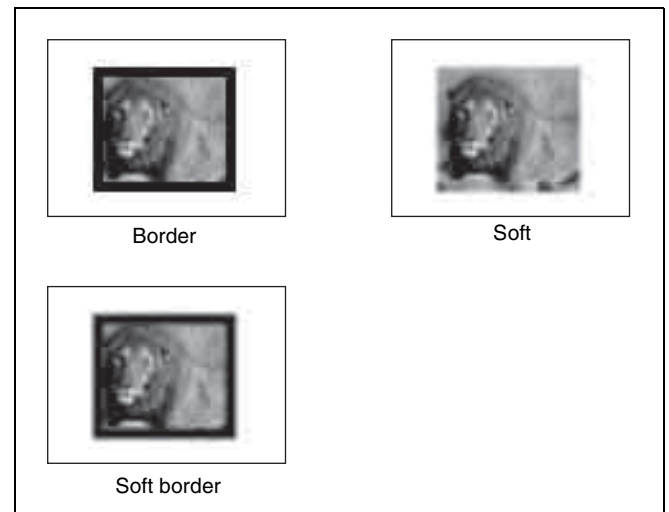
The Edge/Direction menu appears.

- 2 Press [Split], turning it on.
- 3 Set the following parameters.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Split No	Number of splits	1 to 4 (integer)
2	Spacing	Spacing between adjacent patterns	0.00 to 100.00

Modifying the wipe pattern edge (Edge)

You can apply a border to the pattern, soften the edges, or soften the applied border.



Border: You can adjust the border width.

Soft: You can adjust the edge softness.

Soft border: You can adjust the border width, and the softness of the inner and outer edges of the border.

When a border or soft border is selected, the signal filling the border is called edge fill. For the edge fill, you can use a matte generated by the dedicated color matte generator, or the signal selected on the utility 2 bus. A matte can include color 1 and color 2, and a combination of the two colors (a “color mix”).

- 1 In the M/E-1 >Wipe menu, select HF4 ‘Edge/Direction.’

The Edge/Direction menu appears.

- 2 In the <Edge> group, select the edge type.

Border: border
Soft: soft edge
Soft Border: soft border

- 3** Set the parameters according to the selection in step 2.

When border is selected

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Width	Border width	0.00 to 100.00

When soft edge is selected

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Soft	Edge softness	0.00 to 100.00

When soft border is selected

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Width	Border width	0.00 to 100.00
2	Inner Soft	Border inner softness	0.00 to 100.00
3	Outer Soft	Border outer softness	0.00 to 100.00

- 4** When you selected border or soft border, select the edge fill signal in the <Edge Fill> group.

Utility 2 Bus: signal selected on the utility 2 bus

Matte: signal from the dedicated color matte generator

- 5** Depending on the operation in step 4, carry out the following operation.

When ‘Utility 2 Bus’ is selected: Press the key delegation button [UTIL2], turning it on, and select the signal in the key row.

When ‘Matte’ is selected: In the same Edge/Direction menu, press [Matte Adjust] to display the Matte Adjust menu, then adjust the single-color or two-color combination color matte. Select whether to use a single-color matte or a two-color combination in the <Edge Matte> group.

Flat Color: Adjust color 1 with the following parameters.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Luminance	Luminance	0.00 to 100.00
2	Saturation	Saturation	0.00 to 100.00
3	Hue	Hue	359.99 to 0.00

When you select [Mix Color] for a two-color combination, see the next paragraph.

Carrying out a color mix for the edge fill matte

When you selected [Matte] for the border or soft border edge fill, you can combine color 1 and color 2.

For the combination, you can use not only a normal wipe generator pattern, but also the dedicated color mix pattern.

- 1** In the <Edge Fill> group of the Edge/Direction menu, select [Matte], and press [Matte Adjust].

The Matte Adjust menu appears.

- 2** In the <Edge Matte> group, select [Mix Color], turning it on.

- 3** In the <Mix Pattern> group, make one of the following selections.

Wipe: Use the wipe pattern selected for the transition.

Pattern: Use the dedicated pattern.

- 4** Depending on the selection in step 3, set the following parameters.

When Wipe is selected

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Size	Pattern size	0.00 to 100.00
2	Soft	Edge softness	0.00 to 100.00

When Pattern is selected

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Size	Pattern size	0.00 to 100.00
2	Soft	Edge softness	0.00 to 100.00
3	Pattern	Pattern number	1 to 24 ^{a)}

a) The patterns are the same as for a standard wipe. See “Wipe Pattern List” (page 301).

If you selected Pattern, you can also carry out the pattern selection by pressing the [Mix Ptn Select] button in the Matte Adjust menu, to display the Mix Ptn Select menu. Select any pattern appearing in the Mix Ptn Select menu (wipe patterns 1 to 24) by pressing the appropriate button, and you can then adjust the following parameters.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Size	Pattern size	0.00 to 100.00
2	Soft	Edge softness	0.00 to 100.00

- 5** If you selected Pattern in step 4, if required, the following modifiers can be added. After selecting a wipe mix, skip to step 6.

When turning [Position] on and setting the pattern position

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Position H	Horizontal position	-200.00 to +200.00 ^{a)}
2	Position V	Vertical position	-200.00 to +200.00 ^{a)}

a) See page 123.

When turning [Multi] on and using replications of the same pattern

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	H Multi	Number of repetitions of pattern horizontally	1 to 63
2	V Multi	Number of repetitions of pattern vertically	1 to 63
3	Invert Type	Replication layout	1 to 4 ^{a)}

a) See page 125.

When turning [Aspect] on and setting the aspect ratio of the pattern

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Aspect	Aspect ratio	-100.00 to +100.00 ^{a)}

a) See page 125.

When turning [Angle] on in the <Rotation> group and slanting the pattern

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Angle	Angle of pattern rotation	-100.00 to +100.00 ^{a)}

a) See page 124.

When turning [Speed] on in the <Rotation> group and rotating the pattern at a constant rate

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Speed	Rotation rate of pattern	-100.00 to +100.00 ^{a)}

a) See page 124.

- 6** To adjust color 1, set [Color 1] on, and to adjust color 2 set [Color 2] on, then adjust the parameters.

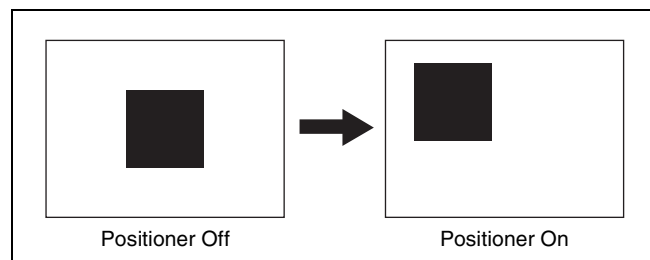
Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Luminance	Luminance	0.00 to 100.00
2	Saturation	Saturation	0.00 to 100.00

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
3	Hue	Hue	359.99 to 0.00

- 7** To interchange color 1 and color 2, press the [Color Invert] button, turning it on.

Setting the wipe position (Positioner)

When you turn on this function, you can move the wipe pattern to any position.



- The parameter H Position controls the horizontal position of the pattern. A negative value moves the pattern to the left, and a positive value moves the pattern to the right.
- The parameter V Position controls the vertical position of the pattern. A negative value moves the pattern down, and a positive value moves the pattern up. You can set the position independently for the main pattern and sub pattern.

- 1** In the M/E-1 >Wipe menu, select HF5 'Main Modify.' The Main Modify menu appears.
- 2** In the <Position> group, press [Position], turning it on, and set the pattern position.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Position H	Horizontal position	-200.00 to +200.00
2	Position V	Vertical position	-200.00 to +200.00

To return the pattern position to the center of the screen

In the <Position> group, press [Center].

To move the pattern from its current position to the center through the course of a transition

In the <Position> group, press [Auto Center], turning it on.

To set the wipe position using the trackball

You can also set the wipe position using the trackball in the device control block.

- 1** In the device control block, press the [M/E1] or [P/P] button, turning it on.

The buttons in the device control block are assigned to the wipe position setting as follows.

Table 1: Buttons and assigned settings

Button name	Setting
MAIN	Wipe position for common transition (main pattern)
SUB	Wipe position for common transition (sub pattern)

Table 2: Buttons assigned to functions

Button name	Function
POS	Toggle Position on or off.
X, Y	Fix the operating direction.
CTR	Return the pattern position to the center of the screen.

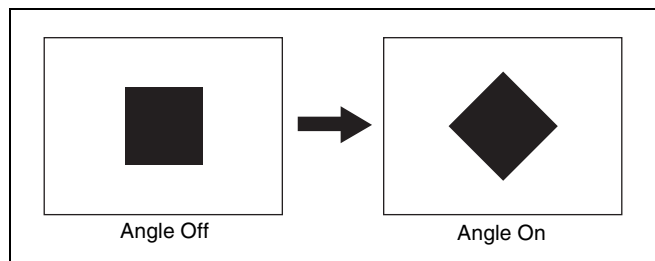
- 2 Press the [MAIN] button or [SUB] button, turning it on.
- 3 Press the [POS] button, turning Position on.
- 4 Move the trackball or joystick, to set the wipe position. By pressing the [X] button, turning it on, you can restrict movement to the horizontal direction, and by pressing the [Y] button, turning it on, you can restrict movement to the vertical direction.

Rotating the wipe pattern (Rotation)

You can rotate the pattern. There are three rotation modes, as follows.

Angle

This carries out a wipe with the pattern in a fixed angle.

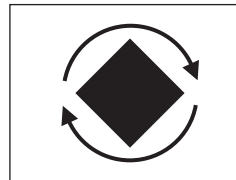


The parameter Angle determines the angle of pattern rotation.

- A value of -100.00 of the parameter Angle corresponds to one whole turn counterclockwise.
- A value of $+100.00$ corresponds to one whole turn clockwise.
- With a value of 0.00 there is no rotation.

Speed

Through the course of the transition the wipe pattern rotates at a fixed specified speed.

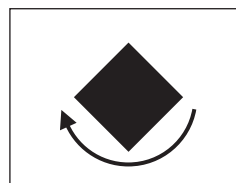


The parameter Speed determines the speed of pattern rotation.

- A value of -100.00 of the parameter Speed corresponds to one turn per second counterclockwise.
- A value of $+100.00$ corresponds to one turn per second clockwise.
- With a value of 0.00 the pattern is stationary.

Magnitude

Through the course of the transition the wipe pattern rotates through the specified angle.



The parameter Angle determines an angle of pattern inclination at the beginning of the transition.

- A value of -100.00 corresponds to the angle rotated one whole turn counterclockwise.
- A value of $+100.00$ corresponds to the angle rotated one whole turn clockwise.
- With a value of 0.00 the pattern is stationary.

The parameter Magnitude determines an angle of pattern rotation through the course of the transition.

- A value of -200.00 corresponds to a rotation of two turns counterclockwise.
- A value of $+200.00$ corresponds to a rotation of two turns clockwise.
- With a value of 0.00 the pattern is stationary.

You can apply rotation independently to the main pattern and sub pattern.

- 1 In the M/E-1 >Wipe menu, select HF5 'Main Modify.' The Main Modify menu appears.
- 2 In the <Rotation> group, select the rotation type.
 - Angle:** Incline the pattern through a fixed angle.
 - Speed:** Rotate at a fixed rate.
 - Magnitude:** Rotate through a particular angle during the course of the transition.
- 3 According to the selection in step 2, set the following parameters.

When Angle is selected

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Angle	Angle of pattern rotation	-100.00 to +100.00

When Speed is selected

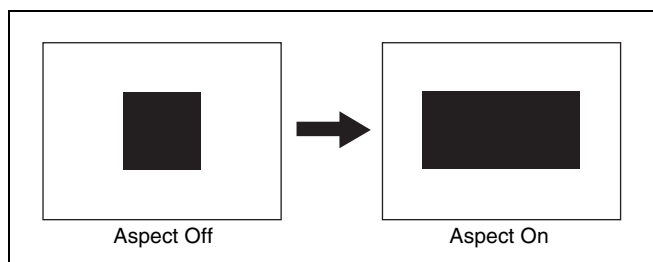
Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Speed	Rotation rate of pattern	-100.00 to +100.00

When Magnitude is selected

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Angle	Angle of pattern rotation at start of transition	-100.00 to +100.00
2	Magnitude	Angle of rotation through course of transition	-200.00 to +200.00

Setting the wipe pattern aspect ratio (Aspect ratio)

You can freely change the aspect ratio of the pattern.



A negative value of the parameter Aspect stretches the pattern vertically; a positive value stretches the pattern horizontally.

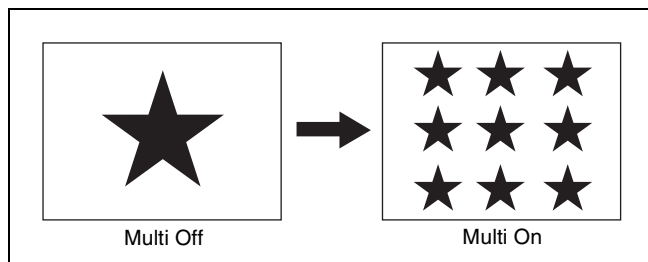
You can set the aspect ratio independently for the main pattern and sub pattern.

- 1 In the M/E-1 >Wipe menu, select HF5 'Main Modify.'
The Main Modify menu appears.
- 2 Press [Aspect], turning it on.
- 3 Set the following parameter.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Aspect	Aspect ratio	-100.00 to +100.00

Setting the wipe pattern replication (Multi)

The same pattern can be repeated horizontally and vertically or both, up to 63 times. You can also change the orientation of alternate copies, or change the position.

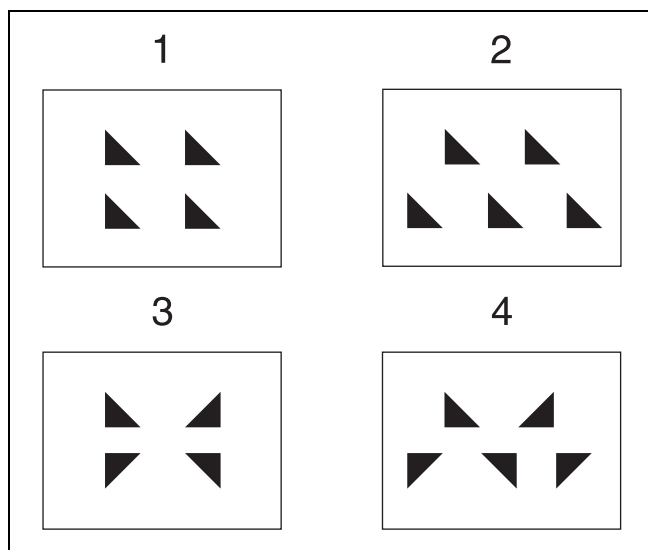


- The parameter H Multi determines the number of pattern replications horizontally, and the parameter V Multi determines the number of pattern replications vertically.
- The parameter Shift determines the manner of replication.

At a value of -100.00, the pattern of the adjacent odd-numbered column on the left lines up with the central coordinate horizontally.

At a value of +100.00, the pattern of the adjacent odd-numbered column on the right lines up with the central coordinate horizontally.

For an independent key transition wipe, you can use the "Invert Type" parameter to select from the following four types of replication pattern.



- 1: All replications in the same orientation
- 2: Even-numbered rows staggered
- 3: Even-numbered columns and rows inverted
- 4: Even-numbered columns and rows inverted, and even-numbered rows staggered

You can set pattern replication independently for the main pattern and sub pattern.

- 1 In the M/E-1 >Wipe menu, select HF5 'Main Modify.'
The Main Modify menu appears.
- 2 Press the [Multi] button, turning it on.
- 3 Set the following parameters.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	H Multi	Number of repetitions of pattern horizontally	1 to 63
2	V Multi	Number of repetitions of pattern vertically	1 to 63
3	Shift	Replication layout	-100.00 to +100.00

- 4** To make more adjustments, press the [Multi Adjust] button.

The Multi Adjust menu appears.

- 5** Make the following settings, as required.

H Invert: When this is on, alternate tiles are inverted left-to-right.

V Invert: When this is on, alternate tiles are inverted top-to-bottom.

Non-Mask: When this is on, even if the positioner function is used to move the pattern position, the pattern is always present on the screen.

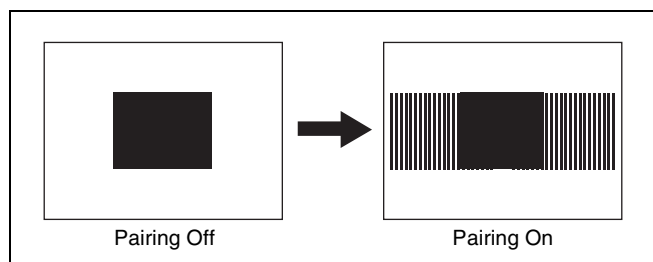
Position: By adjusting the following parameters, move the pattern position within the divisions determined in step 3.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Position H	Horizontal position of pattern	-200.00 to +200.00 ^{a)}
2	Position V	Vertical position of pattern	-200.00 to +200.00 ^{a)}

a) See page 123.

Making a wipe pattern like a Venetian blind (Pairing)

This slits the pattern into multiple strips in the horizontal or vertical direction, making it like a venetian blind.



- The parameter Width determines the width of the slits.
- The parameter H Offset determines the spacing in the horizontal direction.

If a negative value is set, the even-numbered pairs of strip and slit move to the left, and the odd-numbered pairs move to the right. (The value -100.00 represents

the maximum movement.)

If a positive value is set, the even-numbered pairs of strip and slit move to the right, and the odd-numbered pairs move to the left. (The value +100.00 represents the maximum movement.)

- The parameter V Offset determines the spacing in the vertical direction.

If a negative value is set, the even-numbered pairs of strip and slit move upward, and the odd-numbered pairs move downward. (The value -100.00 represents the maximum movement.)

If a positive value is set, the even-numbered pairs of strip and slit move downward, and the odd-numbered pairs move upward. (The value +100.00 represents the maximum movement.)

- 1** In the M/E-1 >Wipe menu, select HF5 'Main Modify.'

The Main Modify menu appears.

- 2** In the <Pairing> group, select the slit direction.

H: Create slits in the horizontal direction.

V: Create slits in the vertical direction.

- 3** Set the following parameters.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Width	Width of the slits	1 to 128 (integer)
2	H Offset	Spacing in the horizontal direction	-100.00 to +100.00
3	V Offset	Spacing in the vertical direction	-100.00 to +100.00

Applying modulation to the wipe pattern (Modulation)

The pattern signal can be modulated, giving waves on the horizontal or vertical edges, or radially.

The parameter Shape determines the form of the modulation.

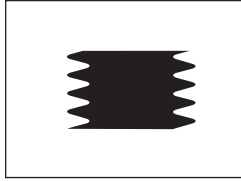
1: sine wave, 2: triangular wave, 3: rectangular wave

Notes

When using 1080PsF mode in an HD system, the modulation function is not available.

Horizontal modulation

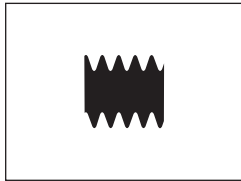
This modulates the pattern, applying waviness in the horizontal direction to edges.



The parameter Speed determines the speed of waves. A value of -100.00 generates the maximum downward speed of waves, and a value of $+100.00$ the maximum upward speed.

Vertical modulation

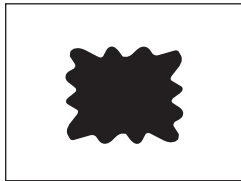
This modulates the pattern, applying waviness in the vertical direction to edges.



The parameter Speed determines the speed of waves. A value of -100.00 generates the maximum leftward speed of waves, and a value of $+100.00$ the maximum rightward speed.

Fringe

This modulates the pattern, applying waviness in the radial direction to edges.



The parameter Speed determines the speed of waves. A value of -100.00 generates the maximum counterclockwise speed of waves, and a value of $+100.00$ the maximum clockwise speed. You can apply modulation independently to the main pattern and sub pattern.

1 In the M/E-1 >Wipe menu, select HF5 'Main Modify.'
The Main Modify menu appears.

2 Depending on the desired effect, in the <Modulation> group select one of the following.

H (Horizontal modulation): Modulate the pattern, applying waviness in the horizontal direction to edges.

V (Vertical modulation): Modulate the pattern, applying waviness in the vertical direction to edges.

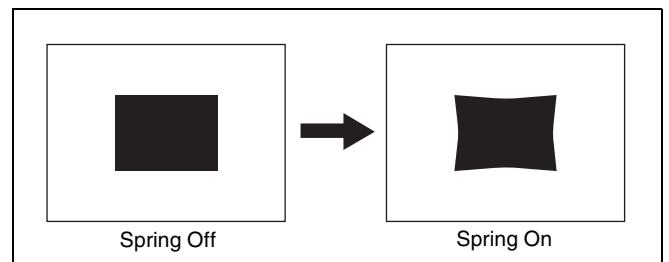
Fringe (Radial modulation): Modulate the pattern, applying waviness in the radial direction to edges.

3 Set the following parameters.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Amplitude	Amplitude of modulation	0.00 to 100.00
2	Frequency	Frequency of modulation	0.00 to 100.00
3	Speed	Speed of waves	-100.00 to $+100.00$
4	Shape	Form of the modulation	1 to 3

Applying barrel or pincushion distortion to the edge of the wipe pattern (Spring)

As the transition progresses, the edge of the pattern is subjected to barrel or pincushion distortion.



A negative parameter value produces pincushion distortion, and a positive value produces barrel distortion. You can set the spring function independently for the main and sub patterns.

1 In the M/E-1 >Wipe menu, select HF5 'Main Modify.'
The Main Modify menu appears.

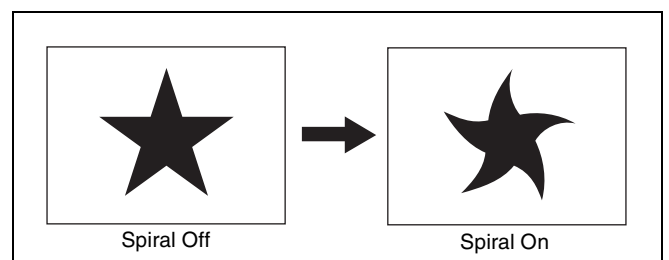
2 Press [Spring], turning it on.

3 Set the following parameters.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Gain	Degree of barrel distortion	-100.00 to $+100.00$

Applying a spiral effect to the wipe pattern (Spiral)

This deforms the pattern spirally.



- The parameter Magnitude determines the size and direction of the spiral.
A value of -100.00 represents the maximum movement in the counterclockwise direction, and a value of $+100.00$ represents the maximum movement in the clockwise direction.
- The parameter Wave Speed determines the speed of the lateral waves.
A value of -100.00 represents the maximum speed to the left, and a value of $+100.00$ represents the maximum speed to the right.

You can set the spiral function independently for the main and sub patterns.

- 1 In the M/E-1 >Wipe menu, select HF5 'Main Modify.'
The Main Modify menu appears.
- 2 Press [Spiral], turning it on.
- 3 Set the following parameters.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Magnitude	Size and direction of the spiral	-100.00 to $+100.00$
2	Wave Speed	Speed of the lateral waves	-100.00 to $+100.00$

Possible combinations of wipe patterns and modifiers

Yes: Can be used **No:** Cannot be used

Modifiers	Type of wipe				
	Standard	Enhanced	Rotary	Mosaic	Random/diamond dust
Direction	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Split	Yes	Yes	No	Yes	No
Edge	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Positioner	Yes ^{a)}	Yes ^{b)}	Yes ^{c)}	No	No
Rotation	Yes	Yes	Yes ^{c)}	No	No
Aspect ratio	Yes ^{d)}	Yes	No	No	No
Pattern replication	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes ^{e)}	No
Pairing	Yes ^{f)}	Yes	No	No	No
Modulation (H/V)	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	No
Modulation (Fringe)	No ^{g)}	Yes	No	No	No
Spring	No ^{g)}	Yes	No	No	No
Spiral	No ^{h)}	Yes	No	No	No

- a) Not patterns 1 to 16, 19, and 20
- b) Not patterns 300 to 303
- c) Not patterns 100 to 103, 150, 151, 516, 518, 604, and 606
- d) Not patterns 1 to 8, 17, and 18
- e) Not patterns 220 to 223
- f) Not patterns 19 and 20
- g) But patterns 21, 23 and 24 are possible
- h) But patterns 21 and 23 are possible

Wipe Modify Clear

Press [Default Recall] at the lower left of the menu display, turning it on, then press VF5 'Wipe' to return the wipe settings to their initial status.

For details of the menu operation to return the wipe state to that set in initial status, see "Returning to Default State in Function Groupings" (page 53).

Wipe Settings for Independent Key Transitions

You carry out independent key/downstream key transition wipe setting operations using the Wipe Adjust menu for each keyer.

This section describes the independent key transition wipe settings, taking the M/E-1 >Key1 >Transition >Wipe Adjust menu as an example.

For details, see “Independent Key Transitions” (page 77).

Basic Procedure for Independent Key Transition Wipe Settings

Accessing the independent key transition wipe settings menu

As an example, to access the M/E-1 >Key1 >Transition >Wipe Adjust menu, carry out the following operations.

- In the menu control block, select the top menu selection button [M/E 1] and select VF1 ‘Key1’ and HF6 ‘Transition’ to display the Transition menu for key 1, then press [Wipe Adjust].
- If VF1 [Key5] is shown, press the switching button at the top of the menu, so that [Key1-4] appears, and press VF1 [Key1].

Notes

To select [M/E-4], a previous assignment in the Setup menu is required.

Carrying out the above operation displays the M/E-1 >Key1 >Transition >Wipe Adjust menu (which will be referred to below as simply the Key1 Wipe Adjust menu).

Selecting the independent key transition wipe pattern

You select the independent key wipe pattern from the list of patterns displayed in the menu.

Notes

In an independent key transition, you can only use the standard wipe patterns (pattern numbers 1 to 24). To select a wipe pattern for independent key1 on the M/E-1 bank, use the following procedure.

- 1 In the Key1 Wipe Adjust menu, select [Pattern Select].

The Pattern Select menu appears.

- 2 Press the button for the desired pattern.

Setting Independent Key Transition Wipe Modifiers

Available modifiers

You can use the following modifiers with an independent key transition wipe.

Note that the available modifiers may depend on the pattern you are using.

- Direction
- Edge
- Positioner
- Rotation
- Aspect ratio
- Pattern replication

Setting the wipe direction (Direction)

In the <Direction> group of the Key1 Wipe Adjust menu, make any of the following selections.

Normal: regular direction

Normal/Reverse: alternate between regular and reverse for each transition

Reverse: reverse direction to normal

Softening the wipe pattern edge (Soft edge)

- 1 Press [Soft] in the Key1 Wipe Adjust menu, turning it on.
- 2 Set the following parameter.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Soft	Edge softness	0.00 to 100.00

Setting the wipe position (Positioner)

There are two methods of setting the wipe position: using the device control block, or in a menu.

To set the wipe position using the trackball

You can also set the wipe position using the trackball in the device control block.

- 1 In the device control block, press the [M/E1] or [P/P] button, turning it on.

The buttons in the device control block are assigned to the wipe position setting as follows.

Table 1: Buttons and assigned settings

Button name	Setting
K1 CB1	Wipe position for independent key 1 transition
K2 CB2	Wipe position for independent key 2 transition
K3	Wipe position for independent key 3 transition
K4	Wipe position for independent key 4 transition

Table 2: Buttons assigned to functions

Button name	Function
POS	Toggle Position on or off.
X, Y	Fix the operating direction.
CTR	Return the pattern position to the center of the screen.

- 2** Press one of the buttons in Table 1 above, to select the wipe position to which the operation applies. Multiple selection is possible.

Notes

By setting the operation mode in setup, you can also use [K1 CB1], [K2 CB2], [K3], and [K4] to select keys 5 to 8. In this case, press [SHIFT], turning it on, then press [K1 CB1], [K2 CB2], [K3], or [K4] to select one of keys 5 to 8. However, it is not possible to select more than one key.

For details of assignment for keys 5 to 8, see “Assigning Buttons for Selection of Keys 5 to 8 in the Setup Menu” in the Appendix (page 338).

- 3** Press the [POS] button, turning Position on.
- 4** Move the trackball or joystick, to set the wipe position. By pressing the [X] button, turning it on, you can restrict movement to the horizontal direction, and by pressing the [Y] button, turning it on, you can restrict movement to the vertical direction.

To set the wipe position by a menu operation

- 1** Press [Position] in the Key1 Wipe Adjust menu, turning it on.
- 2** Set the following parameters.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Position H	Horizontal position	-200.00 to +200.00 ^{a)}
2	Position V	Vertical position	-200.00 to +200.00 ^{a)}

a) See page 123.

To move the pattern from its current position to the center through the course of a transition

Press [Auto Center] in the <Position> group, turning it on.

Rotating the wipe pattern (Rotation)

- 1** In the <Rotation> group of the Key1 Wipe Adjust menu, select the rotation type.

Angle: Incline the pattern through a fixed angle.

Speed: Rotate at a speed rate.

Magnitude: Rotate the pattern through a fixed angle during the course of the transition.

- 2** According to the selection in step 1, set the following parameters.

When Angle is selected

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Angle	Angle of pattern rotation	-100.00 to +100.00 ^{a)}

a) See page 124.

When Speed is selected

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Speed	Rotation rate of pattern	-100.00 to +100.00 ^{a)}

a) See page 124.

When Magnitude is selected

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Angle	Angle of pattern rotation at start of transition	-100.00 to +100.00 ^{a)}
2	Magnitude	Angle of rotation through course of transition	-200.00 to +200.00 ^{a)}

a) See page 124.

Setting the wipe pattern aspect ratio (Aspect ratio)

- 1** Press [Aspect] in the Key1 Wipe Adjust menu, turning it on.

- 2** Set the following parameter.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Aspect	Aspect ratio	-100.00 to +100.00 ^{a)}

a)See page 125.

Replicating the wipe pattern (Multi)

- 1 Press [Multi] in the Key1 Wipe Adjust menu, turning it on.
- 2 Set the following parameters.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	H Multi	Number of repetitions of pattern horizontally	1 to 63
2	V Multi	Number of repetitions of pattern vertically	1 to 63
3	Invert Type	Replication layout	1 to 4 ^{a)}

a)See page 125.

Wipe Snapshots

You can snapshot and save a wipe pattern together with the current settings of its modifiers and pattern limit in a dedicated register for recall when required.

There are 10 wipe snapshot registers on each M/E bank and the PGM/PST bank.

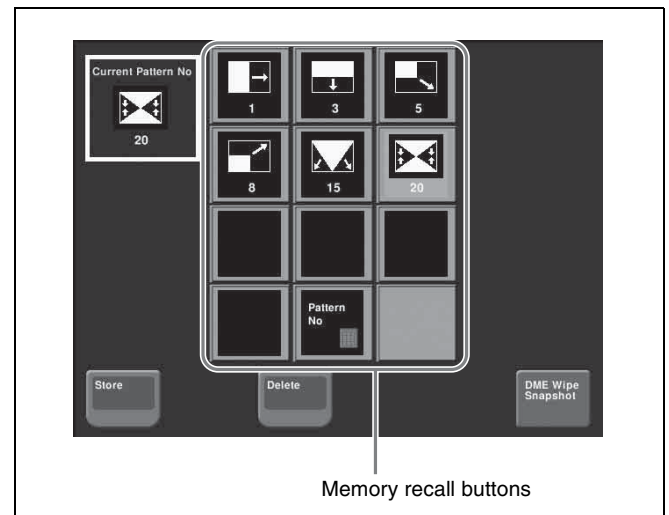
Use the menu to save and recall wipe snapshots.

Wipe Snapshot Operations With the Menus

Menus used

As an example, when operating on M/E-1, select M/E-1 >Wipe >Wipe Snapshot.

The Wipe Snapshot menu appears.



Button displays

In setup you can select whether the memory recall buttons show the pattern number or register name.

For details, see “Operation Settings (Operation Menu)” in Chapter 19 (Volume 2).

Saving a wipe snapshot from the menu

- 1 Set up the wipe you want to save.
- 2 In the Wipe Snapshot menu, press [Store], lighting it amber.
- 3 Press the memory recall button for the register in which you want to save.

Notes

- If you press a button which is already lit, this overwrites the contents of the register.
- When both the main pattern and sub pattern are selected for a pattern mix, the button in the memory recall section shows only the main pattern.

Recalling a wipe snapshot from the menu

In the Wipe Snapshot menu, press the memory recall button for the wipe snapshot you want to recall.

This recalls the wipe snapshot, and the button you pressed lights amber.

In the upper left is shown the currently recalled register name or number.

Notes

The Flexi Pad and menu settings are linked.

A setting in setup determines whether register names or pattern numbers appear.

Deleting a wipe snapshot from the menu

- 1 In the Wipe Snapshot menu, press [Delete].
- 2 Press the memory recall button for the wipe snapshot you want to delete.

Overview

A DME wipe is a wipe transition that uses a DME effect to change from one video image to the next.

There are two types of DME wipe: those which can be selected for a normal transition, and those which can be selected for an independent key transition .

Notes

It is also possible to carry out a DME wipe on a key using the resizer (*see page 145*).

Types of DME Wipe Pattern

The patterns used for a DME wipe fall into two broad classes.

Preset patterns: predetermined fixed patterns

User programmable DME patterns: patterns which you can create using keyframe effects

DME wipe execution mode and pattern numbers that can be used

There are three DME wipe execution modes, depending on the number of DME channels available: one-channel mode, two-channel mode and three-channel mode. The pattern numbers that can be used in these modes are as follows.

Execution mode	Preset pattern numbers that can be used	User programmable DME pattern numbers that can be used
One-channel mode	1000 series	1901 to 1999
Two-channel mode	2000 series	2901 to 2999
Three-channel mode	3000 series	3901 to 3999

Notes

- On the MVS-8000X, when the signal format is 1080P, the three-channel mode is not available.
- On the MVS-7000X, when the signal format is 1080P, the above restriction also applies if using the MVE-

8000A. There is no such restriction for the MKS-7470X/7471X.

DME wipe pattern groups

The patterns used in DME wipes fall into the following groups.

For each group (excluding user programmable DMEs), for schematic patterns and numbers, see “DME Wipe Pattern List” in Appendix (page 305).

Pattern groups	Effects	Pattern numbers		
		One-channel mode	Two-channel mode	Three-channel mode
Slide	The new video slides in over the old video.	1001 to 1008	2601 to 2608	—
Squeeze	The new video appears squeezed over the old video, and progressively expands to cover it.	1021 to 1031	2621 to 2628	—
Split	The old video splits, and the new video appears in the gap.	1011 to 1013	—	—
Door	The new video moves like a door closing, and progressively covers the old video.	10411048	—	—
Flip tumble	The old video rotates about an axis and is replaced by the new video. During the transition, the signal from the utility 2 bus of the M/E bank appears as the background.	1101 to 1104, 1109, 1110, 1121, 1122, 1124, 1131 to 1133, 1135	—	—
Mirror	The new video appears over the old video as a mirror effect slides in all four directions.	1355 to 1358	—	—
Sphere	The new video appears wrapped around a sphere over the old video, then returns to the original video while unwrapping.	1365	—	—
Character trail	The new video appears with a trail over the old video. Next this gradually returns to the original from the periphery.	1371, 1372	—	—
Wave	The new video appears with a wave-like effect over the old video. Next this returns to the original video as the effect reduces.	1378, 1379	—	—
Ripple	The new video appears over the old video like outwardly moving ripples.	1381	—	—
Page turn	The old video moves like a page turning, and the new video appears behind it.	1301 to 1313, 1315 to 1318, 1341 to 1345	2701 to 2713, 2715 to 2718, 2741 to 2745	—
Page roll	The new video unrolls like a scroll over the old video. This is a type of page turn.	1321 to 1333, 1335 to 1338, 1346 to 1350	2721 to 2733, 2735 to 2738, 2746 to 2750	—
Frame in-out	Completed in two transitions. In the first transition, the new video appears, then on the second transition the new video goes out and the old video returns.	1201 to 1208, 1221 to 1224	2851 to 2854, 2861 to 2864	—
Picture-in-picture	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • In one-channel mode, this completes in two transitions. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - In the first transition, the old video shrinks, and the new video appears behind it. - In the second transition, the old video expands again until it is its original size. • In two-channel mode, in the first half of the transition, the old video shrinks, and the new video appears. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - In the second half of the transition, the new video expands, and the old video disappears. - You can move the pattern from the current position by a relative amount. - During the transition, the signal from the utility 2 bus of the M/E bank appears as the background. 	1251	2651 to 2652	—
2D trans	The new video appears over the old video, while undergoing expansion, two-dimensional rotation and translation.	1051 to 1058, 1061 to 1064, 1068	—	—
3D trans	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • In one-channel mode, the new video appears over the old video, while undergoing expansion, three-dimensional rotation and translation. • In two-channel mode, the old video changes to the new video while both undergo expansion, three-dimensional rotation and translation. 	1071, 1072, 1074, 1076, 1077, 1088, 1091 to 1094	2631 to 2634, 2642, 2644	—

Pattern groups	Effects	Pattern numbers		
		One-channel mode	Two-channel mode	Three-channel mode
Sparkle	The new video appears over the old video with a nonlinear effect applied, such as broken glass, explosion, or melt. Next this returns to the original video as the effect gradually reduces.	1391, 1393, 1394, 1396, 1398, 1399	—	—
Split slide	The new video appears in strip form while sliding interleaved in the opposite direction over the old video.	1384 to 1389	—	—
Mosaic	In the first half of the transition, a mosaic is gradually applied to the old video, then at the 50% point the inner image changes to the new video. In the second half, the mosaic effect on the new video is gradually reduced, returning to the original image at 100%.	1701	—	—
Defocus	In the first half of the transition, the old video is gradually defocused, then at the 50% point the inner image changes to the new video. In the second half, the defocusing effect on the new video is gradually reduced, returning to the original image at 100%.	1702	—	—
Brick	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> In two-channel mode, a brick such that the side surface is visible slides in over the old video, then rotates so that the new video can be seen. In three-channel mode, a brick appears over the old video as the image is expanding and rotating, and switches to the new video. 	—	2801 to 2804, 2811 to 2814	3601
User programmable DME	Using a DME keyframe effect created with a keyframe operation, this executes a DME wipe. <i>For details of creating keyframe effects, see “Creating User Programmable DME Patterns” (page 146).</i>	1901 to 1999	2901 to 2999	3901 to 3999

Notes

In an independent key transition, the following patterns can be used.

Execution mode	DME wipe patterns that can be used
One-channel mode	Slide, split, squeeze, door, 2D trans, 3D trans, frame in-out, page turn, page roll, mirror, sphere, character trail, wave, ripple, split slide, sparkle, user programmable DME
Two-channel mode	Page turn, page roll

DME Wipe Pattern Variation and Modifiers

You can modify the selected DME wipe pattern in the same way as an ordinary wipe pattern, as follows.

For the setting operations, see “Setting DME Wipe Modifiers” (page 139).

Direction: You can set the DME wipe direction to normal, reverse, or alternating normal/reverse (*see page 139*), except for a key transition, which is always in normal/reverse mode. However, a key transition can only be specified when the following patterns are selected, and

when other patterns are selected, this is fixed, as normal/reverse.

Patterns: 1204, 1207, 1221 to 1224

Edge: You can apply a border or soft border (*see page 139*).

In the case of those user programmable DME patterns for keys in which an edge has already been applied to the effect, the behavior is as follows.

- When the DME wipe edge setting is on, only part of the edge applied in the effect is enabled, and that portion can be adjusted (*see page 139*).
- When the DME wipe edge setting is off, the edge applied in the effect is enabled as is.

Positioner: You can move the DME wipe pattern or center of the effect to an arbitrary position. Using the position select function, you can also instantaneously move the pattern.

- 1031
When this pattern number is selected, with the progress of the transition the pattern center automatically moves initially from the set position toward the center of the screen (*see page 139*). In other words, the effect obtained is the same as in a normal wipe with the positioner set to “AUTO CENTER”.
- 1201 to 1208, 1221 to 1224, 1251
When these pattern numbers are selected, you can

set the pattern position when the first transition completes.

- 1381, 1391, 1393, 1394, 1396

When these pattern numbers are selected, you can set the center of the transition effect.

- 2651, 2652

When these pattern numbers are selected, you can move the pattern for each channel, or with values relative to the current position the two channels simultaneously.

- 2801 to 2804, 2811 to 2814

When these pattern numbers are selected, you can set the vertical position as the brick slides in.

- 2851 to 2854, 2861 to 2864

When these pattern numbers are selected, you can set the pattern position for each channel setting when the first transition completes.

Pattern limit: You can restrict the range of the transition as desired. However, this is not available for a DME wipe in the independent key transition control block.

For more details, see “Pattern Limit” (page 72).

Size: This can only be used when one of the following pattern numbers is selected.

- 1201 to 1208, 1221 to 1224, 1251
- 2651, 2652, 2851 to 2854, 2861 to 2864

You can set the size of the image.

Crop: You can crop the image. It is also possible in 16:9 mode to crop both sides, to convert the image to a 4:3 aspect ratio. For the execution of a DME wipe crop transition, you can select from the following three possibilities.

- Cut
- Last 5%
- Linear

When [Last 5%] is selected, you can set the [Release Transition] as follows.

- Last 30%
- Last 5%
- Off

Notes

When pattern numbers 1701 and 1702 are selected, crop cannot be used.

Relation Between DME Wipes and Other Effects

The relations between DME wipes and other effects are as follows.

Relation to ordinary wipes

- DME wipes do not use the wipe generator built into the switcher. Therefore, during the execution of a DME

wipe, you can still use a pattern produced by the wipe generator as the source for a pattern key or mask.

- A DME wipe pattern cannot be used as the source for a pattern key or mask.

Relation to processed keys

When using the DME for a processed key, if you select a DME wipe, an available DME is automatically allocated to the DME wipe. If all of the DME channels are in use, then it is not possible to select a DME wipe.

If in a Setup menu a setting has been made for DME allocation, that Setup menu setting takes precedence.

For details, see “Setting the assignments of DME channels to use on the individual M/E banks” in Chapter 20 (Volume 2).

Relation to resizer

When resizer is enabled, it is not possible to select a DME wipe.

For the key 1 and key 2, key 3 and key 4, key 5 and key 6, or key 7 and key 8 combinations, if one is used for a dual resizer effect, the other key cannot be used for a DME wipe.

Number of DME wipes that can be used simultaneously on a single M/E bank

DME wipes can be used in nine places, including the eight independent key transitions.

Notes

- When the signal format is 1080P, DME wipes can be used in five places, including the four independent key transitions.
- In the case of the MVS-8000X, DME effects cannot be applied on keys 5 to 8 of the M/E-4 bank. There is no such restriction for the MVS-7000X.
- When the SDI interface is used to connect the DME, DME effects (including DME wipes) can be used in only one place for one M/E bank.
- When the dedicated interface is used to connect the DME, the number of keys to which DME effects (including DME wipes) can be applied simultaneously for one M/E bank varies as follows depending on the execution mode of the DME wipe pattern selected for the background.

Applicable block	Key to which DME effects are applied	DME wipe pattern for background	Number of keys to which DME effects can be applied simultaneously
Other than M/E-4	Keys 1 to 4	No DME wipe used	2
		One-channel mode	1
		Two- or three-channel mode	0
	Keys 5 to 8	-	2 a)
M/E-4	Keys 1 to 4	No DME wipe used	2 b)
		One-channel mode	1 c)
		Two- or three-channel mode	0
	Keys 5 to 8	-	0

Key to which DME effects are applied	DME wipe pattern for background	Number of keys to which DME effects can be applied simultaneously
Keys 1 to 4	No DME wipe used	2
	One-channel mode	1
	Two- or three-channel mode	0
Keys 5 to 8	-	2 a)

- a) 0 when the system signal format is 1080P.
- b) 1 when the system signal format is 1080P and the DME input/output signal format is set to dual link mode.
- c) 0 when the system signal format is 1080P and the DME input/output signal format is set to dual link mode.

Basic Procedure for DME Wipe Settings

You carry out DME wipe setting operations principally using the DME Wipe menu for each bank. This section describes the basic procedures for DME wipe settings, taking the M/E-1 >DME Wipe menu as an example.

For details of independent key transition DME wipe settings, see “DME Wipe Settings for Independent Key Transitions” (page 143).

For details of resizer DME wipe, see “Resizer DME Wipe Setting” (page 145).

DME Wipe Settings Menu

Accessing the DME Wipe menu

To access the M/E-1 >DME Wipe menu, use either of the following operations.

- In the menu control block, select the top menu selection button [M/E 1], and press VF6 ‘DME Wipe.’

Notes

To select [M/E-4], a previous assignment in the Setup menu is required.

- In the transition control block of the M/E-1 bank, press the transition type selection button [DME] twice in rapid succession.

DME Wipe Pattern Selection

Selecting a DME wipe pattern by a menu operation

- 1 In the M/E-1 >DME Wipe menu, select HF1 ‘1ch’ for one-channel mode, HF2 ‘2ch’ for two-channel mode or HF3 ‘3ch’ for three-channel mode.
- 2 Select the desired DME wipe pattern group with one of the following buttons.
 - **Slide/Squeeze:** slide and squeeze
 - **Split/Door:** split and door
 - **Flip Tumble:** flip tumble
 - **Mirror/Sphere:** mirror and sphere
 - **Character Trail:** character trail

- **Wave/Ripple:** wave and ripple
- **Page Turn/Roll:** page turn and page roll
- **Frame I/O/P in P:** frame in/out and picture-in-picture
- **2D Trans/3D Trans:** 2D trans and 3D trans
- **Sparkle/Split Slide:** sparkle and split slide
- **Mosaic/Defocus:** mosaic and defocus
- **Brick:** brick
- **User Program:** user programmable DME

Selectable DME wipe pattern groups in one-channel mode: All of the above groups except for Brick.

Selectable DME wipe pattern groups in two-channel mode: Slide/Squeeze, Page Turn/Roll, Frame I/O, PinP, 3D Trans, Brick and User Program.

Selectable DME wipe pattern groups in three-channel mode: User Program and Brick.

For details of DME wipe patterns, see “Types of DME Wipe Pattern” (page 133) and “DME Wipe Pattern List” (page 305).

The patterns from the selected pattern group appear on the screen.

3 Press the button to select the desired pattern.

Notes

For a key transition, the page turn, page roll and picture-in-picture cannot be used.

Adjusting DME wipe pattern parameters

Of the DME wipe patterns, the following have parameters that can be adjusted.

When Brick (for two channels) is selected (pattern numbers 2801 to 2804, 2811 to 2814)

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Side V Size X	Horizontal magnification	0.01 to 8.00
2	Side V Size Y	Vertical magnification	0.01 to 8.00
3	Height	Height of brick	0.01 to 100.00
4	Center X	Horizontal center position	-100.00 to +100.00 ^{a)}
5	Center Y	Vertical center position	-100.00 to +100.00 ^{b)}

a) The horizontal center position of the video pasted on Side V. At -100.00 the center is at the left edge of the screen, and at +100.00 the center is at the right edge of the screen.

b) The vertical center position of the video pasted on Side V. At -100.00 the center is at the bottom edge of the screen, and at +100.00 the center is at the top edge of the screen.

When Frame in-out (for two channels) is selected

• Pattern numbers 2851 to 2854

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
5	Delay	Timing for video selected on a utility bus to appear on the screen	-100.00 to +100.00

• Pattern numbers 2861 to 2864

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Rot X	Rotation about the Y axis (horizontal direction)	-100.00 to +100.00
2	Rot Y	Rotation about the X axis (vertical direction)	-100.00 to +100.00
3	Rot Z	Rotation about the Z axis	-100.00 to +100.00
5	Delay	Timing for video selected on a utility bus to appear on the screen	-100.00 to +100.00

When Brick (for three channels) is selected (pattern number 3601)

Parameter group [1/2]

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Side V Size X	Side V horizontal magnification	0.01 to 8.00
2	Side V Size Y	Side V vertical magnification	0.01 to 8.00
3	Height	Height of brick	0.01 to 100.00 ^{a)}
4	Side V Center X	Side V horizontal center position	-100.00 to +100.00 ^{b)}
5	Side V Center Y	Side V vertical center position	-100.00 to +100.00 ^{c)}

a) Shared with knob 3 for parameter group 2

b) The horizontal center position of the video pasted on Side V. At -100.00 the center is at the left edge of the screen, and at +100.00 the center is at the right edge of the screen.

c) The vertical center position of the video pasted on Side V. At -100.00 the center is at the bottom edge of the screen, and at +100.00 the center is at the top edge of the screen.

Parameter group [2/2]

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Side H Size X	Side H horizontal magnification	0.01 to 8.00
2	Side H Size Y	Side H vertical magnification	0.01 to 8.00

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
3	Height	Height of brick	0.01 to 100.00 a)
4	Side H Center X	Side H horizontal center position	-100.00 to +100.00 b)
5	Side H Center Y	Side H vertical center position	-100.00 to +100.00 c)

a) Shared with knob 3 for parameter group 1

b) The horizontal center position of the video pasted on Side H. At -100.00 the center is at the left edge of the screen, and at +100.00 the center is at the right edge of the screen.

c) The vertical center position of the video pasted on Side H. At -100.00 the center is at the bottom edge of the screen, and at +100.00 the center is at the top edge of the screen.

Setting DME Wipe Modifiers

You can apply various modifiers to the DME wipe pattern: setting the DME wipe direction, pattern position, and so on.

For an overview of the DME wipe modifiers, see “DME Wipe Pattern Variation and Modifiers” (page 135).

Specifying the DME wipe direction (Direction)

You can specify the DME wipe direction (normal/reverse).

To specify the DME wipe direction in a menu

- 1 In the M/E-1 >DME Wipe menu, select HF4 ‘Edge/Direction.’

The Edge/Direction menu appears.

- 2 In the <Direction> group, specify the DME wipe direction.

Normal: regular direction

Normal/Reverse: alternate between regular and reverse for each transition

Reverse: reverse direction to normal

To specify the DME wipe direction with a button in the transition control block

In the transition control block of each of the M/E-1 to M/E-3 and PGM/PST banks, press the following direction selection buttons.

NORM: Normal

NORM/REV: Normal/Reverse

REV: Reverse

Modifying the DME wipe pattern edge

- 1 In the M/E-1 >DME Wipe menu, select HF4 ‘Edge/Direction.’

The Edge/Direction menu appears.

- 2 Depending on whether the selected pattern is in one-channel mode or two-channel mode, proceed as follows.

For a pattern in one-channel mode: press [1st Ch], turning it on.

For a pattern in two-channel mode: from the <Ch Select> group, select the corresponding channel. You can select more than one channel at the same time.

- 3 In the <Edge> group, select the edge type.

Border: border

Soft Border: soft border

- 4 Set the parameters according to the selection in step 3.

When border is selected

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Width	Border width	0.00 to 100.00
3	Luminance	Luminance	0.00 to 100.00
4	Saturation	Saturation	0.00 to 100.00
5	Hue	Hue	359.99 to 0.00

When soft border is selected

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Width	Border width	0.00 to 100.00
2	Inner Soft	Border inner softness	0.00 to 100.00
3	Luminance	Luminance	0.00 to 100.00
4	Saturation	Saturation	0.00 to 100.00
5	Hue	Hue	359.99 to 0.00

Display indications when multiple channels are selected at the same time

The indications on the knobs show the settings of the lowest-numbered channel. When you turn the knobs to adjust the settings, this changes the settings on the other channels by the same amount.

Setting the DME wipe position (Positioner)

- 1 In the M/E-1 >DME Wipe menu, select HF5 ‘Modify.’

The Modify menu appears.

2 Depending on whether the DME wipe pattern is in one-channel mode or two-channel mode, proceed as follows.

For a pattern in one-channel mode: press [1st Ch], turning it on.

For a pattern in two-channel mode: from the <Ch Select> group, select the corresponding channel. You can select more than one channel at the same time.

3 In the <Position> group, press [Position], turning it on.

4 Set the following parameters.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	H	Horizontal position	-200.00 to +200.00
2	V	Vertical position	-200.00 to +200.00

Display indications when multiple channels are selected at the same time

The indications on the knobs show the settings of the lowest-numbered channel. When you turn the knobs to adjust the settings, this changes the settings on the other channels by the same amount.

To return the DME wipe pattern position to the center of the screen

In the <Position> group, press [Center].

Displaying and moving the position of the DME wipe pattern (position select)

1 In the M/E-1 >DME Wipe menu, select HF5 ‘Modify.’

The Modify menu appears.

In the <Position Select> group, the one of the [Top Left], [Top Right], [Bottom Left], and [Bottom Right] buttons that is on indicates the current display position of the DME wipe pattern.

2 In the <Position> group, press [Position], turning it on.

3 Depending on whether the DME wipe pattern is in one-channel mode or two-channel mode, proceed as follows.

In one-channel mode: press [1st Ch], turning it on.

In two-channel mode: from the <Ch Select> group, select the corresponding channel. You can select more than one channel at the same time.

4 To move the position of the DME wipe pattern, press the button where you want to move to, turning it on.

The DME wipe pattern displayed on the screen moves to the position of the specified button.

Setting relative positions to move the DME wipe pattern

In two-channel mode, use the following procedure.

1 In the M/E-1 >DME Wipe menu, select HF5 ‘Modify.’

The Modify menu appears.

2 In the <Ch Select> group, select the target channels.

3 Press [Position] in the <Position> group, turning it on.

4 Set the following parameters.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
4	Relative H	Relative movement in the horizontal direction	-400.00 to +400.00
5	Relative V	Relative movement in the vertical direction	-400.00 to +400.00

For details of the method of DME wipe pattern selection, see “DME Wipe Pattern Selection” (page 137)).

Setting the DME wipe pattern size (Size)

1 In the M/E-1 >DME Wipe menu, select HF5 ‘Modify.’

The Modify menu appears.

2 Depending on whether the selected pattern is in one-channel mode or two-channel mode, proceed as follows.

For a pattern in one-channel mode: press [1st Ch], turning it on.

For a pattern in two-channel mode: from the <Ch Select> group, select the corresponding channel. You can select more than one channel at the same time.

3 Press [Size], turning it on.

4 Set the following parameters.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Size	Set size of effect	0.00 to 200.00 ^{a)}

^{a)} The effect size when [Size] is off is taken as 100.00%.

Display indications when multiple channels are selected at the same time

The indications on the knobs show the settings of the lowest-numbered channel. When you turn the knobs to adjust the settings, this changes the settings on the other channels by the same amount.

Adjusting the DME wipe pattern cropping

Notes

When pattern numbers 1701 and 1702 are selected, crop cannot be used.

- 1 In the M/E-1 >DME Wipe menu, select HF5 ‘Modify.’
The Modify menu appears.
- 2 Depending on whether the selected pattern is in one-channel mode or two-channel mode, proceed as follows.

For a pattern in one-channel mode: press [1st Ch], turning it on.
For a pattern in two-channel mode: from the <Ch Select> group, select the corresponding channel. You can select more than one channel at the same time. Some patterns need no selection which is fixed in the <Ch Select> group.
- 3 In the <Crop Mode> group, press [Crop], turning it on.
- 4 Set the following parameters.

Parameter group [1/2]

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	H	Crop the left and right of the image	Left value shown
2	V	Crop the top and bottom of the image	Top value shown
3	All	Crop the top, bottom, left, and right of the image	Left value shown

Parameter group [2/2]

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Top	Crop the top of the image	-100.00 to +100.00
2	Left	Crop the left of the image	-100.00 to +100.00
3	Right	Crop the right of the image	-100.00 to +100.00

Parameter group [2/2]

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
4	Bottom	Crop the bottom of the image	-100.00 to +100.00

Display indications when multiple channels are selected at the same time

The indications on the knobs show the settings of the lowest-numbered channel. When you turn the knobs to adjust the settings, this changes the settings on the other channels by the same amount.

In 16:9 mode, to crop to 4:3 aspect ratio

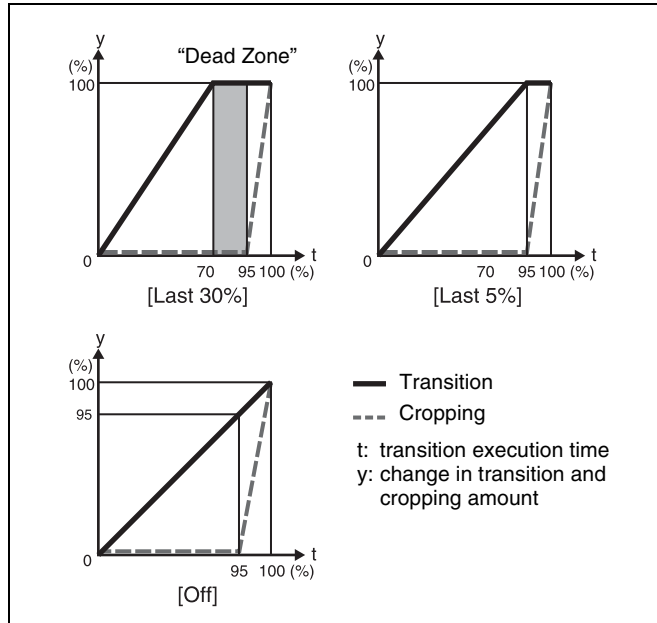
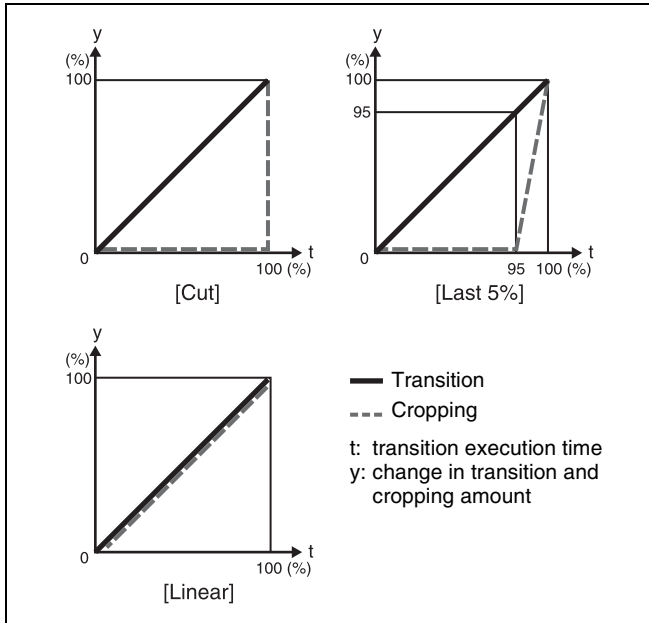
In the <Crop Mode> group, press [4:3 Crop], turning it on.

To set the action when a DME wipe crop transition is executed

- 1 In the M/E-1 >DME Wipe menu, select HF5 ‘Modify.’
The Modify menu appears.
- 2 Depending on whether the selected pattern is in one-channel mode or two-channel mode, proceed as follows.

For a pattern in one-channel mode: in the <Ch Select> group, press [1st Ch], turning it on.
For a pattern in two-channel mode: from the <Ch Select> group, select the corresponding channels. You can select more than one channel at the same time.
- 3 In the <Crop Mode> group, press [Crop] or [4:3 Crop] (to crop from 16:9 to 4:3 aspect ratio), turning it on.
- 4 In the <Crop Mode> group, press [Remove From Begin].
The Remove From Begin menu appears.
- 5 In the <Crop Transition> group, select the execution mode for the DME wipe crop transition.

Cut: Cut mode. The cropping does not change during the transition, but at the end point of the transition the cropping is removed (enlarges).
Last 5%: The cropping is maintained for the first 95% of the transition, and is progressively removed during the last 5% of the transition (enlarges).
Linear: The cropping is removed linearly through the whole course of the transition (enlarges).



Setting the timing of transition completion

When the execution mode for a DME wipe crop transition is set to [Last 5%], you can select the timing of transition completion from 70% ([Last 30%]), 95% ([Last 5%]), and 100% ([Off]).

1 In the M/E 1 >DME Wipe menu, select HF5 'Modify.'

The Modify menu appears.

2 In the <Crop Mode> group select [Remove From Begin].

The Remove From Begin menu appears.

3 In the <Release Transition> group, select the timing of transition completion.

Last 30%: The transition completes at the end of 70% of the transition execution time. The transition has a dead zone from 70% to 95% of the transition time.

Last 5%: The transition completes at the end of 95% of the transition execution time. When the transition completes, the cropping is removed during the last 5% (enlarges).

Off: The transition completes at the end of the transition execution time. During the last 5% of the transition, the transition and cropping removal proceed together.

DME Wipe Modify Clear

Press [Default Recall] at the lower left of the menu display, turning it on, then press VF6 'DME Wipe' to return the DME wipe settings to their initial status.

For details of the menu operation to return the DME wipe state to that set in initial status, see "Returning to Default State in Function Groupings" (page 53).



DME Wipe Settings for Independent Key Transitions

You carry out independent key/downstream key transition DME wipe setting operations using the DME Wipe Adjust menu for each keyer.

For an overview of independent key transitions, see page 77.

This section describes the independent key transition DME wipe settings, taking the M/E-1 >Key1 >Transition >DME Wipe Adjust menu as an example.

Basic Procedure for Independent Key Transition DME Wipe Settings

Accessing the independent key transition DME wipe settings menu

As an example, to access the M/E-1 >Key1 >Transition >DME Wipe Adjust menu, carry out the following operation.

- In the menu control block, select the top menu selection button [M/E 1], and select VF1 ‘Key1’ and HF6 ‘Transition’ to display the Transition menu for key 1. Next, press [DME Wipe Adjust].
If VF1 [Key5] is shown, press the switching button at the top of the menu, so that [Key1-4] appears, and press VF1 [Key1].

Notes

To select [M/E-4], a previous assignment in the Setup menu is required.

Carrying out the above operation displays the M/E-1 >Key1 >Transition >DME Wipe Adjust menu (which will be referred to below as simply the Key1 DME Wipe Adjust menu).

Selecting the independent key transition DME wipe pattern

You select the independent key DME wipe pattern from the list of patterns displayed in the menu. To select a DME wipe pattern for independent key1 on the M/E-1 bank, use the following procedure.

- 1 In the <Pattern Select> group of the Key1 DME Wipe Adjust menu, press [1ch] for one-channel mode or [2ch] for two-channel mode.
The Pattern Select menu appears.

- 2 Select the desired DME wipe pattern group with one of the following buttons.

(In two-channel mode, only Page Turn and Page Roll are selectable.)

- **Slide/Squeeze:** slide and squeeze
- **Split/Door:** split and door
- **Mirror/Sphere:** mirror and sphere
- **Character Trail:** character trail
- **Wave/Ripple:** wave and ripple
- **Page Turn/Roll:** page turn and page roll
- **Frame I/O:** frame in/out
- **2D Trans/3D Trans:** 2D Trans and 3D Trans
- **Sparkle/Split Slide:** sparkle and split slide
- **User Program:** user programmable DME

For details of DME wipe patterns, see “Types of DME Wipe Pattern” (page 133) and “DME Wipe Pattern List” (page 305).

- 3 Press the button to select the desired pattern.

Setting Independent Key Transition DME Wipe Modifiers

You can add modifiers such as pattern position and size for an independent key transition DME wipe.

For introductory information, see “Setting the DME wipe position (Positioner)” (page 139) and “Setting the DME wipe pattern size (Size)” (page 140).

Setting the DME wipe position (Positioner)

For applicable pattern numbers, see page 135.

- 1 In the <Position> group of the Key1 DME Wipe Adjust menu, press [Position], turning it on.
- 2 Set the following parameters.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	H	Horizontal position	-200.00 to +200.00
2	V	Vertical position	-200.00 to +200.00

To return the DME wipe pattern position to the center of the screen

In the <Position> group, press [Center].

Setting the DME wipe pattern size (Size)

For applicable pattern numbers, see page 136.

- 1 In the Key 1 DME Wipe Adjust menu, press [Size], turning it on.
- 2 Set the following parameter.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Size	Set size of effect	0.00 to 200.00 ^{a)}

a) The effect size when [Size] is off is taken as 100.00%.

Cropping a key DME wipe

- 1 In the <Crop Mode> group of the Key1 DME Wipe Adjust menu, press [Crop], turning it on.
- 2 Set the following parameters.

Parameter group [1/2]

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	H	Crop the left and right of the image	Left value shown
2	V	Crop the top and bottom of the image	Top value shown
3	All	Crop the top, bottom, left, and right of the image	Left value shown

Parameter group [2/2]

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Top	Cropping of the top of the image	-100.00 to +100.00
2	Left	Cropping of the left of the image	-100.00 to +100.00
3	Right	Cropping of the right of the image	-100.00 to +100.00
4	Bottom	Cropping of the bottom of the image	-100.00 to +100.00

To crop to 4:3 in 16:9 mode

In the <Crop Mode> group, press [4:3 Crop], turning it on.

To set the operation for DME wipe crop transition execution

- 1 In the <Crop Mode> group of the Key1 DME Wipe Adjust menu, press [Crop], turning it on.
- 2 In the <Crop Mode> group, press [Crop] or [4:3 Crop] (to crop to 4:3 in 16:9 mode), turning it on.
- 3 In the <Crop Mode> group, press [Remove From Begin].

The Remove From Begin menu appears.

For subsequent operations, see step 5 of “To set the action when a DME wipe crop transition is executed” (page 141).

To set the timing of transition completion

- 1 In the <Crop Mode> group of the Key1 DME Wipe Adjust menu, press [Crop], turning it on.
- 2 In the <Crop Mode> group, press [Remove From Begin].

For subsequent operations, see “Setting the timing of transition completion” (page 142).

Applying a border to a key DME wipe

In the <Edge> group of the Key1 DME Wipe Adjust menu, press [Border], turning it on.

For subsequent operations, use the same process as in step 4 of “Modifying the DME wipe pattern edge” (page 139).

Resizer DME Wipe Setting

You can carry out a DME wipe on a key using the resizer.

Notes

When the screen aspect ratio is 4:3 in HD format, when the resizer DME wipe is used to shrink a video image, this is applied to the 16:9 screen including the added video on the left and right sides. Use the crop function as required to extract the 4:3 image.

DME wipe patterns available for resizer DME wipe

You can use the following patterns of the DME wipe pattern one-channel mode that can be used in a resizer DME wipe. (7000-series numbers)

- Slide (pattern numbers: 7001 to 7008)
- Squeeze (pattern numbers: 7021 to 7031)
- Frame in-out (pattern numbers: 7201 to 7208, 7221 to 7224)

Relation between resizer DME wipes and other effects

The following relations hold between a resizer DME wipe and other effects.

Relation to processed keys

It is not possible to select a resizer DME wipe for a key with processed key enabled.

Relation to resizer

It is not possible to use a resizer DME wipe for a key with resizer enabled.

It is not possible to use a resizer DME wipe for a key forming a pair with a key with the dual resizer effect enabled. The key combinations forming pairs are keys 1 and 2, keys 3 and 4, key 5 and key 6, and key 7 and key 8. For example, when a dual resizer effect is enabled for key 1, it is not possible to use a resizer DME wipe on key 2.

Making resizer DME wipe settings

- 1 In the <Pattern Select> group of the Key1 DME Wipe Adjust menu, press [1ch].

The 1ch Pattern Select menu appears.

- 2 Select [Resizer Slide/Squeeze] or [Resizer Frame I/O].

The patterns of the selected group appear.

The wipe patterns that can be used for a resizer DME wipe are as follows.

- **Slide** (pattern numbers: 7001 to 7008)
- **Squeeze** (pattern numbers: 7021 to 7031)

- **Frame in-out** (pattern numbers: 7201 to 7208, 7221 to 7224)

- 3 Press the desired pattern to select it.

For more about resizer DME wipe modifiers, see “Setting Independent Key Transition DME Wipe Modifiers” (page 143).

DME Wipe Snapshots

You can snapshot and save a DME wipe pattern together with the current settings of its modifiers and pattern limit in a dedicated register for recall when required.

There are 10 DME wipe snapshot registers for each of the M/E and P/P banks.

Use the menu to save and recall these registers.

DME Snapshot Operations With the Menus

In the same way as for wipe snapshots, you can save, recall, and delete DME snapshots.

For details of the operating procedures, see “Wipe Snapshot Operations With the Menus” (page 131).

Creating User Programmable DME Patterns

With a user programmable DME, you can use DME effects created through the use of keyframes for a transition on the switcher system.

Note the following points when creating a keyframe effect for use as a user programmable DME pattern.

Register numbers and pattern numbers

When saving a keyframe effect as a user programmable DME pattern, specify the register number that corresponds to the pattern number as shown in the following table.

Execution mode	Register number	Pattern number
One-channel mode	101 to 199	1901 to 1999
Two-channel mode	201 to 299	2901 to 2999
Three-channel mode	301 to 399	3901 to 3999

For details of registers and keyframe effects, see Chapter 13 “Keyframe Effects” (Volume 2), respectively.

Notes

When the signal format is 1080P, three-channel mode cannot be used.

Keyframe effects in the global channel

When the effect with the same number as the reference channel is present on the DME global (GLBL) channel, executing the user programmable DME will also execute the effect on the global channel simultaneously.

When executing a user programmable DME, take note of whether the effect is present on the global channel.

User Programmable DME Transition Mode

To create a user programmable DME, it is necessary to set the transition mode (the way in which the effect moves). To set the transition mode, use the Key Frame >DME User PGM menu.

For details of the operating procedures, see “Transition Mode Settings for User Programmable DME” in Chapter 13 (Volume 2).

The following transition modes are available.

Channels	Transition mode	Effect group
One-channel mode	Single transition mode	Slide, Split, Door, Page turn, Page roll, Squeeze, Mirror, Sphere, Character Trail, Wave, Ripple, 2D Trans, 3D Trans, Sparkle, Split Slide
	Flip Tumble	Flip Tumble, Mosaic, Defocus
	Frame in-out	Frame in-out
	Frame in-out H ^{a)}	Frame in-out
	Frame in-out V	Frame in-out
	Picture-in-picture ^{b)}	Picture-in-picture
	Compress ^{c)}	Picture-in-picture
Two-channel mode	Dual transition mode	Slide, Squeeze, 3D Trans
	Two-channel picture-in-picture	Picture-in-picture

a) Transition according to DME wipe patterns 1202, 1203, or 1204

b) Transition according to DME wipe pattern 1201

c) Transition according to DME wipe pattern 1251

For details, see “Overview” (page 133).

Notes

For the following group of effects available in two-channel mode, no user programmable DME wipe patterns can be created.

Page turn, Page roll, Frame in-out, Brick

Notes on creating keyframe effects

When creating a keyframe effect to be used as a user programmable DME pattern, note the following, depending on the transition mode used.

Notes on single transition mode (one-channel mode)

- Either create the first keyframe image outside the screen area, or set the image size to zero so that it cannot be seen within the screen.
- Create the last keyframe to be a full-size image.
- In the <Transition Mode> group of the Key Frame >DME User PGM menu, select [Single].

Notes on flip tumble (one-channel mode)

- Create the first keyframe image at full size. In the <Back> group of the DME >Input/Output >Video/Key menu, depending on the direction of the rotation you want during the transition, press [H Invert] or [V Invert], turning it on.

- Create the last keyframe with the image inverted so the back side is visible, and with the size at full size.
- In the <Transition Mode> group of the Key Frame >DME User PGM menu, select [Flip Tumble].

Notes on frame in-out (one-channel mode)

Create a minimum of three keyframes.

- Either create the first keyframe image outside the screen area, or set the image size to zero so that it cannot be seen within the screen.
- Create the first transition to end such that the image can be seen within the screen. At this point, press the [PAUSE] button in the keyframe control block, turning it on, to set a pause for the keyframe.
- Either create the last keyframe image outside the screen area, or set the image size to zero so that it cannot be seen within the screen.
- In the <Transition Mode> group of the Key Frame >DME User PGM menu, select [FRAME I/O].

Notes on Frame in-out H (one-channel mode)

Create a minimum of three keyframe points.

- Either create the first keyframe image outside the screen area, or set the image size to zero so that it cannot be seen within the screen.
- As the state after completion of the first transition, move the image horizontally to make it visible within the screen. At this time, press the [PAUSE] button in the keyframe control block, turning it on, to set a pause for the keyframe.
- For the last keyframe move the image horizontally to place it outside the screen area or set the image size to zero, so that the image is not visible within the screen.
- In the <Transition Mode> group of the Key Frame >DME User PGM menu, select [FRAME I/O H].

Notes on frame in-out V (one-channel mode)

Create a minimum of three keyframe points.

- Either create the first keyframe image outside the screen area, or set the image size to zero so that it cannot be seen within the screen.
- As the state after completion of the first transition, move the image vertically to make it visible within the screen. At this time, press the [PAUSE] button in the keyframe control block, turning it on, to set a pause for the keyframe.
- For the last keyframe move the image vertically to place it outside the screen area or set the image size to zero, so that the image is not visible within the screen.
- In the <Transition Mode> group of the Key Frame >DME User PGM menu, select [FRAME I/O V].

Notes on picture-in-picture (one-channel mode)

Create a minimum of three keyframes.

- Either create the first keyframe image outside the screen area, or set the image size to zero so that it cannot be seen within the screen.
- Create the first transition to end such that the image can be seen within the screen. At this point, press the

[PAUSE] button in the keyframe control block, turning it on, to set a pause for the keyframe.

- Either create the last keyframe image outside the screen area, or set the image size to zero so that it cannot be seen within the screen.
- In the <Transition Mode> group of the Key Frame >DME User PGM menu, select [P In P].

Notes on compress (one-channel mode)

Create a minimum of three keyframe points.

- Create the first keyframe with the image at full size.
- In the state at completion of the first transition, create the image to be visible within the screen. At this time, press the [PAUSE] button in the keyframe control block, turning it on, to set a pause for the keyframe.
- For the last keyframe, once again set the image size to full size.
- In the <Transition Mode> group of the Key Frame >DME User PGM menu, select [Compress].

Notes on dual transition mode (two-channel mode)

- Create the first keyframe for each channel as follows.
 - **Channel 1:** create the image full-size.
 - **Channel 2:** either create the image outside the screen area, or set the image size to zero so that it cannot be seen within the screen.
- Create the last keyframe for each channel as follows.
 - **Channel 1:** either create the image outside the screen area, or set the image size to zero so that it cannot be seen within the screen.
 - **Channel 2:** create the image full-size.
- In the <Transition Mode> group of the Key Frame >DME User PGM menu, select [Dual].

Notes on picture-in-picture (two-channel mode)

Create a minimum of three keyframes.

- Create the first keyframe for each channel as follows.
 - **Channel 1:** create the image full-size.
 - **Channel 2:** since the priority is low, it will not be visible on the screen, so no particular restrictions apply.

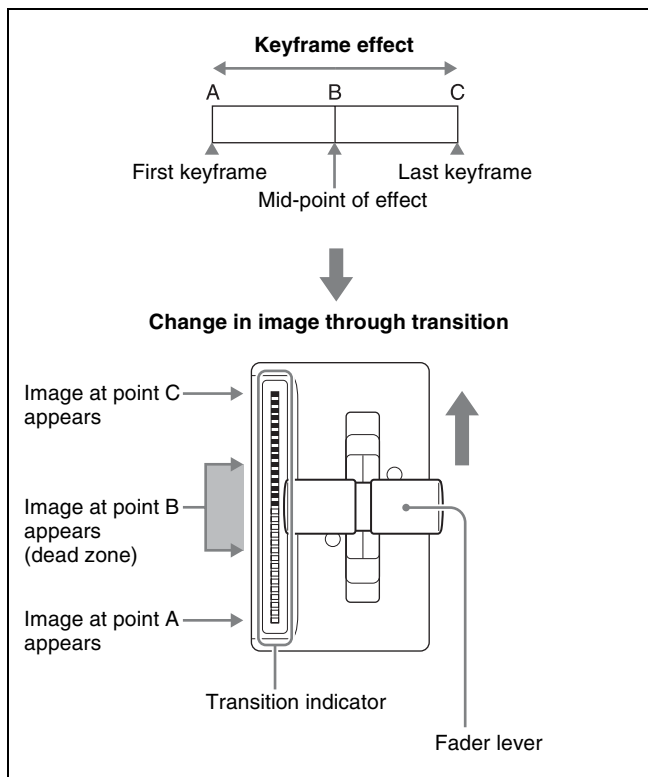
In the Global Effect >Ch1 to Ch4 >Combiner menu, when setting the priority of channel 1 and channel 2, set the channel 1 priority higher.

- In the intermediate part of the transition, create the two images so that both are visible within the screen. In the Global Effect >Ch1 to Ch4 >Combiner menu, when setting the priority of channel 1 and channel 2, set the channel 2 priority higher.

It is recommended to make the priority settings at a keyframe point at which the two images are not overlapping.

- During the course of a transition, there is a “dead zone” corresponding to the intermediate point of the whole effect (*see following figure*), during which the image does not change. Therefore, it is necessary to create the effect so that the image in the intermediate part of the

transition is the keyframe for the mid-point of the whole effect. The range of this “dead zone” corresponds to the central one-third of the range of the transition indicator. This also applies to an auto transition.



- Create the last keyframe for each channel as follows.
 - **Channel 1:** since the priority is low, it will not be visible on the screen, so no particular restrictions apply.
 - **Channel 2:** create the image full-size.
- In the <Transition Mode> group of the Key Frame >DME User PGM menu, select [P In P].

Overview

Frame memory is a function whereby a frame of input video can be frozen and written to memory, for further use as material for editing.

You can also play recorded frame memory clips (movies).

Frame capacity

The frame memory board has two blocks of memory, and the following table shows the maximum number of images that can be written to each block. (Of the two, one is reserved for storing frame memory clips.)

HD system:
(Without ancillary data)

Video format	Memory capacity
1080i/50	Approx. 1000 frames
1080i/59.94	
1080PsF/23.976	
1080PsF/24	
1080PsF/25	
1080PsF/29.97	
1080PsF/50	Approx. 2300 frames
1080P/30	
720P/50	Approx. 2300 frames
720P/59.94	

(With ancillary data)

Video format	Memory capacity
1080i/50	Approx. 700 frames
1080i/59.94	Approx. 800 frames
1080i/60	
1080PsF/23.976	Approx. 600 frames
1080PsF/24	
1080PsF/25	Approx. 700 frames

Video format	Memory capacity
1080PsF/29.97	Approx. 800 frames
1080PsF/30	
720P/50	Approx. 1400 frames
720P/59.94	Approx. 1700 frames

SD system:
(Without ancillary data)

Video format	Memory capacity
480i/59.94	Approx. 5600 frames
576i/50	Approx. 4800 frames

(With ancillary data)

Video format	Memory capacity
480i/59.94	Approx. 4700 frames
576i/50	Approx. 3900 frames

For details of operating procedures, see “Still Image Operations” (page 151).

Types of image and terminology used

The following types of image are handled in frame memory.

Freeze image: An input image that has been frozen, but not saved to memory.

Still image: A freeze frame that has been saved to memory as a file. Each file (still file) holds just one still image.

Frame memory clip: A clip consists of a sequence of still images, which appears as a movie on playback. In this manual this is also referred to simply as a “clip.” The files (still files) constituting clips are referred to as a “clip file.”

When the above distinctions are not being made, an image is simply referred to as an “image.”

About extended clips

Of the two memory blocks for saving a clip, the clip saved in the one which is not combined with a still image is called an “extended clip.”

However, when the signal format is 1080P, since both a still image and a clip are saved in both memory blocks, there is no extended clip.

Use of frame memory

There are eight frame memory channels, FM1 to FM8, and each channel independently allows a freeze image to be saved or recalled.

By allocating FM1 to FM8 to cross-point buttons you can use the still image output or clip output from each channel as input material.

Notes

However, when the signal format is 1080P, only the four options of FM1 to FM4 can be used.

Correspondence between input and output

There are two buses for capturing frame memory material: the frame memory source bus 1 and the frame memory source bus 2.

These input buses are used by allocation to one of the pairs of output, FM1&2, FM3&4, FM5&6, and FM7&8. You can freeze a frame in each channel separately, or freeze in the two channels simultaneously.

The source buses allocated to FM1 to FM8 are as follows.

Input	Frame memory source bus 1	Frame memory source bus 2
Output	FM1	FM2
	FM3	FM4
	FM5	FM6
	FM7	FM8

Pair mode

By enabling the pair mode, you can link FM1 and FM2, FM3 and FM4, FM5 and FM6, and FM7 and FM8. For example, when a freeze or image processing is carried out on FM1, the same operation is carried out on FM2. The same applies to the other pairs. When a pair of images are captured in pair mode, the image frozen in FM1 (3, 5, or 7) is referred to as the main file and the other frozen in FM2 (4, 6, or 8) is referred to as the sub file.

Pair files and single files

A file that can be recalled in pair mode is termed a “pair file.” A pair file can be created by setting pair mode and capturing an image, or by using the coupling function (*see page 168*) to combine two single files.

A file other than a pair file is termed a “single file.” A single file can be created by switching off pair mode and capturing an image, or by using the separation function (*see page 168*) to split a pair file.

Operation modes

The frame memory has the following operation mode.

V/K mode: When the pair mode is active, the key signal is automatically selected on frame memory source bus 2. This is convenient for handling the video and key signals together in frame memory. For example, when you select a video signal on frame memory source bus 1, the key signal assigned to it is automatically selected on frame memory source bus 2. You can also use the signal automatically selected on frame memory source bus 2 as a key signal when processing keyframe memory 1.

To change the pair mode or operation mode, use the Frame Memory menu.

Frame memory folders

Still images and clips can be managed in a maximum of twelve groups.

Such a group is called a “frame memory folder.” Folders can be added or deleted, and can be given a name of up to 8 characters.

Notes

- When the system is powered off, the folder names are deleted. The folder names need to be saved on media.
- The following names cannot be used for folders.
Flash1, Flash2
CON, PRN, AUX, CLOCK\$, NUL, COM0, COM1, COM2, COM3, COM4, COM5, COM6, COM7, COM8, COM9
LPT0, LPT1, LPT2, LPT3, LPT4, LPT5, LPT6, LPT7, LPT8, LPT9
A folder named “Default” is provided, and this folder cannot be renamed or deleted.
- Still images and clips in different frame memory folders cannot have the same name.

Still Image Operations

The frame memory functions provides the following still image file functions.

- Capturing and Saving an Input Image (*page 154*)
- Recalling Still Images (*page 156*)
- Image Output (*page 157*)
- Continuously Capturing Still Images (Record) (*page 158*)
- Recalling a Continuous Sequence of Still Images (Animation) (*page 158*)

Notes

During playback of a frame memory clip of the pair assigned to either of the target FM selection buttons (*see page 162*), frame memory operations may not be performed properly. Carry out frame memory operations after stopping clip playback.

Interpreting the Frame Memory Menu

The menu screen consists of the following principal parts. The frame memory selection area display is the same for all except the Pattern Adjust/Pattern Select/Field Invert/File (excluding Pair Recombination menu)/Folder/External Device menus.

Preparations

Allocating the frame memory outputs (FM1 to FM8) to cross-point buttons

To output a frame memory image to a monitor, for example, the output signal from the frame memory (FM1 to FM8) must be allocated to a cross-point button. Carry out this allocation in the Setup menu.

Notes

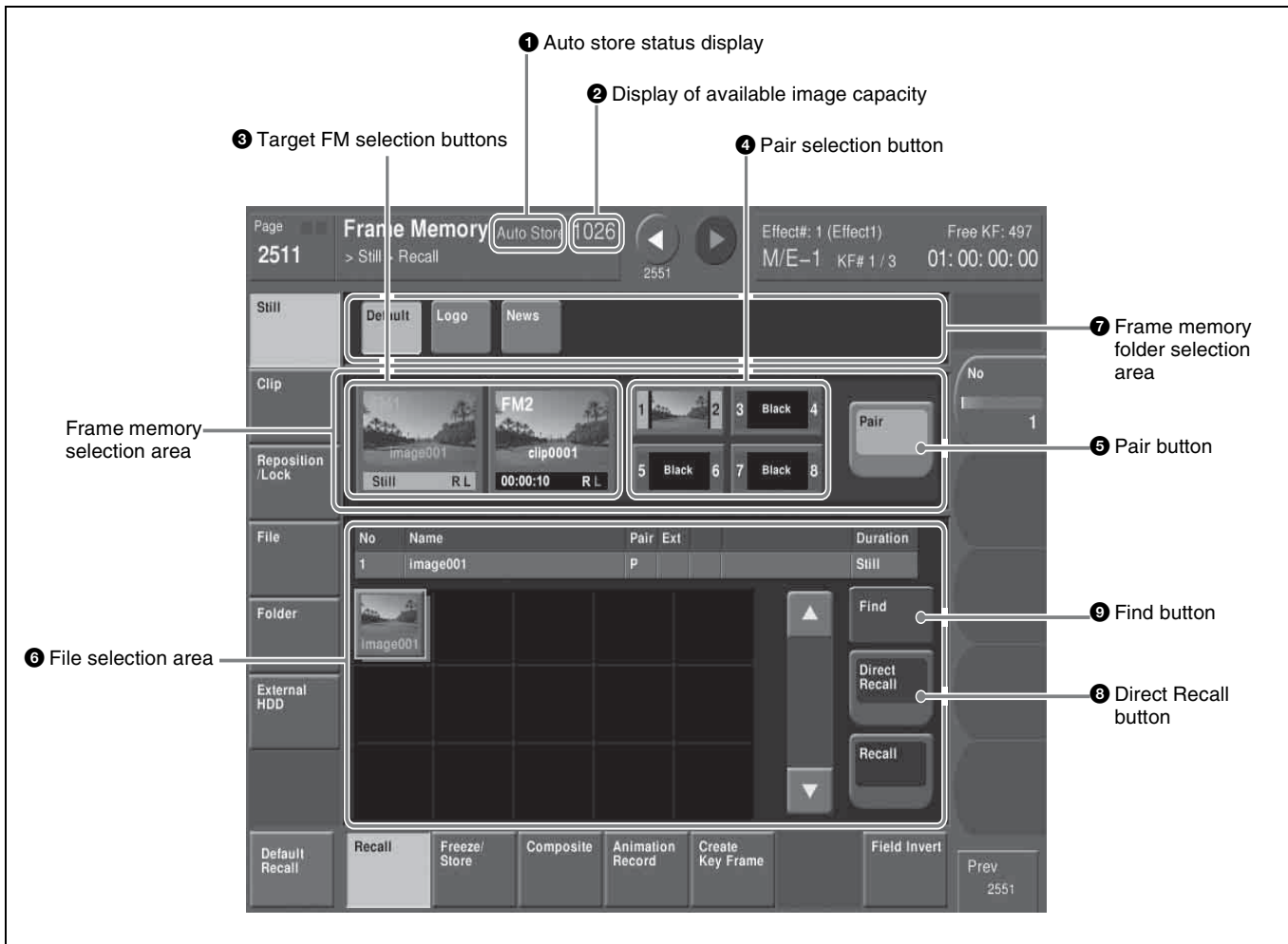
When the signal format is 1080P, only the four options of FM1 to FM4 can be used.

Accessing the Frame Memory menu

Most frame memory operations are carried out using the Frame Memory menu.

To access the Frame Memory menu, use either of the following procedures.

- In the menu control block, select the top menu selection button [FRAME MEM].
- Press the cross-point button to which the frame memory output is allocated twice in rapid succession.



Frame Memory menu

1 Auto store status display

Depending on the setup settings, this appears when the auto store function is enabled.

2 Display of available image capacity

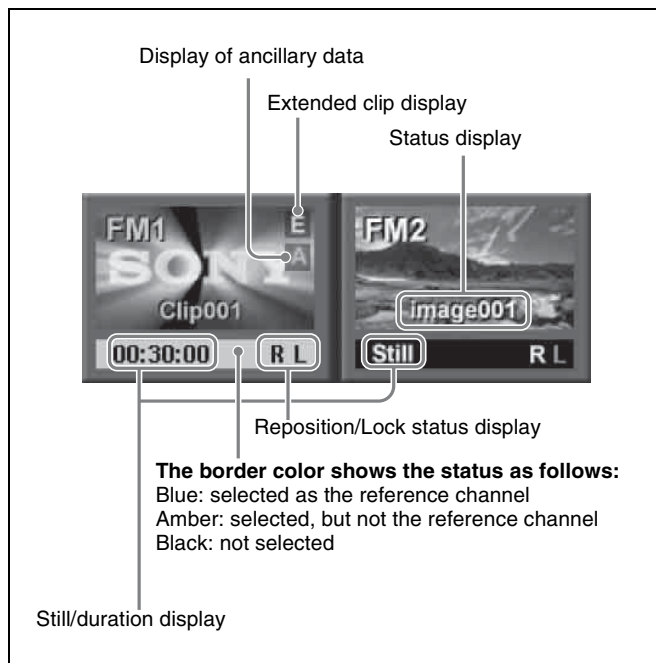
This shows the remaining number of frames. When no more frames can be stored, in pair mode “1” or “0” appears in red, and in single mode “0” appears in red.

The lower figure shows the remaining number of frames that can be used as extended clips.

Notes

When the signal format is 1080P, each time a still image is saved the remaining space is reduced by two frames.

3 Target FM selection buttons



Press one of these to select which of the selected outputs (FM1 and FM2 in the example shown) the operation applies to.
The following information appears on the button.

Status display

File name (e.g. image001) and thumbnail: when a file is output

Black: when a black signal is output

Through: when the input image is output

Freeze: when a freeze is output

Record: when continuously capturing images (record)

Still/duration display

When a still image is selected, “Still” is shown. When a clip is selected, a duration indication such as “00:00:10” is shown.

Reposition/Lock status display

This shows “R” when the reposition function (*see page 157*) is on, and shows “L” when the lock function (*see page 157*) is on.

Extended clip display

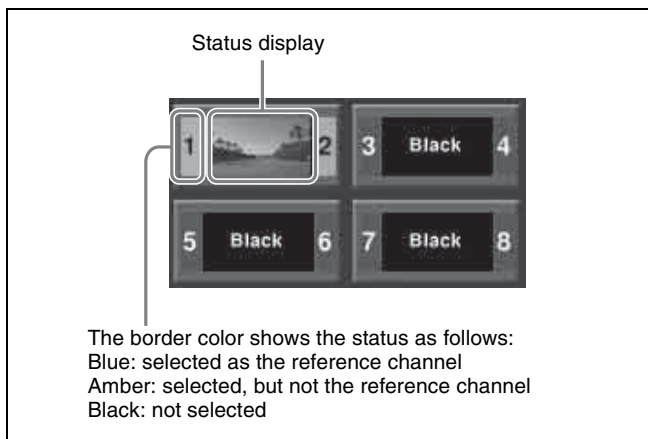
For an extended clip, an “E” appears.

Ancillary data-attached clip display

For an ancillary data attached clip, an “A” appears.

4 Pair selection button

Select the pair to be displayed in the target FM selection buttons.
(in the following figure, the pair of FM1 and FM2 is selected.)



The following information appears on the button.

Status display

For a pair, shows the status for the reference.

Thumbnail: when a file is output

Black: when a black signal is output

Through: when the input image is output

Freeze: when a freeze is output

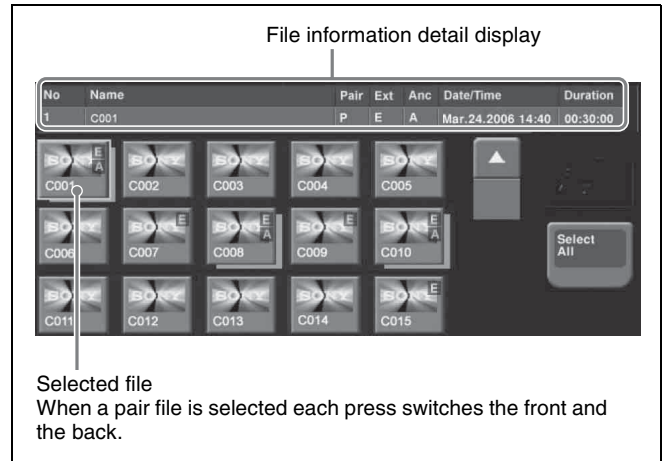
Record: when continuously capturing images (record)

5 Pair button

Press this button, turning it on, to enable pair mode.

6 File selection area

You can select from the displayed still image files or clip files.



Thumbnail indications

Still image files and clip files: Still image files are displayed as gray buttons and clip files are displayed as yellow buttons.

Single files and pair files: Single files are displayed with shadow and pair files are displayed with no shadow.

Selected file: Pale blue border. When more than one file is selected, only the first is pale blue, and the remainders are amber. If the pair file was selected, each press switches the front and the back.

File information detail display

For the selected file, this shows the file name, “P” if a pair file, “E” if an extended clip, “A” if an ancillary data attached clip, and the duration.

7 Frame memory folder selection area

Select the frame memory folder to be displayed.

8 Direct Recall button

Toggle on and off the direct recall mode in which pressing a thumbnail immediately recalls the file.

9 Find button

Pressing this button displays a popup window, in which you can enter a file name to carry out a search.

Selecting an Input Image

For the input image to frame memory, you can use either the signal selected on one of the two frame memory source buses or a dedicated color matte signal.

When using the signal on frame memory source bus 1 or 2 for the input image, select the signal as described below.

Selecting the signal on a frame memory source bus

As an example, to select a signal on frame memory source bus 1, use the following procedure.

- 1 Using the bank selection buttons in the auxiliary bus control block, select the desired bank.
- 2 In the auxiliary bus control block, press the AUX delegation button to which frame memory source bus 1 is allocated, turning it on.

For allocation of buses to the AUX delegation buttons, see “Assigning a Bus to an AUX Delegation Button” in Chapter 19 (Volume 2).

- 3 In the key row of the bank selected in step 1, select the signal to be used for the input image.

To select a signal with a key or DME effect applied on the frame memory source bus

In the key control block or in the M/E-1 >Key1 >Processed Key menu, press the [FM FEED] button.

This automatically assigns the key fill and key source signals being keyed by the currently selected keyer to frame memory source buses 1 and 2.

When DME is selected on the keyer, the key fill and key source signals to which a DME effect is applied are assigned.

Selecting Outputs and Target Frame Memory

Selecting outputs (FM) and target frame memory

The following description applies to the case of settings for FM1&2, but the procedures are similar for the other cases.

- 1 In the Frame Memory menu, press one of VF1 to VF4, and select the required HF menu.

The current status of frame memory appears. (*See page 151.*)

- 2 From the pair selection buttons, press the buttons corresponding to FM1 and FM2.

This assigns the signals to FM1 and FM2. To the right of the target FM selection buttons, the FM1 and FM2 output status appears (*see page 152*).

- 3 If required, press [Pair], to select the FM operation mode (pair mode).

On: Operate on FM1 (3, 5, 7) and FM2 (4, 6, 8) as a pair.

Off: Operate on FM1 (3, 5, 7) and FM2 (4, 6, 8) individually.

For more details, see “Pair mode” (page 150).

Notes

In the Pair Recombination menu, the [Pair] operation is not possible.

- 4 Press the target FM selection button [FM1] or [FM2] (*see page 152*) to select the FM operations apply to.

When [Pair] is On: Whichever of FM1 and FM2 you press, the pair is selected.

When [Pair] is Off: One of the targets must be selected. However, in the Clip >Play menu you can also select both FM1 and FM2.

Selecting a frame memory folder

Press a button in the frame memory folder selection area (*see page 153*).

By pressing [More] to switch the display, you can select from a maximum of 12 folders.

Thumbnails of the files within the selected folder appear.

Capturing and Saving an Input Image

As the input material for the frame memory, you can use the signal selected on the frame memory source bus. For this signal you can use video processing (video levels or hue value adjustment) or masking.

Allocating a frame memory source bus signal to one of FM1 to FM8, then carrying out a freeze captures a still image in the corresponding frame memory output image, and saves it in temporary memory.

For a freeze, an image can be captured either as video frame (a “frame freeze”) or a video field (“field freeze”).

Notes

When the system is powered off, any freeze images written to temporary memory are lost.

Freezing an image and writing it to memory

To freeze the signal selected as input material, and write it to memory, use the following procedure.

- 1 In the Frame Memory menu, select VF1 ‘Still’ and HF2 ‘Freeze/Store.’

The Freeze/Store menu appears.

- 2 Select the target frame memory.

For the procedure, see “Selecting outputs (FM) and target frame memory” (page 154).

3 To enable V/K mode, press [V/K Mode] turning it on.

4 Press a button in the frame memory folder selection area, to select the folder to hold the freeze image (see page 154).

Notes

The folder selected here is the destination folder for writing the freeze image. It is not possible to change the selection of this folder after the following step **5**. An orange bar appears on the selection button for the destination folder.

5 Press [Freeze Enable], turning it on.

The signals of frame memory source buses 1 and 2 are assigned to the pair of FMs selected in step **2**, a freeze is now possible.

6 If necessary, make the video process settings (see page 155) or mask settings (see page 156) for application to the selected signal.

7 In the state in which you want to freeze, press one of the following in the <Freeze> group, to write the freeze image to temporary memory.

Frame: Freeze one frame.

Field: Freeze one field.

Off: Release the freeze, and delete the recorded freeze image.

After carrying out the freeze, to return to the state immediately before the freeze, press [Undo] in the <Freeze> group.

Notes

- All freeze images written to temporary memory are lost when the system is powered off.
- If you change the frame memory to use as in step **2** before saving the freeze images written to temporary memory, all the freeze images in temporary memory are lost, unless the auto store function has been enabled in setup. With the auto store function enabled, the freeze images written to temporary memory are saved automatically when the frame memory selection is changed.
- For the following signal formats, a field freeze is not possible.
1080P/50, 1080P/59.94, 1080PsF/23.976,
1080PsF/24, 1080PsF/25, 1080PsF/29.97, 720P/50, 720P/59.94

Saving a freeze image (Store)

You can save an image in temporary memory which has been placed with the freeze function as a file in memory. You can save a single image in a single file and apply a name of up to eight characters to the file.

Notes

- When the system is powered off, all the files saved in memory are lost.
- When the signal format is 1080P, the file name is limited to seven characters.
Each time a still image is saved, the remaining space is reduced by two frames.

To save a captured still image in a file, use the following procedure in the Still >Freeze/Store menu.

1 Press [Store].

The keyboard window (see page 50) appears.

2 In the keyboard window, enter the file name.

Notes

The following names cannot be used:
CON, PRN, AUX, CLOCK\$, NUL, COM0, COM1, COM2, COM3, COM4, COM5, COM6, COM7, COM8, COM9
LPT0, LPT1, LPT2, LPT3, LPT4, LPT5, LPT6, LPT7, LPT8, LPT9

3 In the keyboard window, press the [Enter] button.

This saves the still image file in memory. The destination folder is the folder selected in step **4** of “Freezing an image and writing it to memory.” If the entered folder name already exists, a message to confirm overwriting appears. When the system is powered off, the file saved in memory is erased.

To carry out a freeze and store simultaneously (Freeze and Store)

Press [Freeze & Store], turning it on.

In this state, if you press [Frame] or [Field], this carries out a freeze, and simultaneously stores in a still image file.

Setting video processing

To set video processing for the signal selected on a frame memory source bus, use the following procedure in the Still >Freeze/Store menu.

1 In the <Video Process> group, press [Video Process], turning it on.

2 Use the knobs to adjust the following parameters.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Video Gain	Overall gain of the video signal	-200.00 to +200.00
2	Y Gain	Y signal gain	-200.00 to +200.00
3	C Gain	Chrominance signal gain	-200.00 to +200.00
4	Hue Delay	Hue delay	-180.00 to +180.00
5	Black Level	Y signal black level	-7.31 to +109.59

To return the settings to the default values, press [Unity] in the <Video Process> group.

Notes

When a pair setting is active, it is coupled to the video process on/off setting, but the above parameter settings are only valid for frame memory source bus 1. The pair setting cannot be used to set the frame memory source bus 2. If you want to set video process for frame memory source bus 1 only with the pair setting when old settings for frame memory source bus 2 remain, return the frame memory source bus 2 settings to their default values. When setting video process for the frame memory source bus 2, disable the pair setting.

Setting a mask

Masks can be set separately for frame memory source buses 1 and 2. To apply a mask to the signal selected on frame memory source bus 1, for example, use the following procedure in the Still >Freeze/Store menu.

- 1 Press [Box Mask], turning it on.
- 2 Use the knobs to adjust the following parameters.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Top	Top position	-100.00 to +100.00
2	Left	Left position	-100.00 to +100.00
3	Right	Right position	-100.00 to +100.00
4	Bottom	Bottom position	-100.00 to +100.00

- 3 To link the masks on frame memory source buses 1 and 2, press [Mask Link], turning it on.

Recalling Still Images

You can recall an image file saved in memory, and allocate to any of the FM1 to FM8 outputs.

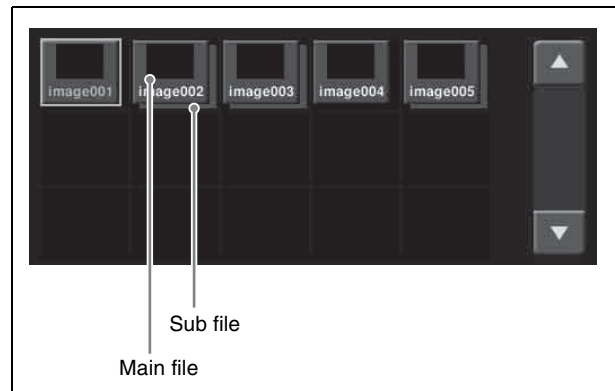
Recalling a still image

To recall a still image file saved in memory using the thumbnails, and assign it to an FM output, use the following procedure.

- 1 In the Frame Memory menu, select VF1 'Still' and HF1 'Recall.'

The Recall menu appears.

- When [Pair] is on, only pair files (pairs of main file and sub file) are displayed.
- When [Pair] is off, both single files and pair files appear (see following figure).



- 2 In the frame memory selection area, select the FM to be assigned. (See page 154).
- 3 If [Direct Recall] is on, press and turn it off.
- 4 Select the desired folder in the folder selection area. By pressing [More] to switch the display, you can select from a maximum of 12 folders.

Thumbnails of the files within the selected folder appear.

- 5 Using the arrow keys or turning the knob, scroll the file thumbnail display.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Scroll	Thumbnail display scrolling	1 and upwards

- 6 Press the thumbnail of the still image you want to recall.
- 7 Press [Recall].

This recalls the still image file, which is assigned to the FM you selected in step 2.

To recall in direct recall mode

Direct recall means that pressing a thumbnail immediately recalls the file.

In this mode, only the front thumbnail file is recalled.

- 1 In step 7 above, instead of pressing [Recall], press [Direct Recall].
- 2 Press the thumbnail for the file you want to recall.

To display the subsidiary file in front

With the direct recall mode on, press [Sub Display], turning it on.

To search by file name

- 1 Press the [Find] button.
The Find window appears.



- 2 Press [Find].
A keyboard window appears.
- 3 Enter the string you want to search for, and press [Enter].
This starts the search, and the indicator lights. When the search ends, the files found are selected.
- 4 To move through the selected files, press the [< Prev] or [Next >] button.
- 5 Press outside the Find window on the menu screen.

Image Output

There are two functions related to image output: the reposition function for moving the output image, and the lock function for fixing the output image.

Moving the output image (reposition function)

For up to two channels of FM1 to FM8 (one from FM1, FM3, FM5 and FM7 and the other from FM2, FM4, FM6 and FM8), you can move the output image with respect to the screen. The area of the screen around the image that has

been moved is filled with black. There are two ways of carrying out this repositioning.

Normal mode: Movement in the horizontal direction is in two-pixel increments.

Black and white mode: Movement in the horizontal direction is in one-pixel increments, and for each pixel moved the color is inverted.

Notes

It is not possible to save an image moved with the reposition function directly to frame memory.

- 1 In the Frame Memory menu, select VF3 'Reposition/Lock' and HF1 'Reposition.'

The Reposition menu appears. In this menu, you can also enable the V/K mode (*see page 155*).

- 2 In the frame memory selection area, select the FM output (*see page 154*).
- 3 In the <Reposition> group, select the movement mode.

Normal: Move in normal mode.

Black&White: Move in black & white mode.

- 4 With the knobs, adjust the parameters to move the image.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Position H	Move in horizontal direction	-200.00 to +200.00 ^{a)}
2	Position V	Move in vertical direction	-200.00 to +200.00 ^{a)}

a) *See page 123.*

The surroundings of the moved image on the screen are filled with black.

- 5 To return the image moved by the reposition function to the center position, in the <Reposition> group press [Center].

Fixing the output image selection (lock function)

For the output of each of FM1 to FM8, this fixes the image at the current output. When this lock is enabled, even if the output is recalled in a snapshot or keyframe, the images output to FM1 to FM8 are preserved.

Notes

When the signal format is 1080P, this function cannot be used.

- 1 In the Frame Memory menu, select VF3 'Reposition/Lock' and HF2 'Lock.'

The Lock menu appears.

- 2 In the frame memory selection area, select the FM output. (See page 154.)

- 3 Press [Lock], turning it on.

This fixes the currently selected frame memory output image.

To release the lock, set [Lock] to off.

Continuously Capturing Still Images (Record)

You can continuously capture (freeze) a sequence of input video frames and store the sequence of the still images over a specified time interval.

The name of each image recorded in this way consists of a first character string followed by a second string.

First character string: A common part of name assigned to all the still images captured in one record operation. This string includes a maximum of four characters, which can be specified using a menu before carrying out the capture. The first string is automatically used as the clip name when the images are treated as a frame memory clip.

Second character string: A four-digit number (0000 or greater), which is incremented each time a still image is captured.

Notes

When using the record function to continuously capture frames, it is not possible to use the mask function.

Continuously freezing input images and writing to memory

- 1 In the Frame Memory menu, select VF1 'Still' and HF4 'Animation Record.'

The Animation Record menu appears.

- 2 Select the desired frame memory (see page 154).

- 3 To use V/K mode, press [V/K Mode], turning it on.

- 4 Press a button in the frame memory folder selection area, to select the folder to hold the freeze image (see page 154).

Notes

The folder selected here is the destination folder for writing the freeze image.

It is not possible to change the selection of this folder after the following step 5.

An orange bar appears on the selection button for the destination folder.

- 5 Press [Record Enable], turning it on.

The signals of frame memory source buses 1 and 2 are assigned to the pair of FMs selected in step 2, the recording function is now possible.

- 6 Input the file name if required.

Pressing [File Name] displays the keyboard window and you can enter the first character string (up to four characters) of the file name.

- 7 Set the recording time if required.

Pressing [Duration] displays the numeric keypad window, in which you can enter the recording time in the form of timecode.

If you set the recording time to zero, this uses all frame memory in which storing is possible for recording.

- 8 If required, set video processing for the selected signal (see page 155).

- 9 Press [Record], to start recording.

When the recording time is set, recording stops once the time has elapsed.

- 10 Press [Stop] to stop recording.

Even if the recording time is set, you can still stop recording before the set time has elapsed.

Recalling a Continuous Sequence of Still Images (Animation)

You can use a continuous sequence of images captured with the record function as keyframes to create an effect. By executing this effect you can recall the continuous sequence (animation).

Notes

- For example, to create an effect using FM1, FM1 must be assigned to a user region.

- To execute the effect, you must assign the user region to which FM1 is assigned to a region selection button in the numeric keypad control block.

For details of assigning to region selection buttons, see Chapter 19 “Control Panel Setup (Panel)” (Volume 2).

In the Frame Memory menu, effect creation follows the image file names. Of the eight characters in the file names, if files have the same characters except for the last three characters they are treated as an image file group, and the effect is created with the last three (numeric) characters in sequence.

Notes

When creating the effect in pair mode (see page 150), the files used must be main files and sub files with the same last three (numeric) characters in the file name.

To recall a continuous sequence of still images, create an effect in the user region with the still image files as a keyframe, and run the created effect.

Notes

With the 720P format or 1080P format, you can continuously recall images using the frame memory in units of two frames only.

Creating an effect with still image files as a keyframe

- In the Frame Memory menu, select VF1 ‘Still’ and HF5 ‘Create Key Frame.’

The Create Key Frame menu appears.

 - A thumbnail appears for each group of files having the same characters, except for the last three characters, in the file name.
 - When [Pair] is on, only pair files (each pair comprising a main file and a sub file) appear.
 - When [Pair] is off, both single files and pair files all appear.
- In the frame memory selection area, select the frame memory to be assigned (see page 154).
- Select the desired folder in the folder selection area. By pressing [More] to switch the display, you can select from a maximum of 12 folders.

Thumbnails of the files within the selected folder appear.
- Turn the knob to select the register number in the user region.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
5	Register	Effect register number	1 to 99

Notes

To search for an empty register in the user region, use the numeric keypad control block.

For details, see step 3 of “Recalling a Register” in Chapter 13 (Volume 2).

- Use the arrow keys or turn the knobs to scroll the thumbnail display of the files.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Scroll	Thumbnail display scrolling	1 and upwards

- Select the thumbnail of the files to be used for the keyframe.
- If necessary, turn the knob to check the animation effect in the thumbnail display.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
3	Viewer	Animate thumbnail display of files	00:00:00 and upwards

- Using the region selection buttons in the numeric keypad control block, select one of the regions (User1 to User8) to which the frame memory output signals have been assigned.
- Carry out either of the following.
 - To clear the effect register selected in step 4, and create a new effect: press [Create Key Frame].
 - To add to the end of the effect register selected in step 4, press [Append Key Frame].

A confirmation message for creating the effect appears.

If there is an inappropriate condition for creating the effect, an error message appears.

For details of error messages, see “Error Messages” in the Appendix (Volume 2).

- Press [OK].

This creates the effect in the selected user region register.

To cancel creating the effect

Press [Cancel].

Notes

- The effect is built with the selected files, in increasing order of the last three characters of the file name. If you do not want to include some of these files in the effect, first delete or rename them.
- A maximum of 99 keyframes can be included in a single effect.

Recalling a sequence of still images

Run the effect created by the foregoing procedure. The procedure for doing this is the same as for any other effect.

For details, see “Executing Effects” in Chapter 13 (Volume 2).

Frame Memory Clip Function

What is a “frame memory clip”?

Movies can be read into frame memory, and recalled and played back. A movie held in frame memory is called a “frame memory clip.”

A frame memory clip can be named using up to four characters (*see page 158*).

Ancillary data

In a frame memory clip, in addition to the video image, you can also record and play back ancillary data which can be used as embedded audio.

To record the ancillary data, in the Setup menu the frame memory saving mode must be set to “save with ancillary data”.

For details, see “Saving a Frame Memory Clip With Ancillary Data” in Chapter 18 (Volume 2).

Notes

- With this setting, the saving mode for still images also changes to “save with ancillary data,” but when playing back a still image the ancillary data is never played.
- When you change the saving mode, the frame memory is initialized, and any existing recorded frame memory data is lost.
- When the signal format is 1080P, ancillary data is not supported.

Note on transferring ancillary data

Ancillary data is recorded when the frame memory saving mode is set to “save with ancillary data,” and can be saved to an external storage device such as a hard disk or memory card, and recalled. However, the ancillary data can only be saved or recalled;

- When the frame memory saving mode is set to “save with ancillary data.”
- When ancillary data is present in the saved or recalled frame memory file.
- When the system signal format is the same as the signal format in the file.

When the frame memory saving mode is set to “save with ancillary data,” the following ancillary data status information is added to a frame memory clip.

- Disable(d):
In this state the ancillary data is not played. This is the status when the [Ancillary Enable] button in the Frame Memory >Clip menu is set to Off.
- Enable(d):
In this state, ancillary data is present, and can be played

back. This is the status when the [Ancillary Enable] button in the Frame Memory >Clip menu is set to On. This is the status after a clip recording operation. This status information is saved in a file, and is followed when the file is recalled.

Frame memory clip settings

For frame memory clips, you can make the following settings using a menu or device control block (trackball/search dial/joystick).

- Start point
- Stop point
- Loop On/Off

The above settings can be saved in a snapshot register as snapshot attributes, and recalled.

Frame Memory Clip Operations

Notes

During playback of a frame memory clip of the pair assigned to either of the target FM selection buttons (*see page 162*), frame memory operations may not be performed properly.

Carry out frame memory operations after stopping clip playback.

Preparations for Operation

The preparations for using a frame memory clip (hereafter, a “clip”) are the same as for a still image operation.

For details, see “Preparations” (page 151) and “Selecting Outputs and Target Frame Memory” (page 154).

Recalling Clips

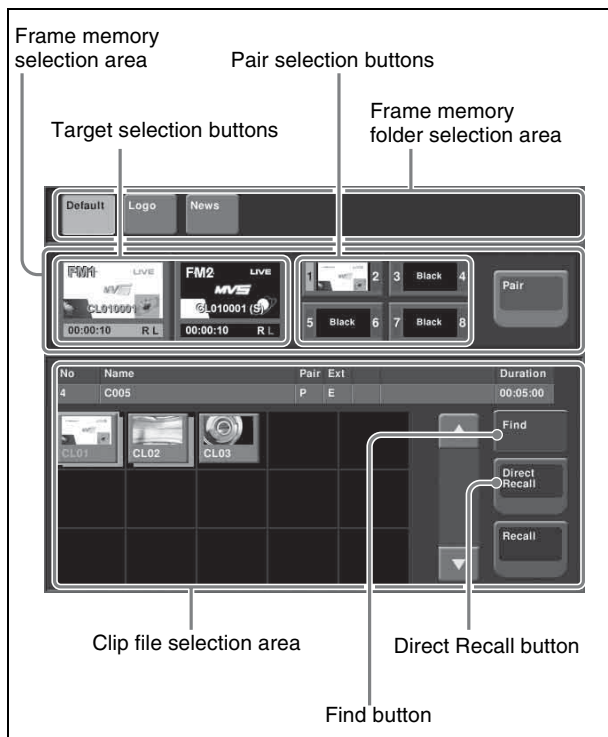
Recalling a clip

You can recall a clip from each of frame memories 1 to 8.

- 1 In the Frame Memory menu, select VF2 ‘Clip’ and HF1 ‘Recall.’

The Recall menu appears. (*See following figure*)

- When [Pair] is set to On, only pair files (sets of main file and sub file) are shown.
- When [Pair] is set to Off, both of single files and pair files are shown.



- 2 In the frame memory selection area, select an assigned target FM. (See page 154).
- 3 If [Direct Recall] is on, press the button, turning it off.
- 4 In the frame memory folder selection area, select the desired folder.
By pressing [More] to switch the displays, you can select from a maximum of 12 folders.
- 5 Using the arrow keys or turning the knob, scroll the file thumbnail display.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Scroll	Thumbnail display scrolling	1 and upwards

- 6 Press the thumbnail of the clip you want to recall.
- 7 Press [Recall].

This recalls the clip file, which is assigned to the FM you selected in step 2.

In pair mode, if a clip is selected, the main file is output to FM1, and the sub file to FM2. In single mode, when only one of FM1 and FM2 is selected, the front file on the thumbnail is output.

To recall in direct recall mode

Direct recall means that pressing a thumbnail immediately recalls the file.

In this mode, only the front thumbnail file is recalled.

1 In step 7 above, instead of pressing [Recall], press [Direct Recall].

2 Press the thumbnail for the file you want to recall.

To display the subsidiary file in front

With the direct recall mode on, press [Sub Display], turning it on.

To search the clip file by file name

Press the [Find] button (see page 157).

Clip Playback

You can play a recalled clip by a menu operation or by using the device control block.

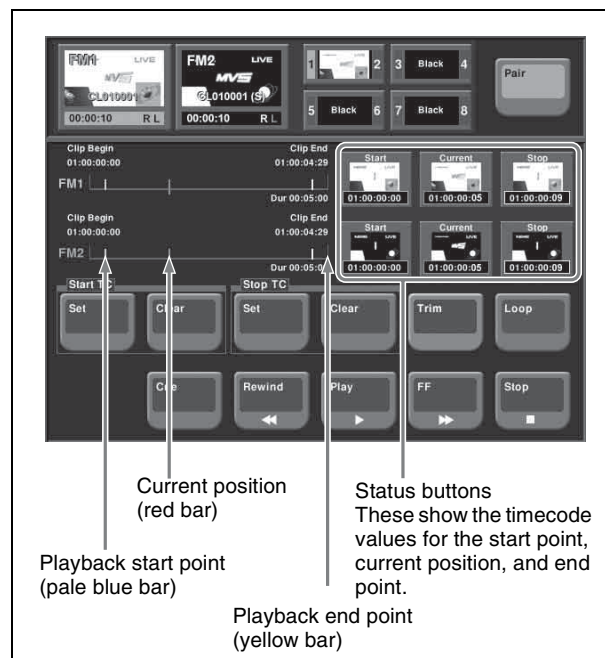
Notes

With a pair file recalled, it is possible to set [Pair] to Off and carry out a single file operation, but if you then set [Pair] to On again, the output of frame memory may be black. In such cases it is necessary to recall the pair file once more.

Playing a clip using the menu

1 In the Frame Memory menu, select VF2 'Clip' and HF2 'Play.'

The Play menu appears. The status of the clip shown in the current target FM selection buttons appears here.



2 When [Pair] is Off, press a target FM selection button to select the target.

- 3 To set loop playback, press [Loop], turning it on.
- 4 To start playback, press [Play]. During playback, to stop, press [Stop].

To cue up

Press [Cue].

To play the image at the beginning of the clip (Clip Begin)

Press [Rewind].

To play the image at the end of the clip (Clip End)

Press [FF].

To specify the playback start point

To set the current position as the playback start point, in the <Start TC> group, press [Set]. To set a different position, press the [Start] status button, and enter a timecode value from the numeric keypad window.

To specify the playback stop point

Start playback, and at the desired position press the [STOP] button to stop playback, then in the <Stop TC> group, press [Set]. To set to any position, press the [Stop] status button, and enter a timecode value from the numeric keypad window.

To change the current position

To change the current position, press the [Current] status button, and enter a timecode value from the numeric keypad window.

To delete the parts of a clip file other than the playback part (trimming)

- 1 Set the playback start point and stop point.
- 2 Press [Trim].
A confirmation message appears.
- 3 Press [Yes].

Using the device control block (MKS-8036A Search Dial Module, option) to play back clips

Notes

A frame memory clip must first be recalled with a menu operation.

- 1 With the device selection buttons, select the frame memory clip to be played (FM1 CLIP to FM8 CLIP).
If the pair mode is on, both main and subsidiary FMs light.
- 2 Press the [PLAY] button, turning it on.

To stop playback, press [STOP] or any of the [SHTL], [JOG], [CUE], [REW], [FF], and [ALL STOP] buttons.

For details of the buttons in the device control block (MKS-8036A search dial module, option), see “Device Control Block (MKS-8036A Search Dial Module, Option)” (page 39).

To specify the playback start point

To make the current position the playback start point, press the [START TC] button. To set a different position, press the [SET START TC] button, then enter the timecode from the numeric keypad control block.

To specify the duration

Press the [SET DUR] button, and enter a timecode from the numeric keypad control block. If the playback start point is already set, this automatically sets the playback stop point. If the playback stop point is already set, this automatically sets the playback start point. (The duration setting is not displayed in the device control block.)

To specify the playback stop point

Start playback, and at the desired position press the [STOP] button to stop playback, then press the [STOP TC] button. To set to any position, press the [SET STOP TC] button, and enter a timecode from the numeric keypad control block.

To carry out the variable speed playback

Use the search dial.

For details on using the search dial, see “Controlling the Tape/Disk Transport” in Chapter 12 (Volume 2).

To apply a loop to a frame memory clip

Press the [LOOP] button.

Using the device control block (MKS-8031TB trackball module, option) to play back clips

Notes

A frame memory clip must first be recalled with a menu operation.

- 1 Press the [DEV] button in the region selection buttons, and select the frame memory clip for playback (FM1 CLIP to FM8 CLIP).

If the pair mode is on, both main and subsidiary FMs light.
- 2 Press the [PLAY] button, turning it on.

To stop playback, press [STOP] or any of the [SHTL], [JOG], [CUE], [REW], [FF], and [ALL STOP] buttons.

For details of the buttons in the device control block (MKS-8031TB trackball module, option), see “Device Control Block (MKS-8031TB Trackball Module, Option)” (page 36).

For details of the playback start point, stop point, and duration settings, see the previous item, “Using the device control block (MKS-8036A Search Dial Module, option) to play back clips” (page 163).

To carry out the variable speed playback

Press any of the [SHTL], [JOG], and [VAR] buttons, then turn the Z-ring or move the joystick. The image changes in the forward direction when you turn the Z-ring clockwise, and in the reverse direction when you turn it counterclockwise. Move the joystick to the right for the forward direction and to the left for the reverse direction.

When you pressed the [JOG] button: Playback is at a speed corresponding to the turning speed of the Z-ring or the movement speed of the joystick.

When you pressed the [SHTL] button: Playback is at a speed corresponding to the rotation angle of the Z-ring or amount of movement of the joystick.

When you pressed the [VAR] button: Playback is at a speed corresponding to the rotation angle of the Z-ring or amount of movement of the joystick, in the range -1 to +3 times normal speed.

Clip Creation

You save a movie as a clip.

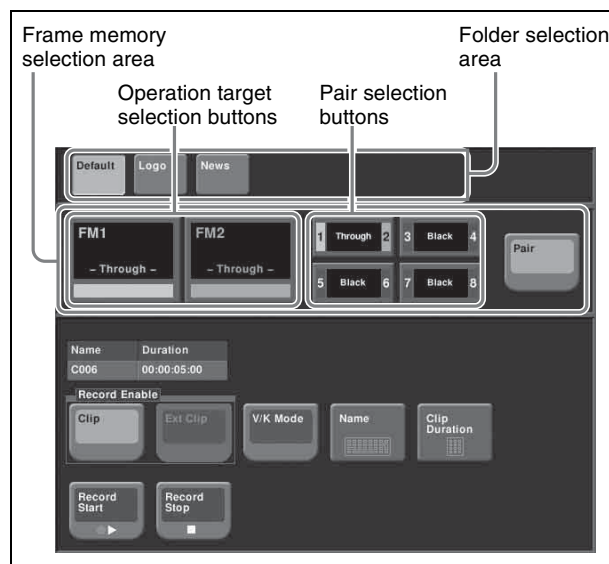
Notes

If the number of frame memory clips exceed 100 single files (50 pair files), an error appears.

Using the menu to record clips

- 1 In the Frame Memory menu, select VF2 ‘Clip’ and HF3 ‘Record.’

The Record menu appears.



- 2 With [Pair] off, press the operation target selection button, to select the operation target.
- 3 In the folder selection area, select the folder containing the clip to be recorded.
- 4 In the <Record Enable> group, select the clip type.
 - To record a normal clip, press [Clip].
 - To record an extended clip, press [Ext Clip].
- 5 To set the clip name, press [Name].
A keyboard window appears.
- 6 Enter the clip name, and press Enter.
- 7 To start recording, press [Record Start].
- 8 To end recording, press [Record Stop].

To set the clip duration

- 1 Press [Clip Duration].
A numeric keypad window appears.
- 2 Enter a timecode value or number of frames, and press Enter.

Creating and Handling Frame Memory Folders

You can create, rename, and delete frame memory folders.

Creating a new folder

- 1 In the Frame Memory menu, select VF5 ‘Folder.’

The Folder menu appears. The status area shows a list of the current folder settings.

- 2 Select [New].

A keyboard window appears.

- 3 Enter the folder name, and press Enter.

Changing the folder name

- 1 In the Frame Memory >Folder menu, select the folder with the arrow keys or by turning the knobs.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	No.	Folder selection	1 to 12
2	Num	Number of files to select consecutively from selected file	1 to 12

- 2 Press [Rename].

A keyboard window appears.

- 3 Enter the new folder name, and press Enter.

Notes

The following names cannot be used for folders:

Default, Flash1, Flash2

CON, PRN, AUX, CLOCK\$, NUL, COM0, COM1, COM2, COM3, COM4, COM5, COM6, COM7, COM8, COM9
LPT0, LPT1, LPT2, LPT3, LPT4, LPT5, LPT6, LPT7, LPT8, LPT9

This changes the folder name.

Deleting a folder

- 1 In the Frame Memory >Folder menu, select the folder with the arrow keys or by turning the knobs.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	No.	Folder selection	1 to 12
2	Num	Number of files to select consecutively from selected file	1 to 12

To select all folders, select [All].

- 2 Press [Delete].

A confirmation message appears.

- 3 To carry out the deletion select [Yes], and to cancel the deletion select [No].

Notes

It is not possible to delete the default folder (named “Default”).

Clip Output

As for still image operation, you can use the reposition and lock functions.

For details of the operation, see “Image Output” (page 157).

Recording and Playback of Ancillary Data

Preparations

To record ancillary data, it is first necessary in the Setup menu to select “save with ancillary data” as the frame memory saving mode.

For details, see “Saving a Frame Memory Clip With Ancillary Data” in Chapter 18 (Volume 2).

Recording ancillary data

To record ancillary data in a frame memory clip, use the Frame Memory >Clip >Record menu.

For details of the operating sequence, see “Clip Creation” (page 164).

To check ancillary data during recording

If the ancillary data to be recorded is embedded audio, by first setting the signal output to through mode, you can listen while recording.

For the method of setting the signal output to through mode, see “Signal Output Settings (Output Menu)” in Chapter 20 (Volume 2).

Notes

For [Freeze Enable] or [Record Enable], in the <Record Enable> group, pressing [Clip] or [Ext Clip] to turn them on or off may result in noise. Also, with these buttons in the On state, selecting the signal on the frame memory source bus may result in noise.

Playing back ancillary data

You can play ancillary data recorded in a frame memory clip by normal playback or an auto transition of the clip transition.

To play the ancillary data, you must use the following procedure to enable playback of the ancillary data.

For the subsequent playback operation, see “Clip Playback” (page 162).

Notes

- After recording a frame memory clip, the ancillary data state is enabled for playback.
- To play back the clip, set the signal output to through mode.
For the method of setting through mode, see “Signal Output Settings (Output Menu)” in Chapter 20 (Volume 2).
- When the reposition function is on, ancillary data cannot be played back.
- Switching reposition function between on and off may cause noise.
- Only the AUX bus and edit preview bus can output ancillary data.
- For loop playback of clips in the following video formats, the loop playback range must be at least 5 frames, and set to a multiple of 5 frames.
 - 480i/59.94
 - 720P/59.94
 - 1080i/59.94
 - 1080PsF/29.97
- Recalling operations of still images or clips can cause noise.
- Carrying out file operations on a frame memory clip may result in the ancillary data being discontinuous, or in noise occurring. However, if the first or last frame of the clip is deleted, noise will not occur.
- The audio sampling frequency is always 48 kHz.
- In the case of 480i or 59.94, noise may occur at the beginning of playing back a clip. This can be avoided by making the first nine or more frames of the clip soundless.
- When you play back the recorded embedded audio, depending on the device to be used, noises are produced at the playback start point and end point. For details of devices that are used for playback, contact your Sony service or sales representative.

- 1** In the Frame Memory menu, select VF2 “Clip”, HF5 “Ancillary Enable.”
- 2** Select the frame memory folder and file to be played back.
- 3** Set the [Ancillary Enable] button to On.

Clip Transition Operations

A frame memory clip (movie) is played back, linked to a transition using a mix (dissolve) or wipe.

The following restrictions apply to the use of a clip transition.

- Key frame capture is not possible.
- It is not possible to apply a pattern limit.
- Transitions executed in two strokes, such as a preset color mix with the stroke mode set to Normal, or a DME wipe with a picture-in-picture pattern, will not execute correctly.
- It is not possible to vary the transition rate of a clip transition.
- Transition preview cannot be used.
- No instantaneous state of a clip transition can be saved as a snapshot.
- When recalling a snapshot including a clip transition during executing another clip transition, the follow-on transition does not operate properly. Be sure to complete the transition before recalling a snapshot.

Notes

When a clip transition is selected as the transition type, if one of the wipe direction selection buttons in the transition control block is lit, it indicates the direction of clip playback.

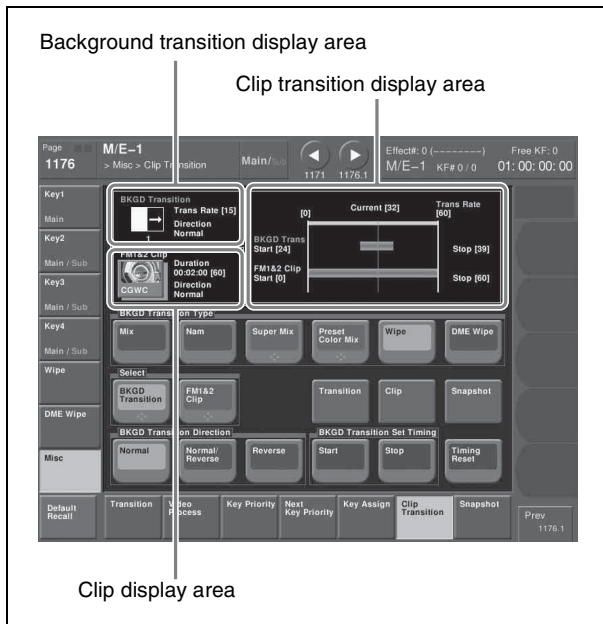
Setting a clip transition

The following example describes the case of a clip transition using FM 1&2 Clip on the M/E-1 bank.

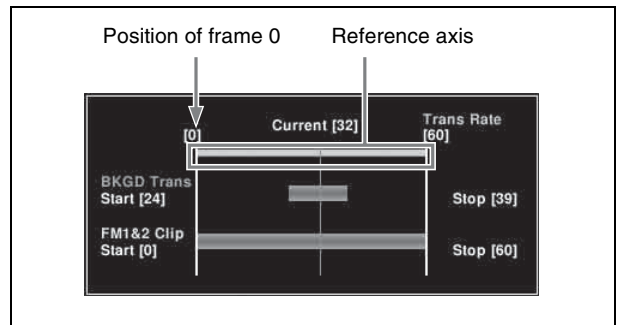
Notes

To use a clip transition effectively, the image from the frame memory clip being played back during the clip transition should be seen in the M/E-1 program output. For example, inserting a key using frame memory output 1 and frame memory output 2.

- 1** Display the M/E-1 >Misc >Transition menu, and in the <Transition Type> group select “FM1&2 Clip.”
- 2** Press [Clip Transition].
The Clip Transition menu appears.



- 3 Press the [Clip] button.
The status area shows a list of clips.
 - 4 Select the clip to use in the clip transition.
 - 5 Return to the Clip Transition menu, and in the <BKGD Transition Type> group, select the background transition type.
- Notes**
- For details of the background transition selected here, see the various adjustments in the M/E-1 >Misc >Transition menu.
- 6 In the <Select> group, press [BKGD Transition].
 - 7 Use either of the following methods to set the background transition start point independently of the clip playback timing.
 - Move the fader lever to the desired position, and in the <BKGD Transition Set Timing> group press [Start].
 - Turn knob 1 to set the number of frames. (The left end of the reference axis (see following figure) is the position of frame 0.)



- 8 Using either of the following methods, set the end point of the background transition.
 - Move the fader lever to the desired position, and in the <BKGD Transition Set Timing> group press [Stop].
 - Turn knob 2 to set the number of frames.
- 9 If Wipe or DME Wipe is selected in the <BKGD Transition Type> group, in the <BKGD Transition Direction> group, select the background transition direction.
- 10 In the <Select> group, press [FM1&2 Clip].
- 11 Using either of the following methods, set the start point of the clip.
 - Move the fader lever to the desired start point, and in the <Clip Transition Set Timing> group press [Start].
 - Turn knob 1 to set the number of frames. (The left end of the reference axis (see previous figure) is the position of frame 0.)

Notes

It is not possible to set the end point.

- 12 In the <Clip Transition Direction> group, select the playback direction of the clip.

To reset the start point and end point

Press [Timing Reset].

The background transition start point and end point, and the clip start point are all reset.

Image Data Management

You can carry out the following operations on the files in which images are saved.

- Pair File Processing (page 168)
- Moving Files (page 168)
- Deleting Files (page 169)
- Renaming Files (page 169)

Notes

During playback of a frame memory clip of the pair assigned to either of the target FM selection buttons (see page 162), frame memory operations may not be performed properly. Carry out frame memory operations after stopping clip playback.

Pair File Processing

You can create a pair file from two single files. In the reverse direction, you can split a pair file into two single files.

Couple: You can create a pair file from two single still image files or clip files.

Separate: You can also separate a pair file into two single still image files or clip files.

Creating a pair file from two single files

Notes

Carrying out the following operation automatically switches [Pair] to On.

The following description applies to the case of FM1&2, but the procedures are similar for the other cases.

1 In the Frame Memory >Still >Recall menu or Frame Memory >Clip >Recall menu, recall the two single files you want to convert to a pair file, to FM1 and FM2.

2 In the Frame Memory menu, select VF4 'File' and HF1 'Pair Recombination.'

The Pair Recombination menu appears.

3 Press [Couple].

Splitting a pair file into two single files

Notes

Carrying out the following operation automatically switches [Pair] to Off.

The following description applies to the case of FM1 and FM2, but the procedures are similar for the other cases.

1 In the Frame Memory >Still >Recall menu or Frame Memory >Clip >Recall menu, recall the pair file.

2 Select the folder in which the file to be moved is stored.

3 In the Frame Memory menu, select VF4 'File' and HF1 'Pair Recombination.'

The Pair Recombination menu appears.

4 Press [Separate].

Moving Files

1 In the Frame Memory menu, select VF4 'File' and HF4 'Move.'

The Move menu appears. The status area shows files to be moved in the upper area, and destination files in the lower area.

2 Select the folder which contains the file to be moved.

3 Using any of the following methods, select the file to be moved.

- Press the arrow keys to scroll the display.
- Press directly on the thumbnail in the status area.
- Turn the knobs.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	No	File selection	1 and upwards
2	Num	Selection of number of files in sequence	1 and upwards

4 Select the destination folder and file.

5 Press [Move].

6 To confirm the move press [Yes], and to cancel press [No].

Deleting Files

- 1 In the Frame Memory menu, select VF4 'File' and HF5 'Delete.'

The Delete menu appears. In the status area, whether pair mode is on or off, all of the saved files appear as thumbnails.

- 2 Select the folder which contains the file to be deleted.

- 3 Using either of the following methods, select the file to be deleted. If necessary, press the arrow keys to scroll the display.
 - Press directly on the thumbnail in the status area.
 - Turn the knobs.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	No	File selection	1 and upwards
2	Num	Selection of number of files in sequence	1 and upwards

- To delete all files, press [Select All], turning it on.
- When a clip thumbnail is selected, the still image files making up the clip are also selected for deletion.

- 4 If necessary, turn the knob to check the contents of the frame memory clip through the thumbnail display.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
3	Viewer	For a movie, the current frame position. For a still image, no effect.	00:00:00 and upwards

- 5 Press [Delete].

A message for confirming the deletion appears.

- 6 To confirm the deletion press [Yes], and to cancel press [No].

Renaming Files

- 1 In the Frame Memory menu, select VF4 'File' and HF6 'Rename'

The Rename menu appears. In the status area, whether pair mode is on or off, all of the saved files appear as thumbnails.

- 2 Using either of the following methods, select the file to be renamed. If necessary, press the arrow keys to scroll the display.
 - Press directly on the thumbnail in the status area.
 - Turn the knobs.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	No	File selection	1 and upwards

- 3 If necessary, turn the knob check the contents of the frame memory clip through the thumbnail display.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
3	Viewer	For a movie, the current frame position. For a still image, no effect.	00:00:00 and upwards

- 4 Press [Rename].

A keyboard window appears.

- 5 Enter the new name, then press [Enter] in the keyboard window.

Notes

The following names cannot be used:

CON, PRN, AUX, CLOCK\$, NUL, COM0, COM1, COM2, COM3, COM4, COM5, COM6, COM7, COM8, COM9
LPT0, LPT1, LPT2, LPT3, LPT4, LPT5, LPT6, LPT7, LPT8, LPT9

External Hard Disk Drive Access

You can connect a hard disk drive to the USB port of the switcher processor, to carry out the following operations.

Format: Format the hard disk.

Backup: Batch saving of files from frame memory to the hard disk.

Restore: Restoring frame memory from files saved on the hard disk.

Since image data saved in memory is lost when the system is powered off, using an external hard disk drive allows required data to be preserved.

Notes

- Only one hard disk drive can be connected to a single switcher processor.
- While the hard disk is being accessed, frame memory operations are not possible. This applies to all operations for frame memory including frame memory recall by a snapshot operation.
- During playback of a frame memory clip of the pair assigned to either of the target FM selection buttons (*see page 162*), frame memory operations may not be performed properly. Carry out frame memory operations after stopping clip playback.
- When the signal format is 1080P, this function cannot be used.

Consult your Sony service representative or sales representative about the hard disk drives that can be connected.

Hard Disk Formatting

When you connect a hard disk drive for the first time, it is necessary to format the hard disk. This partitions the disk, creating 15 logical areas (FMHDD1 to FMHDD15).

- 1 In the Frame Memory menu, select VF6 'External Device' and HF1 'Ext HDD Format.'

The Ext HDD Format menu appears.

To get the hard disk drive information

In the button area press [Refresh Status].

The Device item shows the product information for the hard disk drive.

- 2 Press [Format].

A popup window for confirming formatting appears.

Notes

Carrying out formatting erases any existing data on the hard disk.

- 3 Press [Yes].

This starts the hard disk formatting. A progress bar and numerical indication appear to show the progress of the operation.

When the operation is completed, a popup window reading "Success!!" appears.

- 4 Press [OK].

Saving Files

You can save all of the files from frame memory to the external hard disk drive.

Notes

Before carrying out this operation for the first time, it is necessary to format the hard disk (*see previous item, "Hard Disk Formatting"*).

- 1 In the Frame Memory menu, select VF6 'External Device' and HF2 'Ext HDD Backup/Restore.'

The Ext HDD Backup/Restore menu appears.

For each partition, a list of the directory names and number of files appears.

To get the hard disk drive information

Press [Refresh Status].

The Device item shows the product information for the hard disk drive, and the names of directories.

- 2 Using any of the following methods, select a logical drive (FMHDD1 to FMHDD15).

- Press directly on the list to select.
- Turn the knob.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Partition	Partition selection	1 to 15

- 3 In the <Backup> group, do either of the following.

- To replace the existing data, press [Replace].
- To save in addition to the existing data, press [Append].

A popup window for confirming file saving appears.

Notes

When you execute [Replace], all of the saved files in the logical drive is erased immediately before the saving operations.

4 Press [Yes].

This starts the file saving operation. If there is no directory, a directory is automatically created, and the files are saved within it. A progress bar and numerical indication appear to show the progress of the operation.

When the operation is completed, a popup window reading “Completed.” appears.

5 Press [OK].

To rename a directory

Select a directory in the list, and in the button area press [Rename].

In the keyboard window that appears, enter the new directory name, and press [Enter]. The name of a directory is limited to eight characters.

Notes

The following names cannot be used:

CON, PRN, AUX, CLOCK\$, NUL, COM0, COM1, COM2, COM3, COM4, COM5, COM6, COM7, COM8, COM9
LPT0, LPT1, LPT2, LPT3, LPT4, LPT5, LPT6, LPT7, LPT8, LPT9

Recalling Files

You can recall all of the saved files on the hard disk drive into frame memory.

1 Carry out steps 1 and 2 of the procedure “Saving Files” (page 170).

Notes

It is not possible to select a partition (FMHDD1 to FMHDD15) of a hard disk in which no file is saved.

2 In the <Restore> group, do either of the following.

- To replace the existing data with the recalled data, press [Replace].
- To add the recalled data to the existing data, press [Append].

A popup window for confirming file recall appears.

Notes

When you execute [Replace], any existing data in frame memory is lost immediately before the recalling operations.

3 Press [Yes].

This starts the file recall operation. A progress bar and numerical indication appear to show the progress of the operation.

When the operation is completed, a popup window reading “Completed.” appears.

4 Press [OK].

Managing Images Using a DDR/VTR

Using a DDR/VTR for High-speed Backup and Restoring

You can save all files currently held in frame memory as a backup data set, by high-speed recording on video tape or other medium.

To restore the folder structure, it is necessary to save the automatically generated file list (of file name, length of clip, and so on) in memory.

Notes

At the beginning of this backup data a red or blue image is automatically inserted when the data is created. Do not delete this image, as it is required for restoring the data.

High-speed recording of backup data to DDR or VTR

Notes

Before starting the backup, it is necessary to select the FM output to record on an AUX bus, for example, and input the AUX output to the DDR/VTR.

- 1 In the Frame Memory menu, select VF6 'External Device,' and HF4 'Backup to DDR/VTR.'
The Backup to DDR/VTR menu appears.
- 2 To save with ancillary data, output the frame memory output signal to the AUX bus.
- 3 In the <Backup Enable> group, select either of the following.
Clip/Still: Data from the first board (still images and clips)
Ext Clip: Data from the second board (extended clips)
- 4 Press [Backup Start].
The message "Preparing now..." is displayed in a popup window, and it changes to a confirmation message when the preparation is complete.
- 5 Start recording at the external device, and immediately after that press [Yes].
This starts the backup, and when completed a message appears.

- 6 Stop the recording at the external device, and press the [OK] button.
- 7 To save the file list in memory, press [File >File Name Data].

The File >File Name Data menu appears.

The name of the file that is saved is fixed (FM_Bkup).

For details, see "Overview of File Operations" in Chapter 17 (Volume 2).

Restoring backup data from DDR or VTR

Notes

Before starting the restore operation, it is necessary to select the DDR/VTR output on the FM input bus.

- 1 In the Frame Memory menu, select VF6 'External Device' and HF5 'Restore from DDR/VTR.'
The Restore from DDR/VTR menu appears.
 - 2 Press [File >File Name Data], to read the file list from the File Name Data menu.
For details, see "Overview of File Operations" in Chapter 17 (Volume 2).
 - 3 To restore the ancillary data, select any of FM1, FM3, and FM5.
 - 4 In the <Restore Enable> group, select either of the following.
Clip/Still: Data from the first board (still images and clips)
Ext Clip: Data from the second board (extended clips)
 - 5 In the <Restore Type> group, press either of the following.
Replace: Replace the existing frame memory data with the recalled data.
Append: Add to the existing frame memory data.
- ### Notes
- 6 Press [Restore Start].
A confirmation popup window appears.
 - 7 Start playback at the external device, and immediately after that press [Yes].

Notes

Make sure to include that the red or blue image inserted at the beginning when the backup was made. If this image is not found, the clip or still image will not be played back correctly.

This starts the restore operation, and when completed a message appears.

- 8 Stop the playback at the external device, and press the [OK] button.

Extracting Images from Video Tape

By recording a clip or still image stored on a video tape as a single clip (single file) under certain rules, you can automatically extract an image from the clip, and save as a separate frame memory file.

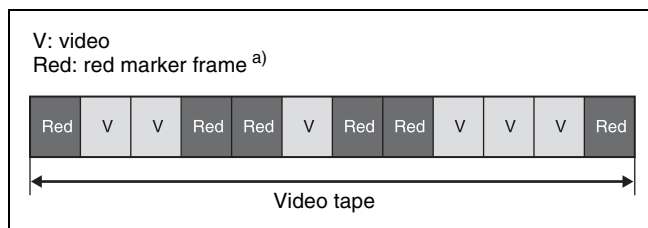
Notes

When the signal format is 1080P, this function cannot be used.

Relation between recorded state of video tape and files after extraction

The extraction is carried out according to the following rules.

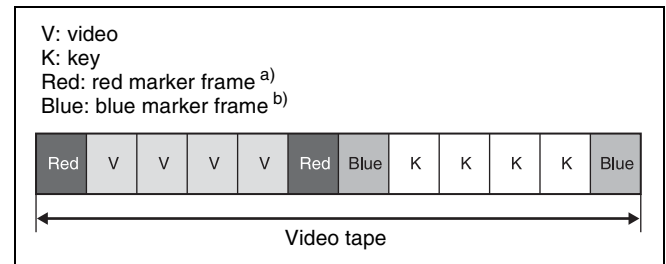
Example 1: When only video signal clips and a still image are recorded (single files)



Result of extraction:

Each section surrounded by red marker frames is extracted as a clip (main file). If the red markers surround a single frame, then it is extracted as a still image. In the case above two clip files (main files) are extracted, and one still image file.

Example 2: When a video signal clip is followed by a key signal clip with the same number of frames (pair file)



Result of extraction:

The section surrounded by red marker frames is extracted as the main file, and the section surrounded by blue marker frames is extracted as the sub file.

In the case above, one clip file (pair file) is extracted.

- a) A red marker frame is a monochrome frame with the RGB signal levels respectively 100%, 0%, 0%.
- b) A blue marker frame is a monochrome frame with the RGB signal levels respectively 0%, 0%, 100%.

Notes

- For extraction as a pair file, the main file and sub file must have the same number of frames.
- For image extraction as an extended clip, [Ext Clip] must be selected in the Record menu <Record Enable> group when the video tape content is recorded as a clip.
- For image extraction as still images, [Clip] must be selected in the Record menu <Record Enable> group when the video tape content is recorded as a clip.

1 In the Frame Memory >Clip>Record menu, record the tape image as a clip (see page 164).

2 In the Frame Memory menu, select VF4 'File' and HF2 'Auto Extraction.'

The Auto Extraction menu appears.

3 Select a clip (single file) recorded from the tape.

4 Press [Extraction Start].

A confirmation popup window appears.

5 Press [Yes].

This starts the extraction, analyzes the currently selected single clip, and automatically extracts a movie (Clip) or still image (Still). When there is key data, a pair file is created.

To check the details of the images (still image/clip)

Use the following knob operations.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	No.	File number	1 to maximum
3	Viewer	Timecode for selected image	00:00:00 to maximum



Color Background

The dedicated generators generate color signals, and these can be used as color backgrounds in video effects.

Color background selection

There are two color backgrounds, color background 1 and color background 2, which you use by assigning to cross-point buttons.

Color combinations (“color mix”)

The color generators can output the result of combining two colors, which are color 1 and color 2.

Using a pattern from a dedicated pattern generator, color 1 and color 2 can be combined in the boundary region, forming a color gradation. This is referred to in the menu system as “color mix.”

You can also apply modifiers to the selected pattern.

When the “color mix” function is not used, the result is a flat color, and color 1 is always output.

You carry out color background settings in the Color Bkgd menu. This section describes the settings menu for color background 1 as an example.

Color Background Settings Menu

Accessing the Color Bkgd1 menu

Use either of the following operations.

- In the menu control block, select the top menu selection button [COLOR BKGD], and press VF1 ‘Color Bkgd1.’
- Press a cross-point button assigned to color background 1 twice in rapid succession.

Basic Color Background Setting Operations

Making a single-color matte (Flat Color)

If you are not using the “color mix” function to combine two colors, use the following procedure.

- 1 In the <Matte> group of the Color Bkgd 1 menu, press [Flat Color], turning it on.
- 2 Set the following parameters.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Luminance	Luminance	0.00 to 100.00
2	Saturation	Saturation	0.00 to 100.00
3	Hue	Hue	359.99 to 0.00

Making a color combination (color mix)

To combine color 1 and color 2, use the following procedure.

- 1 In the <Matte> group of the Color Bkgd1 menu, press [Mix Color], turning it on.
- 2 Set the following parameters as required.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Size	Pattern size	0.00 to 100.00
2	Soft	Degree of softening of edge	0.00 to 100.00
5	Pattern	Pattern number	1 to 24 ^{a)}

a) The patterns are the same as for a standard wipe. See “Wipe Pattern List” (page 301).

You can also carry out the pattern selection by pressing the [Mix Ptn Select] button, to display the Mix Ptn Select menu. Select any pattern appearing in

the Mix Ptn Select menu (standard wipe patterns 1 to 24), and you can then adjust the following parameters.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Size	Pattern size	0.00 to 100.00
2	Soft	Edge softness	0.00 to 100.00

- 3** To adjust color 1, set [Color 1] on, and to adjust color 2 set [Color 2] on, then adjust the parameters.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Luminance	Luminance	0.00 to 100.00
2	Saturation	Saturation	0.00 to 100.00
3	Hue	Hue	359.99 to 0.00

- 4** If required, set the pattern modifiers.

When turning [Position] on and setting the pattern position

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Position H	Horizontal position	-200.00 to +200.00 ^{a)}
2	Position V	Vertical position	-200.00 to +200.00 ^{a)}

a) See page 123.

When turning [Multi] on and using replications of the same pattern

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	H Multi	Number of repetitions of pattern horizontally	1 to 63
2	V Multi	Number of repetitions of pattern vertically	1 to 63
3	Invert Type	Replication layout	1 to 4 ^{a)}

a) See page 125.

When turning [Aspect] on and setting the aspect ratio of the pattern

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Aspect	Aspect ratio	-100.00 to +100.00 ^{a)}

a) See page 125.

When turning [Pairing] on and making a wipe pattern like a Venetian blind

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Width	Width of the slits	1 to 128 (integer)

When turning [Angle] on in the <Rotation> group and slanting the pattern

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Angle	Angle of pattern rotation	-100.00 to +100.00 ^{a)}

a) See page 124.

When turning [Speed] on in the <Rotation> group and rotating the pattern at a constant rate

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Speed	Rotation rate of pattern	-100.00 to +100.00 ^{a)}

a) See page 124.

When selecting H (horizontal) or V (vertical) in the <Modulation> group and applying waviness to the pattern

(The modulation is always a sine wave.)

Notes

When using 1080PsF mode in an HD system, the modulation function is not available.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Amplitude	Amplitude of modulation	0.00 to 100.00
2	Frequency	Frequency of modulation	0.00 to 100.00
3	Speed	Speed of waves	-100.00 to +100.00 ^{a)}

a) See "Applying modulation to the wipe pattern (Modulation)" (page 126).

- 5** To interchange color 1 and color 2, press the [Color Invert] button, turning it on.



Copy and Swap

Overview of Copy and Swap

You can copy or swap the settings among the switcher banks or between keyers.

The following settings can be copied or swapped.

- Overall settings for the M/E-1 to M/E-4, and PGM/PST banks
- Keyer settings
- Wipe settings in a transition control block
- Wipe settings in an independent key transition control block
- DME wipe settings in a transition control block
- DME wipe settings in an independent key transition control block
- Matte data (color 1, color 2, and how to compose them)
- Color settings
- DME channel settings
- Format converter input settings (copy only)
- Format converter output settings (copy only)

You can carry out copy operations with a simple button operation. Swap operations, and copy operations on DME data can only be done with a menu operation.

M/E copy and M/E swap

You can copy and swap the overall bank settings between the M/E-1 and PGM/PST banks.

Target bank	Target data
M/E-1 PGM/ PST	Bank settings excluding the following data items: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Setup data • Snapshots • Keyframe effects • Key snapshots • Key memory

Notes

If a DME is being used on the source M/E bank, then if for example there are insufficient DME channels, it may not be possible to select the DME.

There are no such restrictions on a swap.

Keyer copy and keyer swap

You can carry out copy and swap operations among the keyers listed in the following table.

Target bank	Target keyer	Target data
M/E-1	Keys 1 to 8	Key settings excluding the following data items: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Setup data • Key snapshots • Key memory
PGM/ PST	Downstream keys 1 to 8	

Notes

If a DME is being used on the source keyer for a copy or either keyer for a swap, then if for example there are insufficient DME channels, or the limit on using DME channels within an M/E bank is exceeded, it may not be possible to select the DME.

Wipe copy and wipe swap

You can copy and swap the wipe settings among the banks listed in the following table.

Target bank	Target data
M/E-1 PGM/ PST	Wipe settings. It is not, however, possible to carry out copy or swap involving independent key transition wipe settings.

Wipe copy and wipe swap in the independent key transition control block

You can copy and swap the wipe settings among the keyers listed in the following table.

Target bank	Target keyer	Target data
M/E-1	Keys 1 to 8	Wipe settings in the independent key transition control block.
PGM/ PST	Downstream keys 1 to 8	

DME wipe copy and DME wipe swap

You can copy and swap the DME wipe settings among the banks listed in the following table.

Target bank	Target data
M/E-1 PGM/ PST	DME wipe settings. It is not, however, possible to carry out copy or swap involving independent key transition DME wipe settings.

DME wipe copy and DME wipe swap in the independent key transition control block

You can copy and swap the DME wipe settings among the keyers listed in the following table.

Target bank	Target keyer	Target data
M/E-1	Keys 1 to 8	DME wipe settings in the independent key transition control block.
PGM/PST	Downstream keys 1 to 8	

Matte data copy and swap

You can copy or swap the matte data among the color generators listed in the following table.

Target bank	Target keyer and data	
M/E-1 PGM/PST	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Keys 1 to 8 Downstream keys 1 to 8 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Matte data for key fill Matte data for key edge fill
	Matte data for wipe border edge	
Color background	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Matte data for color background 1 Matte data for color background 2 	

Color data copy and swap

You can copy or swap the color data among the color generators listed in the following table.

Target bank	Target keyer and data	
M/E-1 PGM/PST	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Keys 1 to 8 Downstream keys 1 to 8 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Colors 1 and 2 for key fill Colors 1 and 2 for key edge fill "Zabton" color data
	Colors 1 and 2 for wipe border	
	Color data for preset color mix	
Color background	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Colors 1 and 2 for color background 1 Colors 1 and 2 for color background 2 	
Frame memory	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> FM1 color FM2 color 	
DME ch1 to ch4	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Background Border Sepia Light Shade Drop shadow (other than DME ch4) Trail 	

DME channel copy and swap

You can copy and swap the channel data among DME channels 1 to 4 or DME channels 5 to 8.

It is not possible to copy or swap the channel data between DME channels 1 to 4 and DME channels 5 to 8.

Notes

On the MVS-8000X, when the signal format is 1080P, the combinations for a copy or swap are restricted as follows.

- Channels 1 and 2

- Channels 3 and 4
- Channels 5 and 6
- Channels 7 and 8

On the MVS-7000X, when the signal format is 1080P, the above restriction also applies if using the MVE-8000A. There is no such restriction for the MKS-7470X/7471X.

Copying format converter data

You can copy data from one format converter input to another or from one output to another.

Notes

The copy source and destination data must be in the same signal format.

Copy and Swap Operations

Copy and Swap Menu Operations

In the menu operation section top menu selection buttons, press the [Copy/Swap] button, then press VF1 'Copy/Swap.' The Copy/Swap menu appears.

Here a copy/swap operation on wipe data is described by way of example, using the Copy/Swap >Wipe menu, but the same general procedure applies to all of the following menus.

- M/E: Copying and swapping M/E data
 - Key: Copying and swapping key data
 - Wipe: Copying and swapping wipe data
 - DME Wipe: Copying and swapping DME wipe data
 - Matte: Copying and swapping matte data
 - Color: Copying and swapping color data
 - DME: Copying and swapping data by DME channels
 - Format Converter: Copying format converter data
- For an overview of the concepts involved, see "Copy and Swap" (page 177). For details of color corrector copy and swap, see "Copy and Swap Operations" (page 187).*

Examples of Copy and Swap Operations by a Menu Operation

As an example, to copy or swap wipe data, use the following procedure.

- In the Copy/Swap menu, select HF3 'Wipe.'

The Copy/Swap >Wipe menu appears.

The status area shows lists for the copy/swap source on the left, and the copy/swap destination on the right.

- In the <Data Select> group, select either of the following.

Wipe: The operation applies to wipes in the transition control block.

Key Wipe: The operation applies to wipes in the independent key transition control block.

3 Using any of the following methods, select the data to be copied or swapped.

- Press directly on the list in the status area.
- Press the arrow keys to scroll the reverse video cursor.
- Turn the knobs to make the setting.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Left No	Select data for copy/swap source	1 to 5 ^{a)} 1 to 40 ^{b)}
2	Right No	Select data for copy/swap destination	1 to 5 ^{a)} 1 to 40 ^{b)}

a) Transition control block wipe data

b) Independent key transition control block wipe data

For details of the data affected, see “Copy and Swap” (page 177).

4 To copy, press [Copy], and to swap, press [Swap].

To undo a copy or swap

Press [Undo], to return to the state before the copy or swap was carried out.

Copy by Button Operation

You can copy key data by a simple button operation.

Basic button operation

The basic button operation is to hold down the copy source button, then press the destination button.

You can undo the last operation using [Undo] in the menu (see page 179).

Keyer copy button operation

Use the key delegation buttons in the respective banks.

To copy from M/E-1 key 1 to P/P downstream key 2

Hold down the M/E-1 key delegation button [KEY1] and press the P/P key delegation button [DSK2].

Misc Menu Operations

In the Misc menu, you can carry out the following operations.

- Enabling and disabling operation from an external device, System Manager, or an editing keyboard.
- Enabling and disabling side flags on the background bus of each of the M/E-1 and PGM/PST banks.
For the side flag function, see “Side Flags” (page 195).
- Switching the safe title function on or off for each switcher output.
- Displaying the transition rate, independent key transition rate, and fade-to-black transition rate for each of the M/E and PGM/PST banks, and changing the settings.

Port Settings for Control From an External Device

Enabling or disabling control from an external device

1 In the menu control block, press the top menu selection button [MISC], then select VF1 ‘Enable’ and HF1 ‘Port Enable.’

The Misc >Enable >Port Enable menu appears with the status area showing the settings of the following ports.

- Switcher Remote1 to Remote4 ports (RS-422A, D-sub 9-pin)
- Switcher GPI port (parallel, 25-pin)
- DME1/DME2 Editor ports (RS-422A, D-sub 9-pin)
- DME1/DME2 GPI ports (parallel, 25-pin)

When the signal format is 1080P, you can also make settings for DME3/DME4.

2 In the <Switcher> or <DME> group, press on the name of the port for which you want to disable control from an external device, turning it off.

To re-enable control for the port, press on its name once more.

Notes

For the AUX bus operation from the Remote 1 to Remote 4 ports of the switcher, the setting (Enable/Disable/Manual) in the Setup menu takes precedence. Only when the setting is “Manual,” the settings made in the Port Enable menu apply.

For details, see “Interfacing With External Devices (Device Interface Menu)” in Chapter 19 (Volume 2).

DME override

- 1 In the menu control block, press the top menu selection button [MISC], then select VF1 'Enable' and HF1 'Port Enable.'

The Misc >Enable >Port Enable menu appears.

- 2 In the <DME Override> group, select the DME override mode.

DME Override: When a switcher snapshot or effect using a DME is recalled, forcibly select the DME that was used when saving.

On Air Protect: The operation is the same as the DME override function, except that a DME being used by an M/E bank or P/P bank that is on air will not be forcibly selected.

Notes

If effects using the same DME channel are selected simultaneously in two or more regions, the DME is selected with the order of precedence P/P >M/E1 >M/E2 >M/E3 >M/E4.

Enabling or disabling control from System Manager

By installing the BZPS-8000 System Management Software (System Manager), you can use a computer connected on a network for management of some switcher data and control operations.

To enable or disable this function, use the following procedure.

- 1 In the menu control block, press the top menu selection button [MISC], then select VF1 'Enable' and HF1 'Port Enable.'

The Misc >Enable >Port Enable menu appears.

- 2 Press [System Manager].

Each time you press the button toggles between enable and disable.

Editing Keyboard Settings

Notes

The following operations are only possible when a license for the BZS-8050 Editing Control Software is activated.

For details of license registration, see "Installation and Device Setup (Install/Unit Config Menu)" in Chapter 18 (Volume 2).

Enabling or disabling control from the editing keyboard

- 1 In the menu control block, press the top menu selection button [MISC], then select VF1 'Enable' and HF2 'Plug-In Editor.'

The Misc >Enable >Plug-In Editor menu appears.

- 2 In the <Control From Plug-In Editor> group, press [Editor Enable].

Each time you press the button toggles between enable and disable.

To enable control of the preview bus only

When control from the editing keyboard is disabled (when [Editor Enable] is set to Disable), to enable control of the preview bus only, press [PVW Bus Enable] in the <Control From Plug-In Editor> group.

Safe Title Settings

Switching the safe title function on or off

- 1 In the menu control block, press the top menu selection button [MISC] and select VF2 'Safe Title.'

The Misc >Safe Title menu appears.

- 2 Using any of the following methods, select the signal to which the settings apply.

- Directly press the list in the status area.
- Press the arrow keys to scroll the reverse video cursor.
- Turn the knob to make the setting.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Output	Signal to which the settings apply	1 to 48

Notes

- It is not possible to change the setting for the output for which the safe title is set off in a Setup menu.
- The safe title function cannot be used for output signals for which through mode is set to Enable in a Setup menu.

For more information about the Setup menu settings referred to above, see "Signal Input Settings (Input Menu)" and "Signal Output Settings (Output Menu)" in Chapter 20 (Volume 2).

- 3 Press [Safe Title] to set it on or off.

Displaying a List of Transition Rates and Changing the Settings

In the Transition menu, for each bank you can display a list of the M/E (or PGM/PST) transition rates and independent key (or DSK) transition rates, and change the settings. These settings are linked to the other transition rate setting operations.

Displaying the Transition menu

In the menu control block, press the top menu selection button [MISC], then select VF3 ‘Transition.’ The Misc >Transition menu appears.

About the Transition menu display

The display of the independent key transition rate in the Misc >Transition menu depends on the selection in the <Key Transition> group of the Engineering Setup >Switcher >Transition menu for each of the M/E and PGM/PST banks.

When [Same] (On direction and Off direction settings the same) is selected in the <Key Transition> group: Only “Key” (or “DSK” in the PGM/PST bank) appears.

When [Independ] (On direction and Off direction settings independent) is selected in the <Key Transition> group: “Key(On)” and “Key(Off)” each appear. In the case of the PGM/PST bank, “DSK(On)” and “DSK(Off)” appear.

For details, see “Settings Relating to Video Switching (Transition Menu)” in Chapter 20 (Volume 2).

Setting the transition rate in the Transition menu

To set the M/E transition rate

For example, to make the settings for the M/E-1 bank, use the following procedure.

- 1 Press in the list in the status area of the Misc >Transition menu, to select M/E-1.
- 2 In the <Transition Rate> group, press [Transition].
- 3 Turn the knob to set the number of frames.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Transition Rate	Transition rate	0 to 999 (frames)

Notes

When a clip transition is selected as the transition type, it is not possible to change the transition rate in this menu.

To set the independent key transition rate

By way of example, the following is the procedure for settings of keys 1 to 4 in the M/E-1 block.

- 1 Press in the list in the status area of the Misc >Transition menu, to select M/E-1.
- 2 In the <Transition Rate> group, press [Key K1-K4].
To insert (on) or remove (off) keys individually, press [Key(On) K1-K4] or [Key(Off) K1-K4].
- 3 Turn the knobs to set the number of frames.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Key1 Trans Rate	Key 1 transition rate	0 to 999 (frames)
2	Key2 Trans Rate	Key 2 transition rate	0 to 999 (frames)
3	Key3 Trans Rate	Key 3 transition rate	0 to 999 (frames)
4	Key4 Trans Rate	Key 4 transition rate	0 to 999 (frames)

To set the fade-to-black transition rate in the Transition menu

Notes

This function is not available with the CCP-9000A.

- 1 In the Misc >Transition menu, press [FTB].
- 2 Turn the knob to set the number of frames.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Transition Rate	Transition rate	0 to 999 (frames)

AUX Menu Operations

AUX Bus Settings

Making video process settings for an AUX bus

1 In the Aux >Aux Bus menu, using any of the following methods, select the AUX bus to which the settings apply.

- Directly press the list in the status area.
- Press the arrow keys to scroll the reverse video cursor.
- Turn the knob to make the setting.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	AUX Bus	AUX bus selection	1 to 48

2 Press [Video Process], turning it on.

3 Adjust the following parameters.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Video Gain	Video signal gain	-200.00 to +200.00
2	Y Gain	Luminance signal gain	-200.00 to +200.00
3	C Gain	Chrominance signal gain	-200.00 to +200.00
4	Hue Delay	Hue delay	-180.00 to +180.00
5	Black Level	Black level	-7.31 to +109.59

To return adjustment values to their defaults, press [Unity].

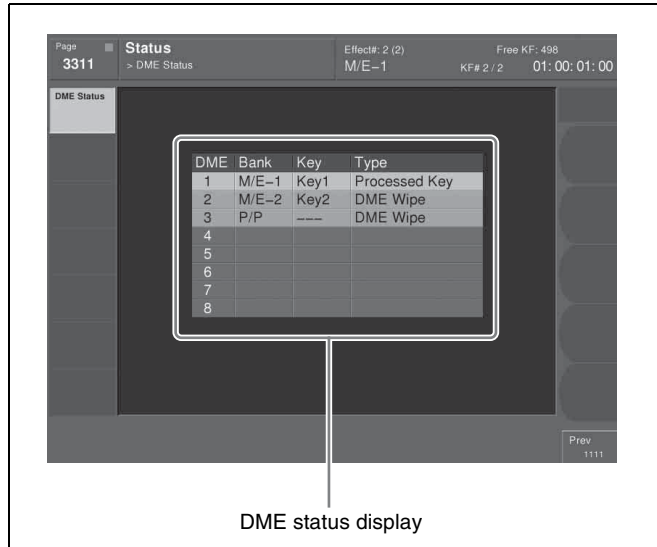
Status Menu

The Status menu shows the following information.

- Operating status of the DME

Viewing the DME operating status

To view the DME operating status, press the top menu selection button [STATS] in the menu control block. This selects VF1 'DME Status' and the Status menu appears.



For each DME channel, you can see how the DME is being used in the corresponding operation block.

The display background color also indicates the following differences in the way in which a DME is being used.

Blue: The DME is currently being used in other than the final program output.

Red: The DME is currently being used in the final program output.

Router Control Menu Operations

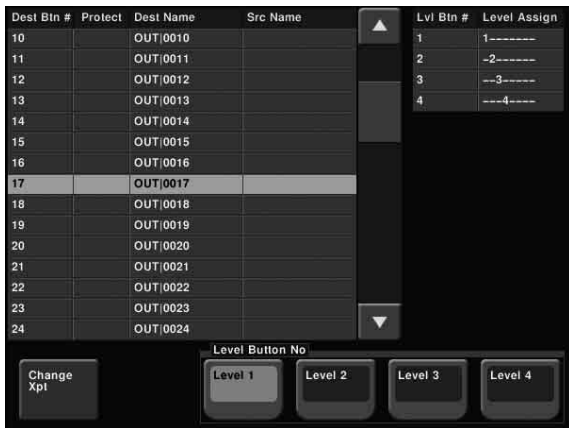
Using the Router >Router Control >Router Control menu, you can carry out router switching operations.

Checking the List of Inputs for Each Destination

You can check the list of signals currently input for each destination.

In the menu control block, press the top menu selection button [RTR], then select VF1 'Router Control' and HF1 'Router Control.'

The following menu appears, and the left side of the status area shows a list for destination assignments.



If in the Assign >RTR Mode Setting menu, [Inhibit] is set to On for a destination, the corresponding line appears in gray. Also, if [PROT] (protect) is set to ON for a source, using a BKSR3xxx or R1xxx series Router remote control, a padlock icon appears.

The right side of the status area shows the level assignment status to the Level 1 to Level 4 buttons.

Selecting the level

In the <Level Button No> group at the lower right in the above illustration, press the selected level for switching.

Switching the Source for Each Destination

You can switch the source for each destination with a menu operation.

For the assignment of destinations and sources to buttons, use the Setup >Panel >Aux Assign >RTR Mode Setting menu.

For details, see "Using the Auxiliary Bus Control Block for Router Control" in Chapter 19 (Volume 2).

1 Press [Change Xpt].

The Router >Router Control >Router Control >Change Xpt menu appears.

Destination Select buttons appear in groups of 16. Source Select buttons appear by group (maximum 24 buttons).

2 Press one of the Destination Select buttons, to select the destination for which you want to switch the source.

To change the group

Press one of the [1-16], [17-32], [33-48], and [49-64] buttons.

3 Press one of the Source Select buttons, to select the source you want to switch.

To change the group

Press one of the [1-24], [25-48], ... [97-120], and [121-128] buttons.

Video Process

The term “video process” is applied to adjustments to the luminance and hue of the input video signal.

There are two types of adjustment, depending on the application:

- Adjustment of an individual input signal
- Image effects on a particular bus

Notes

These types of adjustment may be carried out independently. However, since they are implemented by the same hardware, if the same signal is subjected to processing twice, there may be limitations on the range of effects obtained in the final result.

Video Process Adjustments for Each Input Signal

For each signal input to the switcher, you can set video process on or off and set the parameters (Video Gain, Y Gain, C Gain, Hue Delay, and Black Level) in the Setup menu.

For details of the settings, see “Signal Input Settings” in Chapter 20 (Volume 2).

Video Process Adjustments on a Particular Bus

Buses to which the adjustments apply

For each of the following buses, you can switch video process adjustments on or off, and adjust the parameters.

- Following buses in the M/E-1 and PGM/PST banks
 - Key fill buses for keys 1 to 8
 - Background A and background B buses
 - Utility 1 and utility 2 buses
- Frame memory source 1 and frame memory source 2 buses
- Aux 1 to 48 buses

These settings also apply to keyframes and snapshots.

Making the adjustments

Adjust VIDEO GAIN, Y GAIN, BLACK LEVEL, C GAIN, and HUE DELAY in the following menus.

Applicable bus		Menu used for operation	See page
M/E-1 bank	Key fill buses for keys 1 to 8	M/E-1 menu	page 99
	Background A and B buses	Video Process menu	page 184
	Utility 1 and 2 buses		
PGM/PST bank	Key fill buses for DSK1 to DSK8	PGM/PST menu	page 99
	Background A and B buses	Video Process menu	page 184
	Utility 1 and 2 buses		
Frame memory source 1 and 2 buses		Frame Memory menu	page 155
Aux 1 to 48 buses		AUX menu	page 182

Video Process Memory

When using video process adjustments for an image effect on a bus, this function saves the final values for each pair number for the signals. The video process on/off setting is not saved.

When you change the adjustments the values are automatically saved, and these last values are recalled when the pair number is selected.

In other words, by switching video process memory on, regardless of the video process information for each bus, you can carry out video process adjustments for each input signal.

The parameters saved are as follows.

VIDEO GAIN, Y GAIN, BLACK LEVEL, C GAIN, HUE DELAY

Switch the video process memory on or off in the Setup menu.

For details of setting operations, see “Settings Relating to Keys, Wipes, Frame Memory and Color Correction (Key/Wipe/FM/CCR Menu)” in Chapter 20 (Volume 2).

Video Process Settings

This section describes operations on the M/E-1 and PGM/PST background A and B buses, and utility buses 1 and 2. For these operations, use the Misc > Video Process menu in the respective operating bank.

For video process settings on other buses, see the following.

- *Settings for a particular input signal: “Signal input settings” in Chapter 20 (Volume 2)*

- *Key fill bus settings: “Video Processing” (page 99)*
- *Settings for frame memory source buses 1 and 2: “Setting video processing” (page 155)*
- *Settings for Aux 1 to 48 buses: “Making video process settings for an AUX bus” (page 182)*
- *Overview of video process: “Video Process” (page 184)*

This section describes an example on the background A bus of the M/E-1 bank.

For the background B bus or utility bus 1 or 2, make the adjustment with a similar procedure.

Making video process settings for each bus

- 1** In the menu control block, press the top menu selection button [M/E1] and select VF7 ‘Misc’ and HF2 ‘Video Process.’
- 2** In the <Bkgd-A> group, press [Video Process], turning it on.
- 3** Adjust the following parameters.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Video Gain	Video signal gain	–200.00 to +200.00
2	Y Gain	Luminance signal gain	–200.00 to +200.00
3	C Gain	Chrominance signal gain	–200.00 to +200.00
4	Hue Delay	Hue delay	–180.00 to +180.00
5	Black Level	Black level	–7.31 to +109.59

To return the parameter settings to the defaults, press [Unity] in the <Bkgd-A> group.



Preparations

The color corrector enables video signal color correction (black balance/white balance adjustment, gamma correction, knee correction, etc.).

Notes

To use the color corrector, the BZS-8420X (for MVS-8000X) or the BZS-7420X (for the MVS-7000X) Color Corrector Software. To use the software, you are required to input an install key.

For the method of inputting an install key, see “Installation and Device Setup (Install/Unit Config Menu)” in Chapter 18 (Volume 2).

Assigning the color corrector input buses to AUX delegation buttons

There are two inputs for capturing material to the color corrector: the CCR1 bus and the CCR2 bus.

For details of the input assignment operation, see “Auxiliary Bus Control Block Settings (Aux Assign Menu)” in Chapter 19 (Volume 2).

Selecting the color correction input signal

After assigning CCR1 and CCR2 to AUX buses, use the following procedure.

- 1 Press the AUX delegation buttons assigned to CCR1 (or CCR2).
- 2 In the cross-point button row, select the signal to which you want to apply color correction.

Notes

The signals that can be selected on the CCR1 and CCR2 buses are primary inputs, premium inputs,

format converter inputs and frame memory outputs (FM1 to FM8) only.

However you can make all the internal signals of the switcher selectable by a setting in the Setup menu.

For details, see “Selecting the Bank to Make the Settings” in Chapter 20 (Volume 2).

Selecting the color corrector output signal

By assigning the signal output from the color corrector to a cross-point button, you can make that signal available on that button.

For details of the assignment process, see “Cross-Point Settings (Xpt Assign Menu)” in Chapter 19 (Volume 2).

Accessing the CCR menu

For color correction operations, use the CCR menu.

To access the CCR menu, in the menu control block, press the top menu selection button [CCR].

The following description uses CCR1 as an example. To apply color correction to CCR2, replace VF1 ‘CCR1’ by VF2 ‘CCR2,’ and follow the same procedure.

Overall Color Corrector Operations

Enabling Color Corrector

To enable the functions of color corrector 1, for example, use the following procedure.

- 1 In the CCR menu, press VF1 ‘CCR1’ and any HF.
- 2 In the <CCR> group, press [CCR], turning it on.

Returning all color corrector settings to their defaults

- 1 In the <CCR> group, press [Unity].

A confirmation message appears.

- 2 Press [Yes].

This returns all color corrector settings to their defaults, whether [CCR] is on or off.

Copy and Swap Operations

Copying color corrector data

- 1 In the CCR menu, press VF5 ‘Copy/Swap.’

The Copy/Swap menu appears.

The status area shows a copy source list on the left and a copy destination list on the right.

- 2 Using any of the following methods, select the copy source data and copy destination data.

- Press directly on the list in the status area.
- Press the arrow keys to scroll the reverse video cursor.
- Turn the knobs.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Left No	Select copy source data	1 or 2
2	Right No	Select copy destination data	1 or 2

- 3 Press [Copy].

This carries out the copy.

Swapping color corrector data

Refer to the procedure described in the previous item “Copying color corrector data.” In step 3, press [Swap] instead of [Copy].

To undo copy or swap

In the Copy/Swap menu, press [Undo].

The state before carrying out the copy or swap is restored.

Color Corrector Functions

This section describes the color corrector functions. For each of the following operations, it is possible to copy or swap data between two color correctors (CCR1 and CCR2).

Input Video Processing Operations

Carry out the following corrections to a YUV signal before conversion to an RGB signal.

- Overall gain adjustment of the video signal
- Gain adjustment of the Y signal
- Gain adjustment of the C signal
- Hue delay
- Black level adjustment

To apply input video processing effects, use the following procedure.

- 1 In the CCR menu, press VF1 'CCR1' and HF1 'Input Process.'

The Input Process menu appears.

- 2 In the <Input Process> group, press [Input Process], turning it on.

- 3 Adjust the following parameters.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Video Gain	Video signal gain	-200.00 to +200.00
2	Y Gain	Y signal gain	-200.00 to +200.00
3	C Gain	Chrominance signal gain	-200.00 to +200.00
4	Hue Delay	Hue delay	-180.00 to +180.00
5	Black Level	Black level	-116.90 to +116.90

To return the parameters to their default settings
Press [Unity] in the <Input Process> group.

Primary Color Correction Operations

Carry out the following corrections to each of the R, G, and B signals.

Black balance adjustment: setting the output level for a 0% level input signal.

White balance adjustment: setting the output level for a 100% level input signal.

Gamma correction: adjusting the curvature of the gamma curve.

Knee correction: adjusting the position of the maximum point of the gamma curve.



It is also possible to mask part of the region to be corrected.

Applying primary color correction

- 1 In the CCR menu, press VF1 'CCR1' and HF2 'Primary CCR.'

The Primary CCR menu appears.

- 2 In the <Primary CCR> group, press [Primary CCR], turning it on.

- 3 In the <Primary CCR Adjust> group, select the setting item.

Black: black balance adjustment

White: white balance adjustment

Gamma: gamma correction

Knee: knee correction

- 4** Depending on the selection in step **3**, adjust the following parameters.

When Black or Gamma is selected

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Red	Red signal adjustment	-100.00 to +100.00
2	Green	Green signal adjustment	-100.00 to +100.00
3	Blue	Blue signal adjustment	-100.00 to +100.00
4	All	Simultaneous RGB adjustment	Red value is shown

When White is selected

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Red	Red signal adjustment	0.00 to 200.00
2	Green	Green signal adjustment	0.00 to 200.00
3	Blue	Blue signal adjustment	0.00 to 200.00
4	All	Simultaneous RGB adjustment	Red value is shown

When Knee is selected

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Red	Red signal adjustment	20.00 to 75.00
2	Green	Green signal gain	20.00 to 75.00
3	Blue	Blue signal gain	20.00 to 75.00
4	All	Simultaneous RGB adjustment	Red value is shown

To return the parameters to their default settings
In the <Primary CCR> group, press [Unity].

Masking a part of the primary color correction

Here the procedure for mask 1 operation is described by way of example. You can carry out mask 2 operation in a similar way.

- 1** In the Primary CCR menu, press [Mask1].
- 2** In the < Primary/Secondary Mask > group, press [Mask1], turning it on.

Notes

When [Mask 2] is selected in the Secondary CCR menu, linked to this setting it automatically changes from [Mask 2] to [Mask 1].

- 3** Press [Mask1 Adjust].
The Mask1 Adjust menu appears.
- 4** In the <Mask Source> group, select the mask source.
Box: signal from dedicated box generator
Pattern: signal from dedicated pattern generator
- 5** Depending on the selection in step **3**, adjust the following parameters.

When Box is selected

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Top	Top position	-100.00 to +100.00
2	Left	Left position	-100.00 to +100.00
3	Right	Right position	-100.00 to +100.00
4	Bottom	Bottom position	-100.00 to +100.00
5	Soft	Degree of softness of box	0.00 to 100.00

When Pattern is selected

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Size	Pattern size	0.00 to 100.00
2	Soft	Degree of softness of pattern edge	0.00 to 100.00
5	Pattern	Pattern number	1 to 24

For the pattern selection, you can also press [Mask Ptn Select] in the Mask1 Adjust menu, then use the Mask Ptn Select menu.

Press any of the displayed patterns (standard wipe patterns 1 to 24) to select it, then you can adjust the following parameters.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Size	Pattern size	0.00 to 100.00
2	Soft	Degree of softness of pattern edge	0.00 to 100.00

- 6** When selecting the pattern as a mask source, set the pattern modifiers as required.

When turning [Position] on and setting the pattern position

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Position H	Horizontal position	-200.00 to +200.00 ^{a)}
2	Position V	Vertical position	-200.00 to +200.00 ^{a)}

a) See "Setting the wipe position (Positioner)" (page 123).

When turning [Multi] on and replicating the same pattern

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	H Multi	Number of repetitions of pattern horizontally	1 to 63
2	V Multi	Number of repetitions of pattern vertically	1 to 63
3	Invert Type	Replication layout	1 to 4 ^{a)}

a) See "Setting the wipe pattern replication (Multi)" (page 125).

When turning [Aspect] on and setting the aspect ratio of the pattern

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Aspect	aspect ratio	-100.00 to +100.00 ^{a)}

a) See "Setting the wipe pattern aspect ratio (Aspect ratio)" (page 125).

When turning the [Angle] on in the <Rotation> group and slanting the pattern

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Angle	Angle of pattern rotation	-100.00 to +100.00 ^{a)}

a) See "Angle" (page 124).

When turning [Speed] on in the <Rotation> group and rotating the pattern at a fixed rate

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Speed	Rotation rate of pattern	-100.00 to +100.00 ^{a)}

a) See "Speed" (page 124).

- 7** To invert the mask source, return to the Primary CCR menu and press [Pri/Sec Mask Invert], turning it on.

Notes

The mask function is common to the primary color correction, secondary color correction, and spot color adjustment functions.

Secondary Color Correction Operations

For the six colors R (red), G (green), B (blue), Y (yellow), C (cyan), and M (magenta), adjust the luminance and saturation, and also the hue within a range of ± 30 degrees of the center value for each color.

You can mask a part of the region to be corrected.

Applying secondary color correction

- 1 In the CCR menu, press VF1 'CCR1' and HF3 'Secondary CCR.'

The Secondary CCR menu appears.

- 2 In the <Secondary CCR> group, press [Secondary CCR], turning it on.

- 3 In the <Secondary CCR Adjust> group, select the color for which you want to make the setting.

- 4 Adjust the following parameters.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Luminance	Luminance	-100.00 to +100.00
2	Saturation	Saturation	0.00 to 200.00
3	Hue Delay	Hue delay	-180.00 to +180.00

To return the parameter settings to their default values

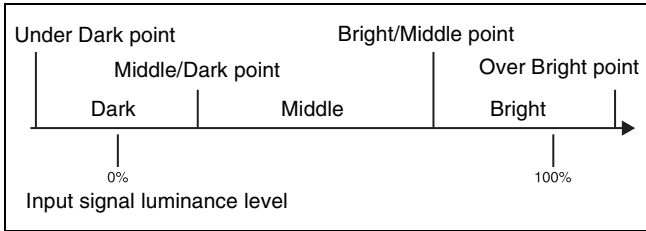
In the <Secondary CCR> group press [Unity].

Masking a part of the secondary color correction

Set [Mask] to On in the Secondary CCR menu, then carry out the same operation as described under "Masking a part of the primary color correction" (page 189).

Luminance Processing Operations

After converting a signal to which RGB color correction has been applied to a YUV signal, divide the luminance levels into three regions, referred to as Dark, Middle, and Bright, and apply video signal adjustments to these regions.



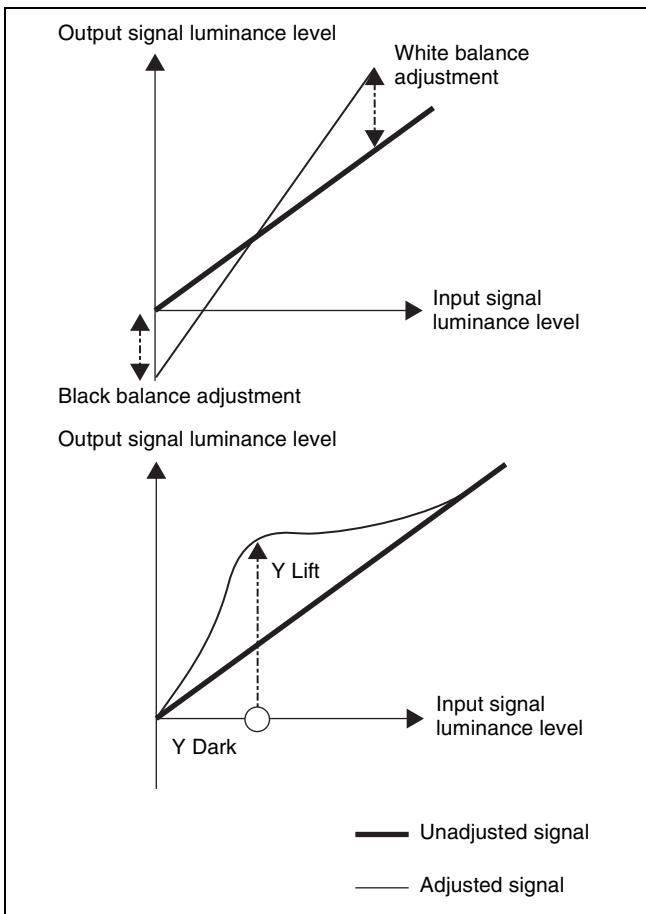
There are three modes for luminance processing, as follows.

Tint mode: adding a specified color to the original video signal.

Color Modify mode: adjusting the original video signal.

Y Modify mode: adjusting the output levels of the input luminance signal.

- White balance adjustment: setting the output level for an input luminance signal at the 100% level.
- Black balance adjustment: setting the output level for an input luminance signal at the 0% level.
- Y lift correction: adjusting the curvature of the curve.
- Y dark correction: adjusting the position of the maximum point of the curve.



It is also possible to mask part of the region to be corrected.

Applying luminance processing

1 In the CCR menu, press VF1 'CCR1' and HF5 'Luminance Process.'

The Luminance Process menu appears.

2 In the <Luminance Process> group, press [Luminance Process], turning it on.

3 In the <Mode> group, specify the adjustment mode.

Tint: add a specified color to the original video signal.

Color Modify: adjust the original video signal.

Y Modify: adjust the output levels of the input luminance signal.

When tint mode or color modify mode is selected, skip to step **4**.

When Y modify mode is selected, adjust the following parameters.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	White	White balance adjustment	0.00 to 200.00
2	Black	Black balance adjustment	-100.00 to +100.00
3	Y Lift	Curvature of curve	-100.00 to +100.00
4	Y Dark	Position of maximum point of curve	-7.31 to +109.59

4 In the <Bound> group, make the settings for the three regions (Dark, Middle, and Bright).

[Level] parameters: set the boundaries of the three regions.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Over B Level	Luminance level of the Over Bright point	50.00 to 150.00
2	Mid B Level	Luminance level of the Bright/Middle point	10.00 to 120.00
3	Dark Mid Level	Luminance level of the Middle/Dark point	-20.00 to +90.00
4	Under D Level	Luminance level of the Under Dark point	-50.00 to +50.00

[Soft] parameters: set the degree of boundary softness of the three regions.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Over B Soft	Degree of softness at Over Bright point	15.00 to 70.00
2	Mid B Soft	Degree of softness at Bright/Middle point	15.00 to 42.50
3	Dark Mid Soft	Degree of softness at Middle/Dark point	15.00 to 42.50
4	Under D Soft	Degree of softness at Under Dark point	15.00 to 70.00

- 5 In the <Luminance Process Adjust> group, press [Dark], [Mid], or [Bright], and adjust the following parameters for the three regions.

In tint mode

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Luminance	Luminance	-100.00 to +100.00
2	Saturation	Saturation	0.00 to 100.00
3	Hue	Hue	359.99 to 0.00

In color modify mode

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Luminance	Luminance	-100.00 to +100.00
2	C Gain	Chrominance signal gain	0.00 to 200.00
3	Hue Delay	Hue delay	-180.00 to +180.00

To return the parameters to their default settings

In the <Luminance Process> group, press [Unity].

Spot Color Adjustment

You can change the color of a specified color region to a different color, without affecting other regions. You can also mask part of such a region.

Then for the region other than the region whose color you have changed, you can make the following corrections.

- Video signal overall gain adjustment
- Y signal gain adjustment
- Y signal offset adjustment
- C signal gain adjustment
- C signal hue adjustment

Adjusting the color of the specified region (key)

- 1 In the CCR menu, press VF1 'CCR1' and HF6 'Spot CCR/Output.'

The Spot CCR/Output menu appears.

- 2 In the <Spot CCR> group, press [Spot CCR], turning it on.

- 3 In the <Auto> group, press [Sample Mark], turning it on.

Notes

When [Sample Mark] is on, the effects of color adjustment outside the region of spot color adjustment (*see page 193*) and output video processing (*see page 193*) are temporarily disabled.

Turning [Sample Mark] off restores the former state.

- 4 Adjust the parameters so that the color you want to change is included within the sample mark.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Position H	Horizontal position	-100.00 to +100.00
2	Position V	Vertical position	-100.00 to +100.00
3	Size	Size	1.00 to 100.00

- 5 In the <Auto> group, press [Auto Start], to adjust the key automatically.

Notes

This automatic adjustment does not carry out key gain adjustment. If required, adjust the key gain as shown in step 6.

- 6 Press [Key Adjust], and adjust the following parameters.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Luminance	Luminance	-7.31 to +109.59
2	Saturation	Saturation	0.00 to 100.00
3	Hue	Hue	359.99 to 0.00
4	Gain	Key gain	-100.00 to +100.00

- 7 Press [Window], turning it on, to adjust the key detection range for spot color adjustment.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Luminance	Luminance	0.00 to 100.00

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
2	Saturation	Saturation	0.00 to 100.00
3	Hue	Hue	0.00 to 100.00

- 8** In the <Spot CCR> group, press [Spot CCR] to display the parameters, and adjust the replacement color.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Luminance	Luminance	0.00 to 100.00
2	Saturation	Saturation	0.00 to 100.00
3	Hue	Hue	359.99 to 0.00

To return the parameters to their default settings
In the <Spot CCR> group, press [Unity].

Masking a part of the spot color adjustment

Set [Mask] to On in the Spot CCR/Output menu, then carry out the same procedure as in “Masking a part of the primary color correction” (page 189).

Adjusting the color outside the spot color adjustment region

- 1 In the Spot CCR/Output menu, press [Outer Out Proc] in the <Outer Out Proc> group, turning it on.
- 2 Adjust the following parameters.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Video Gain	Video signal gain	-200.00 to +200.00
2	Y Gain	Y signal gain	-200.00 to +200.00
3	C Gain	Chrominance signal gain	-200.00 to +200.00
4	Hue Delay	Hue delay	-180.00 to +180.00
5	Black Level	Black level	-116.90 to +116.90

To return the parameters to their default settings
In the <Outer Out Proc> group, press [Unity].

Output Video Processing Operations

Carry out the following corrections are available on the YUV signal.

- Video signal overall gain adjustment
- Y signal gain adjustment
- Y signal offset adjustment
- C signal gain adjustment
- C signal hue adjustment

Applying output video processing effects

- 1 In the CCR menu, press VF1 ‘CCR1’ and HF6 ‘Spot CCR/Output.’
The Spot CCR/Output menu appears.
- 2 In the <Output Process> group, press [Output Process], turning it on.
- 3 Adjust the following parameters.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Video Gain	Video signal gain	-200.00 to +200.00
2	Y Gain	Y signal gain	-200.00 to +200.00
3	C Gain	Chrominance signal gain	-200.00 to +200.00
4	Hue Delay	Hue delay	-180.00 to +180.00
5	Black Level	Black level	-116.90 to +116.90

To return the parameters to their default settings
In the <Output Process> group, press [Unity].

YUV Clip Operations

For each of the luminance and color difference signals, the following processing is available.

White clip: setting the maximum level of the luminance signal.

Dark clip: setting the minimum level of the luminance signal.

Positive clip: setting the maximum amplitude in the positive direction of the color difference signal.

Negative clip: setting the maximum amplitude in the negative direction of the color difference signal.

Applying YUV clip processing

- 1 In the CCR menu, press VF1 ‘CCR1’ and HF7 ‘YUV Clip/RGB Clip.’
The YUV Clip/RGB Clip menu appears.
- 2 In the <YUV Clip> group, press [YUV Clip], turning it on.
- 3 In the <YUV Clip Adjust> group, select the target for adjustment.
Luminance: settings for the luminance signal.
Chroma: settings for the color difference signal.
- 4 Depending on the selection in step 3, adjust the following parameters.

When Luminance is selected

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	White Clip	White clip adjustment	-6.85 to +109.13
2	Dark Clip	Dark clip adjustment	-6.85 to +109.13

When Chroma is selected

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	U Posi Clip	Positive clip adjustment for U signal	-113.39 to +113.39
2	U Nega Clip	Negative clip adjustment for U signal	-113.39 to +113.39
3	V Posi Clip	Positive clip adjustment for V signal	-113.39 to +113.39
4	V Nega Clip	Negative clip adjustment for V signal	-113.39 to +113.39

To return the parameters to their default settings

In the <YUV Clip> group, press [Unity].

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
4	All	Simultaneous RGB adjustment	Red value is shown

- a) When Dark is selected
- b) When White is selected

To return the parameters to their default settings

In the <RGB Clip> group, press [Unity].

RGB Clip Operations

For each of the R, G, and B signals, you can make dark clip and white clip adjustments.

Making RGB clip adjustments

- 1 In the CCR menu, press VF1 'CCR1' and HF7 'YUV Clip/RGB Clip.'

The YUV Clip/RGB Clip menu appears.

- 2 In the <RGB Clip> group, press [RGB Clip], turning it on.

- 3 In the <RGB Clip Adjust> group, select the item you want to adjust.

Dark: dark clip adjustment

White: white clip adjustment

- 4 Adjust the following parameters.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Red	Red signal adjustment	-50.00 to +149.99 ^{a)} -49.99 to +150.00 ^{b)}
2	Green	Green signal adjustment	-50.00 to +149.99 ^{a)} -49.99 to +150.00 ^{b)}
3	Blue	Blue signal adjustment	-50.00 to +149.99 ^{a)} -49.99 to +150.00 ^{b)}

Side Flags

Overview

The term “side flags” refers to the areas to left and right of an image with aspect ratio 4:3 embedded within a 16:9 frame, when these areas are filled with a separate image selected from the utility 1 bus.

You can adjust the width of the side flag area.

Side Flag Settings

Input source aspect ratio, auto side flags, and auto crop settings

Aspect ratio 4:3 setting

Set the input signal to aspect ratio 4:3. If set to 16:9, the side flags are disabled.

Auto side flag setting

This function automatically applies side flags when a 4:3 signal is selected in the cross-point control block.

Auto crop setting

When carrying out a DME wipe, this function automatically crops the image during transition to 4:3.

Adjusting the width of the side flag area

You can set the left and right sides separately.

For the operation for the above setting, see “Settings for Switcher Configuration (Config Menu)” in Chapter 20 (Volume 2).

Enabling and disabling side flags with a menu operation

You can enable or disable side flags for the backgrounds (A and B) of each of the M/E and PGM/PST banks.

As an example, to enable side flags for background B row on the M/E-1 bank, use the following procedure.

- 1 In the menu control block, press the top menu selection button [MISC], then select VF1 ‘Enable’ and HF3 ‘Side Flags.’

The Misc >Enable >Side Flags menu appears.

The status area shows the buttons for Bkgd A and Bkgd B for each of the M/E-1 to M/E-4, and PGM/PST (P/P) banks.

- 2 In the <M/E-1 Side Flags> group, press [Bkgd B].

Each time you press the button toggles between Enable and Disable.

To display a menu for the aspect ratio 4:3, auto side flags, and auto crop settings

In the Misc >Enable >Side Flags menu, press [Setup >SWER >Side Flags].

To display a menu for assigning the side flags on/off function to a cross-point button

In the Misc >Enable >Side Flags menu, press [Side Flags Button Assign].

Enabling and disabling side flags with a button operation

For example, to enable side flags for the background B row of the M/E-1 bank, use the following procedure.

- 1 First, in the Setup menu assign the rightmost cross-point button to the [SIDE FLAG] button.

For details of the assignment operation, see “Assigning a Cross-Point Button to Enable/Disable Side Flags” in Chapter 19 (Volume 2).

- 2 Press the [SIDE FLAG] button at the right end of the background B row of the M/E-1 bank.

The button you pressed lights amber, and this enables the side flags.

Notes

- The operations of enabling or disabling the side flags by menu operation and by control panel button operation are linked.
- When the auto side flags are on, selecting a 4:3 video material automatically lights the [SIDE FLAG] button, but if you press this button, turning it off, the side flags are temporarily disabled. However, when you select a different 4:3 video material, the [SIDE FLAG] button automatically lights once again, enabling the side flags.

Creating an image with side flags

For example, to create an image with side flags in the background B row of the M/E-1 bank, use the following procedure.

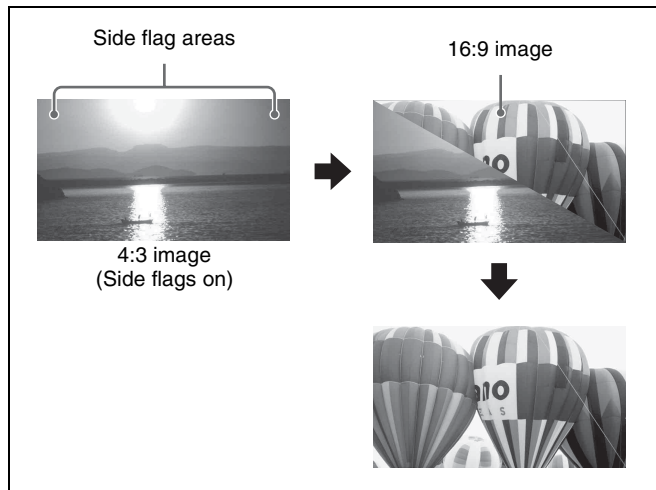
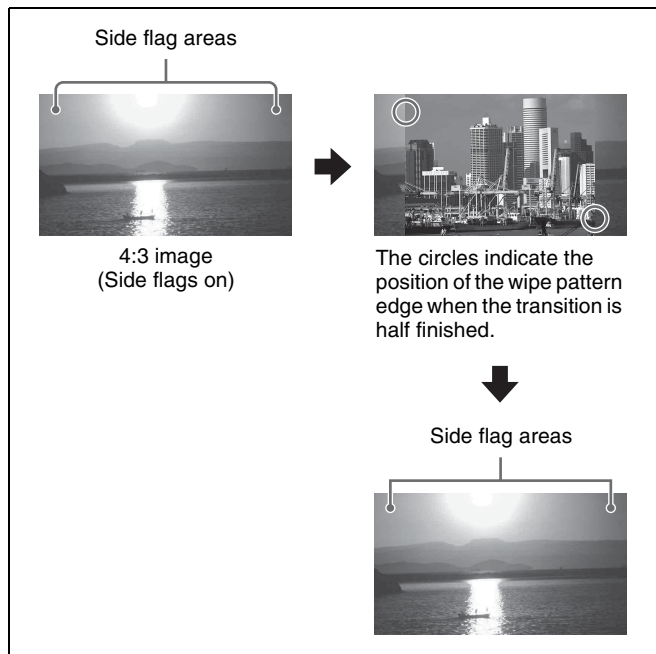
- 1** In the M/E-1 bank cross-point control block, hold down the [UTIL] button, and in the background A row select the signal (utility bus 1 signal) you want to insert in the side flag areas.
- 2** In the background B row, press the cross-point button corresponding to the 4:3 video material.

At this point, if auto side flags are on, this automatically adds side flags to the 4:3 video material.
For details, see “Settings for Switcher Configuration (Config Menu)” in Chapter 20 (Volume 2).
- 3** Use either of the following methods to turn the side flags on.
 - Use the Misc >Enable >Side Flags menu. (See page 195).
 - Use a cross-point button operation. (See previous item.)

This adds side flags to the 4:3 video material.

Wipe Action on Images with Side Flags

When a wipe is carried out on an image with side flags, all wipe patterns can be used. The following illustration shows the action in a wipe.

Wipe from a 4:3 image to a 16:9 image**Wipe from a 4:3 image to another 4:3 image (when side flags are on for both images)****DME Wipe Action for an Image with Side Flags**

When a DME wipe is carried out on an image with side flags, all wipe patterns can be used. Depending on the setting (On/Off) of [Auto Crop] in the Engineering Setup >Switcher >Config menu, the appearance of the 4:3 image changes.

Notes

- When using the DME through SDI interface with [Auto Crop] being off, side flags are not added to the new image during DME wipe.
- For signals with the following DME wipe pattern selected on the DME external video bus (gray part shown in the pattern illustration), side flags are not applied when auto side flags are set to Off.
 - Two-channel page turn
 - Two-channel page roll
 - Two-channel frame in-out
 - Two-channel brick
 - Three-channel brick

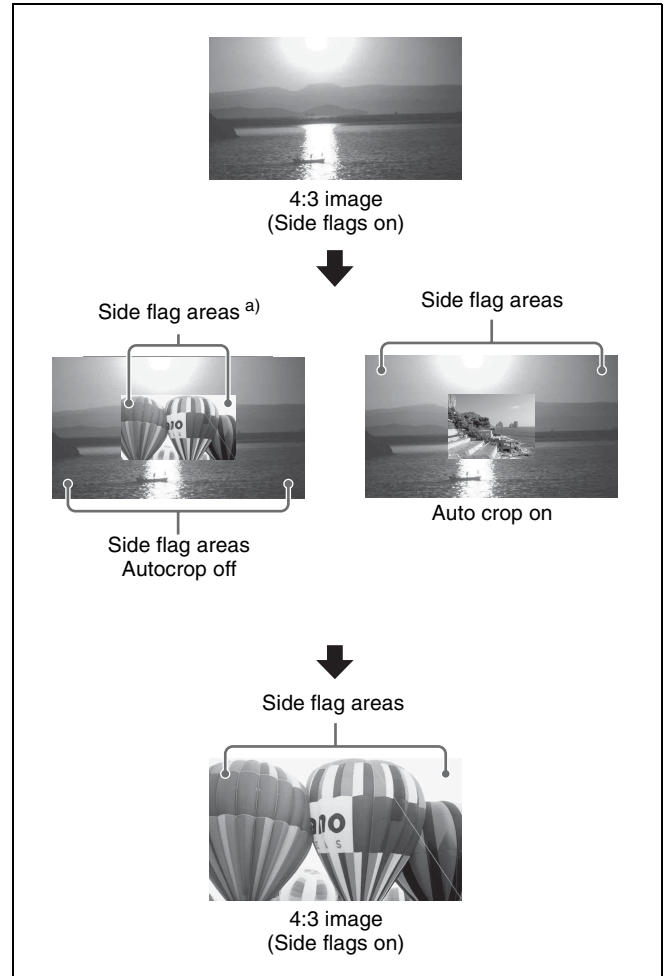
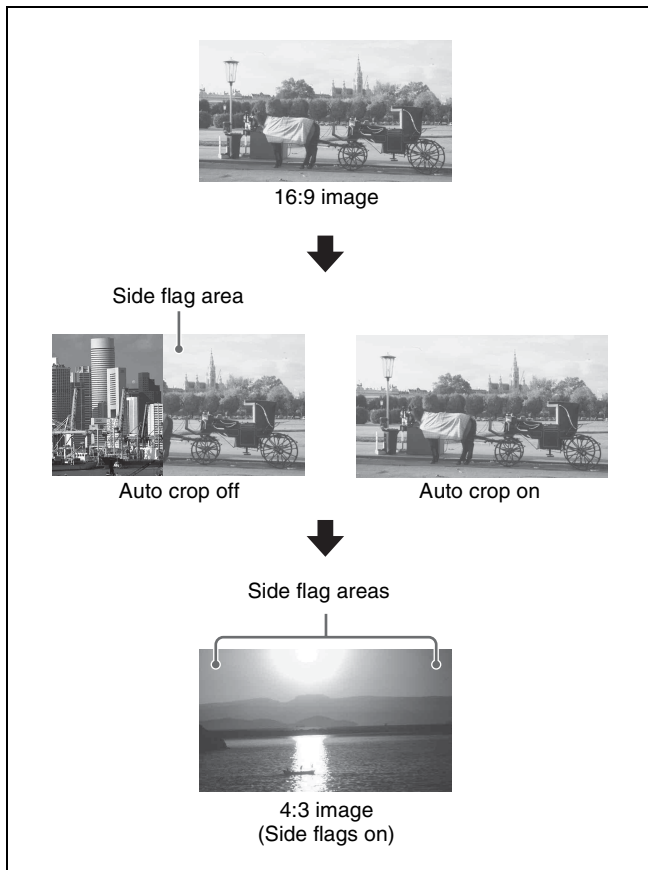
The following illustration shows the action in a DME wipe.

DME wipe from a 4:3 image to another 4:3 image (when side flags are on for both images)

Wipe action using squeeze (No. 1031)

DME wipe from a 4:3 image to another 4:3 image (when side flags are on for both images)

Wipe action using squeeze (No. 1031)



a) When using the DME through SDI interface, side flags are not added during a DME wipe.

Multi Program 2

Overview

What is Multi Program 2?

By operating the switcher in Multi Program 2 mode, a single switcher mix/effects bank can be used to create two separate video outputs, referred to as “main” and “sub.” You can set backgrounds, keys, and transitions for each of main and sub. Keys 2 to 8, however, are common to main and sub.

Notes

To enable this function requires the BZS-8200X (for the MVS-8000X) or BZS-7200X (for the MVS-7000X) Multi Program 2 software.

Using the software

To use the Multi Program 2 software, you are required to enter an install key which validates the software. (If the software has been factory installed, the install key is not required.)

For the method of obtaining an install key, contact your Sony representative.

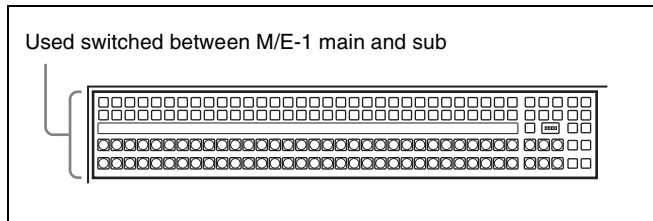
To obtain a key, you may be required to submit the unique device ID of the switcher you are using. You can check the unique device ID in the Install menu of the switcher.

For details of the operation, see “Installation and Device Setup (Install/Unit Config Menu)” in Chapter 18 (Volume 2).

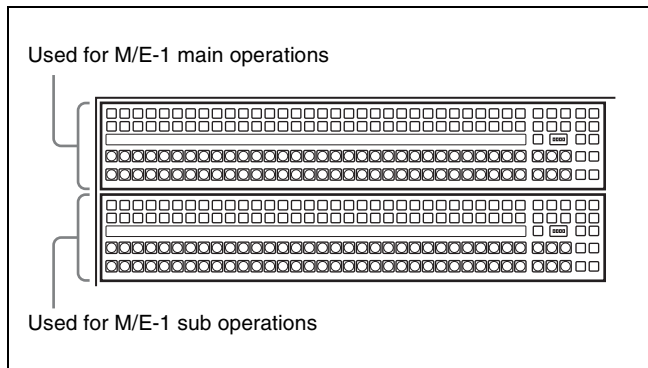
Assigning main and/or sub to switcher banks

For Multi Program 2 operations, a single switcher bank may be shared, and switched between main and sub, or two separate switcher banks may be used, each dedicated to main or sub.

Example 1: Assigning M/E-1 main and sub to a single switcher bank, and switching between them



Example 2: Assigning separate switcher banks as “M/E-1 main dedicated” and “M/E-1 sub dedicated”



Video creation operations in Multi Program 2 mode

For each of main and sub, there are differences from the operations in standard mode.

For details, see “Differences between Multi Program 2 Mode and Standard Mode” (page 203).

Sequence of Operations in Multi Program 2

Basic operation sequence

Enter the BZS-8200X or BZS-7200X install key (first time only)

↓

Set Multi Program 2 operating mode for each switcher bank

↓

Assign output signals, and set the background configuration, key configuration, and key preview configuration

↓

For each switcher bank, make a main/sub assignment (one of main dedicated, sub dedicated, and main and sub shared)

↓

For a switcher bank assigned to main and sub shared, assign the [MAIN] and [SUB] delegation buttons

↓

Create the main and sub images

↓

Execute the transition

Optional operations

- Making cross-point settings
- Enabling DME wipe operations for sub
- Inhibiting utility 2 bus signal selection
- Including Multi Program 2 data in keyframes and snapshots
- Changing the key assignment for each output

- Assigning sub preview output to preview selection buttons in the fade-to-black control block
- Changing the matrix size to Standard
- Making settings for keyframe timeline operation

Basic Operations (Required)

Entering the install key of the software (first time only)

After installing the BZS-8200X or the BZS-7200X Multi Program 2 software in the switcher, carry out the following procedure.

- 1 In the status area of the Engineering Setup >System >Install/Unit Config menu, select the switcher (SWRx), and press [License].

The License menu appears.

- 2 In the License menu, enter the install key.

For details of the operation, see “Installation and Device Setup (Install/Unit Config Menu)” in Chapter 18 (Volume 2).

- 3 Shut down the menus (*see page 48*).

- 4 Power the switcher and SCU off and on again.

Setting the operating mode for each switcher bank

To set a desired switcher bank to Multi Program 2 mode, use the following procedure.

- 1 Display the Engineering Setup >Switcher >Config menu.
- 2 Select the switcher bank from M/E-1 to M/E-4, and P/P.
- 3 In the <M/E Config> group, select [Multi Program2].
- 4 Repeat steps 2 and 3 as required, to set the operating mode for all desired switcher banks.

Assigning output signals for Multi Program 2 mode

To assign signals to outputs

Use the Engineering Setup >Switcher >Config >M/E Output Assign menu.

The difference from standard mode is that OUT1 is fixed, set to PGM1 (main program), and OUT6 is fixed, set to PGM2 (sub program), and that for the OUT2 to OUT5

signals you can assign any signal selected from the following.

PGM1, PGM2, PGM3, PGM4, PVW1, PVW2, K-PVW1, K-PVW2, CLEAN, SUB CLEAN

Notes

Each of main and sub can use a maximum of four of the six outputs (OUT1 to OUT6). The outputs can be used within the following limits.

- OUT1, OUT2: main only
- OUT3, OUT4: can be used for either main or sub
- OUT5, OUT6: sub only

For details, see “Selecting the System Operation Mode” in Chapter 18 (Volume 2).

To set the background and key configuration

Use the Engineering Setup >Switcher >Config >PGM Config menu.

The following are the differences from standard mode.

Background configuration: Consists of the following combinations.

- For main: Clean, Bkgd A, Bkgd B
- For sub: Sub Clean, Utility 2, Utility 3

Key configuration: Key1 can be set to “Enable” only when the background is Clean, Bkgd A, or Bkgd B.

For details, see “Setting the Operation Mode” in Chapter 20 (Volume 2).

To set the key preview configuration

Use the Engineering Setup >Switcher >Config >K-PVW Config menu.

The following are the differences from standard mode.

Background configuration: Clean or Sub Clean

Key configuration: Key1 can be set to “On” or “Link” only when the background is Clean.

For details, see “Setting the Operation Mode” in Chapter 20 (Volume 2).

To assign sub outputs to output ports

Use the Engineering Setup >Switcher >Output >Output Assign menu.

You can assign a sub output signal to a switcher output port number.

For details, see “Assigning Output Signals” in Chapter 20 (Volume 2).

Assigning main and/or sub to switcher banks

For each switcher bank for which Multi Program 2 mode is selected, set whether this is main dedicated, sub dedicated, or main and sub shared.

To assign main and sub to a single switcher bank

- 1 In the Engineering Setup >Panel >Config >MP2 Main/Sub Assign menu, select the switcher bank.
- 2 In the <Main/Sub Assign> group, select [Main&Sub].

Main: use for main operations.

Sub: use for sub operations.

Main&Sub: use for both main and sub operations.

When “Main&Sub” is selected, it is necessary to assign [MAIN] and [SUB] delegation buttons to the control panel buttons.

To assign main and sub to two consecutive switcher banks

For example, to assign the first row (first switcher bank) to M/E-1 main, and the second row (second switcher bank) to M/E-1 sub, use the following procedure.

- 1 In the status area of the Engineering Setup >Panel >Config >MP2 Main/Sub Assign menu, select 1st Row (M/E-1), then press [Main] in the <Main/Sub Assign> group.
- 2 Press [Dual M/E Assign] to assign M/E to two banks.
In this state, both 1st Row and 2nd Row are set to main.
- 3 Set 2nd Row to [Sub].
This cancels the shift/non-shift assignment for dual M/E in standard mode.

Notes

It is not possible to assign the combinations of Main with Main&Sub, or Sub with Main&Sub.

Assigning the [MAIN] and [SUB] delegation buttons to buttons on the control panel

- 1 In the Engineering Setup >Panel >Config menu, press [Program Button].
The Program Button menu appears.
- 2 Press [Transition Module1].
The Transition Module1 menu appears.
- 3 Select the switcher bank in the <Bank Select> group.
The buttons in the transition control block on the left appear in the currently assigned state.

- 4 Press the button whose assignment you wish to change.

The button you press appears in reverse video.

- 5 From the list on the right, select [MAIN], and press [Set].

The indication on the button changes according to the selection.

- 6 Repeat Step 4 and 5 to assign [SUB].

Examples of Operations in the Multi Program 2 Mode (When Sharing a Switcher Bank)

To create video on the M/E or PGM/PST bank assigned to both main and sub operations, use the following procedure.

- 1 Press the [MAIN] button, turning it on, and turning off the [SUB] button.
- 2 With the normal operations, create the main video.
- 3 Press the [SUB] button, turning it on, and turning off the [MAIN] button.
Now you can create the sub video.
- 4 Create the sub video.

The basic method of operation is the same as for the main video, except that the utility 2 bus signal is assigned to background A, and the utility 3 bus signal is assigned to background B.

For sub, only keys 2 to 8 can be used, and for wipes, standard wipe patterns only. There are also other differences in operation from standard mode.

For details, see “Differences between Multi Program 2 Mode and Standard Mode” (page 203) and “Restrictions on Using Multi Program 2 Mode” (page 203).

- 5 Press the [MAIN] and [SUB] buttons simultaneously, turning them on.

If both buttons are lit, the control panel shows the status of main.

- 6 Carry out the transition.

Both main and sub video images are switched.

Optional Operations

Making cross-point settings

Cross-point assign tables can be set not only for main output but also for sub output.

You can set cross-point assign tables for the following banks.

M/E-1 SUB to M/E-4 SUB
P/P SUB

The table actually used is that for which the control panel delegation button is lit.

For details, see “Cross-Point Settings (Xpt Assign Menu)” in Chapter 19 (Volume 2).

Enabling DME wipe operations for sub

By factory default, DME wipe operations are inhibited for sub background. To enable them, in the Engineering Setup >Switcher >Config menu, set [DME Wipe Sub Enable] to On.

This setting applies to the whole control panel (all M/E banks and PGM/PST bank).

Notes

If a DME wipe for sub is recalled in a snapshot or keyframe, the image will not be handled correctly.

Inhibiting utility 2 bus signal selection

In Multi Program 2 mode, you can inhibit other uses of the utility 2 bus signal in order to use the signal as the background for sub.

This setting applies to the whole control panel (all M/E banks and PGM/PST bank).

In the Engineering Setup >Panel >Config >MP2 Main/Sub Assign menu, set [Util2 Inhibit] to On.

This prevents the key row delegation button [UTIL2] from lighting.

Inhibiting key operations for main or sub keyer

In the Engineering Setup >Panel >Config >Operation Inhibit >M/E Operation Inhibit menu, you can make settings to inhibit key operations on each of the main and sub keyers independently.

For details, see “Inhibiting Utility 2 Bus and Key Operations” in Chapter 19 (Volume 2).

Including Multi Program 2 data in recall operations of keyframes and snapshots

In the Engineering Setup >Switcher >Config menu, set [Recall M/E Config] to On.

When a keyframe or snapshot is stored or recalled, the following data is included.

M/E Config, PGM Config, M/E Output Assign, and Key PVW Config

For details of the above data, see “Setting the operating mode for each switcher bank” (page 199) and “Assigning output signals for Multi Program 2 mode” (page 199).

This setting applies to the whole control panel (all M/E banks and PGM/PST bank).

Notes

M/E Config data is saved, even when this setting is Off.

Changing the key assignment for each output (Misc menu)

In Multi Program 2 mode you can change the key assignments independently.

The following describes an example using M/E-1, but the operation is the same for other banks.

Notes

- This setting is linked to the setting in the Engineering Setup >Switcher > Config >PGM Config menu.
- It is not possible to make this setting while the above PGM Config menu is locked, or [Recall M/E Config] (*see previous item*) is set to Off.

1 In the M/E-1 menu, select first VF7 ‘Misc,’ then HF5 ‘Key Assign.’

The Key Assign menu appears, and the current key assignment is shown in the status area.

2 Change the setting in “Key Enable” as required.

Keys recalled in a snapshot recall

If a snapshot is recalled independently on main or sub, this only retrieves the settings for the key assigned to the recalled side. For example, if key 1 and key 2 are assigned on main, and key 3 and key 4 are assigned on sub, then if you recall a snapshot on main, this only retrieves the settings for key 1 and key 2, and the state of key 3 and key 4 assigned on sub is not affected.

Changing the matrix size to Standard

When using a router, if the matrix size is set to [128×128], it is not possible to control the utility 3 bus on the S-Bus. When using Multi Program 2, in the <Matrix Size> group

of the Engineering Setup >Router/Tally >Router menu, select other than [128 × 128].

For details, see “Assigning Switcher Inputs and Outputs to S-Bus Space” in Chapter 23 (Volume 2).

As for the bus number of the utility 3 bus, a DME Key bus number is used as follows.

No.	Bus (Standard)	Bus (MP2)
70	M/E-1 DME Key	M/E-1 Utility3
85	M/E-2 DME Key	M/E-2 Utility3
100	M/E-3 DME Key	M/E-3 Utility3
115	P/P DME Key	P/P Utility3

Making settings for timeline-related keyframe operations

To assign sub regions to the region selection buttons in the numeric keypad control block

In the Engineering Setup >Panel >Config >10 Key Region Assign menu, assign regions to the region selection buttons in the numeric keypad control block.

For details, see “Overall Control Panel Settings (Config Menu)” in Chapter 19 (Volume 2).

To make region and reference region selections using a menu

During snapshot or keyframe operations, you can select a region (including sub) in the Key Frame >Region Select menu. This is convenient for selecting some of the regions assigned to the numeric keypad control block or changing the reference region.

For details, see “Specifying the Region and Edit Points” in Chapter 13 (Volume 2).

To assign regions shown in the Timeline menu

You can select how regions assigned to region selection buttons appear in the Key Frame >Timeline menu.

For details, see “Settings in the Timeline Menu” in Chapter 13 (Volume 2).

Enabling re-entry between the main and sub sides of the same M/E bank

In the Engineering Setup >Switcher >Config menu, set [MP2 Free Re-Entry] to On.

Notes

- Re-entry adds a 1H delay to the video. Nested re-entry may lead to problems in the video.
- A maximum of ten re-entry stages are possible, with the final output having a delay of 5H.

- The selection order of re-entry signals affects the number of lines by which the output signal is lowered.
- If a delay occurs in the image, even when the through mode is set, the ancillary data does not pass through.
- For example, it is possible to select the re-entry of M/E-1 main on M/E-1 main.

Restrictions on mutual re-entry when using Multi Program 2

The snapshot function is affected by this re-entry function. When the [MP2 Free Re-Entry] button is On, and any of the switcher banks are in Multi Program 2 mode, then the following restrictions apply.

If you save and recall snapshots simultaneously with more than one region specified, the recorded state is played back in the order of precedence of regions (M/E-1 >M/E-2 >M/E-3 >P/P). Therefore, if you save and recall snapshots with more than one region specified, the cross-point settings may not be recalled correctly.

To recall the snapshots correctly, press the cross-point button before recalling the snapshots, to select a signal other than the re-entry signal, then recall the snapshots.

Functions Added in Multi Program 2 Mode

- You can set video processing for the utility 3 bus signal.
- In the control panel and DCU GPI input settings and switcher GPI link settings, the actions that can be selected now also include “Sub Cut” and “Sub Auto Trans.”
- A switcher GPI link can now be set also for the utility 3 bus.
- To the macro event configuration parameters and macro attachment settings, “Main & Sub” and “Sub” have been added.
- For cross-point button link settings, M/E-1 to M/E-4, and P/P “Sub Program,” “Sub Preset,” and “Sub Trans PGM” have been added to the link source bus.
- Snapshot attributes can now be set independently for main and sub.
- There are additional menus for sub which can be recalled by pressing a button twice.
- You can set [MP2 Auto Correct] to On or Off in the Effect menu or Snapshot menu. When this is set to On, for example, copy destination and source data is automatically recognized as main or sub, and the data interchanged.
- When the key adjustment mode is selected on the Multifunction Flexi Pad (or when the KEY ADJ button is lit), if you select the region selection button to which [M/E-x Sub] is assigned, the [TRNS] button operates as a button for the sub region.
- You can assign [SUB TRANS] to the key control block. This button functions as a [TRNS] button for the sub region.

Differences between Multi Program 2 Mode and Standard Mode

The differences from operation in standard mode are as follows.

Item		Main	Sub
Keys ^{a)}		Keys 1 to 8 can be used	Keys 2 to 8 only can be used
Wipes (background)	Patterns	Same as standard mode	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Only standard patterns can be used Pattern mix is not possible
	Modifiers	Same as standard mode	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Pairing, modulation, spring, spiral, and split cannot be used Edge fill mattes are single-color only Replication can be selected from four patterns
Wipes (key)		Same as wipes (background) for sub	
DME wipes	Use	Can be used	Cannot be used (Can be used, with a setting change)
	Patterns for 1 channel	For a dedicated interface, each of main and sub can be used. For the SDI interface, only one of main and sub can be used.	
	Patterns for 2 channels	Only one of main and sub can be used (For each M/E, the number of DMEs that can be used is the same as in standard mode.)	
	Patterns for 3 channels		
	Backgrounds	Wipe edge fill matte (including color mix and other settings in the Matte Adjust menu)	Wipe edge fill matte (single-color only)
	Modifiers	Same as standard mode	Wipe border colors are single-color only
Transitions	Key priority	Cannot be used	
	Transition preview	Cannot be used	
	Preset color mix	Color matte or video signal selected on the utility 2 bus	Color matte only
Snapshots	Cross-point hold	Utility 2 cannot be set	Utility 3 is added. BKGD A/B and Key1 cannot be set.
Control from an editor		Same as standard mode	Cannot be used
Operation setting for switcher GPI inputs and outputs		Same as standard mode	Cannot be used

a) Keys 2 to 8 are common to main and sub.

Notes

- Allow a transition to complete before carrying out main and sub delegation switching.
- The sub background A bus (utility 2 bus) is shared with wipe edge border fill. Making a change to one affects the other.
- Even if the wipe border width is set to the same numeric value for main and sub, the same image is not obtained.

Restrictions on Using Multi Program 2 Mode

- The following functions are not available for sub:

- Data copy and swap
- Default recall (except for parametric recall)
- Re-entry is limited to five levels. Re-entry is not possible for main and sub of the same M/E. However, this restriction can be removed. *For details, see “Enabling re-entry between the main and sub sides of the same M/E bank” (page 202).*
- In the following cases, a transition using the fader lever may not be performed correctly:
 - When the main and sub bus toggle modes are set differently
 - For a pattern mix, preset color mix, and so on
- For an Internal bus link, GPI link, or External bus link, the “Utility 2” bus cannot be selected.
- Screen aspect, show key, and [MCRO ATTCH ENBL] button settings are common to main and sub.
- If a snapshot is recalled simultaneously for main and sub, or a keyframe is executed simultaneously for main

and sub, then for the following common to main and sub the main settings are reflected.

- Key
- M/E Config
- DME external video bus and utility 1 bus
- When a macro attachment is set on the DME utility 1 bus or DME utility 2 bus, it is not possible to make separate main and sub settings.
- When snapshots with different M/E Config settings are recalled:
 - If M/E Config data is not to be included in the snapshot data, the current system settings are used for snapshot reproduction.
 - If M/E Config data is to be included in the snapshot data first M/E Config data is set, and then other snapshot data is recalled.
- The bus override function is only available on the following buses:
 - M/E-1 to M/E-4 Main BKGD A/B buses
 - M/E-1 to M/E-4 Sub BKGD A/B buses (UTIL-2, UTIL-3 buses)
 - P/P Main PGM/PST bus
 - P/P Sub PGM/PST buses (UTIL-2, UTIL-3 buses)
- When a master snapshot or master timeline is executed with a key being assigned to both main and sub, it is uncertain which data will be reflected.
- When recalling a master snapshot with different register numbers for main and sub, the recall timing may differ by one field or more between main and sub.
- The link state is maintained even when M/E Config is changed. Set the link setting again, as required.
- Since keys 2 to 4 are shared between main and sub, when the main and sub fader lever positions are different, if you move the fader lever, the video changes instantaneously to the value of the most recently moved fader lever.
- When the transition type for main or sub is set to preset color mix, it is not possible to carry out independent key transition operation (common to main and sub).
- When the signal format is 1080P, snapshots, wipe snapshots, and effects created using a wipe for sub, do not function correctly with a signal format other than 1080P. Similarly, those created with other than the 1080 signal format, do not function correctly with a signal format of 1080P.

3D Support

Overview

Installing the following software enables video creation in 3D mode.

- BZS-8560X (for MVS-8000X) or BZS-7560X (for MVS-7000X) as the switcher upgrade software
- BZDM-8560 (for MVE-8000A/MVE-9000) or BZS-7561X (for MKS-7470X/7471X) as the DME upgrade software

Notes

- On the MVS-8000X, the M/E-4 bank is not used for 3D mode.
- On the MVS-7000X, the M/E configuration in 3D mode will be the same as that in 2M/E mode (*see page 210*).
- The following signal formats support 3D.
1080i/50, 1080i/59.94, 720P/50, 720P/59.94
- For details of the board configurations required for 3D mode, consult your Sony representative.

Using the software

To use the switcher upgrade software and DME upgrade software, you need to enter an install key to enable the software. (It is not necessary to enter an install key if the software was factory-installed.)

Ask your Sony representative about entering the install key.

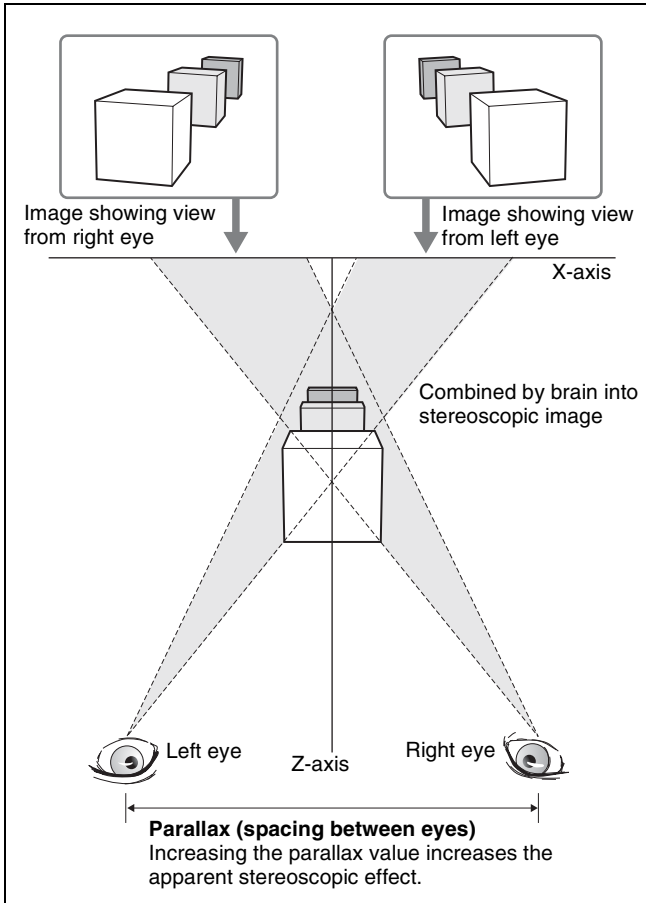
At this time, the unique device ID may be required. You can check the unique device ID in the Install menu of the switcher and DME.

For details of this operation, see “Installation and Device Setup (Install/Unit Config menu)” in Chapter 18 (Volume 2).

How the 3D display works

In 3D mode, two different images, for the left eye and the right eye, are displayed simultaneously, to be combined by the brain into a stereoscopic image.

Therefore, switcher and DME hardware is duplicated, with input signals for the left eye and right eye. (*See the following figure.*)



For some signals, such as titles, the same signal is used for both left and right.

Specify whether to use a combination of left and right signals in the same slot or different slots

- 1 Display the Engineering Setup >System > Install/Unit Config > Unit Config menu.
- 2 In <3D Connector Pair> group, select either of the following.
 - 1-2 Mode: Specify a pair of left and right signals in the same slot.
 - 1-21Mode: Specify a pair of left and right signals in different slots.
- 3 Press [Execute].

Combinations of left and right signals (Input terminals)

The following combinations of left and right signals are available depending on whether to use the signals in the same slot or different slots.

If [1-2 Mode] is selected on MVS-8000X

Right signals	Left signals
Slot 5	
PRIMARY INPUTS 1	PRIMARY INPUTS 2
PRIMARY INPUTS 3	PRIMARY INPUTS 4
:	:
PRIMARY INPUTS 19	PRIMARY INPUTS 20
Slot 6	
PRIMARY INPUTS 21	PRIMARY INPUTS 22
PRIMARY INPUTS 23	PRIMARY INPUTS 24
:	:
PRIMARY INPUTS 39	PRIMARY INPUTS 40
Slot 7	
PRIMARY INPUTS 41	PRIMARY INPUTS 42
PRIMARY INPUTS 43	PRIMARY INPUTS 44
:	:
PRIMARY INPUTS 59	PRIMARY INPUTS 60
Slot 8	
PRIMARY INPUTS 61	PRIMARY INPUTS 62
PRIMARY INPUTS 63	PRIMARY INPUTS 64
:	:
PRIMARY INPUTS 79	PRIMARY INPUTS 80
Slot 9	
PRIMARY INPUTS 81	PRIMARY INPUTS 82
PRIMARY INPUTS 83	PRIMARY INPUTS 84
:	:

Preparations

Switching the system to 3D mode

Notes

It is only possible to switch to 3D mode when the system signal format is set to one of the following.
1080i/50, 1080i/59.94, 720P/50, 720P/59.94

- 1 Display the Engineering Setup >System >Format menu.
- 2 Press [3D Mode], turning it on.
A popup window appears, with a message.
- 3 Check the message, and select [Yes].

Input primary numbers for left and right signals

For the signals used in 3D mode for the left eye view and right eye view (referred to simply as left and right signals), select a combination of primary input numbers from two types (signals in the same slot and signals in different slots).

Right signals	Left signals
PRIMARY INPUTS 99	PRIMARY INPUTS 100
Slot 10	
PRIMARY INPUTS 101	PRIMARY INPUTS 102
PRIMARY INPUTS 103	PRIMARY INPUTS 104
:	:
PRIMARY INPUTS 119	PRIMARY INPUTS 120
Slot 11	
PRIMARY INPUTS 121	PRIMARY INPUTS 122
PRIMARY INPUTS 123	PRIMARY INPUTS 124
:	:
PRIMARY INPUTS 139	PRIMARY INPUTS 140
Slot 12	
PRIMARY INPUTS 141	PRIMARY INPUTS 142
PRIMARY INPUTS 143	PRIMARY INPUTS 144
Slot 13	
PREMIUM INPUTS 1	PREMIUM INPUTS 2
PREMIUM INPUTS 3	PREMIUM INPUTS 4
:	:
PREMIUM INPUTS 19	PREMIUM INPUTS 20

If [1-21 Mode] is selected on MVS-8000X

Right signals	Left signals
Slot 5	
PRIMARY INPUTS 1	PRIMARY INPUTS 21
PRIMARY INPUTS 2	PRIMARY INPUTS 22
:	:
PRIMARY INPUTS 20	PRIMARY INPUTS 40
Slot 7	
PRIMARY INPUTS 41	PRIMARY INPUTS 61
PRIMARY INPUTS 42	PRIMARY INPUTS 62
:	:
PRIMARY INPUTS 60	PRIMARY INPUTS 80
Slot 9	
PRIMARY INPUTS 81	PRIMARY INPUTS 101
PRIMARY INPUTS 82	PRIMARY INPUTS 102
:	:
PRIMARY INPUTS 100	PRIMARY INPUTS 120
Slot 11	
PRIMARY INPUTS 121	PRIMARY INPUTS 122
PRIMARY INPUTS 123	PRIMARY INPUTS 124
:	:
PRIMARY INPUTS 139	PRIMARY INPUTS 140
Slot 12	
PRIMARY INPUTS 141	PRIMARY INPUTS 142
PRIMARY INPUTS 143	PRIMARY INPUTS 144

Right signals	Left signals
Slot 13	
PREMIUM INPUTS 1	PREMIUM INPUTS 2
PREMIUM INPUTS 3	PREMIUM INPUTS 4
:	:
PREMIUM INPUTS 19	PREMIUM INPUTS 20

If [1-2 Mode] is selected on MVS-7000X

Right signals	Left signals
Slot 5	
PRIMARY INPUTS 1	PRIMARY INPUTS 2
PRIMARY INPUTS 3	PRIMARY INPUTS 4
:	:
PRIMARY INPUTS 19	PRIMARY INPUTS 20
Slot 6	
PRIMARY INPUTS 21	PRIMARY INPUTS 22
PRIMARY INPUTS 23	PRIMARY INPUTS 24
:	:
PRIMARY INPUTS 39	PRIMARY INPUTS 40
Slot 7	
PRIMARY INPUTS 41	PRIMARY INPUTS 42
PRIMARY INPUTS 43	PRIMARY INPUTS 44
:	:
PRIMARY INPUTS 59	PRIMARY INPUTS 60
Slot 8	
PRIMARY INPUTS 61	PRIMARY INPUTS 62
PRIMARY INPUTS 63	PRIMARY INPUTS 64
:	:
PRIMARY INPUTS 79	PRIMARY INPUTS 80

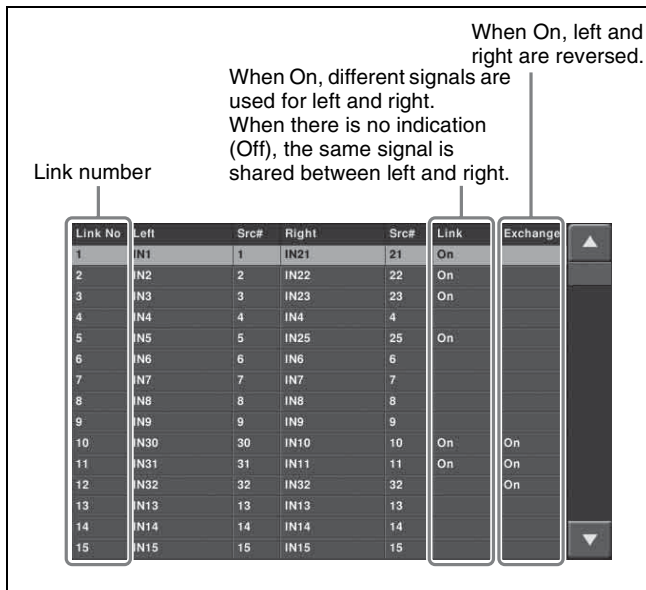
If [1-21 Mode] is selected on MVS-7000X

Right signals	Left signals
Slot 5	
PRIMARY INPUTS 1	PRIMARY INPUTS 21
PRIMARY INPUTS 2	PRIMARY INPUTS 22
:	:
PRIMARY INPUTS 20	PRIMARY INPUTS 40
Slot 7	
PRIMARY INPUTS 41	PRIMARY INPUTS 61
PRIMARY INPUTS 42	PRIMARY INPUTS 62
:	:
PRIMARY INPUTS 60	PRIMARY INPUTS 80

Setting input signals for 3D mode

For each primary input, to select whether separate left and right signals are used, or the same signal is shared between left and right, use the following procedure.

- 1 Display the Engineering Setup >Switcher > Config >3D Config menu.
- 2 Press [Input Link].
The Input Link menu appears.



- 3 Using any of the following methods, select the link number to operate on.
 - Press directly on the list.
 - Press the arrow keys to scroll the reverse video cursor.
 - Turn the knobs.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Link No	Link number	1 to upwards
3	Num	Select the number of consecutive numbers from the selected link number	1 to upwards

- 4 Press [3D Input Link], and set the link to either of the following.
 - To use separate left and right signals, set to On.
 - To use the same signal shared between left and right, set to Off (no indication).

Notes

When this is set to “Off,” one signal of the predetermined pair cannot be used. For example, for IN1 and IN21, IN21 cannot be used, and is grayed out in the list.

- 5 Repeat steps 3 and 4, to set all of the primary inputs in 3D mode.

Using pairs of primary input numbers reversed right-to-left

Press [L/R Input Exchange], setting it to On, to swap the left and right signals, and reverse the indications in the list. For example, when the left signal is IN1, and the right signal is IN21, this assigns IN21 to the left signal and IN1 to the right signal.

Notes

When [3D Input Link] is off and [L/R Input Exchange] is set to On, then the other input of the pair can be used. For example, when using IN1 shared between left and right, you can also use IN21 shared between left and right, and IN21 also appears in the list.

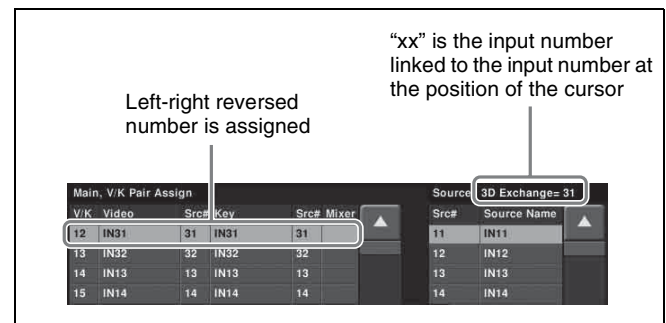
To assign inputs with the primary input numbers reversed left-to-right to cross-points

- 1 In the Input Link menu, set [L/R Input Exchange] to On, then display the Engineering Setup >Panel >Xpt Assign >Main, V/K Pair Assign menu.

In the Source field, “3D Exchange=xx” appears (“xx” is the input number linked to the input number at the position of the cursor).
In the example of the following figure, for IN11 “3D Exchange=31” appears.

- 2 Press [Set].

This sets IN31 in place of IN11.



Combinations of left and right signals (output connectors)

The left and right signals are combined for the slots as follows.

If [1-2 Mode] is selected on MVS-8000X

Right signals	Left signals
Slot 13	
OUTPUTS 1	OUTPUTS 2
OUTPUTS 3	OUTPUTS 4
:	:
OUTPUTS 19	OUTPUTS 20

Right signals	Left signals
Slot 14	
OUTPUTS 25	OUTPUTS 26
OUTPUTS 27	OUTPUTS 28
:	:
OUTPUTS 43	OUTPUTS 44
Slot 15	
MSD1	MSD2
OUTPUTS 21	OUTPUTS 22
OUTPUTS 23	OUTPUTS 24
OUTPUTS 45	OUTPUTS 46
OUTPUTS 47	OUTPUTS 48

If [1-21 Mode] is selected on MVS-8000X

Right signals	Left signals
Slot 13	
OUTPUTS 1	OUTPUTS 25
OUTPUTS 2	OUTPUTS 26
:	:
OUTPUTS 20	OUTPUTS 44
Slot 15	
MSD1	MSD2
OUTPUTS 21	OUTPUTS 22
OUTPUTS 23	OUTPUTS 24
OUTPUTS 45	OUTPUTS 46
OUTPUTS 47	OUTPUTS 48

If [1-2 Mode] is selected on MVS-7000X

Right signals	Left signals
Slot 9	
OUTPUTS 1	OUTPUTS 2
OUTPUTS 3	OUTPUTS 4
:	:
OUTPUTS 19	OUTPUTS 20
Slot 10	
OUTPUTS 25	OUTPUTS 26
OUTPUTS 27	OUTPUTS 28
:	:
OUTPUTS 43	OUTPUTS 44
Slot 11	
MSD1	MSD2
OUTPUTS 21	OUTPUTS 22
OUTPUTS 23	OUTPUTS 24
OUTPUTS 45	OUTPUTS 46
OUTPUTS 47	OUTPUTS 48

If [1-21 Mode] is selected on MVS-7000X

Right signals	Left signals
Slot 9	
OUTPUTS 1	OUTPUTS 25
OUTPUTS 2	OUTPUTS 26
:	:
OUTPUTS 20	OUTPUTS 44
Slot 11	
MSD1	MSD2
OUTPUTS 21	OUTPUTS 22
OUTPUTS 23	OUTPUTS 24
OUTPUTS 45	OUTPUTS 46
OUTPUTS 47	OUTPUTS 48

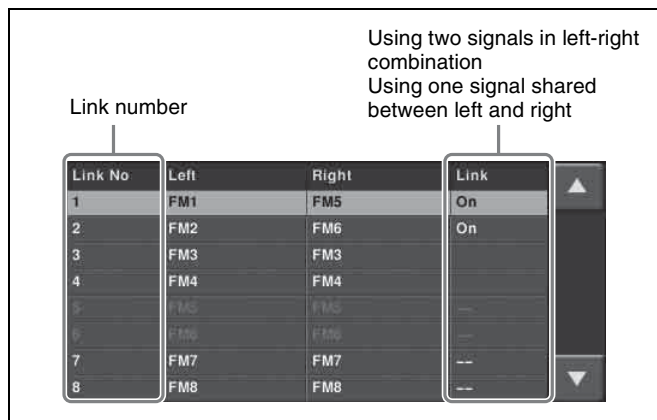
Setting frame memory outputs for 3D mode

Select whether to use frame memory outputs 1 to 8 in combinations of left and right signals for 3D mode. The left and right combinations are fixed, as 1 and 5, 2 and 6, 3 and 7, and 4 and 8.

1 Display the Engineering Setup >Switcher >Config >3D Config menu.

2 Press [FM Output Link].

The FM Output Link menu appears.



3 Using any of the following methods, select the link number.

- Press directly on the list.
- Press the arrow keys to scroll the reverse video cursor.
- Turn the knobs.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Link No	Link number	1 to 8

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
3	Num	Select the number of consecutive numbers from the selected link number	1 to 8

- 4** Press [FM Link], and set the link to either of the following.
- To use the frame memory outputs in left and right combinations, set to On.
 - To use the same frame memory output for left and right, set to Off (no indication).

Notes

When [FM Link] is On, frame memory output does not include ancillary data for the right image.

- 5** Repeat steps **3** and **4**, to set all of the frame memory outputs for 3D mode.

Functions for which left and right frame memory outputs are coupled when [FM Link] is On

Pair mode On/Off, clip playback, clip transition ¹⁾, clip transition snapshot

Carry out operations other than the above separately for left and right.

- 1) When [FM Link] is On, a clip for the right frame memory to be used in the clip transition cannot be selected in the following menus.
- M/E-1 > Misc > Transition > Clip Transition > Clip menu
 - M/E-2 > Misc > Transition > Clip Transition > Clip menu
 - P/P > Misc > Transition > Clip Transition > Clip menu
 - The selection must be made in the Frame Memory > Clip > Recall menu

Switching the type of DME output signal (video/key) assigned to a monitor signal

The function for switching the signal type of the monitor output (one channel) to video or key is assigned to one of the Prefs buttons of the Menu control block or one of the buttons of the Utility/Shotbox control block (DME MON KEY command).

For details of the assignment, see “Settings Button Assignment (Prefs/Utility Menu)” in Chapter 19 (Volume 2).

To switch the signal type of DME output (video/key) assigned to a monitor signal

Press the DME MON KEY command assigned button and turn it on to assign DME key output to a monitor signal. Then press the button and turn it off to assign DME video output to a monitor signal. For selection of the DME channels to be assigned to a monitor signal.

For details, see “Assigning a DME output signal as a monitor signal” (page 98).

Selecting the signal output from a DME monitor output connector

- Display the Engineering Setup > DME > Output > Monitor Output menu.
- Press [DME1] or [DME2] to select the DME to operate on.
- On the left, select MONI OUT#1 or MONI OUT#2.
- On the right, select the signal.
You can select any of Ch1 Video, Ch1 Key, Ch2 Video, and Ch2 Key.
- Press [Set].
This assigns the signal.

Restrictions in 3D Mode

In 3D mode, the following restrictions apply, because the switcher and DME hardware is operating in tandem (link A and link B).

Restrictions	Details
Functions that cannot be used in the switcher	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> 73 or more signal inputs (MVS-8000X) or 41 or more signal inputs (MVS-7000X) 11 or more premium input signals (MVS-8000X only) 25 or more signal outputs Monitor buses 2/4/6/8 M/E-2 bank ^{a)} M/E-3 bank Key 5 to Key 8 ^{b)} DME utility buses 1, 2 Color corrector 2 Format converter Functions of the “Logical M/E Assign” in the Engineering Setup > Switcher > Config menu.
Functions that cannot be used on the DME	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> DME channels 3, 4, 7, 8 DME monitor output numbers 3 and 4 Editor ports 3 and 4 when the editor port operation mode is set to “Independent”
Other restrictions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Auto chroma keying is carried out on the left image. Tallies are generated based on the left signal in the PGM/PST bank.

a) In MVS-8000X

b) In MVS-7000X

Video Creation in 3D Mode

Adjusting the parallax using the DME

By adjusting the parallax (*see page 204*), you can control the degree of depth perception.

- 1 Display the Global Effect >Ch1 to Ch4 >3D Mode menu.
- 2 To adjust the parallax, press [Parallax].
- 3 Turn the knobs to adjust the following parameters.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	1ch Parallax	Adjust the parallax for channel 1	0.00 to 8.00
2	2ch Parallax	Adjust the parallax for channel 2	0.00 to 8.00

Notes

If the position of an image in three-dimensional space is in the plane of the monitor screen, adjusting the parallax does not change the 3D effect. In this case, adjust the parameters in the local coordinate space so that the image is either in front of or behind the plane of the screen before adjusting the parallax.

- 4 To adjust the perspective without changing a size or shape, press [Disparity].
- 5 Turn the knobs to adjust the following parameters.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	1ch Disparity	Adjust the degree of depth perception for channel 1	-8.00 to 8.00
2	2ch Disparity	Adjust the degree of depth perception for channel 2	-8.00 to 8.00

M/E Configuration Switching

On the MVS-7000X, a single mix/effect board MKS-7210X can be shared among a number of M/E banks. Using this function, you can select the M/E configuration of the whole switcher from the following.

Board	Number of assigned M/Es	Number of keys available on a single M/E	
Board 1	1	8	
	2	4	
	3	M/E-1, M/E-2	Select from 0 to 4
		PGM/PST	4
4	Select from 0 to 4		
Board 2	1	8	
	2	4	
Board 3	1	8	
	2	4	

In this manual, using a single MKS-7210X board is referred to as 1M/E mode, 2M/E mode, 3M/E mode, or 4M/E mode depending on the maximum number of M/Es on which the board is used.

Notes

- A maximum of five M/Es can be used on a single switcher.
- When the signal format is 1080P, each MKS-7210X board can only be used on a single 1M/E and the number of available keys is 4.
- In 2M/E mode, DME selection on a single M/E is as follows.
 - Two places when the dedicated interface is used.
 - One place when the SDI interface is used.

Setting the number of M/Es for each board

Use the following procedure.

- 1 Display the Engineering Setup >System > Install/Unit Config >M/E Split menu.
- 2 In <M/E Split (1st Board)> group, select any of [1ME], [2ME], [3ME], and [4ME].
- 3 In each of the <M/E Split (2nd Board)> to <M/E Split (3rd Board)> groups, select [1ME] or [2ME].
- 4 Press [Execute].

Assigning Keys for 3M/E Mode or 4M/E Mode

You can assign keys for 3M/E mode or 4M/E mode selected in the M/E Split menu.

- 1 Display the Engineering Setup >Switcher > Config >Key Config menu.



- 2 Assign keys to M/E-1 and M/E-2.

Select any of the following in the <Key Assign (M/E-1, M/E-2)> group.

- 0Key (ME1) 4Key(ME2):** Assign no key to M/E-1 and four keys to M/E-2.
- 1Key(ME1) 3Key(ME2):** Assign one key to M/E-1 and three keys to M/E-2.
- 2Key(ME1) 2Key(ME2):** Assign two keys each to M/E-1 and M/E-2.
- 3Key(ME1) 1Key(ME2):** Assign three keys to M/E-1 and one key to M/E-2.
- 4Key(ME1) 0Key(ME2):** Assign four keys to M/E-1 and no key to M/E-2.

- 3 Assign keys to M/E-3 and P/P.

Select the key assignment method in the <Key Assign (M/E-3, P/P)> group in the same way as step 2 above.

Restrictions in 3M/E Mode and 4M/E Mode

In 3M/E mode and 4M/E mode, the following restrictions apply.

Classification	3M/E mode		4M/E mode	
Operation mode	All M/Es and P/P	DSK mode and multi-program 2 mode cannot be set.	All M/Es and P/P	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • DSK mode and multi-program 2 mode cannot be set. • [Utility 2] cannot be selected for the background in multi-program mode.
	M/E-1, M/E-2	[Utility 2] cannot be selected for the background in multi-program mode.		
M/E assignment	All M/Es and P/P	Logical M/E Assign cannot be used.	All M/Es and P/P	Logical M/E Assign cannot be used.
Wipes	All M/Es and P/P	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Pattern mix cannot be used. • Pattern number 162 wipes cannot be used. 	All M/Es and P/P	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Pattern mix cannot be used. • Pattern number 162 wipes cannot be used.
	M/E-2	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Random/diamond dust wipes can be used. • Dust mix cannot be used. 		
Wipe border	M/E-2	Wipe border colors are single-color only.	M/E-2, M/E-3	Wipe border colors are single-color only.
M/E outputs	M/E-1, M/E-2	Out5 and Out6 cannot be used.	All M/Es and P/P	Out5 and Out6 cannot be used.
Signal selection	M/E-1, M/E-2	PROC V and PROC K signals cannot be selected with any cross-point button.	All M/Es and P/P	PROC V and PROC K signals cannot be selected with any cross-point button.

Classification	3M/E mode		4M/E mode	
Utility bus	M/E-1	Since only one utility bus is available, utility 1 bus is used instead of utility 2 bus in the following functions. ^{a)} <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Wipe border • Preset color mix • Backgrounds of DME wipes 	M/E-1, P/P	Since only one utility bus is available, utility 1 bus is used instead of utility 2 bus in the following functions. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Wipe border • Preset color mix • Backgrounds of DME wipes
	M/E-2	Since only one utility bus is available, you cannot select the following functions. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Key border • Sub mask • Preset color mix • Wipe border 	M/E-2, M/E-3	Since only one utility bus is available, you cannot select the following functions. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Key border • Sub mask • Preset color mix • Wipe border
	M/E-2	If you select a DME wipe which uses a utility bus for a background image, a color matte signal is used instead of a utility bus signal.	M/E-2, M/E-3	If you select a DME wipe which uses a utility bus for a background image, a color matte signal is used instead of a utility bus signal.
Side flags	M/E-2	Side flags cannot be used.	M/E-2, M/E-3	Side flags cannot be used.
DME	All M/Es and P/P	For PGM/PST, the same restrictions as those for 2M/E apply. For M/E1 and M/E-2, the same restrictions as those for 4M/E mode apply.	All M/Es and P/P	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • For the dedicated interface, DME can be used in only one place for each M/E. • For the SDI interface, DME wipes and processed keys cannot be used. • Only one-channel mode patterns can be selected for DME wipes.

a) No restriction is applied to P/P. Thus, both utility buses 1 and 2 can be used for P/P.

DME

DME (Digital Multi Effects) allows you to add three-dimensional effects such as image movement, rotation, magnification and shrinking, as well as a wide variety of special effects. DME is the general name for all of these effects.

You can use up to eight channels as dedicated DME channels.

Each channel can be used on its own or in combination with other channels, which allows you to create advanced effects with more complexity.

Functions that can be used differ with the models of DME.

For details, see “Functional Differences With Models of DME” (page 348).

Three-Dimensional Transformations

Transformation is the process of placing a video image in a three-dimensional DME coordinate space and subjecting it to manipulations such as movement, rotation, magnification or shrinking.

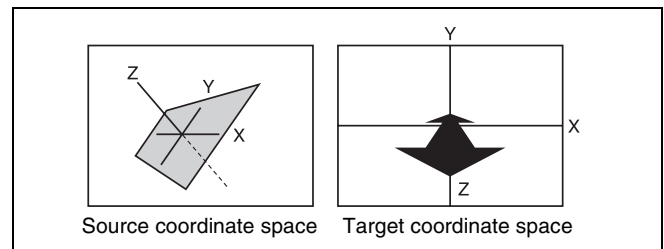
Three-dimensional coordinate space

Source coordinate space and target coordinate space

Images are placed in one of two types of coordinate space: source coordinate space and target coordinate space.

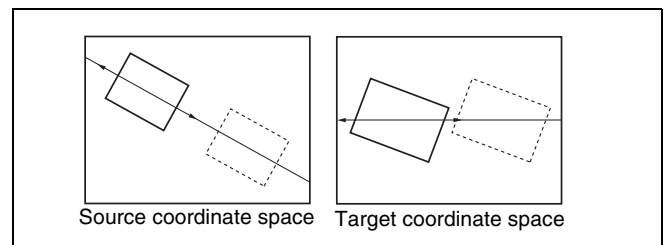
- The source coordinate space is a three-dimensional coordinate space with reference to the image itself. The x- and y-axes are defined parallel to the plane of the image, and the z-axis is defined perpendicular to the plane of the image. When you move the image, the coordinate axes also move.
- The target coordinate space is a three-dimensional coordinate space with reference to the output monitor screen. The x- and y-axes are defined parallel to the

plane of the monitor screen, and the z-axis is defined perpendicular to the plane of the monitor screen. The coordinates do not move even if the image moves.



Source coordinate space and target coordinate space

For example, as shown in the following figure, the image moves in a different direction when you move it along the x-axis of the source coordinate space and along the x-axis of the target coordinate space.

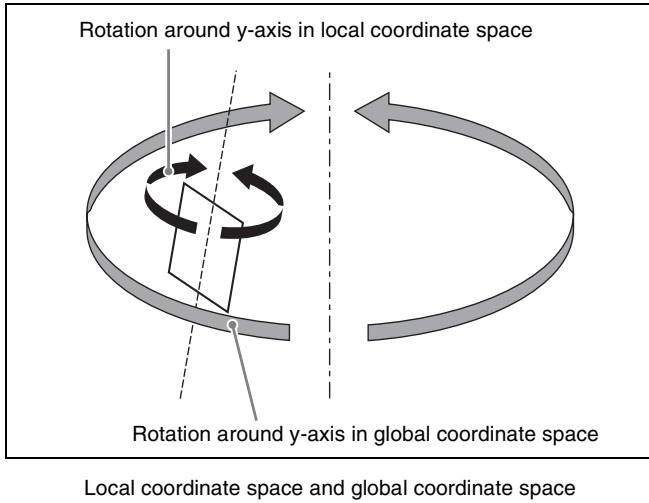


Movement along the x-axes of the source coordinate space and target coordinate space

Local coordinate space and global coordinate space

The coordinates of an individual DME channel are called its local coordinate space. The coordinates common to all channels are called the global coordinate space.

By switching from local to global coordinate space, you can add new movement to the movement of images in individual channels, and also apply transformation effects to multiple channels that have been combined by Global effects (see page 293).



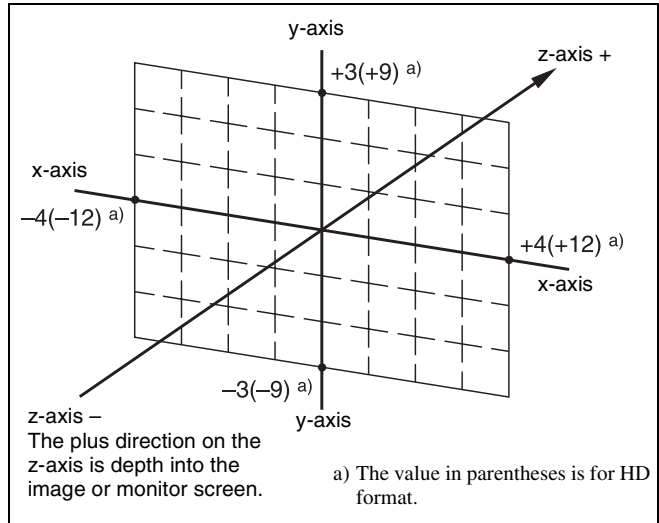
Three-dimensional parameters

Three-dimensional parameters are x, y, and z values which define the position of an image, its axis of rotation, the position of an imaginary point of view on the image, and so on.

The standard values of parameters are as follows, depending on the aspect ratio of your monitor (4:3 or 16:9).

Values for 4:3 mode

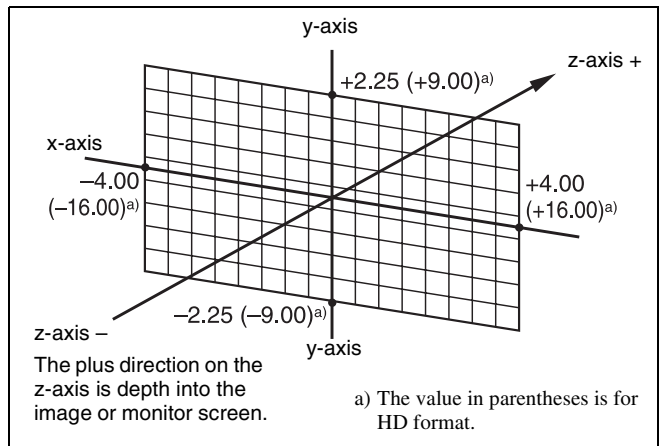
- **Origin at center of image (source coordinate space) or center of monitor (target coordinate space)**
 $x = 0.00, y = 0.00, z = 0.00$
- **Upper right corner of image or monitor**
 When using SD format signals: $x = 4.00, y = 3.00, z = 0.00$
 When using HD format signals: $x = 12.00, y = 9.00, z = 0.00$
- **Lower left corner of image or monitor**
 When using SD format signals: $x = -4.00, y = -3.00, z = 0.00$
 When using HD format signals: $x = -12.00, y = -9.00, z = 0.00$



Values for x-, y-, and z-axes (4:3 mode)

Values for 16:9 mode

- **Origin at center of image (source coordinate space) or center of monitor (target coordinate space)**
 $x = 0.00, y = 0.00, z = 0.00$
- **Upper right corner of image or monitor**
 When using SD format signals: $x = 4.00, y = 2.25, z = 0.00$
 When using HD format signals: $x = 16.00, y = 9.00, z = 0.00$
- **Lower left corner of image or monitor**
 When using SD format signals: $x = -4.00, y = -2.25, z = 0.00$
 When using HD format signals: $x = -16.00, y = -9.00, z = 0.00$



Values for x-, y- and z-axes (16:9 mode)

Limits of three-dimensional parameters

The following table shows the limits of three-dimensional transformation parameters.

The three-dimensional parameters of an image change when you use the trackball or Z-ring to execute a transformation. You can also execute a transformation by entering parameter values from the numeric keypad control block.

Operation mode	Limits of three-dimensional transformation parameters	
Location XYZ	HD format:	-999.9999 to +999.9999
	SD format:	4:3 -333.3333 to +333.3333
		16:9 -250.0000 to +250.0000
Rotation, Spin	-999.9999 to +999.9999	
Axis Location	HD format:	-999.9999 to +999.9999
	SD format:	4:3 -333.3333 to +333.3333
		16:9 -250.0000 to +250.0000
Location Size	0.0000 to +999.9999	
Aspect	0.0000 to +2.0000	
Perspective (x, y)	HD format:	-999.9999 to +999.9999
	SD format:	4:3 -333.3333 to +333.3333
		16:9 -250.0000 to +250.0000
Perspective (z)	0.0000 to 999.9999	
Skew	-9.9999 to +9.9999	

Detents

The system defines points called detents at regular intervals on the three-dimensional space. Pressing the [CTR] button (*see page 228*) in the device control block sets the current three-dimensional parameter values to the closest detent points.

The following table shows the interval between successive detents for each transformation operation mode (*see page 215*).

Operation mode	Detent interval
Location XYZ	1.0000
Rotation, Spin	0.2500
Axis Location	1.0000
Location Size	0.2500
Aspect	1.0000 ^{a)}
Perspective (x, y)	1.0000
Perspective (z)	1.0000 ^{a)}
Skew	0.1000

a) When a value is smaller than 1, 1/Aspect or 1/Perspective (z) is adjusted to an integral value.

Three-dimensional parameter default values

Each of the transformation operation modes has default values for three-dimensional parameters. If required, you can return the current value to the defaults by pressing the [CTR] (*see page 228*) button in the device control block twice in rapid succession.

The following table shows the default parameter values for each transformation operation mode.

Operation mode	Default value
Location XYZ	0.0000
Rotation, Spin	0.0000
Axis Location	0.0000
Location Size	1.0000
Aspect	1.0000
Perspective (x, y)	0.0000
Perspective (z)	1.0000
Skew	0.0000

Resetting of parameter values set in the source coordinate space

In some transformation operation modes, if you switch to the target coordinate space after setting up a three-dimensional transformation in the source coordinate space, the setting values in the source coordinate space (three-dimensional parameter values) are converted to values in the target coordinate space (source/target conversion). Once a conversion has taken place, the original source coordinate space parameters do not return to their original values when you switch back to the source coordinate space. They are reset to zeros.

Source/target conversion occurs in the following operation modes:

- Location XYZ
- Rotation

Transformation Operation Modes

The following operation modes are available for three-dimensional DME transformations. These operations are carried out in the device control block (trackball or joystick). (*For details, see “Three-Dimensional Transformation Operations” (page 227).*)

Location XYZ

Moves the image on the x-axis, y-axis, or z-axis. The direction of movement differs depending on whether you are manipulating the image in the source coordinate space or the target coordinate space.

Image movement in the source coordinate space

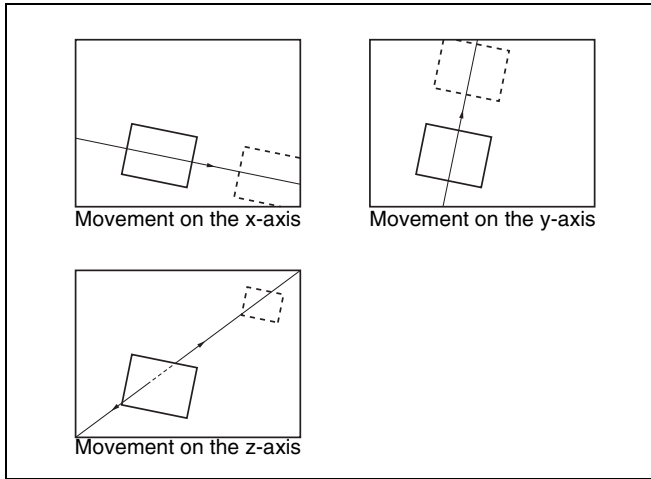
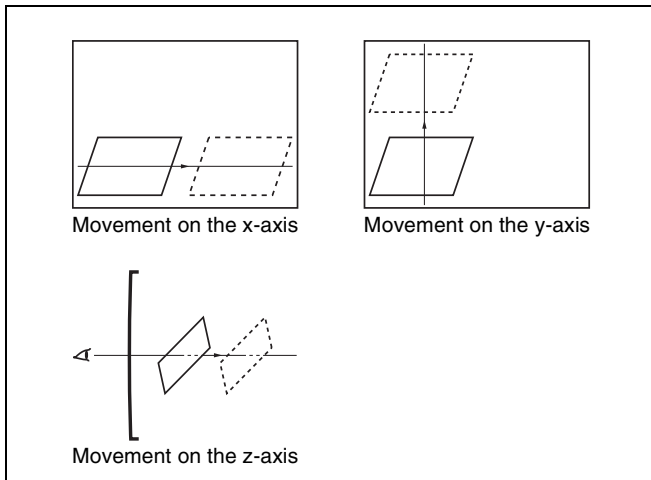


Image movement in the target coordinate space



Rotation

Rotates the image on the x-axis, y-axis, or z-axis. The type of rotation differs depending on whether you are manipulating the image in the source coordinate space or the target coordinate space.

Image rotation in the source coordinate space

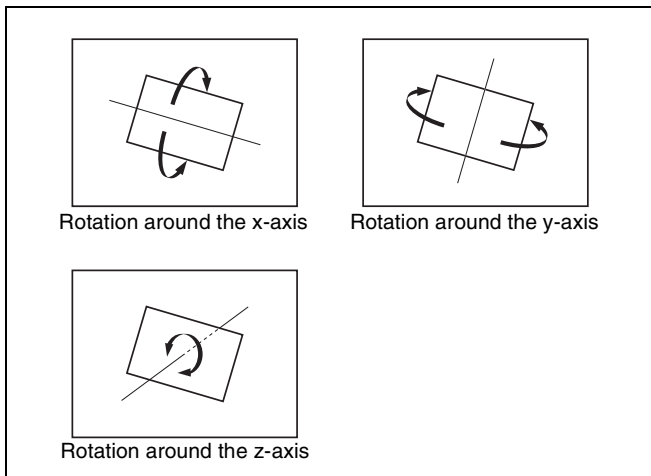
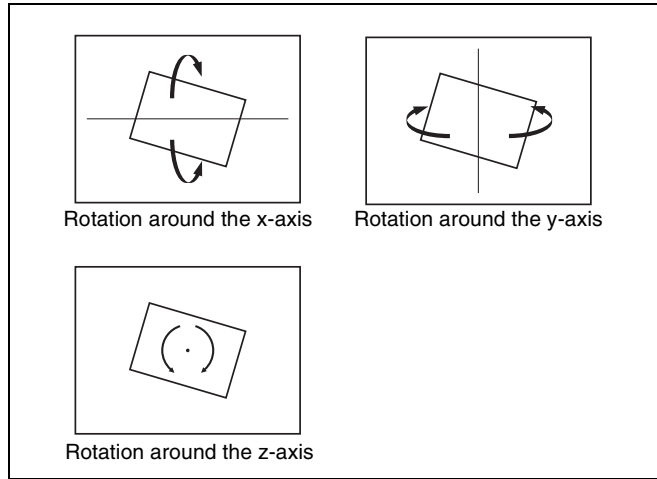


Image rotation in the target coordinate space



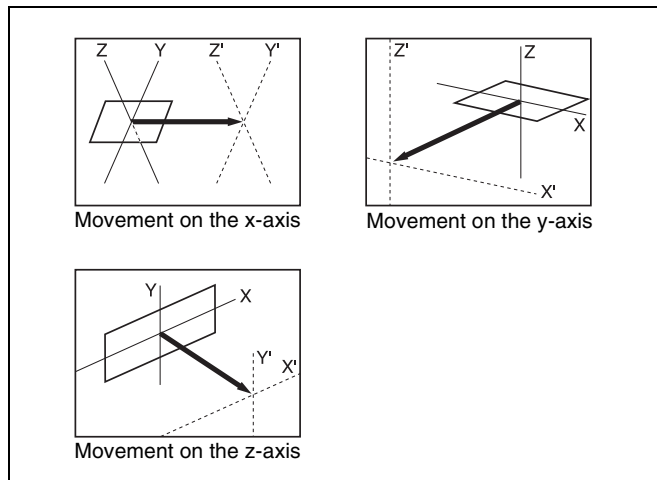
Spin

When rotating the image in Rotation mode, it may not always be possible to achieve the kind of rotation around an axis that you want. Combining Rotation mode with Spin mode creates an effect that rotates the image around a specified axis. The type of rotation differs depending on whether you are manipulating the image in the source coordinate space or the target coordinate space. (The way the image rotates around an axis is the same as in Rotation mode.)

Axis Location

Moves an axis of rotation in the source coordinate space.

Axis movement



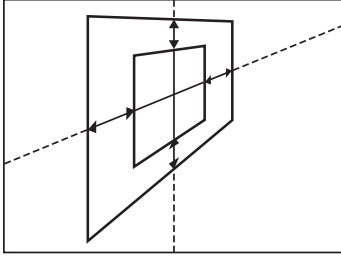
Location Size

Changes the size of the whole image.

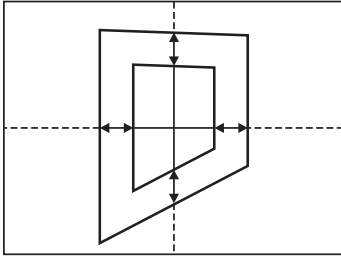
- Because shrinking and magnification of the image in the source coordinate space is done in three-dimensional space, magnifying the image emphasizes the sense of perspective.

- Because shrinking and magnification of the image in the target coordinate space is a conversion of the two-dimensional image displayed on the monitor, shrinking and magnification does not change the shape of the image.

Magnification and shrinking in the source coordinate space

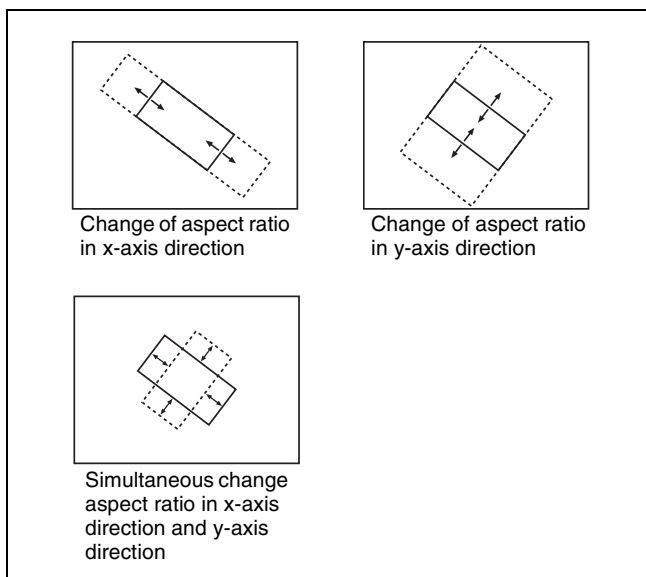


Magnification and shrinking in the target coordinate space



Aspect

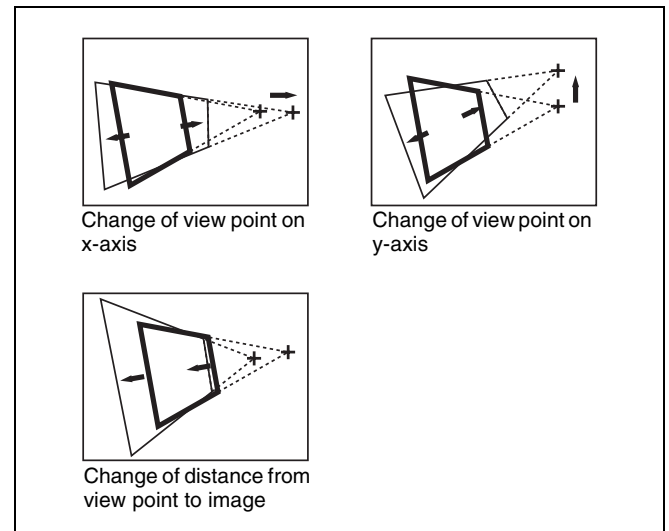
In the source coordinate space, changes the aspect ratio in the x-axis direction and y-axis direction, either independently or simultaneously.



Perspective

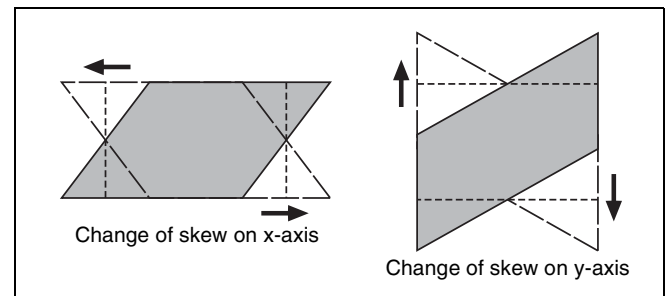
In the target coordinate space, changes the perspective on the image by changing an imaginary view point, without changing the position of the image.

The x-axis and y-axis values define the position of the view point. The z-axis value defines its distance from the image.



Skew

In the source coordinate space, change the skew of the image on the x-axis or y-axis.



Graphics Display

Graphics display is a function that allows you to display wire frames, coordinate axes and a grid over the current DME image, to make it easier to create effects in three-dimensional coordinate space.

Graphics displayed by this function can also be output to the monitor output connector.

To make graphics display settings, use the DME menu. (For details, see “Graphics Display Operation” (page 231).)

You can display the following kinds of graphics.

Wire frames

A wire frame displays an image enclosed in a frame, so that you can check the position and size of the image. If there is a shadow (see page 299), a frame is shown for the shadow as well.

Coordinate axes

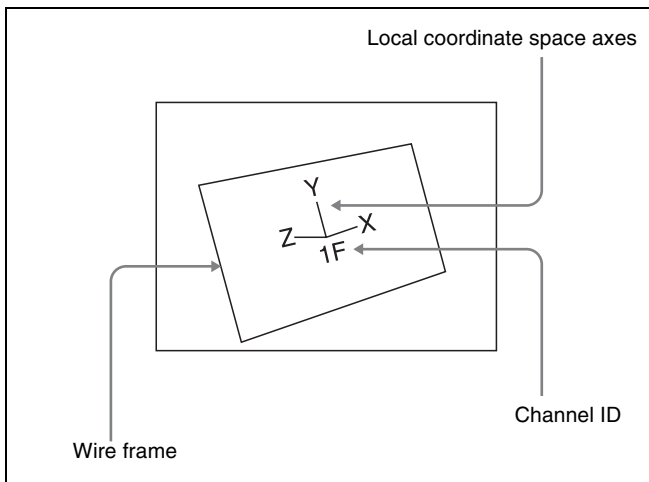
This is a three-dimensional display of coordinates in local or global coordinate space. You can check the origin of the axes and the directions of the x-, y-, and z-axes.

Channel ID

This displays the channel number so that you can check which channel you are using, a useful feature when you are working with multiple channels.

Channel IDs are displayed differently in local and global coordinate space.

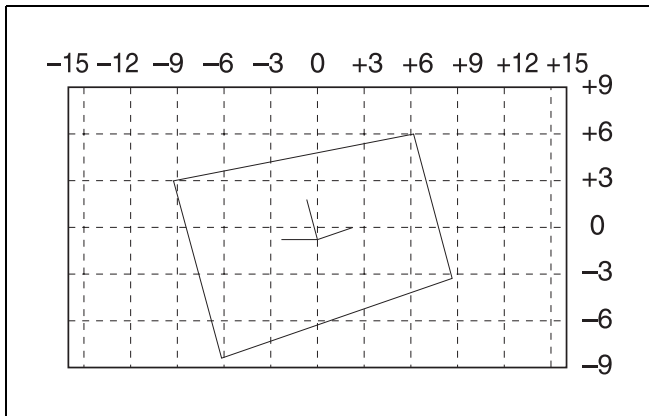
- In local coordinate space, the channel number is displayed along with “F” or “B” to indicate whether you are looking at the front (F) or back (B) of the current wire frame. For example, “1F” means the front of the wire frame on channel 1 in local coordinate space.
- In global coordinate space, the channel number is displayed along with “G” to indicate global. For example, “G2” means channel 2 in global coordinate space.



Wire frame, local coordinate space axes, and channel ID

Grid

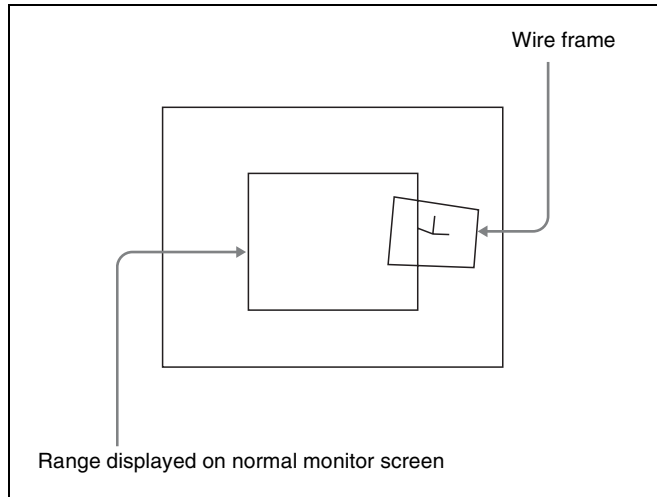
This is a grid pattern representing the whole of the monitor screen. The grid makes it easy to set the position of an image in two-dimensional coordinates.



Grid (16:9 mode)

Shrinking the graphics display

You can shrink the graphics display so that you can see beyond the range displayed on the normal monitor screen. This makes it possible to visually set the location of images in a larger space. The range displayed on a normal monitor screen is indicated by a frame.



To automatically erase the graphic display

Turn Auto Erase on. The graphic display is erased automatically whenever a keyframe is executed. It is displayed again after the keyframe ends, after the time set in Recovery Time.

Flex Shadow center axis

When using the Flex Shadow function (*see page 240*), turn Flex Shadow Axis on to display the Flex Shadow center axis. This is an effective aid in making settings for this function.

Notes

The Flex Shadow center axis function is not supported on the MVE-8000A.

Three-Dimensional Parameter Display

You can display a three-dimensional parameter list for the currently controlled image. When more than one DME channel is selected, the status of the reference channel is displayed.


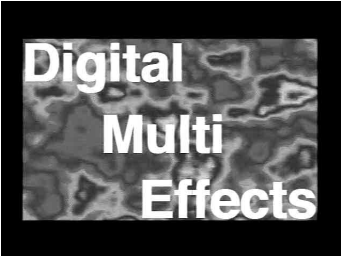

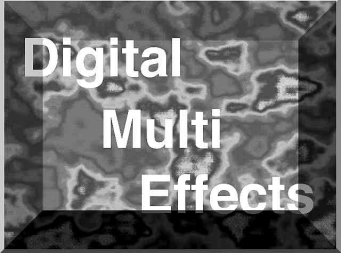
For the method of displaying a parameter list and an example display, see “Viewing the three-dimensional parameter details” (page 230).




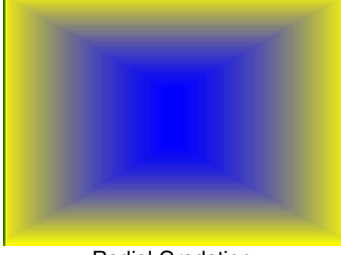
Special Effects




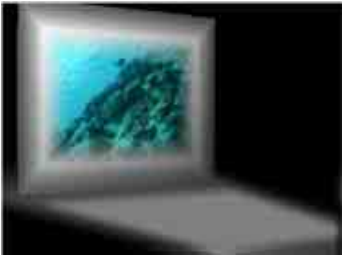
You can use DME to add a variety of special effects. The special effects shown below can be applied.

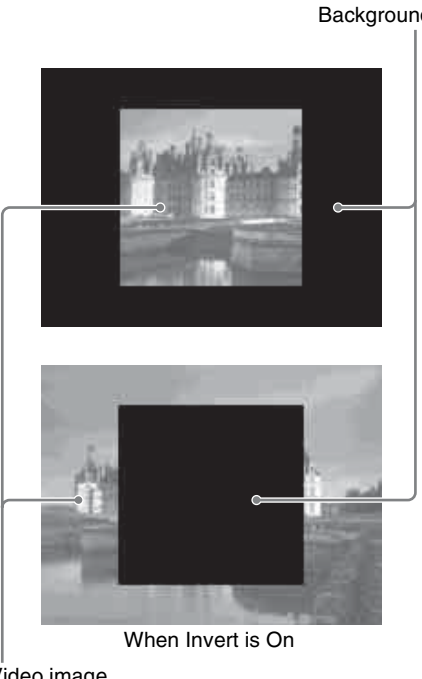
Functions that can be used differ with the models of DME. For details, see “Functional Differences With Models of DME” (page 348).

Edge effects


Name	Effect/Image
Border (See page 233.)	<p>Adds a border to the image frame. You can adjust the width (or thickness) of the border, its color, and the softness of the border edges.</p> 
Crop (See page 234.)	<p>Crops away the edges of the image. You can crop the top, bottom, left, and right sides individually or all together. You can also soften the cropped edges.</p> 
Beveled Edge (See page 235.)	<p>Gives an image a beveled edge. You can set the edge width and color. The inner edge softness and edge boundary softness can also be set.</p> <div style="display: flex; flex-direction: column; align-items: center;">  <p>Color</p>  <p>Lights</p> </div>


Name	Effect/Image
Key Border (See page 236.)	<p>Adds borders to keys or gives a key consisting of an outline only.</p> 
Art Edge (See page 236.)	<p>Adds edges to the inner and outer side of the input image.</p> <p>The following items can be set.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Art edge width and position • Separate softening of the art edge inner and outer sides • Color of art edges <p>Examples of Art Edge source</p> <div style="display: flex; flex-direction: column; align-items: center;">  <p>Gradation Matte</p>  <p>Rainbow Matte</p>  <p>Radial Gradation</p> </div>

Name	Effect/Image
Art Edge (See page 236.)	 <p>Radial Rainbow</p> <p>Examples of Art Edge source [Rainbow Matte]</p> 
Flex Shadow (See page 240.)	<p>Allows a shadow to be added to the image using only one DME channel. The following settings can be made for the shadow.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The signal to use for the shadow <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - External: Generate shadow using input key signal. - Internal: Generate shadow using an internally generated, full-size DME key signal. • Shadow shrinking and magnification • Shadow position • Shadow color and density • Center axis of deformation • Shadow slant and perspective  <p>Flex Shadow Source = External</p>  <p>Flex Shadow Source = Internal</p>

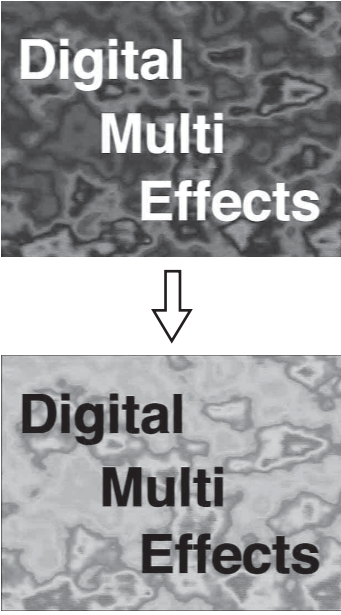
Name	Effect/Image
Wipe Crop (See page 244.)	<p>Crops the video image to be visible inside or outside a wipe pattern.</p>  <p>Background</p> <p>When Invert is On</p> <p>Video image</p>

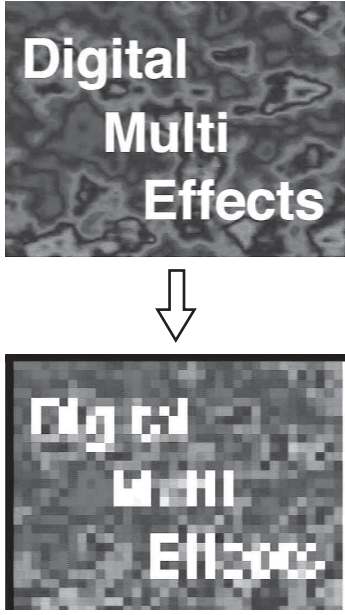
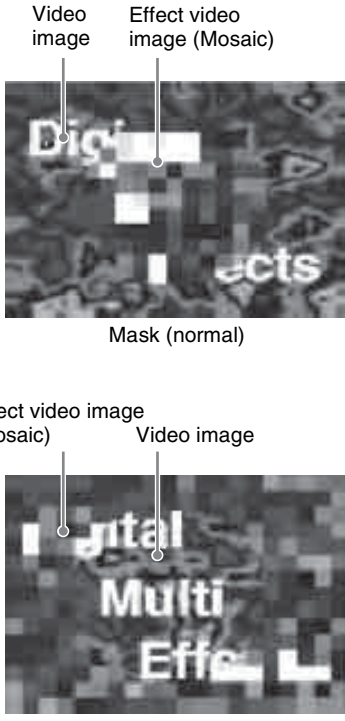
Effects for entire image





Name	Effect/Image
Defocus (See page 247.)	<p>Defocuses the whole image. The degree of defocusing can be set simultaneously or separately for video and key signals. (However, when the DME dedicated interface is used, the degree of defocusing can be set for video signals only.) You can also cancel the black level leaking that occurs at the edge of the screen when the Defocus effect is used.</p> 
Blur (See page 248.)	<p>Applies a rounded blurring to the whole image.</p>

Name	Effect/Image
Multi Move (See page 249.)	Shrinks the image and lines up a number of copies vertically and horizontally. You can specify the center point of the shrinking, the shrinking ratio, and the aspect ratio of the image screen. 



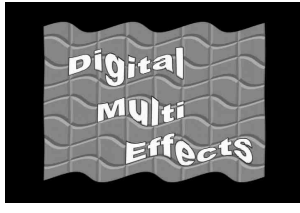
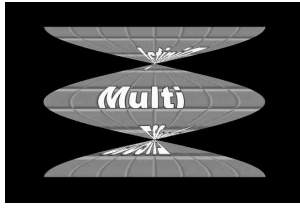
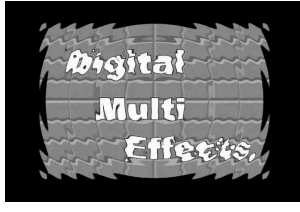
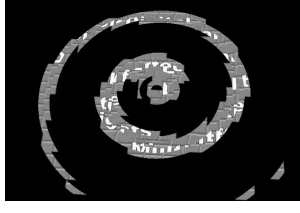
Effects for video image

Name	Effect/Image
Sepia (See page 250.)	Overlays a specified color onto the image. You can adjust the sepia color that is overlaid, and specify the degree of mixing between the original image and the sepia image.
Mono (See page 250.)	Converts the image into a monochrome image.
Posterization (See page 250.)	Coarsens the luminance gradations of the image, for a paintinglike effect.
Solarization (See page 250.)	Coarsens the chroma gradations of the image, for a paintinglike effect.
Nega (See page 251.)	Reverses the luminance or chroma of the image. 
Contrast (See page 251.)	Changes the contrast of the luminance and chroma of the image.

Name	Effect/Image
Mosaic (See page 251.)	Divides the image into small tiles so that it looks like a mosaic. You can specify the size and aspect ratio of the tiles. 
Mask (See page 254.)	Masks part of the picture, so that special effects are applied only inside a selected pattern. 

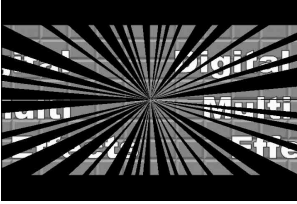
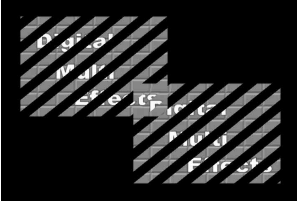
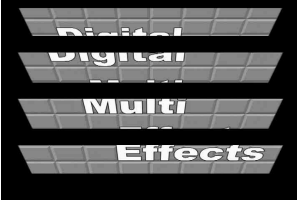
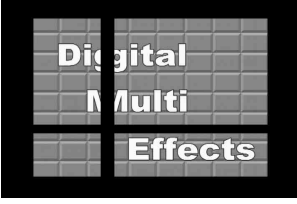



Name	Effect/Image
Sketch (See page 251.)	Provides a sketch-like effect based on the outlines of the image, using different touches such as sketch, edge color, drawing, relief, and sharp.  Sketch
Metal (See page 253.)	Provides a metallic gloss like that from gold, silver, or a rainbow colored surface. A metallic gloss can also be given to a freely selected color. 
Dim and Fade (See page 253.)	The Dim effect makes the image darker as it recedes into the distance. The Fade effect makes the image fade into the background as it recedes into the distance.  Fade
Glow (See page 254.)	Softens the edges of highlights, giving an effect like being struck by a soft light. 





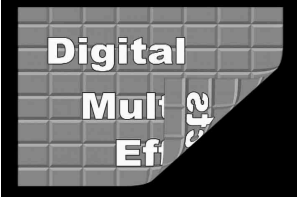

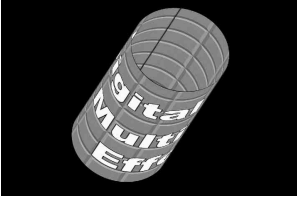
Nonlinear effects



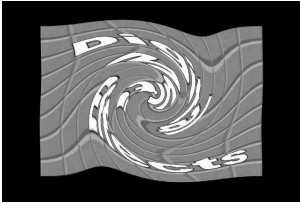

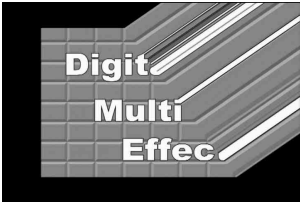
Name	Effect/Image
Wave (See page 257.)	Produces a wave-like effect in the image. 
Mosaic Glass (See page 259.)	Makes the image rougher and finer at a specified interval. 
Flag (See page 259.)	Applies an effect like a flag waving in the wind. 
Twist (See page 259.)	Twists the image. 
Ripple (See page 260.)	Applies an effect like ripples moving across the image. 
Rings (See page 263.)	Partitions the image into rings that rotate while moving in the same direction. 

Freeze effects



Freezes the input video. The video can also be frozen at a specified interval (see page 256).

Name	Effect/Image
Broken Glass (See page 263.)	Partitions the image like broken glass, with shards flying outward. 
Flying Bar (See page 264.)	Divides the image into bars which peel off in two blocks as they move. 
Blind (See page 264.)	Divides the image into bars or wedges, with blocks rotating like the slats of venetian blinds. 
Split (See page 265.)	Splits the image upper and lower, left and right. 
Split Slide (See page 265.)	Divides the image into bars which slide alternately in reverse directions. 
Mirror (See page 266.)	Partitions the image vertically and horizontally, creating an image like a reflection in a mirror. 
Multi Mirror (See page 266.)	Divides the image into originals and reflections, lining them up vertically and horizontally. 




Name	Effect/Image
Kaleidoscope (See page 267.)	Creates an image like a view into a kaleidoscope. 
Lens (See page 267.)	Creates an image like a view through a lens. 
Circle (See page 268.)	Makes a circle with the image. 
Panorama (See page 268.)	Curves the upper and lower edges of the image to emphasize the sense of perspective. 
Page Turn (See page 268.)	Turns the image like a turning page. 
Roll (See page 269.)	Rolls the image up. 
Cylinder (See page 269.)	Winds the whole image onto a cylinder. 

Name	Effect/Image
Sphere (See page 270.)	Winds the whole image onto a sphere. 
Explosion (See page 270.)	Divides the image into fragments which expand as they fly out. 
Swirl (See page 270.)	Swirls the image. 
Melt (See page 271.)	Melts the image away from a specified part. 
Character Trail (See page 272.)	Extends the edge of the image like a trail. 

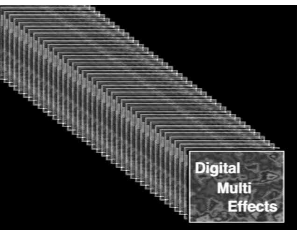
Corner Pinning effect


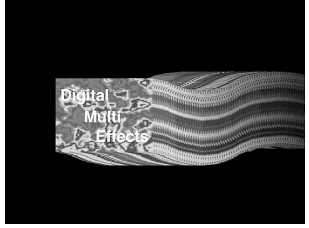
Name	Effect/Image
Corner Pinning (See page 291.)	Provides the effect of inserting the foreground in the background, allowing the four corners to be positioned freely, so that the image fills the quadrilateral outlined by the corners.  Background  Foreground (in cropped state)  Corner Pinning (when Crop Link is on)

Lighting effects

Name	Effect/Image
Lighting (See page 273.)	<p>Provides the effect of light striking the image.</p>  <p>Normal</p>  <p>Specular</p>  <p>Mat</p>
Spotlighting (See page 280.)	Creates the effect of a spotlight striking the surface of the image.

Recursive effects

Name	Effect/Image
Trail (See page 275.)	<p>Recursively freezes the input video at regular intervals so that a trail of afterimages is created. You can make the afterimages stardust trails.</p> 

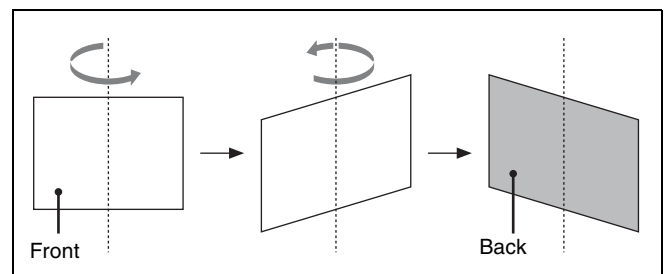
Name	Effect/Image
Motion Decay (See page 277.)	<p>Blurs the motion of a moving video by creating afterimages of the moving video. You can make the afterimages stardust trails.</p> 
Keyframe Strobe (See page 278.)	Freezes the video each time the effect passes a keyframe. You can make the afterimages stardust trails.
Wind (See page 279.)	<p>Strobes the image at regular intervals, and moves the frozen image in a fixed direction, leaving an afterimage.</p> 

Background color

Adds a color or inputs an external signal to the background of the image (see page 288).

Separate sides (effects for front and back sides)

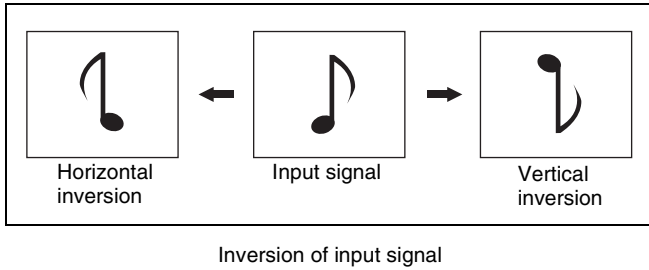
Applies separate video signals and key signals to the front and back of the image (see page 288).



Front and back sides

Signal inversion (Invert effect)

Inverts the input video signal and/or key signal horizontally or vertically. You can make separate settings for the front and back (see page 289).



Key density adjustment

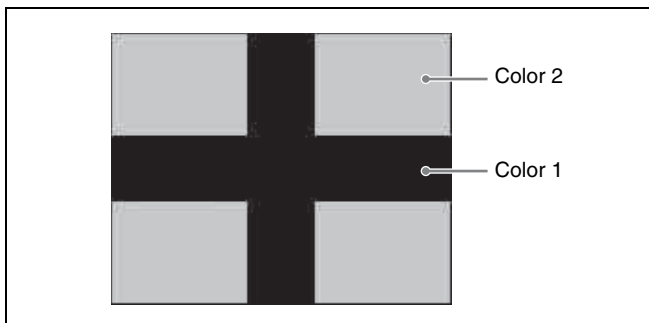
Adjusts the key density for the key signal input to the DME (see page 290).

Key source selection

Selects either the key signals received from the switcher or the key signals generated in the DME for application to the front and back of the image (see page 225 or page 290).

Color mix setting

This is a combination of two colors with a pattern generator. This color mix signal can be used to fill parts such as a background or border (see page 246).



Global Effects

Global effects are special effects created by combining the images of successive channels. The following types of global effects are available.

- Combiner
- Brick
- Shadow

Devices for DME Support

The following boards and processors provide DME support.

The available functions depend on the type of DME being used. For details, see “Functional Differences With Models of DME” in Appendix (page 348).

MKS-7470X/7471X DME board set (MVS-7000X only)

Installing this in the MVS-7000X allows DME to be operated as though part of the switcher.

Each board supports two channels, and a maximum of two boards (four channels) can be used.

There are two types of interfaces available for connecting DMEs to the switcher: the dedicated interface and the SDI interface.

For details, see “Setting the Interface Between the DME and the Switcher” in Chapter 20 (Volume 2).

The use of the SDI interface requires an MKS-8110X 20-input board and an MKS-7171X DME output connector board. When using the SDI interface, the following operations are different from using the dedicated interface.

- Setting the input signals from the switcher to the MKS-7470X/7471X (AUX bus outputs), and signals returned to the switcher (reentry inputs).

For details, see “Setting the AUX Bus Output and Reentry Input” in Chapter 20 (Volume 2).

- Selecting the combiner channels not in the key control block, but in the Global Effect menu.

For details, see “Procedure for combine operation when using an SDI interface” (page 295)

MVE-8000A Multi Format DME Processor

The MVE-8000A is a “Digital Multi Effects” with multi-format support.

For the MVE-8000A, an optional MKE-8021A Input/Output Board is available as a dedicated interface for integrated use with the switcher.

There are two types of interfaces available for connecting DMEs to the switcher: the dedicated interface and the SDI interface.

Notes

When using the SDI interface, the following operations are different from using the dedicated interface.

For details, see “Setting the Interface Between the DME and the Switcher” in Chapter 20 (Volume 2).

- Setting the input signals from the switcher to the MVE-8000A (AUX bus outputs), and signals returned to the switcher (reentry inputs). However, “Ext In” cannot be set for the DME channel.

For details, see “Setting the AUX Bus Output and Reentry Input” in Chapter 20 (Volume 2).

- Selecting the combiner channels not in the key control block, but in the Global Effect menu (see page 294).

MVE-9000 Multi Format DME Processor

The MVE-9000 is a “Digital Multi Effects” with multi-format support.

For the MVE-9000, an optional MKE-9021A Input/Output Board is available as a dedicated interface for integrated use with the switcher.

There are two types of interfaces available for connecting DMEs to the switcher: the dedicated interface and the SDI interface.

For details, see “Setting the Interface Between the DME and the Switcher” in Chapter 20 (Volume 2).

Notes

When using the SDI interface, the following operations are different from when using the dedicated interface.

- Setting the input signals from the switcher to the MVE-9000 (AUX bus outputs), and signals returned to the switcher (reentry inputs).

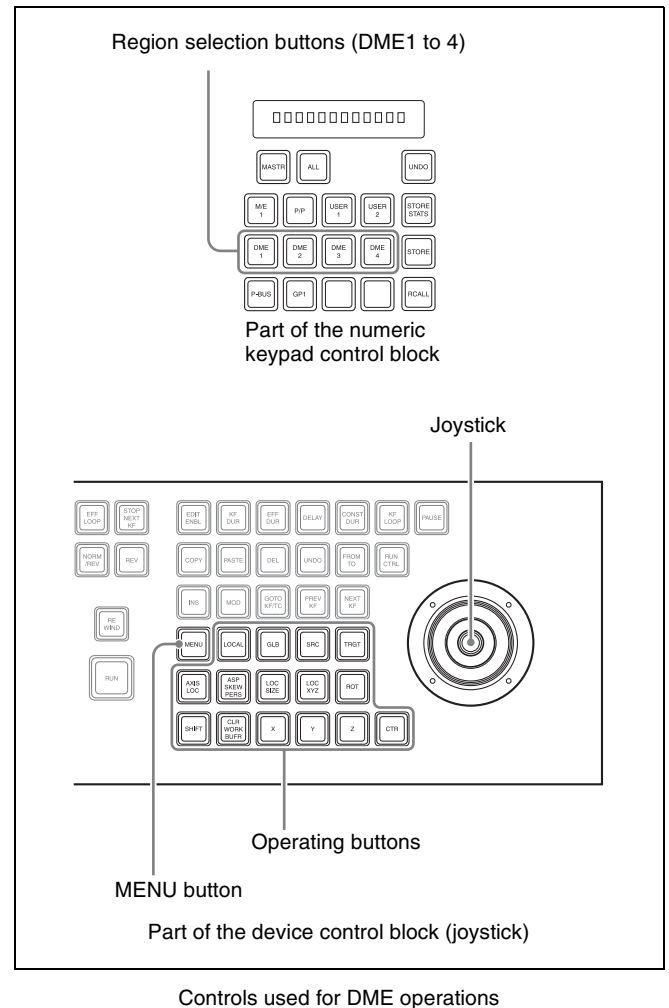
For details, see “Setting the AUX Bus Output and Reentry Input” in Chapter 20 (Volume 2).

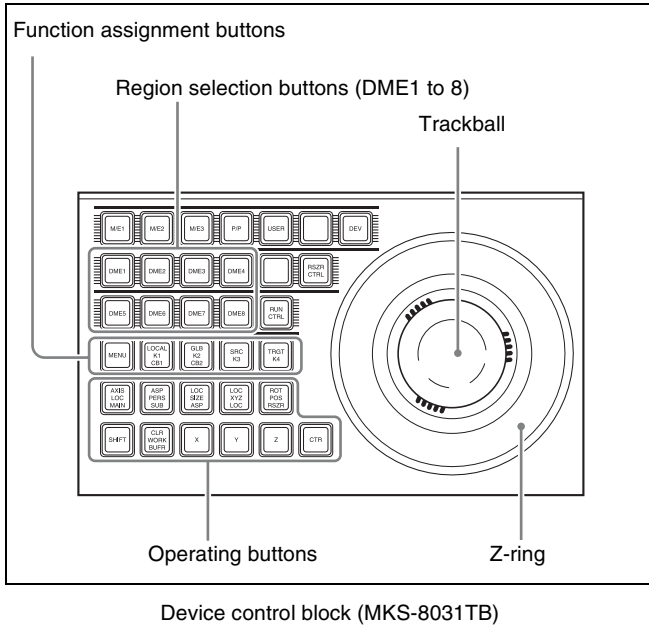
- Selecting the combiner channels not in the key control block, but in the Global Effect menu (see page 294).

Three-Dimensional Transformation Operations

To carry out three-dimensional DME transformations, use either part of the device control block (joystick) and numeric keypad control block or the optional device control block (MKS-8031TB trackball module).

Basic Operations





Buttons used when the three-dimensional transform operation mode is enabled

LOCAL: Enable operations in the DME local coordinate space.

GLB (global): Enable operations in the DME global coordinate space.

The [LOCAL] and [GLB] buttons can be selected at the same time.

SRC (source): Enable operations in the DME source coordinate space.

TRGT (target): Enable operations in the DME target coordinate space.

The [SRC] and [TRGT] buttons cannot be selected at the same time. When these buttons are held down, trackball and Z-ring operation is switched to a finer control. (fine mode)

AXIS LOC (location): When this button is lit, the trackball moves the rotational axis of the image in the x-axis and y-axis directions, and the Z-ring moves the axis in the z-axis direction.

ASP PERS (aspect/perspective): When the [SRC] button is lit, pressing this button enables the trackball to control the x-axis and y-axis directions independently, and the Z-ring controls the x-axis and y-axis directions together, to vary the aspect ratio. When the [SHIFT] button is held down and this button is pressed, the trackball controls the skew of the image in the x-axis and y-axis directions.

When the [TRGT] button is lit, pressing this button enables the trackball to control the perspective of the image in the x-axis and y-axis directions.

The Z-ring controls the distance to the viewpoint.

LOC (location) SIZE: When this button is lit, the Z-ring controls the image size.

The trackball moves the image in the x-axis and y-axis directions.

LOC (location) XYZ: When this button is lit, the trackball moves the image in the x-axis and y-axis directions, and the Z-ring moves the image in the z-axis direction.

SHIFT: While holding down this button, pressing the [ASP PERS] button or [ROT] button switches to the shifted version of the corresponding function.

CLR WORK BUFR (clear work buffer): Press this button once to clear only the three-dimensional transform parameters of the information held in the work buffer. Pressing twice in rapid succession, or holding down [SHIFT] and pressing [CLR WORK BUFR] button returns all parameter values to the defaults.

ROT (rotation): When this button is lit, the trackball rotates the image about the x- and y-axes, and the Z-ring rotates the image about the z-axis. Pressing this while holding down the [SHIFT] button enables rotation of the image in the “Spin” mode. The trackball and Z-ring operate in the same manner.

X, Y, Z: These restrict which axes the trackball and Z-ring can control. You can select more than one.

When one of these buttons is selected, you can enter the parameter value for the corresponding axis using the numeric keypad control block.

CTR (center): Pressing this button changes the values of the three-dimensional parameters currently controlled by the trackball and Z-ring to the closest detent values. Pressing twice in rapid succession or holding down [SHIFT] and pressing [CLR WORK BUFR] button returns the parameter values to their defaults.

Transforming an image in three-dimensional coordinate space

For details of the three-dimensional transformations, see “Three-Dimensional Transformations” (page 213).

1 With the region selection buttons, select the target channel of the operation.

You can press several of the buttons simultaneously to select several channels. In this case, the button that you pressed first lights in green, while buttons pressed subsequently light in amber.

2 With the function assignment buttons, select the three-dimensional coordinate space in which to perform the transformation.

LOCAL button: Selects local coordinate space.

GLB button: Selects global coordinate space. You can select this button and the [LOCAL] button simultaneously.

SRC button: Selects the source coordinate space.

TRGT button: Selects the target coordinate space. ([SRC] and [TRGT] cannot be selected at the same time.)

3 Press the button for the operation you want to do, turning it on, to select the transformation mode.

The joystick is assigned to the selected three-dimensional coordinate space transformation mode (see page 215).

To move the image: Press the [LOC XYZ] button, turning it on.

You can move the image with the joystick. Pressing the [LOC SIZE] button instead of the [LOC XYZ] button, turning it on, makes it possible to move the image on the x- and y-axes.

To rotate the image: Press the [ROT] button, turning it on.

You can rotate the image with the joystick. To rotate the image in Spin mode, press the [ROT] button, turning it on, while holding down the [SHIFT] button. You can operate in the same way with the joystick.

To move an axis of rotation: With the [SRC] button selected in step 2, press the [AXIS LOC] button, turning it on.

You can move the axis of rotation of the image with the joystick.

To magnify or shrink the image: Press the [LOC SIZE] button, turning it on.

You can magnify and shrink the image by rotating the joystick knob. Rotate counterclockwise to shrink, and clockwise to magnify.

To change the aspect ratio of the image: With the [SRC] button selected in step 2, press the [ASP PERS] button, turning it on.

You can change the aspect ratio with the joystick.

To change the perspective on the image: With the [TRGT] button selected in step 2, press the [ASP PERS] button, turning it on.

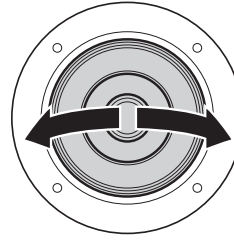
You can change the perspective of the image on the x- and y-axes by moving the joystick horizontally or vertically, and change the distance to the view point by rotating the joystick knob.

To change the skew of the image: With the [SRC] button selected in step 2, press the [ASP PERS] button, turning it on, while holding down the [SHIFT] button.

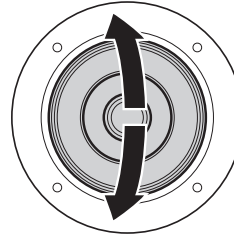
You can change the skew of the image along the x- and y-axes with the joystick.

4 Depending on the axis of the change, operate the joystick as follows.

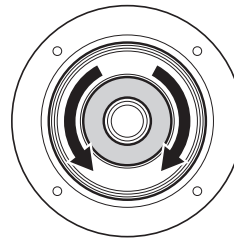
- To change on the x-axis, move the joystick horizontally. Parameter values increase as you move to the right, and decrease as you move to the left.



- To change on the y-axis, move the joystick vertically. Parameter values increase as you move upward, and decrease as you move downward.



- To change on the z-axis, rotate the joystick knob. Parameter values increase as you rotate clockwise, and decrease as you rotate counterclockwise. However, when you have pressed the [LOC XYZ] button to move the image, z-axis parameters increase as you rotate counterclockwise, and decrease as you rotate clockwise.



To reduce the rate of change of the parameters (fine mode)

Carry out the trackball or Z-ring operations while holding down the [SRC] or [TRGT] button.

5 To restrict the change in the transformation to a specific axis, press the [X], [Y], or [Z] button, tuning it on.

This enables the joystick on the selected axis only.

Functions assignable to joystick operations

Button	Usable coordinate space	Joystick x-direction	Joystick y-direction	Joystick z-direction
LOC XYZ	Source, target	Move image on x-axis	Move image on y-axis	Move image on z-axis
ROT	Source, target	Rotate image on y-axis	Rotate image on x-axis	Rotate image on z-axis

Functions assignable to joystick operations

Button	Usable coordinate space	Joystick x-direction	Joystick y-direction	Joystick z-direction
SHIFT+ ROT	Source, target	Rotate image on y-axis (Spin mode)	Rotate image on x-axis (Spin mode)	Rotate image on z-axis (Spin mode)
AXIS LOC	Source	Move x-axis of rotation	Move y-axis of rotation	Move z-axis of rotation
LOC SIZE	Source, target	Move image on x-axis	Move image on y-axis	Magnify and shrink image
ASP PERS	Source	Change aspect ratio on x-axis	Change aspect ratio on y-axis	Change aspect ratio on x- and y-axes simultaneously
	Target	Shift view point on x-axis	Shift view point on y-axis	Change distance from view point to image
SHIFT+ ASP PERS	Source	Change skew on x-axis	Change skew on y-axis	Change aspect ratio on x- and y-axes simultaneously

Three-Dimensional Parameter Display

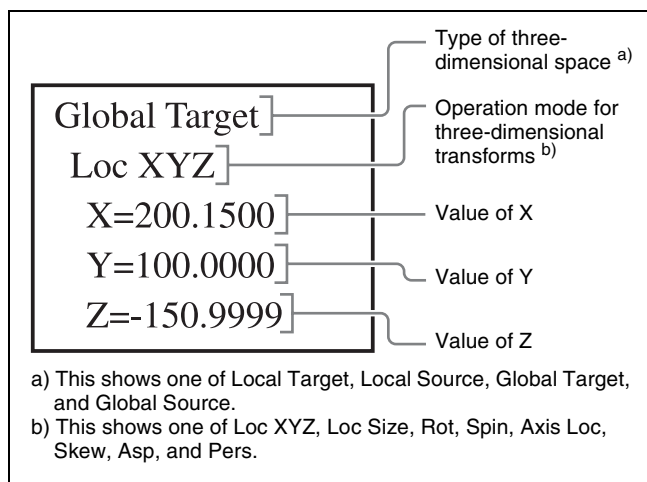
You can check the values of the three-dimensional parameters in the DME menu.

Displaying the three-dimensional parameters in the DME menu

In the menu control block, select the top menu selection button [DME].

The DME menu appears. The status area shows the three-dimensional parameters currently controlled by the device control block.

- When multiple DME channels are selected, this shows the parameters for the reference channel.
- When both Global and Local are selected, the three-dimensional parameters are shown for the channel (the reference channel) for which the button is lit green.



Example three-dimensional parameter display (DME menu)

Viewing the three-dimensional parameter details

In the DME menu, press the menu title button (the [DME] in the upper left part of the screen).

The Status menu appears. This menu shows the three-dimensional parameters for the DME reference channel currently selected in the device control block.

Edge	Local Size	X	Y	Z
Aspect:	1.0000	1.0000	1.0000	
Skew:	0.0000	0.0000	0.0000	
Location:	-4.4420	-0.1820	0.0400	
Axis Location:	0.0000	0.0000	0.0000	
Rotation:	0.6330	-0.1068	0.0152	
Source Spin:	0.0000	0.0000	0.0000	
Target Spin:	0.0000	0.0000	0.0000	
Perspective:	-0.0860	-0.0440	1.0000	
Target Loc/Size:	-0.2360	-0.1360	1.0000	

Global Size	X	Y	Z
Location:	-2.8300	-0.0540	0.0000
Axis Location:	0.0000	0.0000	0.0000
Rotation:	0.6330	-0.1068	0.0152
Source Spin:	0.0000	0.0000	0.0000
Target Spin:	0.0000	0.0000	0.0000
Perspective:	-0.0860	-0.0440	1.0000
Target Loc/Size:	-0.2360	-0.1360	1.0000

Example three-dimensional parameter details

Entering Three-Dimensional Parameter Values

In addition to setting three-dimensional parameter values with the trackball and Z-ring, you can enter them directly from the numeric keypad control block.

Entering three-dimensional parameter values

- 1 In the device control block, press the [X], [Y], or [Z] button, turning it on.

The numeric keypad control block enters a mode in which you can enter parameters for the selected axis.

- 2 Enter a parameter value with the numeric keypad.

The number of significant digits after a decimal point is 4.

- 3 Press the [ENTER] button.

The parameter value is changed, and the image changes.

To enter difference values

You can enter difference values by pressing the [+/-] button, entering the difference from the current value, and pressing the [TRIM] button to confirm. The [+/-] button toggles between “+” (plus) and “-” (minus) each time it is pressed.

Resetting three-dimensional parameter values

Pressing the [CTR] button in the device control block sets the current three-dimensional parameter values to the closest detent points (*page 215*).

To reset three-dimensional parameter values to the defaults (*page 215*) for the current transformation operation mode, press the [CTR] button twice in rapid succession.

Clearing the working buffer

The working buffer is memory that holds the instantaneous state of an effect. To clear (initialize) only the three-dimensional transform parameters in the working buffer, press the [CLR WORK BUFR] button in the device control block.

To clear all of the parameters in the working buffer and initialize the DME system, press the [CLR WORK BUFR] button twice in rapid succession. It is necessary to do this for both the local coordinate space and global coordinate space.

As the initial DME state, you can specify whether to use the factory default settings or user settings in the Setup menu.

For details see “Selecting the State After Powering On (Start Up Menu)” in Chapter 18 (Volume 2).

Graphics Display Operation

Use the DME menu to make graphics display settings. You can make separate settings for separate channels. To select a target DME channel, use the device control block.

For the types of graphics displayed, see “Graphics Display” (page 217).

Displaying graphics

- 1 In the menu control block, select the top menu selection button [DME].

The DME menu appears.

- 2 Select VF6 ‘Input/Output’ and HF4 ‘Graphic.’

The Graphic menu appears.

- 3 Turn [Graphic] on.

The system enters graphics display mode, enabling graphics to be displayed in the monitor screen.

- 4 Turn on the buttons of the graphics you want to show.

To show axes: Turn [Axis] on.

To show axis names: Turn [Axis Name] on.

To show the channel ID: Turn [Ch ID] on.

To show a wire frame: Turn [Wire Frame] on.

To show the grid: Turn [Grid] on.

To show the flex shadow axis: Turn [Flex Shadow Axis] on.

The selected graphics appear in the monitor screen.

Notes

The flex shadow axis function is not supported on the MVE-8000A.

- 5 If you want to shrink the graphics display to show the range not displayed on a normal monitor, turn [Scale] on and set the following parameters.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Scale	Degree to which the graphics display is shrunk	0.00 to 100.00

As the value of the setting grows, the monitor shrinks further toward the center point.

- 6 To automatically erase the graphic display while the keyframes are executing, press [Auto Erase], turning it on, and then set the following parameter.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Recover Time	Time until graphic display appears again after keyframe execution	0 to 300 (frames)

Outputting graphics to the monitor output connector

In the Graphic menu, press [Monitor Out] to turn it on. Graphics are displayed on the device connected to the monitor output connector.

Canceling Virtual Images

When a transformation is executed with an extreme degree of perspective, the part of the image which is beyond the imaginary view point can wrap around and show on the other side. The wrapped-around portion is referred to as a virtual image.

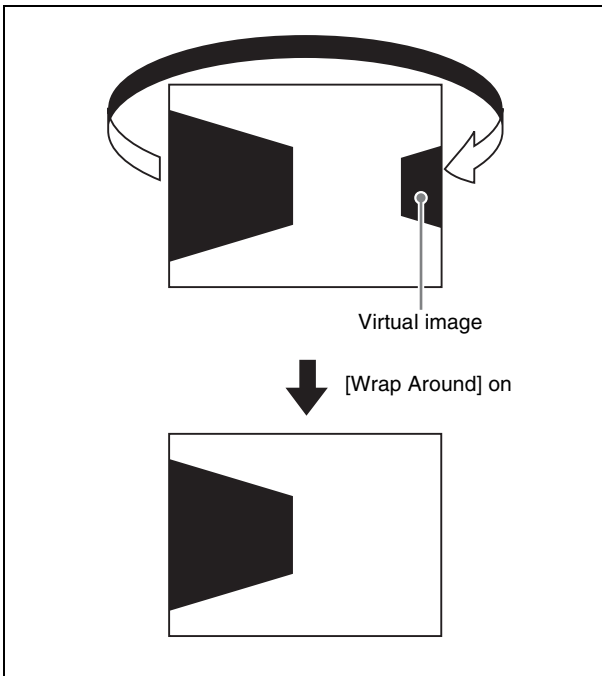
Using the DME menu, you can make a setting not to show the virtual images.

Canceling virtual images

- 1 In the DME menu, select VF6 'Input/Output' and HF2 'Video/Key.'

The Video/Key menu appears.

- 2 Press [Wrap Around], turning it on.



Applying Special Effects (Operations Common to Special Effects)

In this section, explanations of the operating procedures for individual special effects begin with selections from the DME menu. The following are common operations that you must do prior to selecting from the DME menu.

- 1 In the device control block, select the target DME channel.
- 2 In the menu control block, select the top menu selection button [DME].

The DME menu appears.

Applying Special Effects (Edge Effects)

Border Settings

Adding a border

- 1 In the DME menu, select VF1 'Edge' and HF1 'Border/Crop.'

The Border/Crop menu appears.

- 2 Press [Border], turning it on.

- 3 Set the parameters.

The valid ranges of the parameter values depend on the combination of signal format (SD/HD) and aspect ratio (4:3/16:9) selected in the system, as follows.

4:3 mode

Parameter group [1/2]

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	H	Border width on left and right sides	Left value shown
2	V	Border width on top and bottom sides	Top value shown
3	All	Border width on all sides	Left value shown
5	Density	Border density	0.00 to 100.00

Parameter group [2/2]

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Top	Border width on top side	-6.00 to +6.00 (SD) -18.00 to +18.00 (HD)
2	Left	Border width on left side	-8.00 to +8.00 (SD) -24.00 to +24.00 (HD)
3	Right	Border width on right side	-8.00 to +8.00 (SD) -24.00 to +24.00 (HD)
4	Bottom	Border width on bottom side	-6.00 to +6.00 (SD) -18.00 to +18.00 (HD)
5	Density	Border density	0.00 to 100.00

16:9 mode

Parameter group [1/2]

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	H	Border width on left and right sides	Left value shown
2	V	Border width on top and bottom sides	Top value shown
3	All	Border width on all sides	Left value shown
5	Density	Border density	0.00 to 100.00

Parameter group [2/2]

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Top	Border width on top side	-4.50 to +4.50 (SD) -18.00 to +18.00 (HD)
2	Left	Border width on left side	-8.00 to +8.00 (SD) -32.00 to +32.00 (HD)
3	Right	Border width on right side	-8.00 to +8.00 (SD) -32.00 to +32.00 (HD)
4	Bottom	Border width on bottom side	-4.50 to +4.50 (SD) -18.00 to +18.00 (HD)
5	Density	Border density	0.00 to 100.00

Setting the border color

The operation differs depending on the DME used (MVE-8000A, MVE-9000 or MKS-7470X/7471X).

When the MVE-8000A is used

Press [Border Color], turning it on, and set the following parameters.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Luminance	Luminance	0.00 to 100.00
2	Saturation	Saturation	0.00 to 100.00
3	Hue	Hue	359.99 to 0.00

When the MVE-9000 or MKS-7470X/7471X is used

Use the buttons in the <Border Fill> group to select the signal to insert in the border.

Flat Color: single color

Mix Color: mix color signal set in the Color Mix menu
(see page 246)

Ext Video: an external video signal input to the Ext IN connector

If Flat Color is selected, adjust the following parameters.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Luminance	Luminance	0.00 to 100.00

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
2	Saturation	Saturation	0.00 to 100.00
3	Hue	Hue	359.99 to 0.00

If Mix Color or Ext Video selected, the border color changes according to the mix color signal or external video signal.

Softening the border edges

Press [Border Soft], turning it on, and set the following parameters.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Soft	Softness of inner side of border	0.00 to 100.00

Crop Settings

Cropping the image

- 1 In the DME menu, select VF1 'Edge' and HF1 'Border/Crop.'

The Border/Crop menu appears.

- 2 Press [Crop], turning it on.

- 3 Set the parameters.

The valid ranges of the parameter values depend on the combination of signal format (SD/HD) and aspect ratio (4:3/16:9) selected in the system, as follows.

4:3 mode

Parameter group [1/2]

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	H	Crop positions on left and right sides	Left value shown
2	V	Crop positions on top and bottom sides	Top value shown
3	All	Crop positions on all sides	Left value shown

Parameter group [2/2]

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Top	Crop position on top side	-3.00 to +3.00 (SD) -9.00 to +9.00 (HD)

Parameter group [2/2]

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
2	Left	Crop position on left side	-4.00 to +4.00 (SD) -12.00 to +12.00 (HD)
3	Right	Crop position on right side	-4.00 to +4.00 (SD) -12.00 to +12.00 (HD)
4	Bottom	Crop position on bottom side	-3.00 to +3.00 (SD) -9.00 to +9.00 (HD)

16:9 mode

Parameter group [1/2]

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	H	Crop positions on left and right sides	Left value shown
2	V	Crop positions on top and bottom sides	Top value shown
3	All	Crop positions on all sides	Left value shown

Parameter group [2/2]

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Top	Crop position on top side	-2.25 to +2.25 (SD) -9.00 to +9.00 (HD)
2	Left	Crop position on left side	-4.00 to +4.00 (SD) -16.00 to +16.00 (HD)
3	Right	Crop position on right side	-4.00 to +4.00 (SD) -16.00 to +16.00 (HD)
4	Bottom	Crop position on bottom side	-2.25 to +2.25 (SD) -9.00 to +9.00 (HD)

Signs of numeric settings

For H, V, and All settings, the sign (+/-) of the setting need not be considered. For example, in the case of an H setting, the value for Left is automatically regarded as a negative value, and the value for Right as a positive value, to display the image.

The following is an example of these settings.

Parameter	Entered value	Setting
H	1.5	Left=-1.50
		Right=1.50
	-1.5	Left=-1.50
		Right=1.50

- 4 To soften the edges of the image, press [Edge Soft], turning it on, and set the following parameter.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Soft	Softness of edges	0.00 to 100.00

Notes

Edges cannot be softened when the Crop effect is disabled.

To specify whether to invert the crop area when inverting the video image

In the <Invert/Crop Process> group, select either of the following.

Crop → Invert: Set an axis of symmetry at the center of the input video, and invert both the desired area of video and the crop area horizontally and vertically around that axis of symmetry. The order of effect application is Crop > Invert.

Invert → Crop: Set an axis of symmetry at the center of the input video, and invert only the desired area of video horizontally and vertically around that axis of symmetry. The order of effect application is Invert > Crop.

Beveled Edge Settings

Applying a beveled edge

1 In the DME menu, select VF1 'Edge' and HF2 'Beveled Edge.'

The Beveled Edge menu appears.

2 Press [Beveled Edge], turning it on.

3 Set the parameters.

The valid ranges of the parameter values depend on the combination of signal format (SD/HD) and aspect ratio (4:3/16:9) selected in the system, as follows.

4:3 mode

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	H	Simultaneously adjust width of left and right edges	0.00 to 4.00 (SD) 0.00 to 12.00 (HD)
2	V	Simultaneously adjust width of top and bottom edges	0.00 to 3.00 (SD) 0.00 to 9.00 (HD)

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
3	All	Simultaneously adjust width of all four edges	Value of H shown

16:9 mode

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	H	Simultaneously adjust width of left and right edges	0.00 to 4.00 (SD) 0.00 to 16.00 (HD)
2	V	Simultaneously adjust width of top and bottom edges	0.00 to 2.25 (SD) 0.00 to 9.00 (HD)
3	All	Simultaneously adjust width of all four edges	Value of H shown

4 In the <Edge Mode> group, select the type of edge.

Light: effect of light striking the edge

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Top	Adjust luminance of top edge	-100.00 to +100.00
2	Left	Adjust luminance of left edge	-100.00 to +100.00
3	Right	Adjust luminance of right edge	-100.00 to +100.00
4	Bottom	Adjust luminance of bottom edge	-100.00 to +100.00
5	All	Simultaneously adjust luminance of all four edges	Value of Left shown

Color: colored edges. When this is selected, set the following parameters in the <Color Adjust> group.

• **To set the density**

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Density	Adjust the color density	0.00 to 100.00

• **To set the colors for each edge (Top, Left, Right, Bottom, All)**

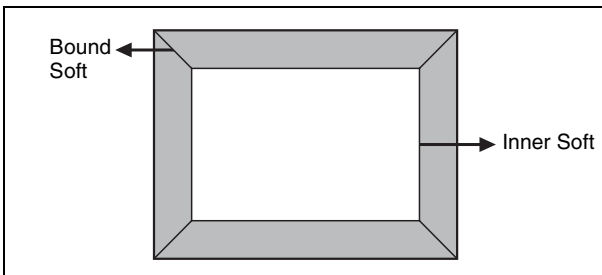
Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Luminance	Luminance	0.00 to 100.00 ^{a)}

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
2	Saturation	Saturation	0.00 to 100.00 ^{a)}
3	Hue	Hue	359.99 to 0.00 ^{a)}

a) For the All adjustment, the value for Left is shown.

- 5** To soften the inside of the edges and the boundaries between adjacent edges, turn on [Edge Soft], and adjust the following parameters.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Inner Soft	Softness of the inside of edges	0.00 to 100.00
2	Bound Soft	Softness of the edge boundaries	0.00 to 100.00



Key Border Settings

Notes

The Key Border function is not supported on the MVE-8000A.

Applying key borders

- 1** In the DME menu, select VF1 'Edge' and HF3 'Key Border.'

The Key Border menu appears.

- 2** Press [Key Border], turning it on.

Notes

The key border function and Glow function (*see page 254*) cannot be turned on at the same time. Only the one most recently turned on is effective.

- 3** Set the following parameters.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	H	Simultaneously adjust width of left and right key borders	0.00 to 100.00
2	V	Simultaneously adjust width of top and bottom key borders	0.00 to 100.00
3	All	Simultaneously adjust width of all four key borders	Value of H shown
4	Soft	Softness of the key borders	0.00 to 100.00
5	Density	Density of the key borders	0.00 to 100.00

- 4** To set the key border color, press [Flat Color] and adjust the following parameters.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Luminance	Luminance	0.00 to 100.00
2	Saturation	Saturation	0.00 to 100.00
3	Hue	Hue	359.99 to 0.00

To select an outline only key

Press [Outline], turning it on.

Art Edge Settings

Notes

The Art Edge function is not supported on the MVE-8000A.

Applying art edges

- 1** In the DME menu, select VF1 'Edge' and HF4 'Art Edge.'

The Art Edge menu appears.

- 2** Press [Art Edge], turning it on.

Notes

The Defocus, Blur, Key Border, and Glow effects cannot be applied to the Art Edge sections.

- 3** Set the parameters.

The valid ranges of the parameter values depend on the combination of signal format (SD/HD) and aspect ratio (4:3/16:9) selected in the system, as follows.

4:3 mode

Parameter group [1/2]

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	H	Simultaneously adjust width of left and right edges	Value of Left shown
2	V	Simultaneously adjust width of top and bottom edges	Value of Top shown
3	All	Simultaneously adjust width of all four edges	Value of Left shown
5	Density	Density of edges	0.00 to 100.00

Parameter group [2/2]

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Top	Width of top edge	0.00 to 6.00 (SD) 0.00 to 18.00 (HD)
2	Left	Width of left edge	0.00 to 8.00 (SD) 0.00 to 24.00 (HD)
3	Right	Width of right edge	0.00 to 8.00 (SD) 0.00 to 24.00 (HD)
4	Bottom	Width of bottom edge	0.00 to 6.00 (SD) 0.00 to 18.00 (HD)
5	Density	Density of edges	0.00 to 100.00

16:9 mode

Parameter group [1/2]

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	H	Simultaneously adjust width of left and right edges	Value of Left shown
2	V	Simultaneously adjust width of top and bottom edges	Value of Top shown
3	All	Simultaneously adjust width of all four edges	Value of Left shown
5	Density	Density of edges	0.00 to 100.00

Parameter group [2/2]

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Top	Width of top edge	0.00 to 4.50 (SD) 0.00 to 18.00 (HD)
2	Left	Width of left edge	0.00 to 8.00 (SD) 0.00 to 32.00 (HD)
3	Right	Width of right edge	0.00 to 8.00 (SD) 0.00 to 32.00 (HD)
4	Bottom	Width of bottom edge	0.00 to 6.00 (SD) 0.00 to 18.00 (HD)
5	Density	Density of edges	0.00 to 100.00

Adjusting the position of art edges

- 1 In the Art Edge menu, press [Edge Position], turning it on.
- 2 Adjust the following parameters.

The valid ranges of the parameter values depend on the combination of signal format (SD/HD) and aspect ratio (4:3/16:9) selected in the system, as follows.

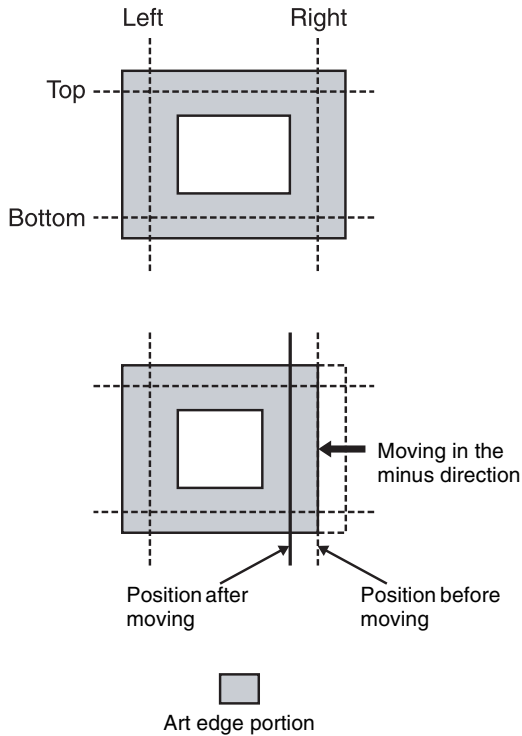
4:3 mode

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Top	Position of top edge	-3.00 to +3.00 (SD) -9.00 to +9.00 (HD)
2	Left	Position of left edge	-4.00 to +4.00 (SD) -12.00 to +12.00 (HD)
3	Right	Position of right edge	-4.00 to +4.00 (SD) -12.00 to +12.00 (HD)
4	Bottom	Position of bottom edge	-3.00 to +3.00 (SD) -9.00 to +9.00 (HD)
5	All	Adjust the position of all four edges	Value of H shown

16:9 mode

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Top	Position of top edge	-2.25 to +2.25 (SD) -9.00 to +9.00 (HD)
2	Left	Position of left edge	-4.00 to +4.00 (SD) -16.00 to +16.00 (HD)
3	Right	Position of right edge	-4.00 to +4.00 (SD) -16.00 to +16.00 (HD)
4	Bottom	Position of bottom edge	-2.25 to +2.25 (SD) -9.00 to +9.00 (HD)
5	All	Adjust the position of all four edges	Value of H shown

Example: Moving the right edge position in the “minus” direction.



Softening the inner and outer sides of art edges

- 1 In the Art Edge menu, press [Soft], turning it on.
- 2 Adjust the following parameters.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Inner H	Simultaneously adjust softness of left and right inner edges	0.00 to 100.00
2	Inner V	Simultaneously adjust softness of top and bottom inner edges	0.00 to 100.00
3	Outer H	Simultaneously adjust softness of left and right outer edges	0.00 to 100.00
4	Outer V	Simultaneously adjust softness of top and bottom outer edges	0.00 to 100.00

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
5	All	Simultaneously adjust softness of all inner and outer edges.	Value of Outer H shown

Setting the way in which art edge colors change

- 1 In the <Art Edge Source> group of the Art Edge menu, select the color pattern to apply to the art edges.

Flat Color: Uses Color 1 (see page 240) as a flat color.

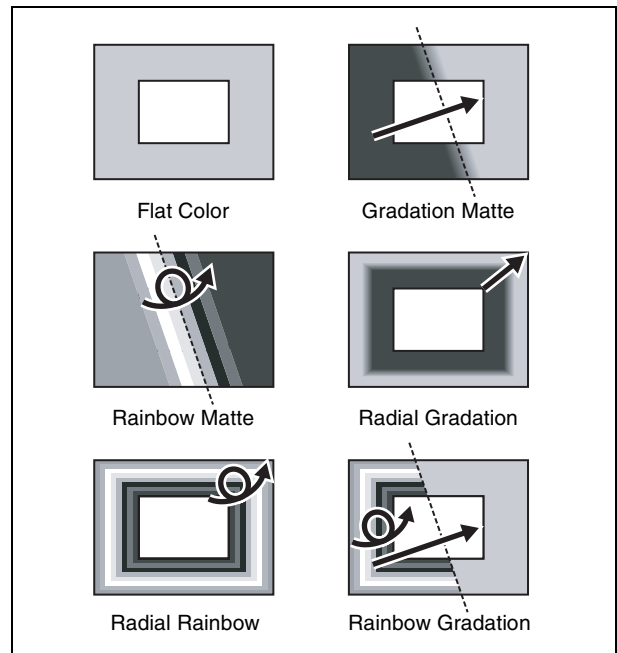
Gradation Matte: Color 1 changes to Color 2 (see page 240) at the border lines (see step 2 (page 238)).

Rainbow Matte: The color set as Color 1 changes hue into color on the border lines.

Radial Gradation: Color 1 on the inner side is mixed into Color 2 on the outer side, according to the shape of the art edge.

Radial Rainbow: The hue of Color 1 on the inner side changes into Color 2 on the outer side, according to the shape of the art edge.

Rainbow Gradation: Color 3 (see “Color 3 settings” (page 240)) overwrites Radial Rainbow, giving a gradation effect.



- 2 When you select other than [Flat Color], set the gradation border lines for the selected pattern.

Border line parameters for Gradation Matte and Rainbow Matte

The valid ranges of the parameter values depend on the combination of signal format (SD/HD) and aspect ratio (4:3/16:9) selected in the system, as follows.

4:3 mode

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	H	Position of gradation border in horizontal direction	-8.00 to +8.00 (SD) -24.00 to +24.00 (HD)
2	V	Position of gradation border in vertical direction	-6.00 to +6.00 (SD) -18.00 to +18.00 (HD)
3	Soft	Softness of gradation border region	0.00 to 100.00

16:9 mode

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	H	Position of gradation border in horizontal direction	-8.00 to +8.00 (SD) -32.00 to +32.00 (HD)
2	V	Position of gradation border in vertical direction	-4.50 to +4.50 (SD) -18.00 to +18.00 (HD)
3	Soft	Softness of gradation border region	0.00 to 100.00

Radial Gradation and Radial Rainbow parameters

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
3	Soft	Softness of gradation border region	0.00 to 100.00

Rainbow Gradation parameters

The valid ranges of the parameter values depend on the combination of signal format (SD/HD) and aspect ratio (4:3/16:9) selected in the system, as follows.

• 4:3 mode

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	H	Position of gradation border in horizontal direction	-8.00 to +8.00 (SD) -24.00 to +24.00 (HD)
2	V	Position of gradation border in vertical direction	-6.00 to +6.00 (SD) -18.00 to +18.00 (HD)

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
3	RBW Soft	Softness of rainbow border region	0.00 to 100.00
4	GRD Soft	Softness of gradation border region	0.00 to 100.00

• 16:9 mode

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	H	Position of gradation border in horizontal direction	-8.00 to +8.00 (SD) -32.00 to +32.00 (HD)
2	V	Position of gradation border in vertical direction	-4.50 to +4.50 (SD) -18.00 to +18.00 (HD)
3	RBW Soft	Softness of rainbow border region	0.00 to 100.00
4	GRD Soft	Softness of gradation border region	0.00 to 100.00

- 3** When Gradation Matte or Rainbow Matte is selected, set modifiers as required.

When turning [Angle] on in the <Rotation> group and slanting the pattern

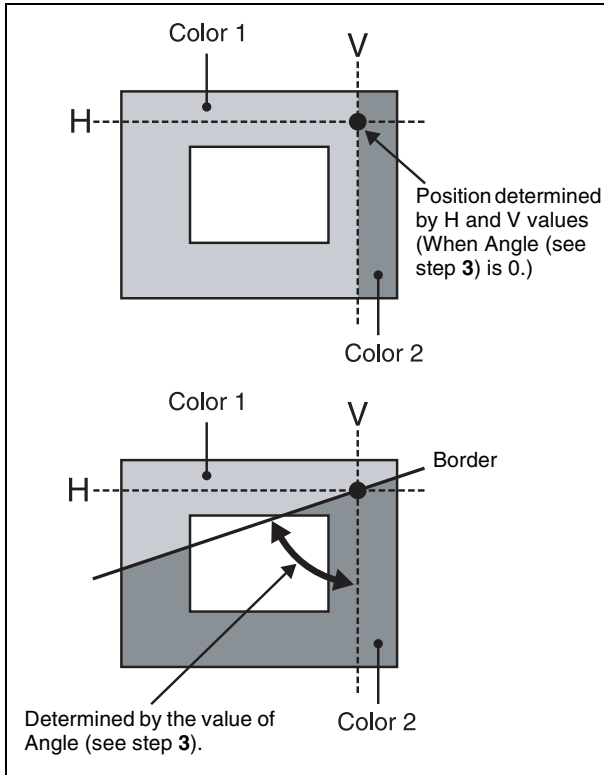
Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Angle	Rotation angle of pattern	-8.00 to +8.00 ^{a)}

a) -1.00 is one rotation in counterclockwise direction. +1.00 is one rotation in clockwise direction. 0.00 is no rotation.

When turning [Speed] on in the <Rotation> group and rotating the pattern at a specified speed

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Speed	Rotation speed of pattern	-100.00 to +100.00 ^{a)}

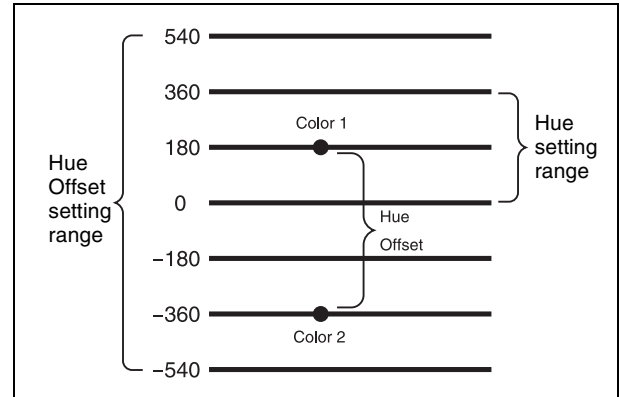
a) -100.00 is four rotations per second in counterclockwise direction. +100.00 is four rotations per second in clockwise direction. 0.00 is no rotation.



Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Luminance	Luminance	0.00 to 100.00
2	Saturation	Saturation	0.00 to 100.00
3	Hue Offset	Hue range	-540.0 to +540.0

Relationship between Hue and Hue Offset

For example, when the Hue value of Color 1 is 180.00, and the Hue Offset value of Color 2 is -540.00, the relationship is as shown below, with the hue changing within the Hue Offset range of Color 1 and Color 2.



Setting art edge colors

- 1 In the Art Edge menu, turn on the button (Color 1 to Color 3) for the color for which you want to make settings in the <Color Adjust> group.
- 2 Adjust the following parameters.

Color 1 settings

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Luminance	Luminance	0.00 to 100.00
2	Saturation	Saturation	0.00 to 100.00
3	Hue	Hue	359.99 to 0.00

Color 2 settings

Notes

Color 2 cannot be set when [Flat Color] is selected in the <Art Edge Source> group.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Luminance	Luminance	0.00 to 100.00
2	Saturation	Saturation	0.00 to 100.00
3	Hue Offset	Hue range	-540.0 to +540.0

Color 3 settings

Notes

Color 3 can be set only when [Rainbow Gradation] is selected in the <Art Edge Source> group.

Rounding art edge corners

Press [Round Corner], turning it on.

The art edge corners on the inner and outer sides are rounded.

Notes

This function is available only when [Soft] is on.

Flex Shadow Settings

Notes

- The Flex Shadow function is not supported on the MVE-8000A.
- On the MKS-7470X/7471X, the Flex Shadow function can be used except for the following.
 - [External] in the Flex Shadow Source group
 - [Ext Video] in the Flex Shadow Fill group
- “Mix Color” or “Ext Video” can only be applied to one of the background (*see page 288*), flex shadow, trail (*see page 275*), and wind (*see page 279*) effects. If you select “Mix Color” or “Ext Video” in one of these settings, a selection of “Mix Color” or “Ext Video” in any of the other effects is disabled, and “Flat Color” is selected in its place.
- When executing combining four channels of DME images, “Mix Color” and “Ext Video” in the flex shadow and background effects cannot be selected.

Applying a flex shadow

- 1 In the DME menu, select VF1 'Edge' and HF5 'Flex Shadow.'

The Flex Shadow menu appears.

- 2 Press [Flex Shadow], turning it on.

Notes

The Flex shadow function cannot be enabled when the following functions are enabled.

- Any nonlinear effect
- Brick
- Shadow

- 3 Adjust the following parameters.

The valid ranges of the parameter values depend on the combination of signal format (SD/HD) and aspect ratio (4:3/16:9) selected in the system, as follows.

4:3 mode

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	H	Move shadow horizontally	-8.00 to +8.00 (SD) -24.00 to +24.00 (HD)
2	V	Move shadow vertically	-6.00 to +6.00 (SD) -18.00 to +18.00 (HD)
3	Size All	Enlarge or shrink horizontally and vertically	Value of Size H (see page 241) shown
4	Soft ^{a)}	Softness of shadow	0.00 to 100.00
5	Density	Density of shadow	0.00 to 100.00

a) The Soft parameter is valid only when [Internal] is selected in the <Flex Shadow Source> group.

16:9 mode

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	H	Move shadow horizontally	-8.00 to +8.00 (SD) -32.00 to +32.00 (HD)
2	V	Move shadow vertically	-4.50 to +4.50 (SD) -18.00 to +18.00 (HD)
3	Size All	Enlarge or shrink horizontally and vertically	Value of Size H (see page 241) shown
4	Soft ^{a)}	Softness of shadow	0.00 to 100.00
5	Density	Density of shadow	0.00 to 100.00

a) The Soft parameter is valid only when [Internal] is selected in the <Flex Shadow Source> group.

- 4 In the <Flex Shadow Source> group, select the signal to use for the flex shadow.

External: Generate the shadow using an input signal.

Internal: Generate the shadow using a full-size key signal.

- 5 In the <Flex Shadow Fill> group, select the signal to insert in the flex shadow.

Flat Color: single color

Mix Color: mix color signal set in the Color Mix menu (see page 246)

Ext Video: an external video signal input to the Ext IN connector

- 6 Only if Flat Color is selected in step 5, adjust the following parameters.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Luminance	Luminance	0.00 to 100.00
2	Saturation	Saturation	0.00 to 100.00
3	Hue	Hue	359.99 to 0.00

Adjusting the size of the flex shadow

- 1 In the Flex Shadow menu, press [Size], turning it on.

- 2 Set the following parameters.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Size H	Enlarge or shrink horizontally	0.00 to 2.00
2	Size V	Enlarge or shrink vertically	0.00 to 2.00
3	Size All	Enlarge or shrink horizontally and vertically	Value of Size H shown
4	Soft ^{a)}	Softness of shadow	0.00 to 100.00
5	Density	Density of shadow	0.00 to 100.00

a) The Soft parameter is valid only when [Internal] is selected in the <Flex Shadow Source> group.

Setting the center point of the flex shadow

- 1 In the Flex Shadow menu, press [Axis Loc], turning it on.

2 Adjust the following parameters.

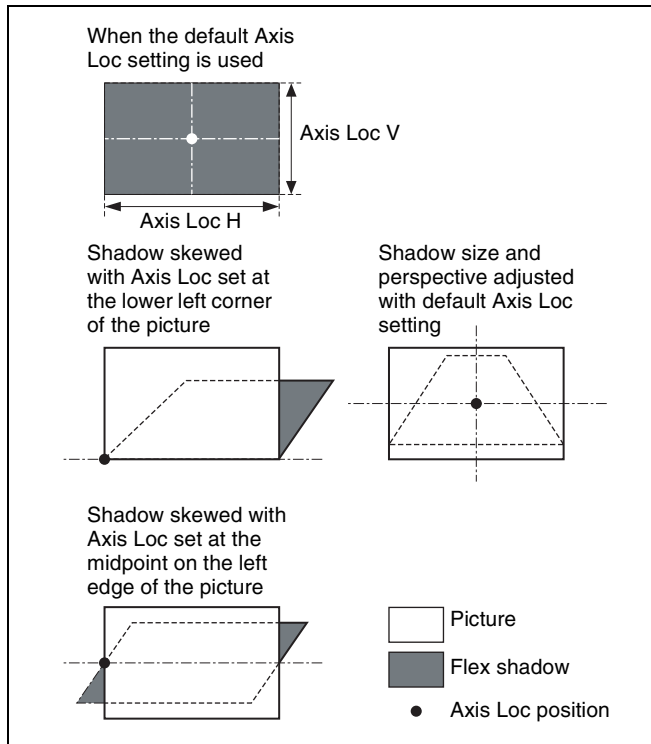
The valid ranges of the parameter values depend on the combination of signal format (SD/HD) and aspect ratio (4:3/16:9) selected in the system, as follows.

4:3 mode

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Axis Loc H	Move the shadow center axis horizontally	-8.00 to +8.00 (SD) -24.00 to +24.00 (HD)
2	Axis Loc V	Move the shadow center axis vertically	-6.00 to +6.00 (SD) -18.00 to +18.00 (HD)

16:9 mode

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Axis Loc H	Move the shadow center axis horizontally	-8.00 to +8.00 (SD) -32.00 to +32.00 (HD)
2	Axis Loc V	Move the shadow center axis vertically	-4.50 to +4.50 (SD) -18.00 to +18.00 (HD)



The flex shadow central axis appears when the [Flex Shadow Axis] function is enabled in the Graphic menu.

For details, see “Graphics Display Operation” (page 231).

Skewing the flex shadow

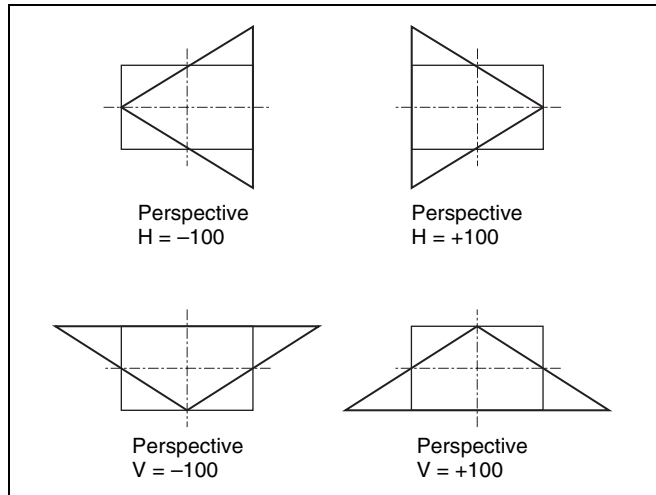
- 1 In the Flex Shadow menu, press [Skew], turning it on.
- 2 Adjust the following parameters.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Skew H	Skew horizontally	-100.00 to +100.00
2	Skew V	Skew vertically	-100.00 to +100.00

Adding perspective to the flex shadow

- 1 In the Flex Shadow menu, press [Perspective], turning it on.
- 2 Adjust the following parameters.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Perspective H	Add horizontal perspective	-100.00 to +100.00
2	Perspective V	Add vertical perspective	-100.00 to +100.00

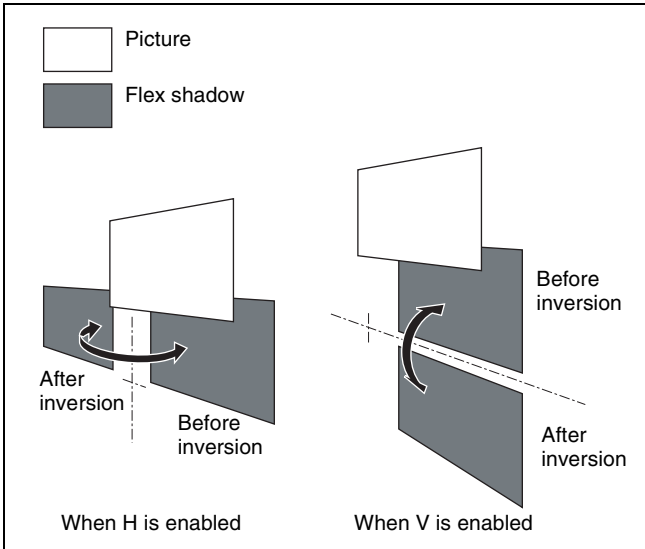


Inverting the flex shadow

In the <Invert> group of the Flex Shadow menu, select the direction to invert the shadow.

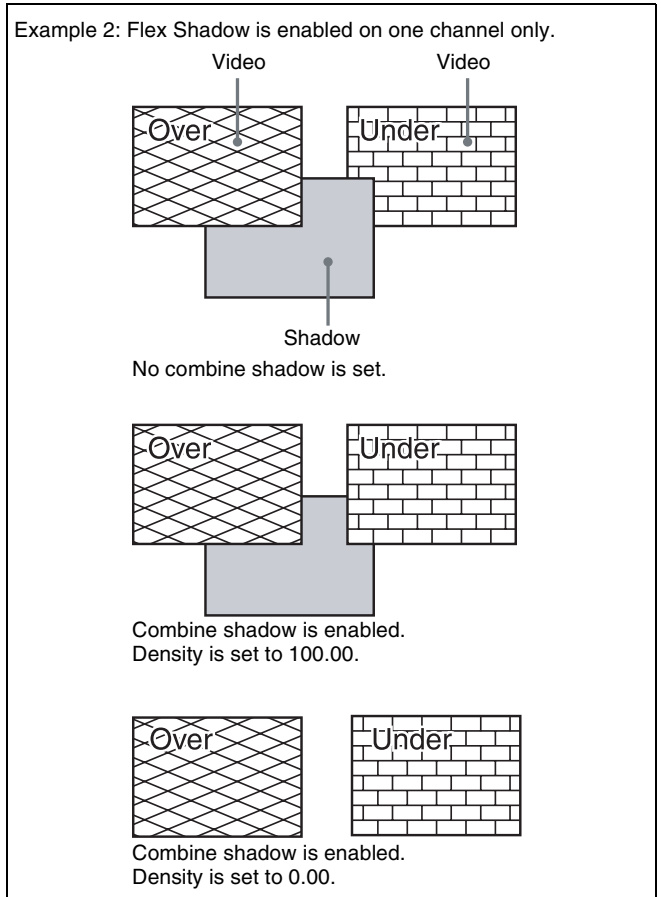
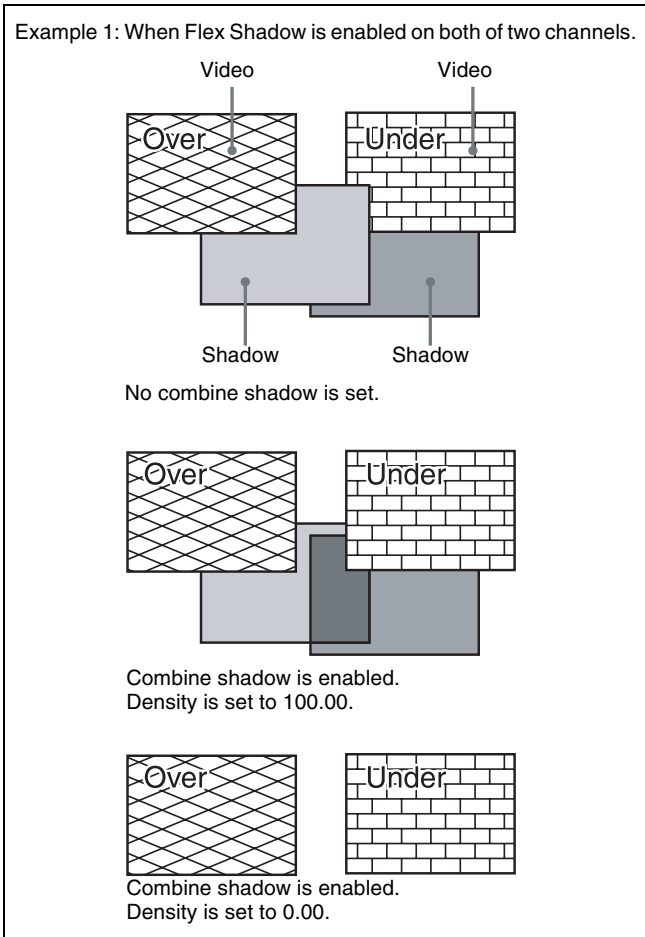
H: Invert the shadow in the horizontal direction. The inversion is applied around the axis of the knob 2 parameter Axis Loc V set with [Axis Loc].

V: Invert the shadow in the vertical direction. The inversion is applied around the axis of the knob 1 parameter Axis Loc H set with [Axis Loc].



Setting a combine shadow

When there are several images, adds a flex shadow in the depth of an image or overlays multiple flex shadows.



- 1** In the Flex Shadow menu, press [Combine Shadow], turning it on.
- 2** Adjust the following parameter.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Density	Density of combine shadow	0.00 to 100.00

Notes

- The Combine Shadow effect is applied to all shadows, not only the sections where shadows overlap.
- Combine Shadow is enabled when the Flex Shadow effect and the global effect Combiner are enabled. In this state, Combine Shadow remains enabled even if the global effect is disabled.
- In Combine Shadow, the settings for the channel with the lowest number among the channels being combined are enabled.

Flex shadow creation example

The flow of flex pattern creation will be explained using the following pattern as an example.



- 1 Press [Flex Shadow], turning it on.
- 2 In the <Flex Shadow> group, select [External].
- 3 Turn [Axis Loc] on and use knob 2 to set the Axis Loc V parameter so that the center of the flex shadow deformation is at the bottom of the picture.
(For HD format and 16:9 mode: Axis Loc V = -9.00)

The following steps will be easier if you display the flex shadow axis graphic by pressing [Flex Shadow Axis] in the Graphic menu.
- 4 Press [V] in the <Invert> group, turning it on, to invert the flex shadow vertically.
- 5 Turn [Size] on and use knob 2 to set the Size V parameter so that the shadow extends vertically.
(For HD format and 16:9 mode: Size V = 1.50)
- 6 Press [Skew], turning it on, and use knob 1 to set the Skew H parameter so that the parallel lines appear to emerge from the depth at the right.
(For HD format and 16:9 mode: Skew H = -50.00)

Wipe Crop Settings

Notes

- The wipe crop function is not supported on the MVE-8000A.
- When wipe crop is on, any mask that was on is turned off.
- When brick is on, wipe crop cannot be turned on. To turn wipe crop on, it is first necessary to turn brick off.
- In the <Shaped Video> group of the Video/Key menu, when [Output] is off, unless you set [Bkgd] in the HF1 'Bkgd' menu to on, the wipe crop effect will not function.

Applying the wipe crop effect

To select the pattern

- 1 In the DME menu, select VF1 'Edge' and HF6 'Wipe Crop.'

The Wipe Crop menu appears.

- 2 Press [Wipe Crop], turning it on.
- 3 Press [Pattern Select].

The Pattern Select menu appears.

- 4 From the displayed patterns (standard wipe patterns 1 to 24 and 304), press any pattern to select it.

In this state, you can use the knobs to adjust the size of the pattern. (For details of parameters, see the next item.)

To set the pattern size and position

- 1 In the Wipe Crop menu, press [Position/Size].
- 2 Set the following parameters.

The setting range for the parameters depends on the signal format (SD/HD) and aspect ratio (4:3/16:9) selected in the system, as follows.

For SD format

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	H	Horizontal position	-8.00 to +8.00
2	V	Vertical position	-6.00 to +6.00 ^{a)} -4.50 to +4.50 ^{b)}
3	Size	Pattern size	0.00 to 100.00
5	Pattern	Pattern number	1 to 24, 304

a) For 4:3 mode

b) For 16:9 mode

Notes

When pattern number 304 is selected, the effect of settings in the <Edge> group varies with the Size setting.

For HD format

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	H	Horizontal position	-24.00 to +24.00 ^{a)} -32.00 to +32.00 ^{b)}
2	V	Vertical position	-18.00 to +18.00
3	Size	Pattern size	0.00 to 100.00
5	Pattern	Pattern number	1 to 24, 304

a) For 4:3 mode

b) For 16:9 mode

Notes

When pattern number 304 is selected, the effect of settings in the <Edge> group varies with the Size setting.

To invert the regions of the cropping

In the Wipe Crop menu, press [Invert], turning it on.

Setting the aspect ratio of the wipe crop pattern (Aspect)

1 In the Wipe Crop menu, press [Aspect], turning it on.

2 Set the following parameter.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Aspect	Aspect ratio	-100.00 to +100.00 a)

a) When set to a negative value, the image is stretched vertically, to become taller.
When set to a positive value, the image is stretched horizontally, to become wider.

Rotating the wipe crop pattern (Rotation)

1 In the <Rotation> group of the Wipe Crop menu, select one of the following.

Angle: Incline the pattern through a fixed angle.

Speed: Rotate the pattern at a fixed speed.

2 Depending on the selection in step **1**, set the following parameter.

When Angle is selected

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Angle	Angle of pattern rotation	-8.00 to +8.00 ^{a)}

a) -1.00 represents a whole turn counterclockwise, and +1.00 represents a whole turn clockwise. 0.00 is the original state.

When Speed is selected

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Speed	Rotation rate of pattern	-100.00 to +100.00 a)

a) -100.00 represents a speed of four whole turns counterclockwise per second, and +100.00 represents a speed of four whole turns clockwise per second. 0.00 is the stationary state.

Applying modulation to the wipe crop pattern (Modulation)

1 In the <Modulation> group of the Wipe Crop menu, select one of the following.

H (horizontal modulation): Modulate the pattern to apply waving in the horizontal direction.

V (vertical modulation): Modulate the pattern to apply waving in the vertical direction.

2 Set the following parameters.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Amplitude	Amplitude of modulation	0.00 to 100.00
2	Frequency	Frequency of modulation	0.00 to 100.00
3	Speed	Speed of waves	-100.00 to +100.00

Replicating the wipe crop pattern (Multiplication)

1 In the Wipe Crop menu, press [Multi], turning it on.

2 Set the following parameters.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	H Multi	Number of repetitions of pattern horizontally	1 to 63
2	V Multi	Number of repetitions of pattern vertically	1 to 63
3	Invert Type	Replication layout	1 to 4 ^{a)}

a) See the replication patterns (page 125).

Modifying the wipe crop pattern edge

You can apply a border to the wipe crop pattern, or soften the boundary.

1 In the <Edge> group of the Wipe Crop menu, select one of the following.

Border: border

Soft: soft edge

Soft Border: soft border

2 Depending on the selection in step **1**, set the following parameters.

When Border is selected

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Width	Border width	0.00 to 100.00

When Soft is selected

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Soft	Edge softness	0.00 to 100.00

When Soft Border is selected

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Width	Border width	0.00 to 100.00
2	Inner Soft	Border inner softness	0.00 to 100.00
3	Outer Soft	Border outer softness	0.00 to 100.00

Selecting the signal or color to be inserted in the wipe crop border

When you are applying a border or soft border to the wipe crop, you can select the signal or color to be inserted in the border.

- 1 In the <Border Fill> group of the Wipe Crop menu, select one of the following.

Flat Color: flat color

Mix Color: a mix color signal combining color 1 and color 2 (see the next section, “Color Mix Settings”)

Ext Video: an external video signal input to the Ext IN connector

- 2 When Flat Color is selected in step 1 only, adjust the following parameters.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Luminance	Luminance	0.00 to 100.00
2	Saturation	Saturation	0.00 to 100.00
3	Hue	Hue	359.99 to 0.00

Color Mix Settings**Notes**

The color mix function is not supported on the MVE-8000A.

Creating a color combination pattern**To select the pattern**

- 1 In the DME menu, select VF1 ‘Edge’ and HF7 ‘Color Mix.’

The Color Mix menu appears.

- 2 Press [Mix Pattern Select].

The Mix Pattern Select menu appears.

- 3 Press any of the displayed patterns (standard wipe patterns 1 to 24) to select it.

In this state, you can adjust the pattern size and border softness with the knobs.

(For details of the parameters, see the next item.)

To set the pattern size and position

- 1 In the Color Mix menu, press [Position/Size].
- 2 Set the following parameters.

The setting range for the parameters depends on the system selected signal format (SD/HD) and aspect ratio (4:3/16:9), as follows.

For SD format

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	H	Horizontal position	-8.00 to +8.00
2	V	Vertical position	-6.00 to +6.00 ^{a)} -4.50 to +4.50 ^{b)}
3	Size	Pattern size	0.00 to 100.00
4	Soft	Softness of the pattern	0.00 to 100.00
5	Pattern	Pattern number	1 to 24

a) For 4:3 mode

b) For 16:9 mode

For HD format

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	H	Horizontal position	-24.00 to +24.00 ^{a)} -32.00 to +32.00 ^{b)}
2	V	Vertical position	-18.00 to +18.00
3	Size	Pattern size	0.00 to 100.00
4	Soft	Softness of the pattern	0.00 to 100.00
5	Pattern	Pattern number	1 to 24

a) For 4:3 mode

b) For 16:9 mode

To invert the regions of the two colors

In the Color Mix menu, press [Color Invert], turning it on.

Adjusting the color 1 and color 2

- 1 In the Color Mix menu, to adjust color 1 press [Color1], and to adjust color 2 press [Color2].

- 2 Set the following parameters.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Luminance	Luminance	0.00 to 100.00
2	Saturation	Saturation	0.00 to 100.00
3	Hue	Hue	359.99 to 0.00

Modifying the color combination pattern

See the following pages.

- “Setting the aspect ratio of the wipe crop pattern (Aspect)” (page 245)
- “Replicating the wipe crop pattern (Multiplication)” (page 245)
- “Rotating the wipe crop pattern (Rotation)” (page 245)
- “Applying modulation to the wipe crop pattern (Modulation)” (page 245)

Applying Special Effects (Effects on the Overall Video Signal)

Defocus Settings

Applying the Defocus effect

- 1 In the DME menu, select VF2 ‘Video Modify’ and HF1 ‘Defocus/Blur.’

The Defocus/Blur menu appears.

- 2 Press [Defocus], turning it on.

Notes

On the MVE-8000A, the Defocus and Glow effects cannot be enabled at the same time. The effect which was turned on most recently is enabled.

- 3 In the <Defocus Mode> group, select the signal to which to apply the defocus effect.

Video/Key: Video signal and key signal

Video: Video signal only

Key: Key signal only

Notes

“Key” can be selected only when the DME is connected through an SDI interface.

- 4 Set the parameters.

When Video/Key is selected (with DME dedicated interface)

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	H	Horizontal defocusing of video and key signals	0.00 to 100.00
2	V	Vertical defocusing of video and key signals	0.00 to 100.00
3	All	Horizontal and vertical defocusing of video and key signals	H value shown

When Video/Key is selected (with SDI-interfaced DME)

Parameter group [1/2]

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	V/K H	Horizontal defocusing of video and key signals	Video H value shown
2	V/K V	Vertical defocusing of video and key signals	Video V value shown
3	V/K All	Horizontal and vertical defocusing of video and key signals	Video H value shown
4	Video All	Horizontal and vertical defocusing of video signal	Video H value shown
5	Key All	Horizontal and vertical defocusing of key signal	Key H value shown

Parameter group [2/2]

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Settings values
1	Video H	Horizontal defocusing of video signal	0.00 to 100.00
2	Video V	Vertical defocusing of video signal	0.00 to 100.00
3	Key H	Horizontal defocusing of key signal	0.00 to 100.00
4	Key V	Vertical defocusing of key signal	0.00 to 100.00

When Video is selected

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	H	Horizontal defocusing of video signal	0.00 to 100.00
2	V	Vertical defocusing of video signal	0.00 to 100.00
3	All	Horizontal and vertical defocusing of video signal	H value shown

When Key is selected (with SDI-interfaced DME)

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Settings values
1	H	Horizontal defocusing of key signal	0.00 to 100.00
2	V	Vertical defocusing of key signal	0.00 to 100.00
3	All	Horizontal and vertical defocusing of key signal	H value shown

- To cancel black level leaking that can occur at the edge of the screen when the Defocus effect is enabled, press [Clean Defocus], turning it on.

Masking the Defocus effect with a selected pattern

Press [Mask] to display the Mask menu, and set the pattern type and modifiers (*see page 254*).

Blur Settings

Applying the Blur effect

- In the DME menu, select VF2 'Video Modify' and HF1 'Defocus/Blur.'

The Defocus/Blur menu appears.

- Press [Blur], turning it on.

Notes

On the MVE-8000A, the Glow and Blur effects cannot be enabled at the same time. The effect which was turned on most recently is enabled.

- When the DME is connected through an SDI interface, in the <Blur Mode> group, select the signal to which you want apply the Blur effect.

Video/Key: Video signal and key signal

Video: Video signal only

Key: Key signal only

- Set the parameters.

When the DME dedicated interface is used

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	H	Horizontal defocusing of video and key signals	0.00 to 100.00

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
2	V	Vertical defocusing of video and key signals	0.00 to 100.00
3	All	Horizontal and vertical defocusing of video and key signals	H value shown

When Video/Key is selected (with SDI-interfaced DME)

Parameter group [1/2]

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Settings values
1	V/K H	Horizontal defocusing of video and key signals	Video H value shown
2	V/K V	Vertical defocusing of video and key signals	Video V value shown
3	V/K All	Horizontal and vertical defocusing of video and key signals	Video H value shown
4	Video All	Horizontal and vertical defocusing of video signal	Video H value shown
5	Key All	Horizontal and vertical defocusing of key signal	Key H value shown

Parameter group [2/2]

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Settings values
1	Video H	Horizontal defocusing of video signal	0.00 to 100.00
2	Video V	Vertical defocusing of video signal	0.00 to 100.00
3	Key H	Horizontal defocusing of key signal	0.00 to 100.00
4	Key V	Vertical defocusing of key signal	0.00 to 100.00

When video is selected (with SDI-interfaced DME)

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Settings values
1	H	Horizontal defocusing of video signal	0.00 to 100.00

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Settings values
2	V	Vertical defocusing of video signal	0.00 to 100.00
3	All	Horizontal and vertical defocusing of video signal	H value shown

When Key is selected (with SDI-interfaced DME)

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Settings values
1	H	Horizontal defocusing of key signal	0.00 to 100.00
2	V	Vertical defocusing of key signal	0.00 to 100.00
3	All	Horizontal and vertical defocusing of key signal	H value shown

Masking the Blur effect with a selected pattern

Press [Mask] to display the Mask menu, and set the pattern type and modifiers (*see page 254*).

Multi Move Settings

Applying the Multi Move effect

- 1 In the DME menu, select VF2 'Video Modify' and HF2 'Multi Move.'

The Multi Move menu appears.

- 2 Press [Multi Move], turning it on.

- 3 Set the parameters.

The valid ranges of the parameter values depend on the combination of signal format (SD/HD) and aspect ratio (4:3/16:9) selected in the system, as follows.

4:3 mode

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Center X	x-value of shrinking center point	-4.00 to +4.00 (SD) -12.00 to +12.00 (HD)
2	Center Y	y-value of shrinking center point	-3.00 to +3.00 (SD) -9.00 to +9.00 (HD)
3	Size	Shrinking ratio	0.00 to 100.00

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
4	Aspect	Aspect ratio of shrunken images	-100.00 to +100.00 ^{a)}

a) Specify minus values to stretch the image in the vertical direction, and plus values to stretch the image in the horizontal direction.

16:9 mode

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Center X	x-value of shrinking center point	-4.00 to +4.00 (SD) -16.00 to +16.00 (HD)
2	Center Y	y-value of shrinking center point	-2.25 to +2.25(SD) -9.00 to +9.00 (HD)
3	Size	Shrinking ratio	0.00 to 100.00
4	Aspect	Aspect ratio of shrunken images	-100.00 to +100.00 ^{a)}

a) Specify minus values to stretch the image in the vertical direction, and plus values to stretch the image in the horizontal direction.

Sepia Settings

Applying the Sepia effect

- 1 In the DME menu, select VF2 'Video Modify' and HF3 'Color Modify.'

The Color Modify menu appears.

- 2 Press [Sepia], turning it on.
- 3 Set the following parameters.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Mix Y	Y signal mix amount	0.00 to 100.00
2	Mix C	Chroma signal mix amount	0.00 to 100.00
3	Mix All	Y signal and chroma signal mix amount	Mix Y value shown

- 4 To set the color of the sepia image, press [Sepia Color], turning it on, and adjust the parameters.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Luminance	Luminance	0.00 to 100.00
2	Saturation	Saturation	0.00 to 100.00
3	Hue	Hue	359.99 to 0.00

Masking the Sepia effect with a selected pattern

Press [Mask] to display the Mask menu, and set the pattern type and modifiers (*see page 254*).

Mono Settings

Applying the Mono effect

- 1 In the DME menu, select VF2 'Video Modify' and HF3 'Color Modify.'

The Color Modify menu appears.

- 2 Press [Mono], turning it on.

Masking the Mono effect with a selected pattern

Press [Mask] to display the Mask menu, and set the pattern type and modifiers (*see page 254*).

Posterization and Solarization Settings

You can specify the degree of luminance coarsening. You can specify the degree of chroma coarsening.

Applying the Posterization or Solarization effect

- 1 In the DME menu, select VF2 'Video Modify' and HF3 'Color Modify.'

The Color Modify menu appears.

- 2 Press [Poster/Solar], turning it on.
- 3 Set the parameters.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Poster	Coarseness of luminance gradations (Posterization parameter)	0.00 to 100.00
2	Solar	Coarseness of chroma gradations (Solarization parameter)	0.00 to 100.00

Masking the Posterization or Solarization effect with a selected pattern

Press [Mask] to display the Mask menu, and set the pattern type and modifiers (*see page 254*).

Nega Settings

Applying the Nega effect

- 1 In the DME menu, select VF2 'Video Modify' and HF3 'Color Modify.'

The Color Modify menu appears.

- 2 Press [Nega Y] or [Nega C], turning it on, or press both buttons, turning them on.

Nega Y: Reverse the luminance.

Nega C: Reverse the chroma.

Masking the Nega effect with a selected pattern

Press [Mask] to display the Mask menu, and set the pattern type and modifiers (*see page 254*).

Contrast Settings

Applying the Contrast effect

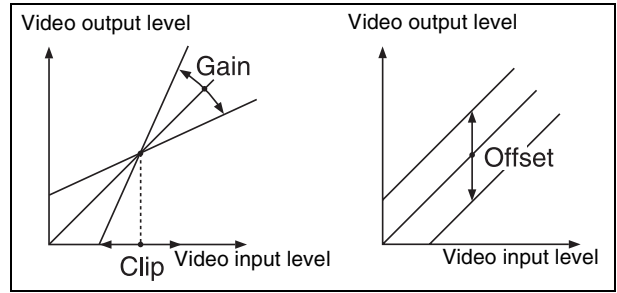
- 1 In the DME menu, select VF2 'Video Modify' and HF3 'Color Modify.'

The Color Modify menu appears.

- 2 Press [Contrast], turning it on.

- 3 Set the parameters.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Y Clip	Luminance clip level	+109.59 to -7.31
2	Y Gain	Luminance contrast gradient	-100.00 to +100.00
3	Y Offset	Luminance offset level increment	-100.00 to +100.00
4	C Gain	Chroma contrast gradient	-100.00 to +100.00



Clip, Gain, Offset

Masking the Contrast effect with a selected pattern

Press [Mask] to display the Mask menu, and set the pattern type and modifiers (*see page 254*).

Mosaic Settings

Applying the Mosaic effect

- 1 In the DME menu, select VF2 'Video Modify' and HF4 'Mosaic.'

The Mosaic menu appears.

- 2 Press [Mosaic], turning it on.

- 3 Set the following parameters.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Size	Size of tiles	0.00 to 100.00
2	Aspect	Aspect ratio of tiles	-100.00 to +100.00 ^{a)}

a) Specify minus values to stretch the tiles in the vertical direction, and plus values to stretch the tiles in the horizontal direction.

Masking the Mosaic effect with a selected pattern

Press [Mask] to display the Mask menu, and set the pattern type and modifiers (*see page 254*).

Sketch Settings

Applying the Sketch effect

- 1 In the DME menu, select VF7 'Enhanced Video Modify' and HF1 'Sketch.'

The Sketch menu appears.

- 2 Press [Sketch], turning it on.

- 3** Select the method for applying outlines in the <Sketch Mode> group.

Sketch: Apply an effect like a sketch.

Edge Color: Enhance the outlines.

Draw: Apply an effect like a line drawing.

Relief: Apply a bas-relief effect.

Sharp: Increase the apparent sharpness.

- 4** Set the following parameters, according to the method selected in step **3**.

When Sketch is selected

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Mix	Mix amount for Sketch video and input video	0.00 to 100.00 ^{a)}
2	Clip	Reference level for outline extraction	-100.00 to +100.00 ^{b)}
3	Gain	Image gain for outline extraction	-100.00 to +100.00
4	C Gain	Chroma gain of input video	-100.00 to +100.00

a) 100.00 gives an image completely transformed by the Sketch effect. 0.00 is the original input image.

b) The larger the Clip value, the narrower the outline width.

When Edge Color is selected

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Mix	Mix amount for Edge Color video and input video	0.00 to 100.00 ^{a)}
2	Clip	Reference level for outline extraction	-100.00 to +100.00 ^{b)}

a) 100.00 gives an image completely transformed by the Sketch effect. 0.00 is the original input image.

b) The larger the Clip value, the narrower the outline width.

When Draw is selected

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Mix	Mix amount for Draw video and input video	0.00 to 100.00 ^{a)}
2	Clip	Reference level for outline extraction	-100.00 to +100.00 ^{b)}
3	Gain	Image gain for outline extraction	-100.00 to +100.00

a) 100.00 gives an image completely transformed by the Sketch effect. 0.00 is the original input image.

b) The larger the Clip value, the narrower the outline width.

When Relief is selected

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Mix	Mix amount for Relief video and input video	0.00 to 100.00 ^{a)}
2	Offset	Relief luminance level	-100.00 to +100.00
3	Gain	Image gain for outline extraction	-100.00 to +100.00
4	Angle	Direction of relief image light source	-8.00 to +8.00

a) 100.00 gives an image completely transformed by the Sketch effect. 0.00 is the original input image.

When Sharp is selected

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	H	Simultaneously adjust the left and right resolution	0.00 to 100.00
2	V	Simultaneously adjust the top and bottom resolution	0.00 to 100.00
3	All	Simultaneously adjust the resolution of all four sides	0.00 to 100.00
5	Coring	Minimum value of edge to emphasize	0.00 to 100.00

- 5** If you selected other than Sharp in step **3**, depending on the necessity, proceed as follows.

To adjust the outline color for Edge Color or Draw
Turn [Edge Matte] on and set the following parameters to set the outline color.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Luminance	Luminance	0.00 to 100.00
2	Saturation	Saturation	0.00 to 100.00
3	Hue	Hue	359.99 to 0.00

To set the color of the sections other than the outlines for Draw

Press [Matte], turning it on, and adjust the following parameters to set the color of the sections other than the outlines.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Luminance	Luminance	0.00 to 100.00
2	Saturation	Saturation	0.00 to 100.00
3	Hue	Hue	359.99 to 0.00

To select the signal to mix with the relief pattern for Relief

In the <Chroma Type> group, select the signal to mix with the relief pattern.

Matte: Select a single color. The following parameters can be adjusted.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
2	Saturation	Saturation	0.00 to 100.00
3	Hue	Hue	359.99 to 0.00

Video: Select the input video signal.

- To invert white and black in the extracted video, or to invert the outlines and the sections other than the outlines, press [Nega], turning it on.

Masking the Sketch effect with a selected pattern

Press [Mask] to display the Mask menu and set the type of pattern and modifiers (*see page 254*).

Metal Settings

Applying the Metal effect

- In the DME menu, select VF7 ‘Enhanced Video Modify’ and HF2 ‘Metal.’

The Metal menu appears.

- Press [Metal], turning it on.
- Set the parameters.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Mix Ratio	Mix amount for Metal video and input video	0.00 to 100.00
2	Y Clip	Clip level of input signal Y level	0.00 to 100.00

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
3	Y Gain	Amount of gain for clip adjusted input signal Y level	-100.00 to +100.00
4	Y Offset	Offset added to clip and gain adjusted input Y signal	0.00 to 100.00

- In the <Metal Mode> group, select the type of metallic gloss.

Gold: Give a gold gloss to the input video.

Silver: Give a silver gloss to the input video.

Rainbow: Give a rainbow color gloss to the input video.

Variable: Give a metallic gloss to the input video in any color by adjusting the following parameters.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
2	Saturation	Saturation	0.00 to 100.00
3	Hue	Hue	359.99 to 0.00

Masking the Metal effect with a selected pattern

Press [Mask] to display the Mask menu and set the type of pattern and modifiers (*see page 254*).

Dim and Fade Settings

Notes

The Dim and Fade functions are not supported on the MVE-8000A.

Applying the Dim effect

- In the DME menu, select VF7 ‘Enhanced Video Modify’ and HF3 ‘Dim & Fade.’

The Dim & Fade menu appears.

- Press [Dim], turning it on.
- Set the following parameters.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Start	Point where dimming starts (dim start point)	-100.00 to +100.00

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
2	Gain	Degree of dimming	0.00 to 100.00

- 4 Press [Flat Color] and set the parameters for the color of the depths of the picture.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Luminance	Luminance	0.00 to 100.00
2	Saturation	Saturation	0.00 to 100.00
3	Hue	Hue	359.99 to 0.00

Applying the Fade effect

- 1 In the DME menu, select VF7 'Enhanced Video Modify' and HF3 'Dim & Fade.'

The Dim & Fade menu appears.

- 2 Press [Fade], turning it on.

- 3 Set the parameters.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Start	Point where fading starts (fade start point)	-100.00 to +100.00
2	Gain	Degree of fading	0.00 to 100.00

Glow Settings

Applying the Glow effect

- 1 In the DME menu, select VF7 'Enhanced Video Modify' and HF4 'Glow.'

The Glow menu appears.

- 2 Press [Glow], turning it on.

Notes

- On the MVE-9000 and MVS-7470X/7471X, the key border function and Glow function cannot be turned on at the same time. The function most recently turned on is effective.
- On the MVE-8000A, the Defocus and Glow effects or the Blur and Glow effects cannot be turned on at the same time. The effect most recently turned on is effective.

- 3 Set the parameters.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Clip	Reference level for highlight detection	0.00 to 100.00
2	Gain	Amount of gain for highlights	-100.00 to +100.00
3	Soft	Softness	0.00 to 100.00

- 4 Press [Matte] and set the glow color.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Luminance	Luminance	0.00 to 100.00
2	Saturation	Saturation	0.00 to 100.00
3	Hue	Hue	359.99 to 0.00

Inverting the highlight areas

Press [Glow Invert], turning it on.

The highlight and non-highlight areas are inverted.

Masking the Glow effect with a selected pattern

Press [Mask] to display the Mask menu and set the type of pattern and modifiers (*see page 254*).

Notes

When the signal format is 1080P (3G) on the MKS-7470X/7471X, masking will cause the edges to get blurred.

Mask Settings

Applying masks

- 1 In the DME menu, select VF2 'Video Modify' and HF7 'Mask.'

The Mask menu appears.

- 2 In the <Mask> group, press the button for the group of the effect to which you want to apply the mask, turning it on.

Effect Gp 1: Posterization, Solarization, Nega, Sepia, Mono, Contrast, Mosaic, Sketch, Metal

Effect Gp 2: Defocus, Blur, Glow

Notes

On the MVE-8000A, Effect Gp 1 and Effect Gp 2 cannot be turned on at the same time.

3 Press [Position/Size].

4 Set the mask source parameters.

The valid ranges of the parameter values depend on the combination of signal format (SD/HD) and aspect ratio (4:3/16:9) selected in the system, as follows.

4:3 mode

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	H	Horizontal position	-8.00 to +8.00 (SD) -24.00 to +24.00 (HD)
2	V	Vertical position	-6.00 to +6.00 (SD) -18.00 to +18.00 (HD)
3	Size	Size of mask	0.00 to 100.00
4	Soft	Softness of mask	0.00 to 100.00
5	Pattern	Pattern number	21, 24, 304 ^{a)}

a) This setting value is not supported on the MVE-8000A.

16:9 mode

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	H	Horizontal position	-8.00 to +8.00 (SD) -32.00 to +32.00 (HD)
2	V	Vertical position	-4.50 to +4.50 (SD) -18.00 to +18.00 (HD)
3	Size	Size of mask	0.00 to 100.00
4	Soft	Softness of mask	0.00 to 100.00
5	Pattern	Pattern number	21, 24, 304 ^{a)}

a) This setting value is not supported on the MVE-8000A.

5 To invert the mask source, press [Invert], turning it on.

6 As required, set the modifiers for the mask pattern.

When turning [Aspect] on and adjusting the pattern aspect ratio

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Aspect	Aspect ratio	-100.00 to +100.00 ^{a)}

a) When a minus value is specified, the picture is extended in the vertical direction. When a plus value is specified, the picture is extended in the horizontal direction.

When turning [Angle] on in the <Rotation> group and slanting the pattern

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Angle	Rotation angle of pattern	-8.00 to +8.00 ^{a)}

a) -1.00 is one rotation in counterclockwise direction. +1.00 is one rotation in clockwise direction. 0.00 is no rotation.

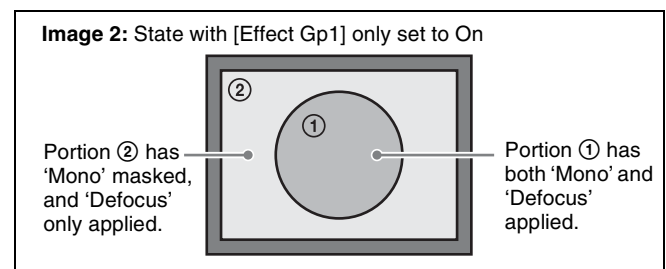
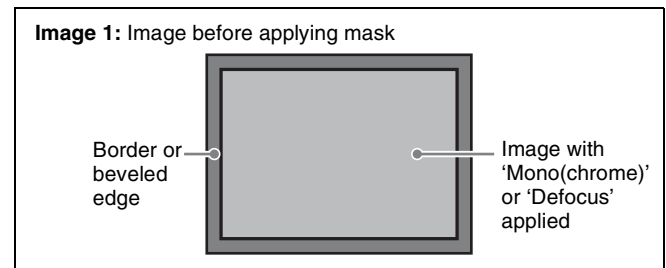
When turning [Speed] on in the <Rotation> group and rotating the pattern at a specified speed

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Speed	Rotation speed of pattern	-100.00 to +100.00 ^{a)}

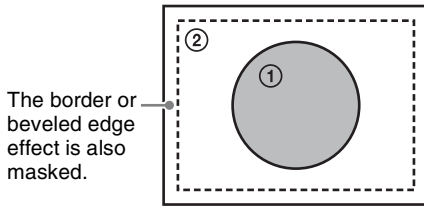
a) -100.00 is four rotations per second in counterclockwise direction. +100.00 is four rotations per second in clockwise direction. 0.00 is no rotation.

Notes on applying a mask effect with a DME (only when using the MKS-7470X/7471X or MVE-9000)

In the <Mask> group of the DME >Video Modify >Mask menu, if [Effect Gp1] and [Effect Gp2] are simultaneously set to On, then the border or beveled edge is also masked. The following explains this with the example of using a circular mask pattern.



In the state corresponding to image 2, if you switch [Effect Gp2] to On, then the mask should be applied to portion ② only, but in fact the border or beveled edge is also masked.

Image 3: State with [Effect Gp1] and [Effect Gp2] set to On

Freeze Settings

Freezes the input video. The following types are available:

Hard Freeze: Freezes the input video at an arbitrary timing.

Time Strobe: Freezes the input video at specified intervals for a specified length.

Film: Slows the apparent frame rate, for an effect like film. You can specify the ratio of advancement.

For Hard Freeze and Time Strobe, you can select the first field or the frame as the freeze timing.

Notes

When 720P or 1080P signal format is used, the Film mode cannot be selected.

To apply a Freeze effect, start by displaying the Freeze menu. In the DME menu, select VF3 'Freeze' and HF1 'Freeze.'

Applying the Hard Freeze effect

1 In the <Freeze Timing> group, select the signal freeze timing.

Frame: Freeze one frame of signal.

Field 1: Freeze the first field of signal.

2 In the <Freeze> group, press [Hard Freeze], turning it on.

Applying the Time Strobe effect

1 In the <Freeze Timing> group, select the signal freeze timing.

Frame: Freeze one frame of signal.

Field 1: Freeze the first field of signal.

Notes

The freeze timing setting is not required when the following signal formats are being used.

1080P/50, 1080P/59.94, 1080PsF/23.976,
1080PsF/24, 1080PsF/25, 1080PsF/29.97, 720P/
50, 720P/59.94

2 In the <Freeze> group, press [Time Strobe], turning it on.

3 Set the parameters.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Duration	Freeze interval	1 to 255 (frames)
2	Live	Ratio of live video inserted between freeze images	0.00 to 100.00

Applying the Film effect

Notes

When 720P or 1080P signal format is used, the Film mode cannot be selected.

1 In the <Freeze> group, press [Film], turning it on.

2 Set the parameter.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Film	Ratio of frame advance	0.00 to 100.00

Applying Special Effects (Nonlinear Effect Settings)

You can add a variety of effects, including effects that change the shape of the image as a whole.

- 1 In the DME menu, select VF4 'Non Linear/Corner Pin' and HF1 'Non Linear.'
A menu for selecting the various effects appears.
- 2 Display the menu for the effect that you want to apply by pressing its button.
- 3 Make the settings for the selected effect.

Notes

- It is not possible to apply two or more nonlinear effects at the same time. Turning any nonlinear effect on automatically turns all other nonlinear effects off.
- The Flex Shadow function cannot be enabled when any of the nonlinear effects Page Turn, Roll, Cylinder, and Sphere is enabled.
- However, the Flex Shadow function is not supported on the MVE-8000A.

To turn an effect off

In the setting menu, press the button for the effect name, turning it off, or in the Type menu press [OFF] in the lower right part of the window.

Wave Settings

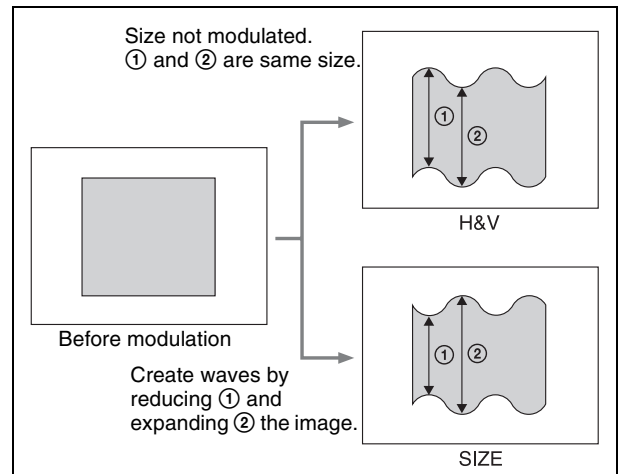
There are two modes: H&V and Size. You can set the size and frequency of the waves, the wave form, the amount of wave movement, and the range. In H&V mode, you can also set the wave angle.

To apply the Wave effect

With the Wave menu displayed, use the following procedure.

- 1 In the <Mode> group, select the wave modulation mode.
H&V: Modulate vertically and horizontally without changing the size of the image. This mode allows waves to be created in both the vertical and horizontal directions at the same time.

Size: Create waves by reducing and expanding the image. This mode allows waves to be created in one direction only.



- 2 Set the following parameters, according to the selected mode.

When H&V is selected

Parameter group [1/2]

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Amp H	Amplitude of waves in horizontal direction	0.00 to 100.00
2	Freq H	Frequency of waves in horizontal direction	0.00 to 100.00
3	Offset H ^{a)}	Horizontal direction in which to offset wave phase and amount of movement	-16.00 to +16.00 ^{c)} -64.00 to +64.00 ^{d)}
4	Speed H ^{b)}	Horizontal direction and speed of waves	-100.00 to +100.00
5	Slant	Slant of waves	-8.000 to +8.000

Parameter group [2/2]

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Amp V	Amplitude of waves in vertical direction	0.00 to 100.00
2	Freq V	Frequency of waves in vertical direction	0.00 to 100.00

Parameter group [2/2]

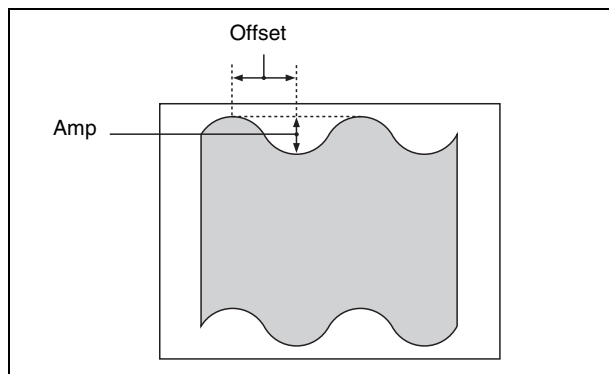
Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
3	Offset V ^{a)}	Vertical direction in which to offset wave phase and amount of movement	-16.00 to +16.00 ^{c)} -64.00 to +64.00 ^{d)}
4	Speed V ^{b)}	Vertical direction and speed of waves	-100.00 to +100.00
5	Slant	Slant of waves	-8.000 to +8.000

- a) Set when Lock is on.
- b) Set when Lock is off.
- c) Setting for SD 4:3, SD 16:9
- d) Setting for HD 4:3, HD 16:9

When Size is selected

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Amp H	Amplitude of waves	0.00 to 100.00
2	Freq H	Frequency of waves	0.00 to 100.00
3	Offset H ^{a)}	Direction in which to offset wave phase and amount of movement	-16.00 to +16.00 ^{c)} -64.00 to +64.00 ^{d)}
4	Speed H ^{b)}	Direction and speed of waves	-100.00 to +100.00
5	Slant	Slant of waves	-8.000 to +8.000

- a) Set when Lock is on.
- b) Set when Lock is off.
- c) Setting for SD 4:3, SD 16:9
- d) Setting for HD 4:3, HD 16:9



To stop the waves

Press [Lock], turning it on.
With each press, the waves alternately stop and start moving again.

To select the waveform

Press [Form] and set the following parameters.

When H&V mode is selected

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Form H	Waveform in horizontal direction	1 to 6 ^{a)}
2	Form V	Waveform in vertical direction	1 to 6 ^{a)}

When Size mode is selected

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Form H	Waveform	1 to 6 ^{a)}

- a) 1 (SINE): Sine wave
- 2 (PARABOLA): Parabola wave
- 3 (TRIANGLE): Triangular wave
- 4 (RECTANGLE): Rectangular wave
- 5 (CIRCLE): Circular wave
- 6 (CUBIC): Cubic wave

To randomize the modulated waveform

- 1 Press [Random], turning it on.
- 2 Set the following parameters.

When H&V mode is selected

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Random H	Degree of randomness in horizontal waveform modulation	0.00 to 100.00
2	Random V	Degree of randomness in vertical waveform modulation	0.00 to 100.00
3	Random All	Degree of randomness in both vertical and horizontal directions	Random H value shown

When Size mode is selected

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Random H	Degree of randomness in waveform modulation	0.00 to 100.00

To limit the wave range

- 1 Press [Range], turning it on.
- 2 Set the following parameters.

When H&V mode is selected

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Size H	Amount of horizontal wave modulation	0.00 to 100.00
2	Offset H	Center point of horizontal modulation range	-8.000 to +8.000 ^{a)} -32.000 to +32.000 ^{b)}
3	Size V	Amount of vertical wave modulation	0.00 to 100.00
4	Offset V	Center point of vertical modulation range	-8.000 to +8.000 ^{a)} -32.000 to +32.000 ^{b)}

a) Setting for SD 4:3, SD 16:9

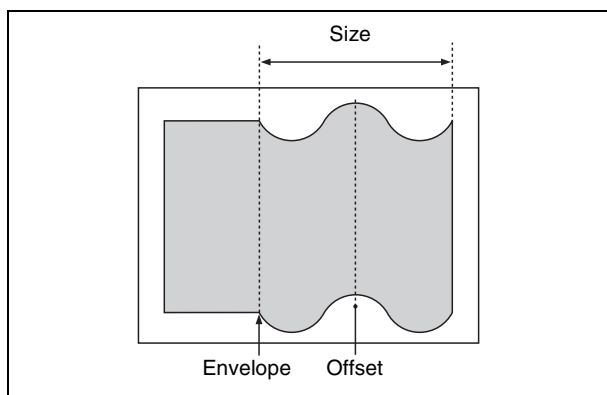
b) Setting for HD 4:3, HD 16:9

When Size mode is selected

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Size H	Amount of wave modulation	0.00 to 100.00
2	Offset H	Center point of modulation range	-8.000 to +8.000 ^{a)} -32.000 to +32.000 ^{b)}

a) Setting for SD 4:3, SD 16:9

b) Setting for HD 4:3, HD 16:9

**To smooth the range envelope when the wave range is limited**

- 1 Press [Range Envelope], turning it on.
- 2 Set the following parameters.

When H&V mode is selected

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Envelope H	Smoothness of envelope in horizontal direction	0.00 to 100.00

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
2	Envelope V	Smoothness of envelope in vertical direction	0.00 to 100.00

When Size mode is selected

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Envelope H	Smoothness of envelope	0.00 to 100.00

To reverse the wave range**To reverse the horizontal wave range set with [Range]:**

Press [Range Rev H], turning it on.

To reverse the vertical wave range set with [Range]:

Press [Range Rev V], turning it on.

Mosaic Glass Settings

There are two modes: H&V and Size. You can set the size and frequency of waves in the image, the wave form, the amount of wave movement, and the range. In H&V mode, you can also set the wave angle.

To apply the Mosaic Glass effect

Display the Mosaic Glass menu.

The items displayed in the Mosaic Glass menu and the functions of the knobs are the same as for the Wave menu (*see page 257*).

Flag Settings

There are two modes: H&V and Size. You can set the size and frequency of waves in the image, the wave form, the amount of wave movement, and the range. In H&V mode, you can also set the wave angle.

To apply the Flag effect

Display the Flag menu.

The items displayed in the Flag menu and the functions of the knobs are the same as for the Wave menu (*see page 257*).

Twist Settings

You can twist the image in the horizontal or vertical direction.

You can set the size and frequency of waves in the image, the wave form, the amount of wave movement, and other parameters.

To apply the Twist effect

With the Twist menu displayed, set the following parameters.

Parameter group [1/2]

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Amp V	Amplitude of twist in vertical direction	0.00 to 100.00
2	Freq V	Frequency of twist in vertical direction	0.00 to 100.00
3	Offset V ^{a)}	Amount of movement in twist phase in the vertical direction	-16.00 to +16.00 ^{c)} -64.00 to +64.00 ^{d)}
4	Speed V ^{b)}	Speed and direction of twist movement in vertical direction	-100.00 to +100.00
5	Slant	Slant of twist	-8.000 to +8.000

Parameter group [2/2]

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Amp H	Amplitude of twist in horizontal direction	0.00 to 100.00
3	Offset H ^{a)}	Amount of movement in twist phase in the horizontal direction	-100.00 to +100.00
5	Slant	Slant of twist	-8.000 to +8.000

- a) Set when Lock is on.
 b) Set when Lock is off.
 c) Setting for SD 4:3, SD 16:9
 d) Setting for HD 4:3, HD 16:9

To stop the waves

Press [Lock], turning it on.

With each press, the waves alternately stop and start moving again.

To select the waveform

Press [Form] and set the following parameters.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Form H	Waveform in horizontal direction	1 to 6 ^{a)}
2	Form V	Waveform in vertical direction	1 to 6 ^{a)}

- a) 1 (SINE): Sine wave
 2 (PARABOLA): Parabola wave

- 3 (TRIANGLE): Triangular wave
 4 (RECTANGLE): Rectangular wave
 5 (CIRCLE): Circular wave
 6 (CUBIC): Cubic wave

Ripple Settings

There are four modes: Radial, Angular, Both, and Shape. The direction of modulation differs depending on the mode. You can set the size and frequency of the ripples, their direction and speed, their center point, and other parameters. In Shape mode, you can select ripple shapes other than circles (stars, etc.).

To apply the Ripple effect

With the Ripple menu displayed, use the following procedure.

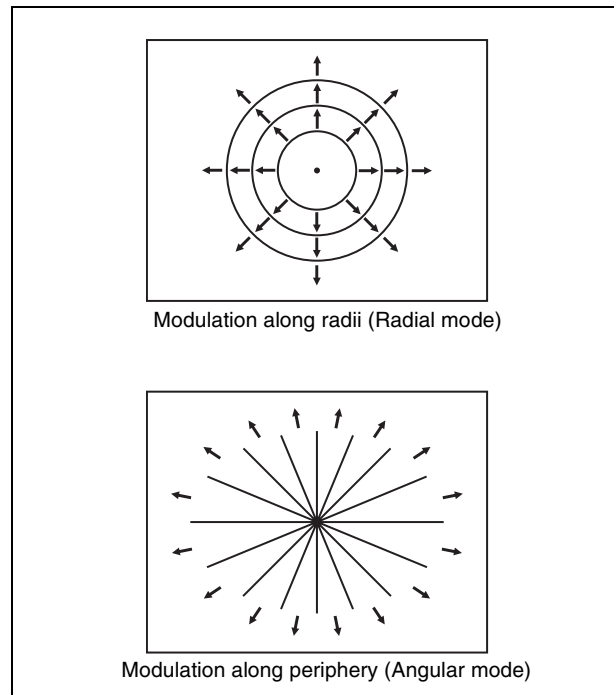
- 1 In the <Mode> group, select the ripple modulation mode.

Radial: Points on radii of the same length from the center of the ripples behave in the same way.

Angular: Points at the same angle from the center of the ripples behave in the same way.

Both: Both Radial and Angular ripples are applied.

Shape: The ripples can have shapes such as stars or hearts in addition to circles.



Modulation modes and directions

- 2 Set the following parameters, depending on the selected modulation mode.

When Radial mode is selected

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Amp R	Ripple amplitude along radius	0.00 to 100.00
2	Freq R	Ripple frequency along radius	0.00 to 100.00
3	Offset R ^{a)}	Direction along radius in which to offset ripple phase and amount of movement	-8.000 to +8.000 ^{c)} -32.000 to +32.000 ^{d)}
4	Speed R ^{b)}	Ripple direction along radius and speed	-100.00 to +100.00
5	Amp A	Ripple amplitude along periphery	0.00 to 100.00

- a) Set when Lock is on.
- b) Set when Lock is off.
- c) Setting for SD 4:3, SD 16:9
- d) Setting for HD 4:3, HD 16:9

When Angular mode is selected

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Amp A	Ripple amplitude along periphery	0.00 to 100.00
2	Freq A	Ripple frequency along periphery	0.00 to 100.00
3	Offset A ^{a)}	Direction along periphery in which to offset ripple phase and amount of movement	-8.000 to +8.000
4	Speed A ^{b)}	Ripple direction along periphery and speed	-100.00 to +100.00
5	Amp R	Ripple amplitude along radius	0.00 to 100.00

- a) Set when Lock is on.
- b) Set when Lock is off.

When Both mode is selected

Parameter group [1/2]

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Amp R	Ripple amplitude along radius	0.00 to 100.00
2	Freq R	Ripple frequency along radius	0.00 to 100.00
3	Offset R ^{a)}	Direction along radius in which to offset ripple phase and amount of movement	-8.000 to +8.000 ^{c)} -32.000 to +32.000 ^{d)}
4	Speed R ^{b)}	Ripple direction along radius and speed	-100.00 to +100.00

Parameter group [2/2]

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Amp A	Ripple amplitude along periphery	0.00 to 100.00
2	Freq A	Ripple frequency along periphery	0.00 to 100.00
3	Offset A ^{a)}	Direction along periphery in which to offset ripple phase and amount of movement	-8.000 to +8.000
4	Speed A ^{b)}	Ripple direction along periphery and speed	-100.00 to +100.00

- a) Set when Lock is on.
- b) Set when Lock is off.
- c) Setting for SD 4:3, SD 16:9
- d) Setting for HD 4:3, HD 16:9

When Shape mode is selected

Parameter group [1/2]

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Amp R	Ripple amplitude	0.00 to 100.00
2	Freq R	Ripple frequency	0.00 to 100.00

Parameter group [1/2]

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
3	Offset R ^{a)}	Direction in which to offset ripple phase and amount of movement	-8.000 to +8.000 ^{c)} -32.000 to +32.000 ^{d)}
4	Speed R ^{b)}	Ripple direction and speed	-100.00 to +100.00
5	Shape	Ripple shape	1 to 4 ^{e)}

Parameter group [2/2]

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Aspect	Ripple aspect ratio	-100.00 to +100.00
2	Angle	Ripple angle	-8.000 to +8.000

- a) Set when Lock is on.
- b) Set when Lock is off.
- c) Setting for SD 4:3, SD 16:9
- d) Setting for HD 4:3, HD 16:9
- e) 1 (Circle): Circle
2 (Rectangle): Rectangle
3 (Star): Star
4 (Heart): Heart

To limit the direction in which modulation is applied

By pressing [Plus Only], turning it on, you can limit the direction in which modulation is applied (the direction in which the image expands) to the plus direction only.

To set the ripple center point

- 1 Press [Position], turning it on.
- 2 Set the following parameters, depending on the selected modulation mode.

When Shape is selected

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	H	Ripple center point in horizontal direction	-5.000 to +5.000 ^{a)} -20.000 to +20.000 ^{b)}
2	V	Ripple center point in vertical direction	-3.000 to +3.000 ^{a)} -12.000 to +12.000 ^{b)}

- a) Setting for SD 4:3, SD 16:9
- b) Setting for HD 4:3, HD 16:9

When other than Shape is selected

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	H	Ripple center point in horizontal direction	-8.000 to +8.000 ^{a)} -32.000 to +32.000 ^{b)}
2	V	Ripple center point in vertical direction	-6.000 to +6.000 ^{a)} -18.000 to +18.000 ^{b)}

- a) Setting for SD 4:3, SD 16:9
- b) Setting for HD 4:3, HD 16:9

To limit the ripple range

- 1 Press [Range], turning it on.
- 2 Set the following parameters.

When Radial or Shape mode is selected

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Size R	Amount of ripple modulation along radius	0.00 to 100.00
2	Offset R	Center of modulation range along radius	-8.000 to +8.000 ^{a)} -32.000 to +32.000 ^{b)}

- a) Setting for SD 4:3, SD 16:9
- b) Setting for HD 4:3, HD 16:9

When Angular mode is selected

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Size A	Amount of ripple modulation along periphery	0.00 to 100.00
2	Offset A	Center of modulation range along periphery	-8.000 to +8.000

When Both mode is selected

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Size R	Amount of ripple modulation along radius	0.00 to 100.00
2	Offset R	Center of modulation range along radius	-8.000 to +8.000 ^{a)} -32.000 to +32.000 ^{b)}

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
3	Size A	Amount of ripple modulation along periphery	0.00 to 100.00
4	Offset A	Center of modulation range along periphery	-8.000 to +8.000

a) Setting for SD 4:3, SD 16:9

b) Setting for HD 4:3, HD 16:9

To reverse the ripple range

When modulation mode is Radial, Both, or Shape:

Press [Range Rev R], turning it on.

When modulation mode is Both or Angular: Press

[Range Rev A], turning it on.

Other settings

You can turn [Lock], [Form], [Random], and [Range Envelope] on to do the following.

- Stop the waves
- Select the wave shape
- Randomize the waveform
- Smooth the range envelope when the wave range is limited

For Lock, Form, Random, and Range Envelope functions, see “Wave Settings” (page 257).

Rings Settings

You can set the degree of transition, the degree of randomness in the distance moved by each block, the amount of movement, the width of the partitions, the degree of randomness in partition width, the center point, the starting angle, and other parameters.

To apply the Rings effect

With the Rings menu displayed, use the following procedure.

- 1 To make transition settings, press [Transition] and set the following parameters.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Transition	Degree of transition	0.000 to 100.000
2	Random	Degree of randomness in distance moved by each block	0.000 to 100.000

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
3	Spiral	Amount of movement toward periphery accompanying transition	-1.000 to +1.000

- 2 To set the partition method, press [Partition] and set the following parameters.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Width	Width of partition	0.000 to 100.000
2	Random	Degree of randomness in partition width	0.000 to 100.000
3	Angle	Starting angle of effect	-8.000 to +8.000

- 3 To set the ring center position, press [Position] and set the following parameters.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	H	Horizontal center position	-5.000 to +5.000 ^{a)} -20.000 to +20.000 ^{b)}
2	V	Vertical center position	-4.000 to +4.000 ^{a)} -16.000 to +16.000 ^{b)}

a) Setting for SD 4:3, SD 16:9

b) Setting for HD 4:3, HD 16:9

- 4 To partition into pixels, press [Pixel], turning it on, and set the following parameters.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Density	Degree to which image disappears around periphery	0.00 to 100.00
2	Random	Degree of jaggies at block edges	0.00 to 100.00

Broken Glass Settings

You can set the degree of transition, the degree of randomness in the distance moved by each block, the amount of movement, the width of the partitions, the degree of randomness in partition width, the center point, the starting angle, and other parameters.

You can also fix the direction in which shards scatter.

To apply the Broken Glass effect

Display the Broken Glass menu.

The functions of the knobs in the Broken Glass menu are the same as those of the Rings menu (*see page 263*), with the exception of [Direction].

To fix the direction in which shards scatter

Press [Direction], turning it on.

Flying Bar Settings

You can set the degree of transition, the degree of randomness in the distance moved by each block, the direction of movement, the width of the partitions, the degree of randomness in partition width, the partition angle, and other parameters.

To apply the Flying Bar effect

With the Flying Bars menu displayed, use the following procedure.

- 1 To make transition settings, press [Transition] and set the following parameters.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Transition	Degree of transition	0.000 to 100.000
2	Random	Degree of randomness in distance moved by each block	-100.000 to +100.000
3	Angle	Direction of movement	-8.000 to +8.000

- 2 To set the partition method, press [Partition] and set the following parameters.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Width	Width of partition	0.000 to 100.000
2	Random	Degree of randomness in partition width	0.000 to 100.000
3	Angle	Partition angle	-8.000 to +8.000

Blind Settings

There are two modes: Bar and Wedge. You can set the number of rotations by blocks, the perspective, the width and position of blocks, the direction, the center position, and other parameters.

To apply the Blind effect

With the Blind menu displayed, use the following procedure.

- 1 In the <Mode> group, select [Bar] or [Wedge].
- 2 To make transition settings, press [Transition] and set the following parameters.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Rotation	Number of rotations of the blocks	-8.000 to +8.000
2	Perspective	Degree of randomness in distance moved by each block	0.000 to 100.000

- 3 To set the partition method, press [Partition] and set the following parameters.

When Bar was selected in step 1

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Width	Width of partition	0.000 to 100.000
2	Offset	Degree of randomness in partition width	-5.000 to +5.000 ^{a)} -20.000 to 20.000 ^{b)}
3	Angle	Starting angle of effect	-8.000 to +8.000

a) Setting for SD 4:3, SD 16:9

b) Setting for HD 4:3, HD 16:9

When Wedge was selected in step 1

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
4	No	Width of blocks	0.000 to 100.000
5	Phase	Partition position	-8.000 to +8.000

To set the wedge center position

When Wedge is selected in the <Mode> group, you can set the wedge center position.

- 1 Press [Position].
- 2 Set the following parameters.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	H	Horizontal center position	-8.000 to +8.000 ^{a)} -32.000 to +32.000 ^{b)}
2	V	Vertical center position	-6.000 to +6.000 ^{a)} -18.000 to +18.000 ^{b)}

- a) Setting for SD 4:3, SD 16:9
- b) Setting for HD 4:3, HD 16:9

Split Settings

You can set the degree to which the image is split, the split positions, and other parameters.

To apply the Split effect

With the Split menu displayed, use the following procedure.

- 1 In the <Mode> group, select the split method.
Single: Leave gaps between splits.
Double: Fill gaps between splits with the same image.
- 2 Set the following parameters.

Parameter group [1/2]

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Transition H	Degree of left and right separation	-100.00 to +100.000
2	Transition V	Degree of top and bottom separation	-100.00 to +100.000

Parameter group [2/2]

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Top	Amount of movement of top	-100.00 to +100.000
2	Left	Amount of movement of left	-100.00 to +100.000
3	Right	Amount of movement of right	-100.00 to +100.000
4	Bottom	Amount of movement of bottom	-100.00 to +100.000

To set the split position

- 1 Press [Position].
- 2 Set the following parameters.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	H	Degree of left and right separation	-4.000 to +4.000 ^{a)} -16.000 to +16.000 ^{b)}

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
2	V	Degree of top and bottom separation	-3.000 to +3.000 ^{a)} -12.000 to +12.000 ^{b)}

- a) Setting for SD 4:3, SD 16:9
- b) Setting for HD 4:3, HD 16:9

Split Slide Settings

You can set the degree of transition, the degree of randomness in the distance moved by each block, the degree of sliding, block width, block angle, and other parameters.

To apply the Split Slide effect

With the Split Slide menu displayed, set the following parameters.

Parameter group [1/2]

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Transition H	Degree of transition in horizontal direction	-100.00 to +100.000
2	Random H	Degree of randomness in distance moved by blocks in horizontal direction	0.00 to 100.00
3	Skew H	Degree of skew in horizontal direction	0.00 to 100.00
4	Width H	Horizontal width of partition	0.00 to 100.00
5	Angle	Angle of partition line	-8.000 to +8.000

Parameter group [2/2]

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Transition V	Degree of transition in vertical direction	-100.00 to +100.000
2	Random V	Degree of randomness in distance moved by blocks in vertical direction	0.00 to 100.00
3	Skew V	Degree of skew in vertical direction	0.00 to 100.00

Parameter group [2/2]

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
4	Width V	Vertical width of partition	0.00 to 100.00
5	Angle	Angle of partition line	-8.000 to +8.000

To set the partition position

- 1 Press [Position], turning it on.
- 2 Set the following parameters.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	H	Horizontal partition position	-5.000 to +5.000 ^{a)} -20.000 to +20.000 ^{b)}
2	V	Vertical partition position	-5.000 to +5.000 ^{a)} -20.000 to +20.000 ^{b)}

a) Setting for SD 4:3, SD 16:9

b) Setting for HD 4:3, HD 16:9

Mirror Settings

You can choose to reflect in the directions left to right, right to left, bottom to top, top to bottom, or any combination of directions. You can also set the position of the border between original and reflections.

To apply the Mirror effect

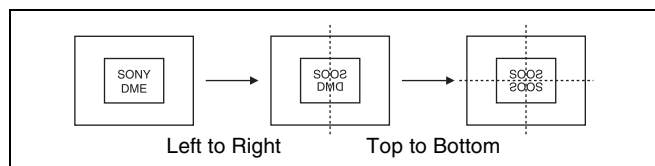
With the Mirror menu displayed, press [Left to Right], [Right to Left], [Top to Bottom], or [Bottom to Top] to set the reflection method (multiple selections possible).

Left to Right: Reflect left side on right.

Right to Left: Reflect right side on left.

Top to Bottom: Reflect top side on bottom.

Bottom to Top: Reflect bottom side on top.



To set the position of the border between original and reflection

- 1 Press [Position].
- 2 Set the following parameters.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	H	Horizontal border position	-8.000 to +8.000 ^{a)} -32.000 to +32.000 ^{b)}
2	V	Vertical border position	-6.000 to +6.000 ^{a)} -24.000 to +24.000 ^{b)}

a) Setting for SD 4:3, SD 16:9

b) Setting for HD 4:3, HD 16:9

Multi Mirror Settings

You can set the width of the original, the center position of the original, the offset of the image with fixed mirrors, the direction of the mirrors, and other parameters.

To apply the Multi Mirror effect

With the Multi Mirror menu displayed, set the following parameters.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Interval H	Horizontal distance between mirrors (original width)	0.000 to 10.000 ^{a)} 0.000 to 40.000 ^{b)}
2	Offset H	Amount of horizontal offset of image with mirrors fixed	-4.000 to +4.000 ^{a)} -16.000 to +16.000 ^{b)}
3	Interval V	Vertical distance between mirrors (original width)	0.000 to 10.000 ^{a)} 0.000 to 40.000 ^{b)}
4	Offset V	Amount of vertical offset of image with mirrors fixed	-4.000 to +4.000 ^{a)} -16.000 to +16.000 ^{b)}
5	Angle	Mirror angle	-8.000 to +8.000

a) Setting for SD 4:3, SD 16:9

b) Setting for HD 4:3, HD 16:9

To set the center position of original image

- 1 Press [Position], turning it on.
- 2 Set the following parameters.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	H	Horizontal original image center position	-4.000 to +4.000 ^{a)} -16.000 to +16.000 ^{b)}

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
2	V	Vertical original image center position	-4.000 to +4.000 ^{a)} -16.000 to +16.000 ^{b)}

a) Setting for SD 4:3, SD 16:9

b) Setting for HD 4:3, HD 16:9

Kaleidoscope Settings

You can set the number of blocks, the partition reference point and angle, horizontal and vertical offsets, a reflection position, and other parameters.

To apply the Kaleidoscope effect

With the Kaleidoscope menu displayed, set the following parameters.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Number	Number of blocks	0.00 to 100.00
2	Phase	Angle of partition reference point	-8.000 to +8.000
3	Offset H	Amount of horizontal offset	-4.000 to +4.000 ^{a)} -16.000 to +16.000 ^{b)}
4	Offset V	Amount of vertical offset	-3.000 to +3.000 ^{a)} -12.000 to +12.000 ^{b)}

a) Setting for SD 4:3, SD 16:9

b) Setting for HD 4:3, HD 16:9

To reflect the kaleidoscope image as if in a mirror

- 1 To reflect in the horizontal direction, press [Mirror H], turning it on.
- 2 To reflect in the vertical direction, press [Mirror V], turning it on.

To set the reflection position

- 1 Press [Position], turning it on.
- 2 Set the following parameters.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	H	Horizontal reflection position	0.000 to 4.000 ^{a)} 0.000 to 16.000 ^{b)}
2	V	Vertical reflection position	0.000 to 3.000 ^{a)} 0.000 to 12.000 ^{b)}

a) Setting for SD 4:3, SD 16:9

b) Setting for HD 4:3, HD 16:9

To cyclically repeat part of the original and its reflection

Press [Cyclic], turning it on.

Lens Settings

You can set the shape and aspect ratio of the lens, the angle, the magnification ratio, the curve ratio, the size, the center position, and other parameters.

You can also choose to display only the portion of the image that is seen through the lens.

To apply the Lens effect

With the Lens menu displayed, use the following procedure.

- 1 In the <Mode> group, select the lens shape.
 - Circle
 - Rectangle
 - Star
 - Heart
 - Bar
 - Cross
- 2 Depending on the selected lens shape, set the following parameters.

When Circle, Rectangle, Star, or Heart is selected

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Magnify H	Magnification ratio	-100.00 to +100.00
2	Curve H	Curve ratio	-100.00 to +100.00
3	Size H	Size	0.00 to 100.00
4	Angle	Slant angle	-8.000 to +8.000
5	Aspect	Aspect ratio	-100.00 to +100.00

When Bar is selected

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Magnify H	Magnification ratio	-100.00 to +100.00
2	Curve H	Curve ratio	-100.00 to +100.00
3	Size H	Size	0.00 to 100.00
4	Angle	Slant angle	-8.000 to +8.000

When Cross is selected

Parameter group [1/2]

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Magnify H	Horizontal magnification ratio	-100.00 to +100.00
2	Curve H	Horizontal curve ratio	-100.00 to +100.00

Parameter group [1/2]

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
3	Size H	Horizontal size	0.00 to 100.00

Parameter group [2/2]

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Magnify V	Vertical magnification ratio	-100.00 to +100.00
2	Curve V	Vertical curve ratio	-100.00 to +100.00
3	Size V	Vertical size	0.00 to 100.00

To make only the lens part visible

Press [Lens Only], turning it on.
The parts of the image outside the lens are removed.

To set the lens center position

- 1 Press [Position], turning it on.
- 2 Set the following parameters.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	H	Horizontal lens center position	-5.000 to +5.000 ^{a)} -20.000 to +20.000 ^{b)}
2	V	Vertical lens center position	-4.000 to +4.000 ^{a)} -16.000 to +16.000 ^{b)}

a) Setting for SD 4:3, SD 16:9
b) Setting for HD 4:3, HD 16:9

Circle Settings

You can set the size of the circle, and make the axis of modulation vertical.

To apply the Circle effect

With the Circle menu displayed, set the following parameters.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Radius	Size of circle	0.00 to 100.00

To make the axis of modulation vertical

Press [Mod V], turning it on.
The axis of modulation when converting to the circle becomes vertical.

Panorama Settings

You can set the horizontal and vertical curve ratio, and the curve center position.

To apply the Panorama effect

With the Panorama menu displayed, set the following parameters.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Curve H	Horizontal curve ratio	-100.00 to +100.00
2	Curve V	Vertical curve ratio	-100.00 to +100.00
3	Position H	Horizontal curve center position	-4.000 to +4.000 ^{a)} -16.000 to +16.000 ^{b)}
4	Position V	Vertical curve center position	-3.000 to +3.000 ^{a)} -12.000 to +12.000 ^{b)}

a) Setting for SD 4:3, SD 16:9
b) Setting for HD 4:3, HD 16:9

Page Turn Settings

There are four modes: H&V, H, V, and Off. You can select the turn position, the radius of the turned portion, the amount and angle of turning, and the input video for the front and back pages.

To apply the Page Turn effect

With the Page Turn menu displayed, use the following procedure.

- 1 In the <Split Mode> group, select the split mode.
 - H&V:** The image turns as it is split from the center into 4 parts: left, right, upper, lower.
 - H:** The image turns as it is split from the center into 2 parts: left, right.
 - V:** The image turns as it is split from the center into 2 parts: upper, lower.
 - When nothing is selected (Off):** There are no splits and the image turns from the edge.
- 2 Press [Page Turn], then set the following parameters.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Radius	Radius of turn part	0.00 to 100.00
2	Offset	Amount of turn	-100.00 to +100.00

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
3	Angle	Angle of turn	-0.250 to +0.000 ^{a)} -0.250 to +0.250 ^{b)} -0.500 to +0.000 ^{c)} -8.000 to +8.000 ^{d)}

- a) When split mode is H&V
b) When split mode is H
c) When split mode is V
d) When split mode is off

To set the input signal of the back page

- 1 In the <Back Video> group, select the signal input into the back page.

Self: Use the same signal as the front page.

Flat: Use a flat color.

Hue Rotation: Gradually vary the hue.

2nd Ch: Use the 2nd channel video signal.

To select “2nd Ch,” it is first necessary to select the second DME on the keyer using DME.

- 2 Adjust the following parameters, according to the selected input signal.

When Flat is selected

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Luminance	Luminance	0.00 to 100.00
2	Saturation	Saturation	0.00 to 100.00
3	Hue	Hue	359.99 to 0.00

When Hue Rotation is selected

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Luminance	Luminance	0.00 to 100.00
2	Saturation	Saturation	0.00 to 100.00
3	Speed	Speed at which hue changes	-12.00 to +12.00

Notes

When using a page turn effect with one channel, the following restrictions apply.

- In an MVE-8000A HD system, when the input is for example a title, parts of the back page other than the title appear as black.
- For the MKS-7470X/7471X, the same restrictions as above apply to all signal formats.

Roll Settings

There are four modes: H&V, H, V, and Off. You can select the turn position, the radius of the turned portion, the amount and angle of turning, and the input video for the front and back pages.

To apply the Roll effect

Display the Roll menu.

The knobs in the Roll menu have the same functions as those in the Page Turn menu (*see page 268*).

Notes

When using a roll effect with one channel, the following restrictions apply.

- In an MVE-8000A HD system, when the input is for example a title, parts of the back page other than the title appear as black.
- For the MKS-7470X/7471X, the same restrictions as above apply to all signal formats.

Cylinder Settings

You can set the degree of winding onto the cylinder, the radius, the horizontal position of the wound image, and front and back side output for the image.

To apply the Cylinder effect

With the Cylinder menu displayed, set the following parameters.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Radius	Degree to which image is wound onto the cylinder	0.00 to 100.00
2	Min R	Radius of the cylinder	0.00 to 100.00
3	Offset	Horizontal position of the image wound onto cylinder	-100.00 to +100.00

The procedure for selecting the input signal in the <Back Video> group is the same as for the Page Turn menu (*see page 268*).

Notes

When using a cylinder effect with one channel, the following restrictions apply.

- In an MVE-8000A HD system, when the input is for example a title, parts of the inner surface other than the title appear as black.
- For the MKS-7470X/7471X, the same restrictions as above apply to all signal formats.

Sphere Settings

You can set the degree of winding onto the sphere, the radius, the horizontal position of the wound image, and front and back side output for the image.

Notes

You cannot monitor the part of a rotating sphere that corresponds to its axis on the monitor screen.

To apply the Sphere effect

Display the Sphere menu.

The knobs in the Sphere menu have the same functions as those in the Cylinder menu “*Cylinder Settings*” (page 269).

Notes

When using a sphere effect with one channel, the following restrictions apply.

- In an MVE-8000A HD system, when the input is for example a title, parts of the inner surface other than the title appear as black.
- For the MKS-7470X/7471X, the same restrictions as above apply to all signal formats.

Explosion Settings

You can set the pattern shape and aspect ratio, the center position, the amount of movement by fragments, the curvature of the transition path, and other parameters.

To apply the Explosion effect

With the Explosion menu displayed, use the following procedure.

- 1 In the <Mode> group, select the explosion pattern.

- Circle
- Rectangle
- Star
- Heart
- Ellipse

- 2 Set the following parameters.

When Circle was selected in step 1

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Transition	Degree of transition	0.00 to 100.00
2	Curve	Degree to which image periphery expands	0.00 to 100.00

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
3	Spiral	Degree of curvature of transition path	-100.00 to +100.00

When Rectangle, Star, Heart, or Ellipse was selected in step 1

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Transition	Degree of transition	0.00 to 100.00
2	Curve	Degree to which image periphery expands	0.00 to 100.00
3	Aspect	Aspect ratio of waveform	-100.00 to +100.00
4	Angle	Slant of waveform	-8.000 to +8.000

To make the fragments stardust

- 1 Press [Pixel], turning it on.
- 2 Set the following parameters.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Density	Degree to which image disappears	0.00 to 100.00
2	Random	Degree of randomness in flying out fragment positions	0.00 to 100.00

To set the explosion center point

- 1 Press [Position], turning it on.
- 2 Set the following parameters.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	H	Center point in horizontal direction	-5.000 to +5.000 ^{a)} -20.000 to +20.000 ^{b)}
2	V	Center point in vertical direction	-4.000 to +4.000 ^{a)} -16.000 to +16.000 ^{b)}

a) Setting for SD 4:3, SD 16:9

b) Setting for HD 4:3, HD 16:9

Swirl Settings

You can set the amount of swirl, the swirl region, the amount of rotation, and the swirl center position.

To apply the Swirl effect

With the Swirl menu displayed, set the following parameters.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Transition	Swirl amount	0.00 to 100.00
2	Center	Amount of rotation in center of swirl	-8.000 to +8.000
3	Outer	Amount of rotation outside of Area	-8.000 to +8.000
4	Area	Region of swirl	0.00 to 100.00

To make the tip of the swirl stardust

- 1 Press [Pixel], turning it on.
- 2 Set the following parameters.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Density	Degree to which image disappears	0.00 to 100.00
2	Random	Trail type and amount of stardust	0.00 to 100.00

To set the center position of the swirl

- 1 Press [Position], turning it on.
- 2 Set the following parameters.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	H	Horizontal center position of swirl	-8.000 to +8.000 ^{a)} -32.000 to +32.000 ^{b)}
2	V	Vertical center position of swirl	-6.000 to +6.000 ^{a)} -18.000 to +18.000 ^{b)}

a) Setting for SD 4:3, SD 16:9

b) Setting for HD 4:3, HD 16:9

Melt Settings

You can set the degree of transition, the degree of extension in the image, the jaggedness of the melting sections, and the amplitude, frequency, amount of movement, and speed of the melting sections. You can also set the slant of the borders, the shape of the sections that begin to melt, and other parameters.

To apply the Melt effect

With the Melt menu displayed, use the following procedure.

- 1 In the <Direction> group, select the direction in which the image melts away.
Up: Melting occurs upward.
Down: Melting occurs downward.
- 2 To make transition settings, press [Transition] and set the following parameters.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Transition	Degree of transition	0.00 to 100.00
2	Curve	Degree to which image stretches	0.00 to 100.00
3	Random	Degree of jaggies at melted part	0.00 to 100.00

- 3 To make wave settings for melting part, press [Border] and set the following parameters.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Amp	Amplitude of waves	0.00 to 100.00
2	Freq	Frequency of waves	0.00 to 100.00
3	Offset ^{a)}	Amount of wave phase offset	-16.000 to +16.000 ^{c)} -64.000 to +64.000 ^{d)}
4	Speed ^{b)}	Direction and speed of waves	-100.00 to +100.00
5	Slant	Slant of border	-100.00 to +100.00

a) Set when Lock is on.

b) Set when Lock is off.

c) Setting for SD 4:3, SD 16:9

d) Setting for HD 4:3, HD 16:9

To stop the waves in the melting part

Press [Lock], turning it on.

With each press, the waves alternately stop and start moving again.

To select the shape of the part beginning to melt

Press [Form] and set the following parameter.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Form	Waveform	1 to 8 ^{a)}

a) 1 (SINE): Sine wave

2 (PARABOLA): Parabola wave

3 (TRIANGLE): Triangular wave

4 (RECTANGLE): Rectangular wave

- 5 (CIRCLE): Circular wave
- 6 (CUBIC): Cubic wave
- 7 (MELT1): Melting wave 1
- 8 (MELT2): Melting wave 2

To make the melting part stardust

- 1** Press [Pixel], turning it on.
- 2** Set the following parameters.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Density	Degree to which image disappears	0.00 to 100.00
2	Random	Trail type and amount of stardust	0.00 to 100.00

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Density	Degree to which image disappears	0.00 to 100.00
2	Random	Degree to which pixel positions become more randomized further from the center	0.00 to 100.00

Character Trail Settings

You can set the effect starting position, the degree of expansion, the slant angle of the effect region, and trail direction, the degree to which the image disappears, the trail type and amount of stardust, and other parameters.

To apply the Character Trail effect

With the Character Trail menu displayed, set the following parameters.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Transition	Position where effect starts	-8.000 to +8.000 ^{a)} -32.000 to +32.000 ^{b)}
2	Expand	Degree of expansion	0.00 to 100.00
3	Trans Angle	Angle of slanting in effect region	-8.000 to +8.000
4	Trail Angle	Direction of trail	-100.00 to +100.00

a) Setting for SD 4:3, SD 16:9
 b) Setting for HD 4:3, HD 16:9

To make the tip of the swirl stardust

- 1** Press [Pixel], turning it on.
- 2** Set the following parameters.

Applying Special Effects (Lighting and Recursive Effects)

Lighting Settings

You can specify the intensity and color of the light and the lighting pattern. The following lighting patterns are available:

Plane: Illumination of the entire screen.

Bar: Bar illumination. You can specify the width and angle of the bar, and its softness.

Preset: Lighting pattern suitable for nonlinear effects. When Bar is selected, the following modes can be selected.

Normal: Emphasizes the bar highlight area.

Specular: An effect like light striking a surface with metallic reflections.

Mat: An effect like light striking paper, cloth, or another diffusively reflective surface.

Notes

The function for setting the bar mode of the lighting area is not supported on the MVE-8000A.

Applying the Lighting effect

1 In the DME menu, select VF5 'Light/Trail' and HF1 'Lighting.'

The Lighting menu appears.

2 Press [Lighting], turning it on.

3 In the <Light Pattern> group, select the lighting pattern Plane, Bar or Preset.

4 Set the parameters.

The parameters differ as follows, depending on the selected lighting pattern.

When Plane is selected

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Light	Intensity of light in highlight area	0.00 to 100.00
5	Total Ambient	Brightness of whole image	0.00 to 100.00 ^{a)}

a) You can make the Lighting effect more effective by adjusting [Total Ambient] to lower the brightness of the entire image. This setting is used both by this effect and by the Spotlighting effect.

Notes

The Total Ambient parameter is not supported on the MVE-8000A.

When Bar is selected

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Light	Intensity of light in highlight area	0.00 to 100.00
2	Ambient	Intensity of light in ambient area	0.00 to 100.00
5	Total Ambient	Brightness of whole image	0.00 to 100.00 ^{a)}

a) You can make the Lighting effect more effective by adjusting [Total Ambient] to lower the brightness of the entire image. This setting is used both by this effect and by the Spotlighting effect.

Notes

The Total Ambient parameter is not supported on the MVE-8000A.

When Preset is selected

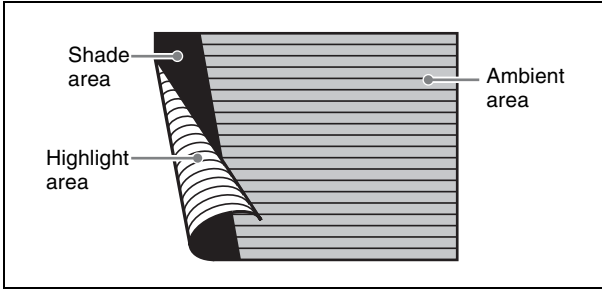
Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Light	Intensity of light in highlight area	0.00 to 100.00
2	Ambient	Intensity of light in ambient area	0.00 to 100.00
3	Shade	Intensity of light in shade area	0.00 to 100.00 ^{a)}
5	Total Ambient	Brightness of whole image	0.00 to 100.00 ^{b)}

a) Setting is available when nonlinear effect page turn, roll, cylinder, or sphere is selected.

b) You can make the Lighting effect more effective by adjusting [Total Ambient] to lower the brightness of the entire image. This setting is used both by this effect and by the Spotlighting effect.

Notes

The Total Ambient parameter is not supported on the MVE-8000A.



The three regions for which the light intensity can be set

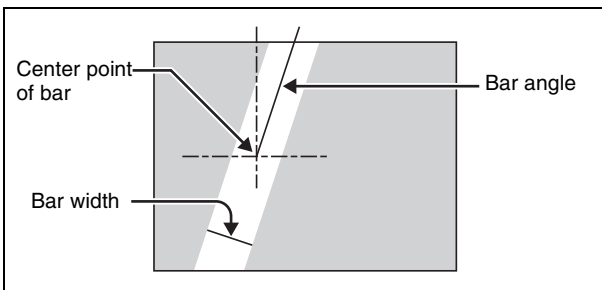
Setting the bar shape of the highlight area

When you select [Bar] or [Preset] in step **3** of “Applying the Lighting effect” (page 273), use the following procedure to set the shape of the bar.

- 1 Turn [Light Modify] on.
- 2 Adjust the following parameters.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	X	X-value of bar center point	-8.00 to +8.00 ^{a) b)} -24.00 to +24.00 ^{c)} -32.00 to +32.00 ^{d)}
2	Y	Y-value of bar center point	-6.00 to +6.00 ^{a)} -4.50 to +4.50 ^{b)} -18.00 to +18.00 ^{c) d)}
3	Angle ^{e)}	Angle of bar	-8.00 to +8.00
4	Width	Width of bar	0.00 to 100.00
5	Soft	Softness of edges	0.00 to 100.00

- a) For SD 4:3
 b) For SD 16:9
 c) For HD 4:3
 d) For HD 16:9
 e) There are some nonlinear effects for which Angle cannot be used.



Bar shape parameters

Setting the color of the light in the highlight area

- 1 Turn [Light Color] on.
- 2 Adjust the following parameters.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Luminance	Luminance	0.00 to 100.00
2	Saturation	Saturation	0.00 to 100.00
3	Hue	Hue	359.99 to 0.00

Setting the bar shape of the shade area

When you select [Preset] in step **3** of “Applying the Lighting effect” (see page 273), use the following procedure to set the bar shape of the shade area.

- 1 Turn [Shade Modify] on.
- 2 Adjust the following parameters.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	X	X-value of bar center point	-8.00 to +8.00 ^{a)} -24.00 to +24.00 ^{b)} -32.00 to +32.00 ^{c)}
4	Width	Width of bar	0.00 to 100.00
5	Soft	Softness of edges	0.00 to 100.00

- a) For SD 4:3 and SD 16:9
 b) For HD 4:3
 c) For HD 16:9

Setting the color of the shade in the shade area

- 1 Turn [Shade Color] on.
- 2 Adjust the following parameters.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Luminance	Luminance	0.00 to 100.00
2	Saturation	Saturation	0.00 to 100.00
3	Hue	Hue	359.99 to 0.00

Setting the bar mode of the highlight area

When you select [Bar] in step **3** of “Applying the Lighting effect” (page 273), use the following procedure to set the bar mode of the highlight area.

Notes

The bar mode of the highlight area is not supported on the MVE-8000A.

- 1 Select the mode in the <Bar Light Mode> group.

Normal: Emphasizes the bar highlight area.

Specular: An effect like light striking a surface with metallic reflections.

Mat: An effect like light striking paper, cloth, or another diffusively reflective surface.

2 Set the following parameters.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Intensity	Intensity of diffuse light area	0.00 to 100.00
2	Offset	Offset of center of diffuse light area	-4.00 to +4.00 ^{a)} -12.00 to +12.00 ^{b)} -16.00 to +16.00 ^{c)}
3	Width	Width of diffuse light area	0.00 to 100.00
4	Soft	Softness of diffuse light area	0.00 to 100.00

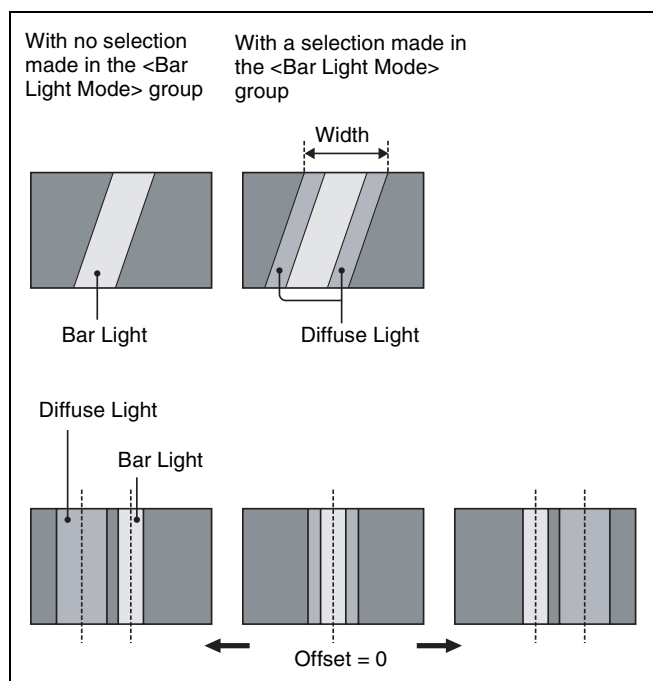
a) For SD 4:3 and SD 16:9

b) For HD 4:3

c) For HD 16:9

3 When you select Normal or Mat in step 1, press [Bar Diffuse Color], turning it on, and adjust the following parameters to set the color of the diffuse light area.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Luminance	Luminance	0.00 to 100.00
2	Saturation	Saturation	0.00 to 100.00
3	Hue	Hue	359.99 to 0.00



Trail Settings

Notes

- Of the three effects of trail, motion decay and keyframe strobe, only one can be on at a time. When one of them is on, turning another of them on automatically turns off the one that has been on.
- Turning Trail on when Motion Decay (*see page 277*), Keyframe Strobe (*see page 278*) or Wind (*see page 279*) is on turns it off automatically.

Applying the Trail effect

1 In the DME menu, select VF5 'Light/Trail' and HF2 'Trail.'

The Trail menu appears.

2 Press [Trail], turning it on.

3 Set the parameters.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Decay	Degree to which the trail is left	0.00 to 100.00 ^{a)}
2	Interval	Freeze interval	1 to 255 (frames)
3	Live	Proportion of the interval between two successive freeze images for which the video is run	0.00 to 100.00

a) 0.00 is no trail. At 100.00, the trail does not disappear.

4 To erase the trail, press [Trail Eraser], turning it on.

Switching the priority between the current image and trail superimposed

In the <Priority> group, select the method of superimposition.

Over: Current image is on top.

Under: Trail is on top.

Selecting the source to create a trail

In the <Trail Source> group, select the source to create a trail.

Notes

- “Rainbow,” “Mix Color,” and “Ext Video” are not supported on the MVE-8000A.
- “Mix Color” or “Ext Video” can only be applied to one of the background (*see page 288*), flex shadow (*see page 240*), trail, and wind (*see page 279*) effects. If you select “Mix Color” or “Ext Video” in one of these settings, a selection of “Mix Color” or “Ext Video” in any of the other effects is disabled, and “Flat Color” is selected in its place.
- When executing combining four channels of DME images, “Mix Color” and “Ext Video” in the flex shadow and background effects cannot be selected.

Freeze Video: Use freeze images of the input video as source of the trail.

Flat Color: Use a flat color matte as source of the trail. You can set the following parameters with the knobs.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Luminance	Luminance	0.00 to 100.00
2	Saturation	Saturation	0.00 to 100.00
3	Hue	Hue	359.99 to 0.00

Hue Rotate: Use a color matte whose hue varies slightly with each frame for the trail of the afterimages. You can set the following parameters with the knobs.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Luminance	Luminance	0.00 to 100.00
2	Saturation	Saturation	0.00 to 100.00
3	Hue Speed	Speed at which the hue changes	-12.00 to +12.00

Mix Color: Insert a mix color signal set in the Color Mix menu (*see page 246*) in the afterimage portion.

Ext Video: Insert the external video signal input to the Ext IN connector in the afterimage portion.

Rainbow: Use a freeze image with the hue changing every frame in the afterimage portion. The difference from “Hue Rotate” is that many colors appear simultaneously.

For details of the Rainbow parameters, see the “Hue Rotate” item above.

Erasing the afterimages that remain in memory whenever a keyframe is passed

Press [Trail Eraser], turning it on.

When the effect passes a keyframe, the afterimage is erased before writing a new afterimage.

Selecting the freeze timing

In the <Trail Freeze Timing> group, select the timing for freezing a trail.

Frame: freeze in frame units.

Field: freeze in field units.

Notes

The freeze timing setting is not required when the following signal formats are being used.

Signal formats: 1080P/50, 1080P/59.94, 1080PsF/23.976, 1080PsF/24, 1080PsF/25, 1080PsF/29.97, 720P/50, 720P/59.94

Defocusing the afterimage portion (Defocus)

Notes

The function to defocus the trail afterimage portion is not supported on the MVE-8000A.

- 1 Press [Defocus], turning it on.
- 2 Set the following parameters.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Defocus V	Defocusing of the video signal	0.00 to 100.00
2	Defocus K	Defocusing of the key signal	0.00 to 100.00

Applying stardust to the afterimage portion

The afterimage portion becomes stardust, and gradually disappears.

- 1 Press the [DUST] button, turning it on.
- 2 Set the following parameters.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Trail Dust	Amount of the afterimage disappearing as stardust ^{a)}	0.00 to 100.00
2	Dust Soft	Timing with which stardust disappears	0.00 to 100.00
3	Dust Size	Size of stardust	0.00 to 100.00

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
4	Dust Aspect	Aspect ratio of stardust	-100.00 to +100.00

a) The way in which the afterimage disappears is affected by both Decay and Trail Dust parameter adjustments.

Setting a combine process

Select whether to add the Trail effect before or after the combine.

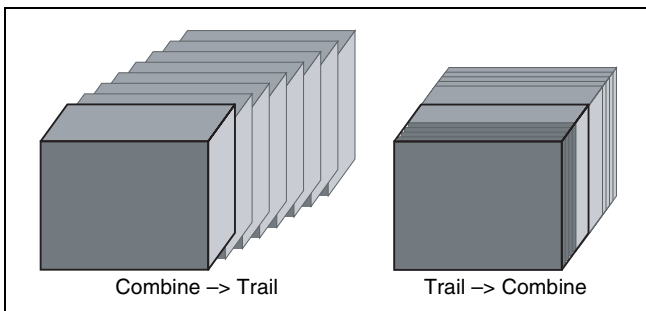
Notes

- The combine process function is not supported on the MVE-8000A.
- When you change the selection in the <Combine Process> group, the afterimages which had been added up to then disappear.
- When you do not combine images, the Trail effect only is applied, regardless of the selection in the <Combine Process> group.

Select one of the following in the <Combine Process> group.

Combine → Trail: Add the Trail effect after the combine. As the trail parameters, the data for the channel with the lowest number among the channels being combined is enabled.

Trail → Combine: Add the Trail effect before the combine. Trails parameters can be set independently for each channel.



Motion Decay Settings

Notes

When you turn on motion decay, if the Trail, Keyframe Strobe or Wind effect is on, it automatically goes off.

Blurring image motion

- 1 In the DME menu, select VF5 'Light/Trail' and HF3 'Motion Decay.'

The Motion Decay menu appears.

- 2 Press [Motion Decay], turning it on.

- 3 Set the following parameter.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Video Decay	Degree of blurring of the video signal	0.00 to 100.00 ^{a)}

a) At the setting 0.00, there is no afterimage. At a setting of 100.00, the afterimage does not decay.

- 4 In the <Decay Mix Mode> group, select the way in which the video signal is blurred.

Soft: mix the live image and the afterimage.

Hard: show the lighter of the live image and afterimage.

- 5 To erase the afterimage, press [Decay Eraser], turning it on.

Erasing the afterimages that remain in memory whenever a keyframe is passed

Press [Decay Eraser], turning it on.

When the effect passes a keyframe, the afterimage is erased before writing a new afterimage.

Selecting the freeze timing

In the <Decay Freeze Timing> group, select the timing for motion decay freezing.

Frame: freeze in frame units.

Field: freeze in field units.

Notes

The freeze timing setting is not required when the following signal formats are being used.

1080P/50, 1080P/59.94, 1080PsF/23.976, 1080PsF/24, 1080PsF/25, 1080PsF/29.97, 720P/50, 720P/59.94

Applying stardust to the afterimage portion

The afterimage portion becomes stardust, and gradually disappears.

- 1 Press the [DUST] button, turning it on.

- 2 Set the following parameters.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Decay Dust	Amount of the afterimage disappearing as stardust ^{a)}	0.00 to 100.00

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
2	Dust Soft	Timing with which stardust disappears	0.00 to 100.00
3	Dust Size	Size of stardust	0.00 to 100.00
4	Dust Aspect	Aspect ratio of stardust	-100.00 to +100.00

a) The way in which the afterimage disappears is affected by both the Video Decay and Decay Dust parameter adjustments for the motion decay.

Keyframe Strobe Settings

Notes

When you turn on keyframe strobe, if the Trail, Motion Decay or Wind effect is on, it automatically goes off.

For details, see “Note” in the section “Trail.”

Leaving a trail of afterimages of the image

1 In the DME menu, select VF5 ‘Light/Trail’ and HF4 ‘KF Strobe.’

The KF Strobe menu appears.

2 Press [KF Strobe], turning it on.

3 Set the following parameter.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Decay	Degree of blurring of the video signal	0.00 to 100.00 ^{a)}

a) At the setting 0.00, there is no afterimage. At a setting of 100.00, the afterimage does not decay.

4 To erase the afterimage, press [KF Strobe Eraser], turning it on.

Selecting the overlay priority for movie and still images (video freeze image)

In the <Priority> group, select the way in which the images are overlaid.

Over: the movie is on top, and the still image is underneath.

Under: the movie is underneath, and the still image is on top.

Mix: the movie and still images are mixed; adjust the following parameter with the knob.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Mix	Mix amount of the still image with respect to the movie	0.00 to 100.00 ^{a)}

a) The 0.00 setting is the same as Over, and the 100.00 is the same as Under.

Selecting the freeze timing

In the <KF Freeze Timing> group, select the timing for freezing the keyframe strobe.

Frame: freeze in frame units.

Field: freeze in field units.

Notes

The freeze timing setting is not required when the following signal formats are being used.

1080P/50, 1080P/59.94, 1080PsF/23.976,
1080PsF/24, 1080PsF/25, 1080PsF/29.97, 720P/
50, 720P/59.94

Erasing the afterimages that remain in memory whenever a keyframe is passed

Press [KF Strobe Eraser], turning it on.

When the effect passes a keyframe, the afterimage is erased before writing a new afterimage.

Applying stardust to the afterimage portion

The afterimage portion becomes stardust, and gradually disappears.

1 Press the [DUST] button, turning it on.

2 Set the following parameters.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	KF Strobe Dust	Amount of the afterimage disappearing as stardust ^{a)}	0.00 to 100.00
2	Dust Soft	Timing with which stardust disappears	0.00 to 100.00
3	Dust Size	Size of stardust	0.00 to 100.00
4	Dust Aspect	Aspect ratio of stardust	-100.00 to +100.00

a) The way in which the afterimage disappears is affected by both the Decay and KF Strobe Dust parameter adjustments for the keyframe strobe.

Disabling the keyframe strobe afterimage

Press [KF Strobe Disable], turning it on.

If you turn this function on when creating a keyframe, even as the effect passes a keyframe, no afterimage remains.

Setting a combine process

Select whether to add the Keyframe Strobe effect before or after the combine.

Notes

- The combine process function is not supported on the MVE-8000A.
- When you change the selection in the <Combine Process> group, the afterimages which had been added up to then disappear.
- When you do not combine images, the Keyframe Strobe effect only is applied, regardless of the selection in the <Combine Process> group.

Select one of the following in the <Combine Process> group.

Combine → KF STRB: Add the Keyframe Strobe effect after the combine.

As parameters, the data for the channel with the lowest number among the channels being combined is enabled.

KF STRB → Combine: Add the Keyframe Strobe effect before the combine.

Parameters can be set independently for each channel.

Wind Settings

Notes

- The wind function is not supported on the MVE-8000A.
- When wind is turned on, any of the following effects that are on are turned off.
 - Trail
 - Motion decay
 - Keyframe strobe

Applying the wind effect

- 1 In the DME menu, select VF5 'Light/Trail' and HF5 'Wind.'

The Wind menu appears.

- 2 Press [Wind], turning it on.

- 3 Set the following parameters.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Decay	Amount of afterimage displayed	0.00 to 100.00 ^{a)}
2	Shift H	Extension in the horizontal direction	-100.00 to +100.00
3	Shift V	Extension in the vertical direction	-100.00 to +100.00

a) 0.00 represents no afterimage, and 100.00 represents no decay in the afterimage.

- 4 To erase the afterimages, press [Wind Eraser], turning it on.

Selecting the signal for the afterimage portion

In the <Wind Source> group, select the image to fill the afterimage portion.

Notes

- "Mix Color" or "Ext Video" can only be applied to one of the background (*see page 288*), flex shadow (*see page 240*), trail (*see page 275*), and wind effects. If you select "Mix Color" or "Ext Video" in the wind settings, a selection of "Mix Color" or "Ext Video" in any of the other effects is disabled, and "Flat Color" is selected in its place.
- When executing combining four channels of DME images, "Mix Color" and "Ext Video" cannot be selected.

Freeze Video: Freeze the input image to use as the afterimage.

Flat Color: Use a single color matte for the afterimage; you can set the following parameters with the knobs.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Luminance	Luminance	0.00 to 100.00
2	Saturation	Saturation	0.00 to 100.00
3	Hue	Hue	359.99 to 0.00

Hue Rotate: Use a single color matte with the hue changing for each frame as the afterimage; you can set the following parameters with the knobs.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Luminance	Luminance	0.00 to 100.00
2	Saturation	Saturation	0.00 to 100.00
3	Hue Speed	Rate at which hue changes	-12.00 to +12.00

Mix Color: Insert a mix color signal (*see page 246*) in the afterimage portion.

Ext Video: Insert the external video signal input to the Ext IN connector in the afterimage portion.

Rainbow: Use a freeze image with the hue changing every frame in the afterimage portion. The difference from “Hue Rotate” is that many colors appear simultaneously.

For details of the Rainbow parameters, see the “Hue Rotate” item above.

Applying modulation to the afterimage portion (Modulation)

- 1 In the Wind menu, press [Modulation], turning it on.
- 2 Set the following parameters.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Amp H	Horizontal amplitude of the wave	0.00 to 100.00
2	Freq H	Horizontal frequency of the wave	-100.00 to +100.00
3	Amp V	Vertical amplitude of the wave	0.00 to 100.00
4	Freq V	Vertical frequency of the wave	-100.00 to +100.00

For details of Priority, Wind Freeze Timing, Wind Eraser, Defocus, Dust, and Combine Process in the Wind menu, see “Trail Settings” (page 275).

Spotlighting Settings

You can set up to three light sources (lights 1 to 3).

Notes

- The Spotlighting effect is not supported on the MVE-8000A.
- The BZDM-9050 Texture Lighting Software (for MVE-9000) is required to set lights 2 and 3.
- When the global effect Combiner is enabled, the settings of the smallest-numbered channel selected for the Combiner are used.

Adjustments to the image surface

The following adjustments can be made to the image surface struck by the light.

- Adjusting the brightness of the whole image
- Selecting the image surface effect
- Test sphere function
- Adjusting the bumpiness of the image surface

- Coordinate axis on surface of image
- Texture deformations

Selecting the image surface effect

Flat: The image surface is unchanged, causing the selected light source to appear as the effect.

Texture: A texture appears on the surface of the image. Textures can be selected from among 30 patterns (see page 347).

Non Linear: Spotlighting effect is applied to an area to which a DME nonlinear effect is applied.

Notes

The BZDM-9050 is required to enable Texture and Non Linear settings on the MVE-9000.

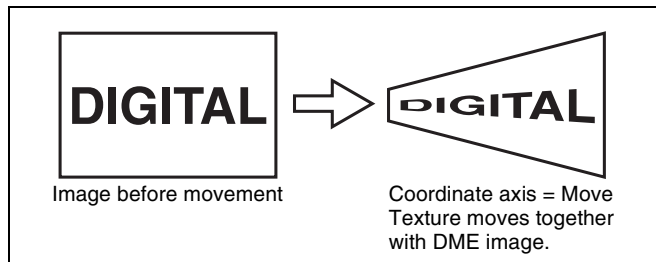
Test sphere function

A test sphere is a translucent sphere virtually embedded in the center of the input picture to provide an intuitive way for you to check the position and direction of the spotlight. When you change the position or direction of a light source, the side of the sphere closest to the light source grows brighter. You can easily check the position and direction of the light source by viewing the test sphere (see page 282).

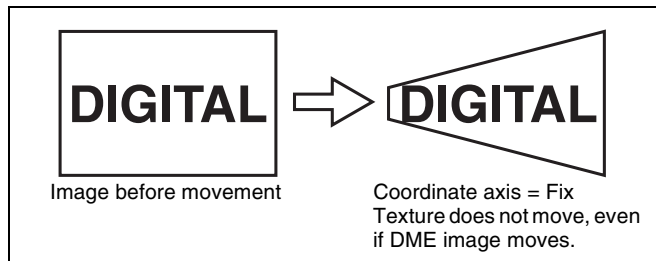
Coordinate axis on surface of image

Specify where to apply the texture or test sphere on the image surface.

Move: The texture moves together with the DME image.



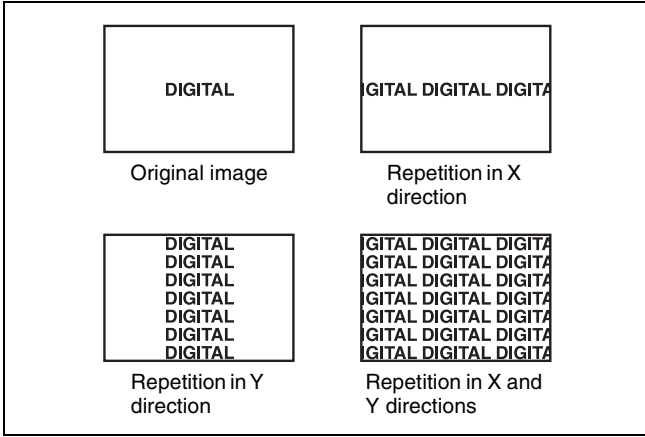
Fix: The texture does not move, even if the DME image moves.



Texture deformations

You can change the texture pattern, position, and size, and use the repetition function.

The following figure shows examples of a texture pattern repeated in the X and Y directions.



Setting lights

Light source types

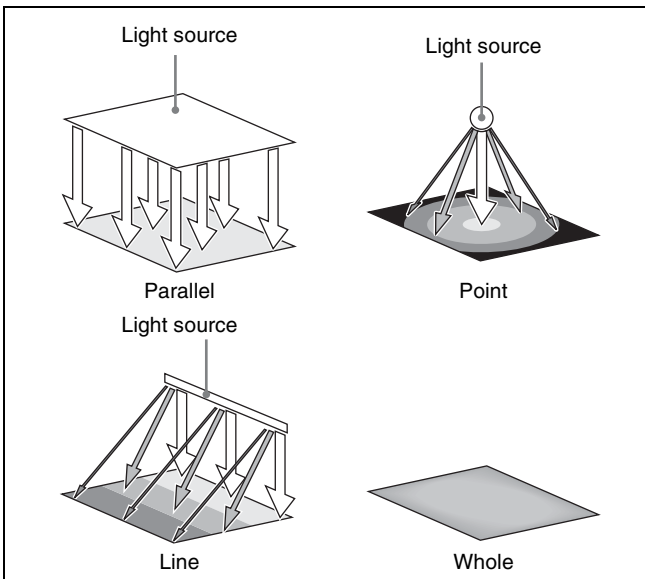
The following type of light sources are available (see figure).

Parallel: Parallel light source

Point: Point light source. As the light source is placed further away, the illuminated range becomes wider and the light becomes weaker.

Line: Line light source

Whole: Non-directional light source which illuminates the whole image.



Linking and unlinking image and spotlight

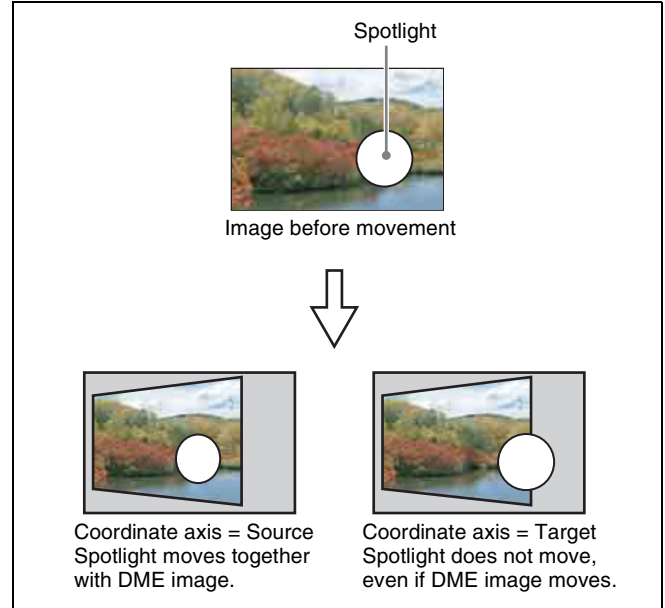
The spotlight can move together with a DME image, or be fixed in place.

Source: Place the light source in source coordinate space.

The spotlight is linked and moves when the image moves.

Target: Place the light source in target coordinate space.

The spotlight does not move, even when the image moves.



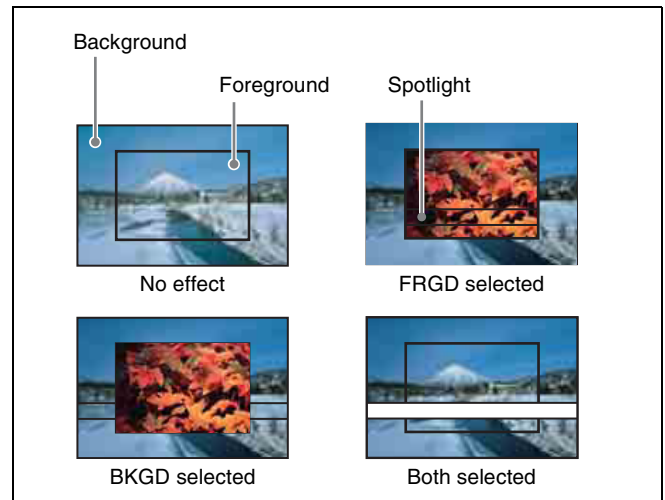
Selecting the lighted area

You can select the area lit by the spotlight.

FRGD: The light strikes the image foreground.

BKGD: The light strikes the image background.

Both: The light strikes both foreground and background.



Surface Flat

For the currently selected light source only, you can forcibly make the image surface effect flat.

This is effective when you have selected texture as image surface effect and want a flat effect for one light source only.

Light shape

Creates the light shape.

- Select the shape pattern
For shape patterns, see "Shape Patterns" (page 347).
- Set the size, degree of deformation, softness, and rotation.

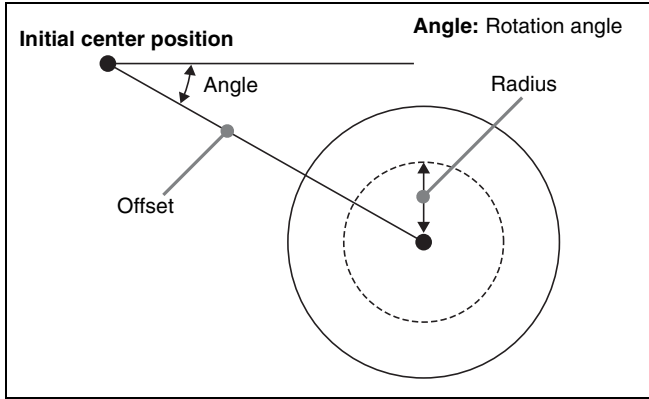
Ring settings

Shines the light with a hole in the middle, like a doughnut. Adjust the following parameters.

Offset: Distance to move the center of the ring from the initial position (the position set when selecting the light source in the <Spot Mode> group).

Radius: Inner side radius of the ring.

Angle: When an Offset is set, the rotation angle of the ring around the initial center position.



Fill blending modes

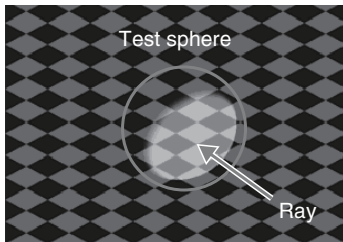
Specifies the way in which the light is blended with the image.

Mix: Light as if reflected from a mirror. The light can be given a color.

Multiply: Light as if reflected from a dull surface (diffuse reflection).

Relation between test spheres and parallel rays

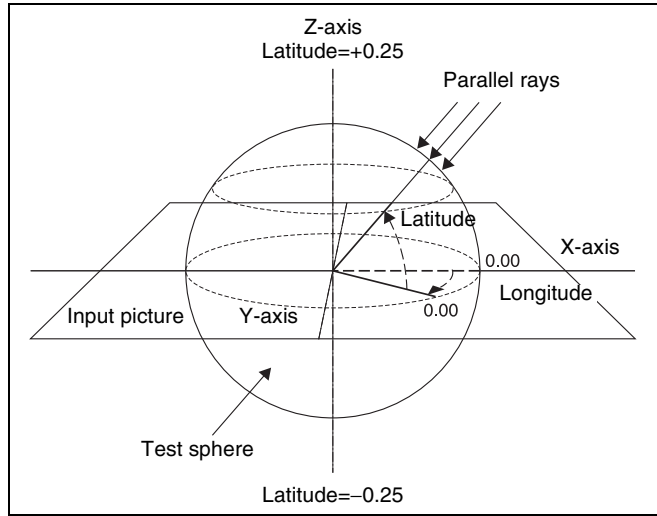
The following figure shows an example of the effect of parallel rays on a test sphere.



The direction of a ray is defined by longitude and latitude.

- **Longitude:** A direction (angle), expressed as a plus value for clockwise rotation in the plus direction with respect to the X axis of the input picture.
- **Latitude:** Latitude

The following figure shows the relationships between the longitude and latitude of parallel rays, input picture, and test sphere.



The unit of these direction parameters is the number of rotations, with 360° (1 rotation) expressed as 1.00, in the same way as 3D rotation parameters.

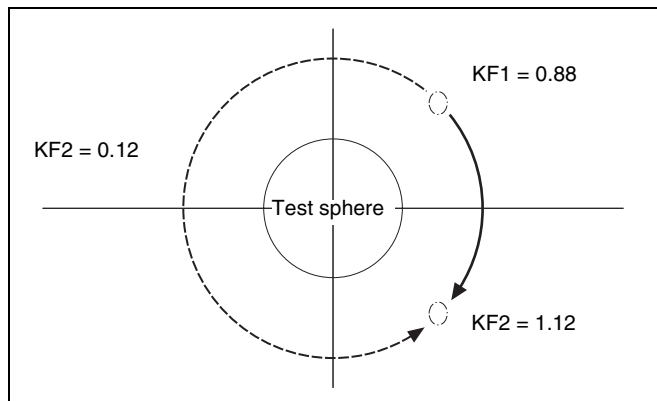
The following relationships apply in the example shown in the figure.

Parameter	Setting	Angle
Longitude	0.12	45°
Latitude	0.12	45°

The fractional part of the setting after the decimal point corresponds to an angle 0 to 360° . If the fractional parts of two setting values are the same, the effect is the same even if the integral parts are different.

The integral part of a setting value is used when moving a light source with keyframes.

For example, when the longitude of a light source rotates in the clockwise direction from 0.88 (315°) to 0.12 (45°), it rotates in the counterclockwise direction (the angle grows smaller) if the above values are used. In this case, the value of the second keyframe can be set to 1.12 ($360^\circ + 45^\circ$).



Keyframe trajectory

Setting the surface where light strikes the image

- 1 In the DME menu, select VF5 'Light/Trail' and HF6 'Spot Lighting.'

The Spot Lighting menu appears.

- 2 Press [Spot Lighting], turning it on.

- 3 Set the following parameter.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Total Ambient	Brightness of whole image	0.00 to 100.00

- Lowering the brightness of the image makes Spotlighting more effective.
- The Total Ambient setting is shared with the Lighting function.

- 4 In the <Surface Select> group, select the state of the surface struck by the light.

Flat: The image surface is unchanged, causing the selected light source to appear as the effect.

Texture: A texture appears on the surface of the image.

Non Linear: The Spotlighting effect is applied to an area to which a DME nonlinear effect is applied.

Notes

- The BZDM-9050 Texture Lighting Software (for MVE-9000) is required to enable Texture or Non Linear. An install key must be entered to use the software. For details, see "Installation and Device Setup (Install/Unit Config Menu)" in Chapter 18 (Volume 2).
- The Spotlighting Non Linear setting is effective for the following nonlinear effects. For any other nonlinear effect, the result of selecting the Non Linear setting is the same as selecting Flat. Wave, Mosaic Glass, Flag, Ripple, Lens, Panorama, Page Turn, Roll.

- 5 If you selected Texture or Non Linear in step 4, set the following parameters.

Parameters when you selected Texture

- SD format

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	X	Movement in X-axis direction	-8.00 to +8.00 ^{a)}
2	Y	Movement in Y-axis direction	-6.00 to +6.00 ^{b)}

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
3	Size X	Image size in X-axis direction	0.50 to 16.00
4	Size Y	Image size in Y-axis direction	0.50 to 16.00
5	Amp	Emphasize bumps and depressions	-100.00 to +100.00 ^{c)}

a) Minus moves left, plus moves right.

b) Minus moves down, plus moves up.

c) Plus emphasizes bumps in texture, minus emphasizes depressions. 0.00 is a flat surface.

• HD format

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	X	Movement in X-axis direction	-32.00 to +32.00 ^{a)}
2	Y	Movement in Y-axis direction	-24.00 to +24.00 ^{b)}
3	Size X	Image size in X-axis direction	0.50 to 16.00
4	Size Y	Image size in Y-axis direction	0.50 to 16.00
5	Amp	Emphasize bumps and depressions	-100.00 to +100.00 ^{c)}

a) Minus moves left, plus moves right.

b) Minus moves down, plus moves up.

c) Plus emphasizes bumps in texture, minus emphasizes depressions. 0.00 is a flat surface.

Parameters when you selected Non Linear

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
5	Amp	Distance of light	-100.00 to +100.00 ^{a)}

a) Light appears from Z direction. At -100.00 the light goes deepest, at +100.00 the whole image is lit like a flat effect.

- 6 If you selected Texture in step 4, select the pattern as explained in the next section "To select a texture pattern."

- 7 If you selected Texture in step 4, select the way it is applied in the <Surface Axis> group.

Move: The texture moves together with the DME image.

Fix: The texture does not move, even if the DME image moves.

For the difference between these application methods, see "Coordinate axis on surface of image" (page 280).

Notes

If Non Linear is selected in the <Surface Select> group, Fix is disabled. Behavior is the same as Move.

To select a texture pattern

- 1 In the Spot Lighting menu, press [Texture Ptn Select].

The Texture Ptn Select menu appears.

Two lists appear in the status area. The list on the left displays the number and name of the currently selected texture. The list on the right is for selecting a texture.

- 2 In the <Texture Pattern> group, press [User] or [Factory] to select the texture pattern list.

[User]: List of texture patterns created by the user.

See “Adding User Texture Patterns” in Chapter 18 (Volume 2).

[Factory]: List of texture patterns stored in the system when shipped from the factory.

- 3 Do one of the following to select a texture.

- Press directly on the list on the right of the status area.
- Press the arrow keys to scroll the reverse video cursor.
- Turn the knob.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Texture No	Texture	1 to 30 ^{a)} 101 and upwards ^{b)}

a) When Factory is selected

b) When User is selected. The setting value range depends on the number of texture patterns installed.

- 4 Press [Set].

The texture selected in step 2 appears in the list on the left of the status area.

To set a test sphere

- 1 In the Spot Lighting menu, press [Test Sphere], turning it on.

A test sphere effect appears on the image surface.

- 2 Adjust the following parameter.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
5	Amp	Distance of light	-100.00 to +100.00 ^{a)}

a) Light appears from Z direction. At -100.00 the light goes deepest, at +100.00 the whole image is lit like a flat effect.

For details of the relationship of test spheres and light sources, see “Relation between test spheres and parallel rays” (page 282).

Setting light sources

Up to three light sources (Light 1 to Light 3) for Spot lighting can be set by menus.

Light source menu

The following three light source menus are available.

Light source	Menu
Light 1	DME >Light/Trail >Spot Lighting >Light 1
Light 2	DME >Light/Trail >Spot Lighting >Light 2
Light 3	DME >Light/Trail >Spot Lighting >Light 3

Notes

The BZDM-9050 Texture Lighting Software (for MVE-9000) is required to enable Light 2 and Light 3. An install key must be entered to use the software.

For details, see “Installation and Device Setup (Install/Unit Config Menu)” in Chapter 18 (Volume 2).

To set light source data

The following example shows how to set light source data with the Light 1 menu.

If you use multiple light sources, use the same procedure for all light sources.

- 1 In the <Spot Lighting Adjust> group of the Spot Lighting menu, press [Light 1].

The Light 1 menu appears.

- 2 Press [Light 1], turning it on.

- 3 Set the following parameters.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Total Ambient	Brightness of whole image	0.00 to 100.00
2	Intensity	Intensity (brightness) of the light source	0.00 to 100.00
3	Soft	Softness of the lighted area	0.00 to 100.00

- Lowering the brightness of the image makes Spot lighting more effective.
- The Total Ambient setting is shared with the Lighting function.

- 4 In the <Spot Mode> group, select the type of light source (see page 281).

Parallel: Parallel light source. The direction can be set.

Point: Point light source. The position can be set.

Line: Line light source. The position and angle can be set.

Whole: Non-directional light source which illuminates the whole image (no settings).

- 5** According to the selected light source type, set the following parameters.

When you selected Parallel

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Longitude	Longitude	-8.00 to +8.00 ^{a)}
2	Latitude	Latitude	-8.00 to +8.00

a) Minus moves counterclockwise, plus moves clockwise.

When you selected Point

• SD format

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	X	Movement in X-axis direction	-6.00 to +6.00 ^{a)}
2	Y	Movement in Y-axis direction	-6.00 to +6.00 ^{b)}
3	Z	Movement in Z-axis direction	-6.00 to +6.00 ^{c)}

a) Minus moves left, plus moves right.

b) Minus moves down, plus moves up.

c) Minus moves forward, plus moves deeper.

• HD format

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	X	Movement in X-axis direction	-24.00 to +24.00 ^{a)}
2	Y	Movement in Y-axis direction	-24.00 to +24.00 ^{b)}
3	Z	Movement in Z-axis direction	-24.00 to +24.00 ^{c)}

a) Minus moves left, plus moves right.

b) Minus moves down, plus moves up.

c) Minus moves forward, plus moves deeper.

When you selected Line

• SD format

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	X	Movement in X-axis direction	-6.00 to +6.00 ^{a)}
2	Y	Movement in Y-axis direction	-6.00 to +6.00 ^{b)}
3	Z	Movement in Z-axis direction	-6.00 to +6.00 ^{c)}
4	Longitude	Longitude	-8.00 to +8.00 ^{d)}

a) Minus moves left, plus moves right.

b) Minus moves down, plus moves up.

c) Minus moves forward, plus moves deeper.

d) Minus moves counterclockwise, plus moves clockwise.

• HD format

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	X	Movement in X-axis direction	-24.00 to +24.00 ^{a)}
2	Y	Movement in Y-axis direction	-24.00 to +24.00 ^{b)}
3	Z	Movement in Z-axis direction	-24.00 to +24.00 ^{c)}
4	Longitude	Longitude	-8.00 to +8.00 ^{d)}

a) Minus moves left, plus moves right.

b) Minus moves down, plus moves up.

c) Minus moves forward, plus moves deeper.

d) Minus moves counterclockwise, plus moves clockwise.

- 6** In the <Axis Select> group, select the coordinate space in which to place the light source.

Source: Place the light source in the source coordinate space. The spotlight moves when the image moves.

Target: Place the light source in the target coordinate space. The spotlight does not move, even when the image moves.

For details of the coordinate space in which to place the light source, see “Linking and unlinking image and spotlight” (page 281).

To set a test sphere

- 1** In the Light 1 menu, press [Test Sphere], turning it on.

A test sphere effect appears on the surface of the image.

- 2** Adjust the following parameter.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
5	Amp	Distance of light	-100.00 to +100.00 ^{a)}

a) Light appears from Z direction. At -100.00 the light goes deepest, at +100.00 the whole image is lit like a flat effect.

To select the lighted area

In the <Area Select> group, select one of the following.

FRGD: The light strikes the image foreground.

BKGD: The light strikes the image background.

Both: The light strikes both foreground and background.

For more information about the lighted area, see “Selecting the lighted area” (page 281).

Notes

- If you select [Multiply] in the <Fill Blending Mode> group of the Light Color Adjust menu (see page 287),

the light effect is not applied to the background, even if you select BKGD or Both.

- If the setting of [Brilliancy] in the <Fill Source> group of the Light Color Adjust menu (*see page 287*) is 100.00, the light effect is not applied to the background, even if you select BKGD or Both.
- When the global effect Combiner is set to Mix or Depth, the light effect is not applied to the background, even if you select BKGD or Both.

To select Surface Flat

Press [Surface Flat], turning it on.

If you have selected anything other than Flat in the <Surface Select> group of the Spot Lighting menu, the part corresponding only to the surface being struck by the currently set light from the light source is shown in the same way as if Flat had been selected.

To set the shape of the light

- 1 Press [Shape], turning it on.
- 2 Set the following parameters.

SD format

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Shape Ptn	Shape pattern	1 to 2 ^{a)}
2	Size	Shape size	0.00 to 6.00
3	Deform	Amount of shape deformation	0.00 to 100.00 ^{b)}
4	Soft	Softness of shape pattern	0.00 to 100.00
5	Angle	Angle of shape pattern rotation	-8.00 to +8.00 ^{c)}

a) For more information about the shape patterns, see “Shape Patterns” (*page 347*) in the Appendix.

b) 0 is a round shape, and 100 is the shape itself. Smaller values make the pattern more rounded.

c) -1.00 is one rotation in the counterclockwise direction. +1.00 is one rotation in the clockwise direction.

HD format

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Shape Ptn	Shape pattern	1 to 2 ^{a)}
2	Size	Shape size	0.00 to 24.00
3	Deform	Amount of shape deformation	0.00 to 100.00 ^{b)}
4	Soft	Softness of shape pattern	0.00 to 100.00
5	Angle	Angle of shape pattern rotation	-8.00 to +8.00 ^{c)}

a) For more information about the shape patterns, see “Shape Patterns” (*page 347*) in the Appendix.

b) 0 is a round shape, and 100 is the shape itself. Smaller values make the pattern more rounded.

c) -1.00 is one rotation in the counterclockwise direction. +1.00 is one rotation in the clockwise direction.

To rotate the shape pattern

- 1 Press [Shape Speed], turning it on.

The display on knob 5 that was visible when [Shape] was selected changes.

- 2 Set the following parameter.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
5	Speed	Rotation direction and speed	-100.00 to +100.00 ^{a)}

a) -100.00 is four rotations per second in the counterclockwise direction, and +100.00 is four rotations per second in the clockwise direction. 0.00 stops the rotation.

To change the light to a ring shape

Notes

If you select Parallel or Whole (*see page 284*) in the <Spot Mode> group and shaping is disabled, the Ring parameter cannot be set.

- 1 Press [Ring], turning it on.
- 2 Set the following parameter.

SD format

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Offset	Offset from center position (radius)	-6.00 to +6.00
2	Radius	Radius of ring	0.00 to 6.00
3	Angle	Rotation angle of ring	-8.00 to +8.00 ^{a)}

a) -1.00 is one rotation in the counterclockwise direction and +1.00 is one rotation in the clockwise direction.

Notes

There is no Radius setting when Line is selected in the <Spot Mode> group.

HD format

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Offset	Offset from center position (radius)	-24.00 to +24.00
2	Radius	Radius of ring	0.00 to 6.00
3	Angle	Rotation angle of ring	-8.00 to +8.00 ^{a)}

- a) -1.00 is one rotation in the counterclockwise direction and +1.00 is one rotation in the clockwise direction.

Notes

There is no Radius setting when Line is selected in the <Spot Mode> group.

To rotate the ring

- 1 Press [Ring Speed], turning it on.

The display on knob 3 that was visible when [Ring] was selected changes.

- 2 Set the following parameter.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
3	Speed	Rotation speed and direction	-100.00 to +100.00 ^{a)}

- a) -100.00 is four rotations per second in the counterclockwise direction, and +100.00 is four rotations per second in the clockwise direction. 0.00 stops the rotation.

To invert the lighted area

Press [Light Invert], turning it on.

To add color to the light source

- 1 In the Light 1 menu, press [Light Color Adjust].

The Light Color Adjust menu appears.

- 2 In the <Fill Blending Mode> group, select how the light and image should be blended.

Mix: Light as if reflected from a mirror.

Multiply: Light as if reflected from a dull surface (diffuse reflection).

- 3 If you selected Mix, select the fill color in the <Fill Source> group.

Flat Color: A monochrome matte.

Hue Rotation: Color matte with a color that gradually varies.

- 4 According to the selection, set the following parameters.

When you selected Flat Color

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Luminance	Luminance	0.00 to 100.00
2	Saturation	Saturation	0.00 to 100.00
3	Hue	Hue	359.99 to 0.00
4	Brilliance	Brilliance of surface struck by light	0.00 to 100.00 ^{a)}

- a) 100.00: The image beneath the light shines through.

When you selected Hue Rotation

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Luminance	Luminance	0.00 to 100.00
2	Saturation	Saturation	0.00 to 100.00
3	Speed	Speed at which hue changes	-12.00 to +12.00 ^{a)}
4	Brilliance	Brilliance of surface struck by light	0.00 to 100.00 ^{b)}

- a) -12.00 is a 360-degree rotation every second in the counterclockwise direction. +12.00 is a 360-degree rotation every second in the clockwise direction.

- b) 100.00: The image beneath the light shines through.

Copying or swapping light source settings

You can copy or swap the setting from one light source (Light 1 to Light 3) to another light source.

- 1 In the Spot Lighting menu, press [Copy/Swap].

The Copy/Swap menu appears.

Two lists appear in the status area. The list on the left shows the copy or swap sources, and the list on the right shows the copy or swap destinations.

- 2 Do one of the following to select the target data.

- Press directly on the list in the status area.
- Press the arrow keys to scroll the reverse video cursor.
- Turn the knobs.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Left No	Copy or swap source data	1 to 3
2	Right No	Copy or swap destination data	1 to 3

- 3 Press [Copy] to copy, or [Swap] to swap.

To undo a copy or swap

Press [Undo]. Settings are returned to their values before the copy or swap.

Applying Special Effects (Other Effects)

Background Settings

Adds a color or inputs an external signal to the background of the image.

Notes

Signal selection for this purpose is not supported on the MVE-8000A.

Applying the Background effect

- 1 In the DME menu, select VF6 'Input/Output' and HF1 'Bkgd.'

The Bkgd menu appears.

- 2 Press [Bkgd], turning it on.

The Background effect is enabled. Only if Flat Color is selected in the <Bkgd Fill> group, you can adjust the parameters with the knobs.

- 3 Set the following parameters.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Luminance	Luminance	0.00 to 100.00
2	Saturation	Saturation	0.00 to 100.00
3	Hue	Hue	359.99 to 0.00

Selecting the signal to insert in the background

When using the MVE-9000, you can select the signal to insert in the background.

With [Bkgd] set on, use the following procedure.

- 1 In the <Bkgd Fill> group, select one of the following.

Flat Color: single color

Mix Color: mix color signal set in the Color Mix menu (*see page 246*)

Ext Video: an external video signal input to the Ext IN connector

Notes

- "Mix Color" or "Ext Video" can only be applied to one of the background, flex shadow (*see page 240*), trail (*see page 275*), and wind (*see page 279*) effects. If you select "Mix Color" or "Ext Video" in one of

these settings, a selection of "Mix Color" or "Ext Video" in any of the other effects is disabled, and "Flat Color" is selected in its place.

- When executing combining four channels of DME images, "Mix Color" and "Ext Video" cannot be selected.

- 2 Only if Flat Color is selected in step 1, adjust the following parameters.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Luminance	Luminance	0.00 to 100.00
2	Saturation	Saturation	0.00 to 100.00
3	Hue	Hue	359.99 to 0.00

Separate Sides Settings

Applies separate video signals and key signals to the front and back of the image.

Applying the Separate Sides effect

- 1 In the DME menu, select VF6 'Input/Output' and HF2 'Video/Key.'

The Video/Key menu appears.

- 2 Press [Separate Side], turning it on.

The Separate Sides effect is enabled. If the video and key signals currently being output to the monitor are the front side, you can select the front signals. If they are the back side, you can select the back signals. Video and key signals are selected with the cross-point control blocks of each M/E bank or the PGM/PST bank.

Shaped Video Settings

For each of the front and back sides of the image, specifies whether to handle input video from the switcher as shaped video (key processed signals).

You can also make these settings for the output video.

Notes

- When using an SDI interface, with the [PROC KEY] not selected in the output destination buttons, then the shaped video function is enabled.
- When using the dedicated interface or SDI interface, with [PROC KEY] selected in the output destination buttons, since the input video signal to the first channel is always set to the key processed signal on the switcher, the shaped video setting is always on. For the second and

third channel signals, this will be turned off. For the output video, this is always on.

Switching shaped video on or off

- 1 In the DME menu, select VF6 'Input/Output' and HF2 'Video/Key.'

The Video/Key menu appears.

- 2 In the <Shaped Video> group, press each of the following buttons to switch it on or off.

Front Input: When this is on, the front image of the input video signal is treated as shaped video.

Back Input: When this is on, the back image of the input video signal is treated as shaped video.

Output: When this is on, the output video signal is treated as shaped video.

About on and off for shaped video input (Front Input/Back Input)

Switch shaped video on and off according to the input video signals.

For example, switch the shaped video input on when the input signal is a key processed image such as computer graphics.

Switch the shaped video input off when the input signal is not key processed, for example when a video signal taken with a camera is cut out with a title or other key signal.

About on and off for shaped video output

Switch the shaped video output on and off to match the on and off state of the switcher clean video mode.

Also, when the shaped video output is on, it is recommended that the switcher key type be set to linear key.

About the relationship between shaped video output and effects

When the shaped video output is off, the video signal before key processing is output. According to the selected effect, the following states may result.

- (a) The output video signal is affected by the key signal.
- (b) When key processing is done, a different image may appear in the parts which are removed.
- (c) There is no change in the output video signal for effects which are applied to key signals only.

When multiple effects are applied, the order of priority is (a) > (b) > (c).

The following explains the relationship between effects and states (a), (b), and (c).

(a) The output video signal is affected by the key signal

The output video signal is affected by the key signal when the following effects are selected. To prevent the signal

from being affected, set the DME key source to Int Key, or choose an appropriate input key signal.

Page Turn, Roll, Cylinder, Sphere, Spotighting, global effects (Combiner, Brick, Shadow)

(b) When key processing is done, a different image may appear in the parts which are removed

The following states result, depending on the selected effect.

Removal with the key can be checked by turning the background on.

Border, Beveled Edge: Added also to the outer side of the cropped video signal.

Trail, Keyframe Strobe: The key signal level of the afterimage portion varies with adjustments of the knob (Decay), but the afterimage portion of the video signal does not disappear until Trail Eraser (KF Strobe Eraser) is turned on or the effect is turned off.

Lighting: The Lighting effect is applied to the whole picture.

Spotighting: If BKGD or Both is selected in the <Area Select> group, light strikes the entire background.

(c) No change in the output video signal for effects which are applied to key signals only

The following states result, depending on the selected effect.

Removal with the key can be checked by turning the background on.

Crop: The Copy effect is applied to the key signal only. The video signal does not change.

Edge Soft: The Edge Soft effect is applied to the key signal only. The video signal does not change.

Shadow, Flex Shadow, Combine Shadow: The key signal density changes. The video signal does not change.

Fade: The key signal density changes according to depth data. The video signal does not change.

Key Density: The key signal density changes. The video signal does not change.

Invert Settings

Inverts the input video signal and/or key signal horizontally or vertically. You can make separate settings for the front and back.

Applying the Invert effect

- 1 In the DME menu, select VF6 'Input/Output' and HF2 'Video/Key.'

The Video/Key menu appears.

- 2 In the <Front> group (to invert front signals) or the <Back> (to invert back signals), press the following buttons, turning them on.

- H Invert:** Invert video and key signals horizontally.
V Invert: Invert video and key signals vertically.

Key Density Settings

You can adjust the key density for the key signal input to the DME.

Setting the key density

- 1 In the DME menu, select VF6 'Input/Output' and HF2 'Video/Key.'

The Video/Key menu appears.

- 2 Press [Key Density], turning it on.

- 3 Set the following parameter.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Key Density	Key density	0.00 to 100.00

Key Source Selection

You can select either the key signals received from the switcher or the key signals generated in the DME for application to the front and back of the image.

Selecting the key source signals

Notes

When the shaped video setting (*see page 288*) is on, it is not possible to select the key source. It is fixed as "Ext Key" as listed in the following.

- 1 In the DME menu, select VF6 'Input/Output' and HF2 'Video/Key.'

The Video/Key menu appears.

- 2 In the <Front Key> group or <Back Key> group respectively, press one of the following, turning it on.

Ext Key: Use the key signal sent from the switcher as the key source.

Int Key: Use the full-size DME internal key signal as the key source.

Lum Key: Use the input video luminance signal as the key source.

- 3 When Ext Key or Lum Key is selected in step 2, set the following parameters.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Clip	Reference level for key signal generation	-7.31 to +109.59
2	Gain	Key sensitivity	-100.00 to +100.00

Notes

- The Ext Key and Lum Key in the <Front Key> group share clip and gain settings. Similarly, Ext Key and Lum Key in the <Back Key> group also share clip and gain settings.
- The Ext Key parameter setting is only enabled when the shaped video setting is off.

Interpolation Settings

Specifies the methods used for interpolation processing of input video signals and input key signals.

For input video signals, you can select from the following four methods.

- Detect changes in the luminance and chrominance signals separately, and switch automatically between fields and frames. You can select the degree of change detection.
- Detect changes in the luminance signal separately, and switch automatically between fields and frames. You can select the degree of change detection.
- Do interpolation in field units.
- Do interpolation in frame units.

For input key signals, you can select from the following three methods.

- Detect changes in the luminance signal separately, and switch automatically between fields and frames. You can select the degree of change detection.
- Do interpolation in field units.
- Do interpolation in frame units.

You can also select the number of pixels used in interpolation processing, and select the method used to show the picture reduced or expanded.

Further, you can apply an anti-moire filter to reduce the moire patterns created by interpolation.

Notes

- Interpolation processing is possible for the following signal formats and DME systems.
 - MVE-8000A: 480i/59.94, 576i/50
 - MVE-9000 and MKS-7470X/7471X: 480i/59.94, 576i/50, 1080i/59.94, 1080i/50
- The anti-moire filter is only effective when the MVE-8000A is used in an HD system.

Selecting an interpolation method for input video signals

1 In the DME menu, select VF6 'Input/Output' and HF3 'Process.'

2 In the <Video Field/Frame Mode> group, select the interpolation method for the video signal.

Adaptive Y/C: Detect changes in the luminance and chrominance components of the video signal separately, and switch automatically between fields and frames.

Adaptive Y: Detect changes in the luminance component of the video signal separately, and switch automatically between fields and frames.

Field: Do interpolation in field units. This gives natural movement, suitable for moving video.

Frame: Do interpolation in frame units. This gives higher image precision, suitable for still pictures.

3 When you select Adaptive Y/C or Adaptive Y in step **2**, set the following parameter.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Mode	Degree of motion detection	1 to 4

4 In the <Key Field/Frame Mode> group, select the interpolation method for the key signal.

Adaptive: Detect changes in the luminance component of the key signal separately, and switch automatically between fields and frames.

Field: Do interpolation in field units. This gives natural movement, suitable for moving video.

Frame: Do interpolation in frame units. This gives higher image precision, suitable for still pictures.

5 When you select Adaptive in step **4**, set the following parameter.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Mode	Degree of motion detection	1 to 4

6 In the <Interpolation Mode> group, set the number of pixels to use in interpolation.

Multi: Use multi-point interpolation. This gives higher picture quality.

Linear: Use two-point interpolation.

7 In the <Filter Mode> group, select the method used to show the picture reduced or expanded.

Mode1 (standard): Even when the picture is reduced, add compensation so that it can be seen clearly.

Mode2 (soft): Suppress aliasing when expanding or reducing the picture.

Mode3 (sharp): Do not suppress aliasing when expanding or reducing the picture.

Applying the anti-moire filter

You can reduce the moire patterns created by interpolation when an image is enlarged, compressed, or rotated.

Notes

This function is effective only when the HD signal format is used on the MVE-8000A.

1 In the DME menu, select VF6 'Input/Output' and HF3 'Process.'

The Process menu appears.

2 Press [Anti Moire Filter], turning it on.

3 Set the following parameter.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Anti Moire Filter	Amount of moire reduction	1 to 8

Corner Pinning Settings

Notes

When the Brick effect is enabled, the Corner Pinning function cannot be used.

Setting the Foreground Corner Pinning positions

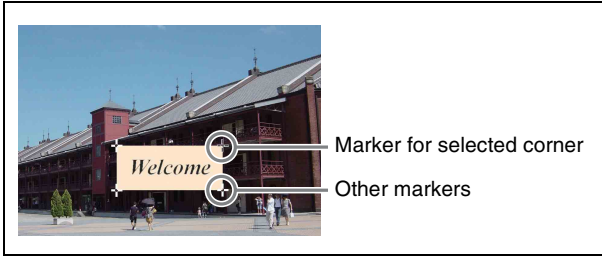
1 In the DME menu, select VF4 'Non Linear/Corner Pin', HF2 'Corner Pinning.'

The Corner Pinning menu appears.

2 Set [Corner Pinning] to On.

3 Set [Corner Marker] to On.

A marker appears for each corner. The marker for the selected corner is distinguished from the other markers.



- 4** In the <Corner Select> group, select the corner to operate on.

Top Left: Top left

Top Right: Top right

Bottom Left: Bottom left

Bottom Right: Bottom right

All: All four corners

- 5** Turn the knobs to adjust the position of the corner selected in step 4.

The parameter setting ranges depend on the system's selected signal format (SD/HD) and aspect ratio (4:3/16:9) combination, as follows.

4:3 mode

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Pos X	Movement in x-axis direction	-8.00 to +8.00 (SD) ^{a)} -24.00 to +24.00 (HD) ^{a)}
2	Pos Y	Movement in y-axis direction	-6.00 to +6.00 (SD) ^{a)} -18.00 to +18.00 (HD) ^{a)}

a) When the selection for operation is "All," the Top Left value appears, and the knobs move all four corners correspondingly.

16:9 mode

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Pos X	Movement in x-axis direction	-8.00 to +8.00 (SD) ^{a)} -32.00 to +32.00 (HD) ^{a)}
2	Pos Y	Movement in y-axis direction	-4.50 to +4.50 (SD) ^{a)} -18.00 to +18.00 (HD) ^{a)}

a) When the selection for operation is "All," the Top Left value appears, and the knobs move all four corners correspondingly.

Resetting the corner positions

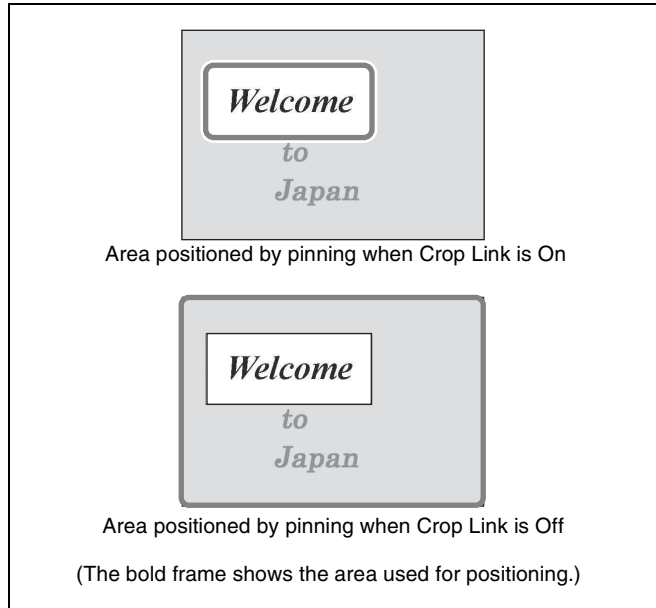
In the Corner Pinning menu, press [Reset Corner].

Selecting the area used for pinning

When the foreground is cropped, press [Crop Link] to select either of the following.

On: Use the area of the cropped image for positioning

Off: Use the area of the entire image, including the part hidden by cropping (shaded in the diagram below) for positioning



Adjusting the density of the foreground

You can adjust the density of the foreground image to be translucent so that the background shows through, making it easier to position the corners.

Notes

This setting is not saved in a key frame or snapshot.

- 1 In the Corner Pinning menu, set [Video Through] to On.

- 2 Turn the knob to adjust the following parameter.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
4	Density	Image density	0.00 to 100.00

Adjusting the zoom

You can enlarge the image around the corner being adjusted, to allow fine positioning of the corner.

Notes

- This setting is not saved in a key frame or snapshot.
- This function is only enabled when combine is set.
- When all four corners are being positioned, this function cannot be used.

- 1 In the Corner Pinning menu, press [Zoom Enable], turning it On.

- 2 Turn the knob to adjust the following parameter.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
5	Zoom	Degree of zooming in on the corners	1.00 to 16.00



Global Effect Operations

Overview

Global effects are special effects created by combining the images of successive channels. The Global Effect menu is used to add these effects. The following types of global effects are available.

Notes

On the MVE-8000A, when the signal format is 1080P, of the following effects, three or more channel combiner and brick effects cannot be used.

Name	Effect/Image
Combiner	Automatically combines the selected images when multiple channels are selected on one keyer or for one transition.
Brick	Creates a rectangular parallelepiped from 3 successive channels. <div style="text-align: center;"> </div>
Shadow	Gives the image a shadow. <div style="text-align: center;"> </div>

Operations Common to All Global Effects

In this section, explanations of the operating procedures for individual global effects begin with selections from VF1 'Ch1 - Ch4' in the Global Effect menu. The following are common operations that you must do prior to selecting from this menu.

- 1** In the device control block, select the target DME channel.
- 2** In the menu control block, press the top menu selection button [GLB EFF], then select VF1 'Ch1 - Ch4.'

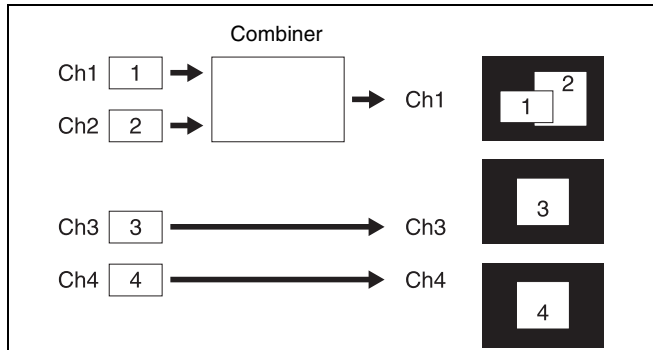
Combiner Settings

When multiple channels are selected on one keyer or for one transition, the Combiner automatically combines the selected images. Up to four channels can be combined. You can also control the way in which the combination is carried out, as a mix or an overlap with priority set automatically. For a mix, you can control the relative amounts of each channel. Images can also be crossed in three dimensions.

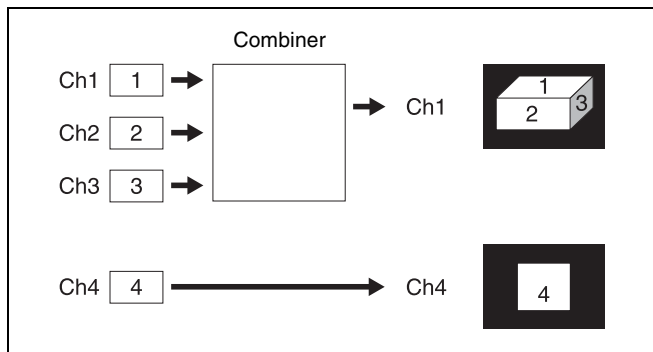
Notes

Three-dimensional image crossing is not supported on the MVE-8000A.

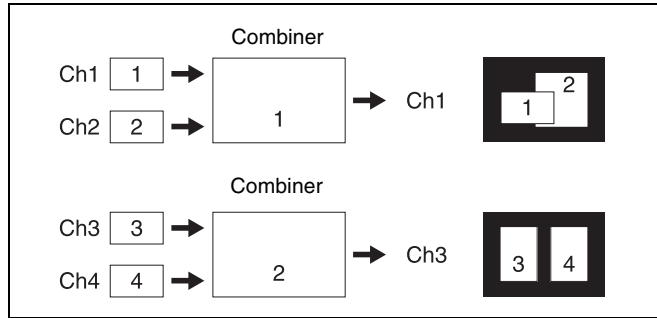
Combination of channel 1 (Ch1) and channel 2 (Ch2)



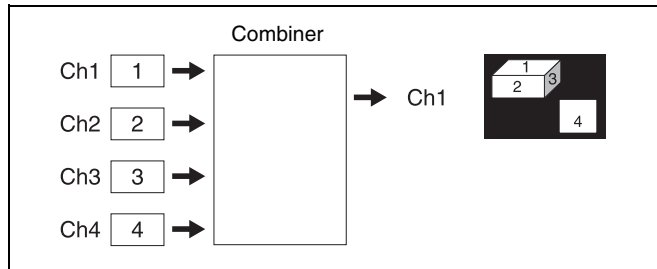
Combination of Ch1, Ch2, and Ch3



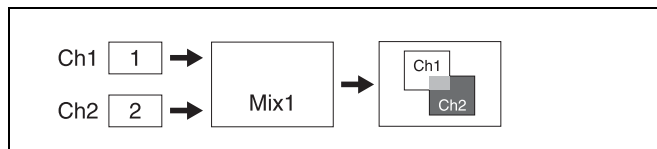
Combination of Ch1 and Ch2 / combination of Ch3 and Ch4



Combination of Ch1, Ch2, Ch3, and Ch4



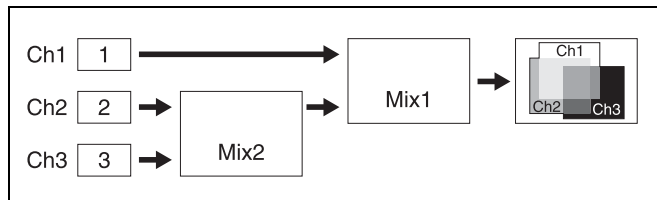
Mixing Ch1 and Ch2



If the Mix1 setting is 70, the proportion of the channels in the mixed portion in the previous illustration is as shown in the following table.


Combination	Indication in figure	Ch1	Ch2
Ch1 and Ch2		30%	70%

Mixing Ch1, Ch2, and Ch3

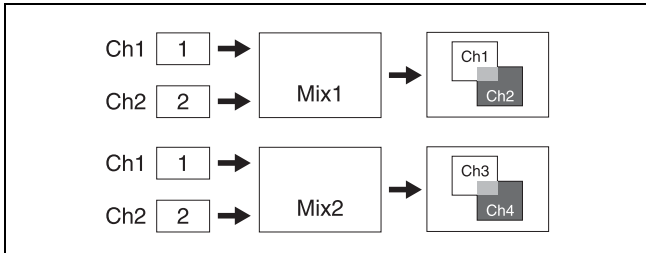


If the Mix1 setting is 70 and the Mix2 setting is 40, the proportions of the channels in the mixed portions in the previous illustration are as shown in the following table.



Combination	Indication in figure	Ch1	Ch2	Ch3
Ch1 and Ch2		30%	70%	—
Ch2 and Ch3		—	60%	40%
Ch1 and Ch3		30%	—	70%

Combination	Indication in figure	Ch1	Ch2	Ch3
Ch1, Ch2, and Ch3		30%	42%	28%

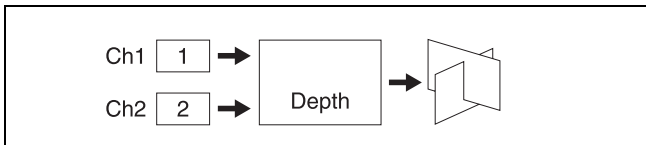
Pairwise mixing of Ch1 and Ch2, and Ch3 and Ch4



If the Mix1 setting is 70 and the Mix2 setting is 40, the proportions of the channels in the mixed portions in the previous illustration are as shown in the following table.

Combination	Indication in figure	Ch1	Ch2	Ch3	Ch4
Ch1 and Ch2		30%	70%	–	–
Ch3 and Ch4		–	–	60%	40%

Ch1 crossed with Ch2



Setting the combiners

The setting menu differs according to the combiner usage status.

This section shows the cases of “Ch1+Ch2+Ch3” and “Ch1+Ch2, Ch3+Ch4” as examples.

For details of operating procedures when using an SDI interface, see “Procedure for combine operation when using an SDI interface” (page 295).

- 1 In the Global Effect >Ch1- Ch4 menu, select HF1 ‘Combiner Priority.’

The Combiner Priority menu appears.

- 2 If [Mix], [Auto] or [Depth] is on, turn it off.

- 3 Set the overlap priority for “Ch1+Ch2+Ch3” or “Ch1+Ch2, Ch3+Ch4” as follows.

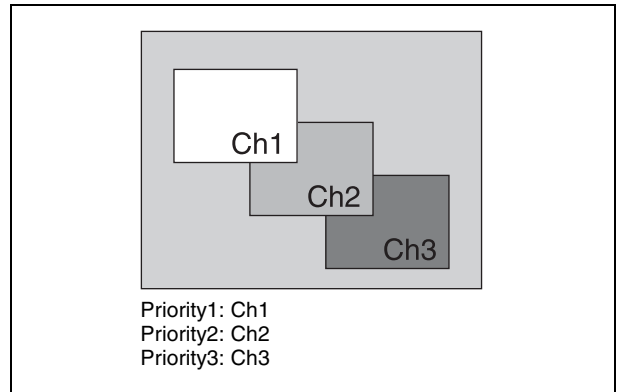
For case “Ch1+Ch2+Ch3”

Under <Priority1> to <Priority3>, press [Ch1], [Ch2], and [Ch3], respectively, to set the overlap priority.

Priority1: Select the channel with the highest priority.

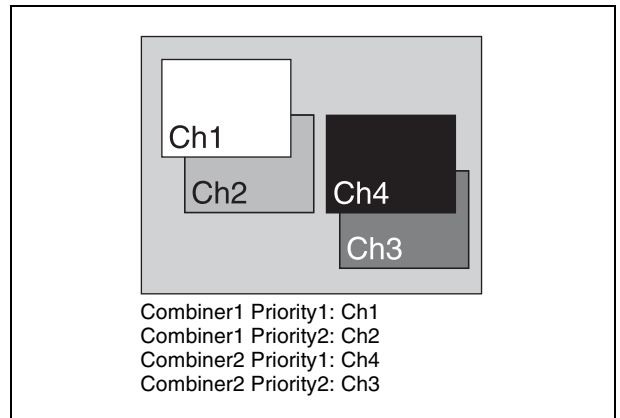
Priority2: Select the channel with the second highest priority.

Priority3: Select the channel with the lowest priority.



For case “Ch1+Ch2, Ch3+Ch4”

Under <Combiner 1 Priority 1> and <Combiner 1 Priority 2>, press [Ch1] and [Ch2] respectively, and under <Combiner 2 Priority 1> and <Combiner 2 Priority 2>, press [Ch4] and [Ch3] respectively, to set the respective priorities for overlaying the images.



Procedure for combine operation when using an SDI interface

Use the following procedure only when the DME with an SDI interface.

Notes

It is not possible to select channels with buttons in the key control block.

In the following, the example given is that channels 2 and 3 are combined, then channels 1+2 and channels 3+4 are combined, but other combinations are also possible.

- 1 In the Global Effect menu, select VF1 ‘Ch1-Ch4’ and HF7 ‘Combine Gp Select.’

The Combine Gp Select menu appears.

- 2 In the <Combine Gp Select> group, select the channel combination.

- To combine channels 2 and 3, press [Ch2+Ch3], turning it on.
- To combine the previously combined combinations of channels 1 and 2, and channels 3 and 4, press [Ch1+Ch2] and [Ch3+Ch4], turning them on.

Notes

The only two buttons that can be selected simultaneously are the combination of [Ch1+Ch2] and [Ch3+Ch4].

The selected channels are combined.

To cancel a combine

When for example [Ch2+Ch3] is on, pressing [Ch2+Ch3] once more turns it off. Alternatively, pressing a different combination button to select it cancels the combine selection for the current combination.

Mixing the images of up to four consecutive channels

- 1 In the Combiner Priority menu, press [Mix], turning it on.
- 2 Adjust the following parameters.

For case “Ch1+Ch2”

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Mix	Mix degree	0.00 to 100.00 ^{a)}

a) See “Mixing Ch1 and Ch2” (page 294).

For case “Ch1+Ch2+Ch3”

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Mix1	Mix degree for mix of channel 1 with result of Mix2	0.00 to 100.00 ^{a)}
2	Mix2	Mix degree for channels 2 and 3	0.00 to 100.00 ^{a)}

a) See “Mixing Ch1, Ch2, and Ch3” (page 294).

For case “Ch1+Ch2+Ch3+Ch4”

Knobs 1 and 2 set the same parameters as “For case ‘Ch1+Ch2+Ch3’,” respectively. Knob 3 is additionally effective, which sets the parameter Mix3 (in the same setting value range as with knobs 1 and 2).

Mixing pairwise the images of channels 1 and 2, and channels 3 and 4

- 1 In the Combiner Priority menu, press [Combiner1 Mix], turning it on.

- 2 Adjust the following parameter.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Mix1	Mix degree for channels 1 and 2	0.00 to 100.00 ^{a)}

a) See “Pairwise mixing of Ch1 and Ch2, and Ch3 and Ch4” (page 295).

- 3 Press [Combiner2 Mix], turning it on.

- 4 Adjust the following parameter.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Mix2	Mix degree for channels 2 and 3	0.00 to 100.00 ^{a)}

a) See “Pairwise mixing of Ch1 and Ch2, and Ch3 and Ch4” (page 295).

Automatically setting the priority of overlapping images

To set the system so that the priority of overlapping images is automatically determined by their position on the z-axis, in the Combiner Priority menu, press [Auto], turning it on.

Notes

It is not possible to cross images. If an image is rotated, the priority is determined by the position on the z-axis of the center of the image.

Crossing images from up to four consecutive channels in three dimensions

Notes

The three-dimensional crossing function is not supported on the MVE-8000A.

- 1 In the Combiner Priority menu, press [Depth], turning it on.
- 2 Set the following parameters.

For case “Ch1+Ch2”

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Soft	Softness of edges of crossed section	0.00 to 100.00

For case “Ch1+Ch2+Ch3”

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Soft1	Softness of edges of channel 1 and channel 2 crossed section	0.00 to 100.00
2	Soft2	Softness of edges of channel 2 and channel 3 crossed section	0.00 to 100.00

For case “Ch1+Ch2+Ch3+Ch4”

Knobs 1 and 2 set the same parameters as “For case ‘Ch1+Ch2+Ch3’,” respectively. Knob 3 is additionally effective, which sets the parameter Soft3 (in the same setting value range as with knobs 1 and 2).

Crossing images from channels 1 and 2, and channels 3 and 4 in three dimensions

Notes

The three-dimensional crossing function is not supported on the MVE-8000A.

- 1 In the Combiner Priority menu, press [Combiner1 Depth], turning it on.
- 2 Set the following parameter.

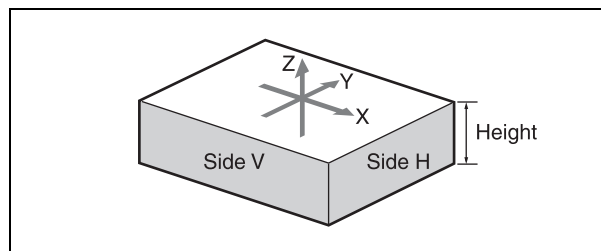
Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Soft1	Softness of edges of channel 1 and channel 2 crossed section	0.00 to 100.00

- 3 Press [Combiner2 Depth], turning it on.
- 4 Set the following parameter.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Soft2	Softness of edges of channel 3 and channel 4 crossed section	0.00 to 100.00

Brick Settings

Brick allows you to create a rectangular parallelepiped by using images of three consecutive channels. The Brick effect can combine Ch1, Ch2, and Ch3, or combine Ch2, Ch3, and Ch4. The three images are displayed as shown in the following figure.



Combinations of Ch1, Ch2, and Ch3

Upper side: Ch1 image
 Side V: Ch2 image
 Side H: Ch3 image

Combinations of Ch2, Ch3, and Ch4

Upper side: Ch2 image
 Side V: Ch3 image
 Side H: Ch4 image

You can adjust the height of the brick, the overlap between the three images and the way to insert the side images.

Applying the Brick effect

- 1 In the Global Effect >Ch1 - Ch4 menu, select HF2 ‘Brick.’

The Brick menu appears.

- 2 Press [Brick], turning it on.

The Brick effect is enabled, and a rectangular parallelepiped (brick) showing the images of three channels appears. You can use the knobs to adjust parameters for the height of the brick and the overlap between the three images.

Notes

- When the Brick effect is enabled, the z-axis position of the front image in the source coordinate frame is shifted by the amount of half the height. Therefore, the image is somewhat magnified.
- The flex shadow function cannot be enabled when Brick is enabled.

However, the flex shadow function is not supported on the MVE-8000A.

- 3 Set the parameters.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Height	Height of brick	0.00 to 8.00 ^{a)} 0.00 to 32.00 ^{b)}
2	Front Overlap	Front overlap	-100.00 to +100.00
3	Side H Overlap	Side H overlap	-100.00 to +100.00
4	Side V Overlap	Side V overlap	-100.00 to +100.00

- a) Setting for SD 4:3, SD 16:9
- b) Setting for HD 4:3, HD 16:9

4 Specify the way to insert the side images when the height is changed by pressing one of the following buttons in the <Side V> group or the <Side H> group.

Crop: Crop the parts that do not fit into the side without shrinking the picture. You can set the following parameters.

The valid ranges of the parameter values depend on the combination of signal format (SD/HD) and aspect ratio (4:3/16:9) selected in the system, as follows.

• **4:3 mode**

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	H	Position of left crop	-4.00 to +4.00 (SD) -12.00 to +12.00 (HD)
2	V	Position of top crop	-3.00 to +3.00 (SD) -9.00 to +9.00 (HD)
3	Rotation	Angle of rotation, when rotated around the Z-axis of the source space	0/90/180/270°

• **16:9 mode**

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	H	Position of left crop	-4.00 to +4.00 (SD) -16.00 to +16.00 (HD)
2	V	Position of top crop	-2.25 to +2.25(SD) -9.00 to +9.00 (HD)
3	Rotation	Angle of rotation, when rotated around the Z-axis of the source space	0/90/180/270°

The set position becomes the upper left corner of Side V or Side H. The right and bottom sides of the inserted image are set automatically.

Compress: Images are inserted after being compressed. You can set the following parameters.

The valid ranges of the parameter values depend on the combination of signal format (SD/HD) and aspect ratio (4:3/16:9) selected in the system, as follows.

• **4:3 mode**

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Top	Position of top crop	-2.83 to +3.00 (SD) -8.50 to +9.00 (HD)
2	Left	Position of left crop	-4.00 to +3.83 (SD) -12.00 to +11.50 (HD)
3	Right	Position of right crop	-3.83 to +4.00 (SD) -11.50 to +12.00 (HD)
4	Bottom	Position of bottom crop	-3.00 to +2.83 (SD) -9.00 to +8.50 (HD)
5	Rotation	Angle of rotation, when rotated around the Z-axis of the source space	0/90/180/270°

• **16:9 mode**

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Top	Position of top crop	-2.12 to +2.25 (SD) -8.50 to +9.00 (HD)
2	Left	Position of left crop	-4.00 to +3.87 (SD) -16.00 to +15.50 (HD)
3	Right	Position of right crop	-3.87 to +4.00 (SD) -15.50 to +16.00 (HD)
4	Bottom	Position of bottom crop	-2.25 to +2.12 (SD) -9.00 to +8.50 (HD)
5	Rotation	Angle of rotation, when rotated around the Z-axis of the source space	0/90/180/270°

The part of the image defined by Top, Left, Right, and Bottom is magnified or shrunk to fit into Side V or Side H.

To invert the image in a side face

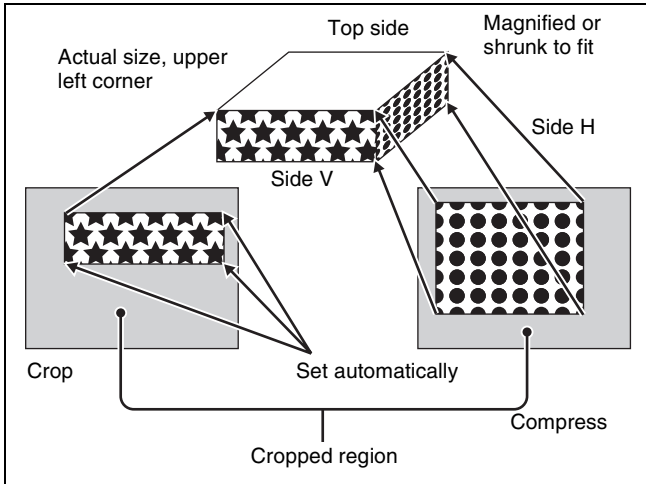
For example, to invert the image on the front of Side H in the <Side H Front> group, press the following buttons, turning them on.

Invert H: To invert horizontally.

Invert V: To invert vertically.

For the images on the other faces, use a similar operation in the following groups:

- Back image of Side H: <Side H Back> group
- Front image of Side V: <Side V Front> group
- Back image of Side V: <Side V Back> group



Shadow Settings

The effect uses two successive channels. You can adjust the position and density of the shadow with respect to the image, and the color of the shadow. The channel with the largest number (for example, Ch2 in the case of Ch1 and Ch2) becomes the shadow.

Notes

When the Combiner function is off, the shadow effect cannot be used.

Applying the Drop Shadow effect

The Shadow menu allows you to apply the Drop Shadow effect. To access the Shadow menu, in the Global Effect >Ch1 - Ch4 menu select HF3 'Shadow.'

Depending on the selected combiner channels, the valid buttons differ as follows.

Combiner channel selection	Button				
	Ch1 Shadow	Ch2 Shadow	Ch3 Shadow	Ch1+ Ch2 Shadow	Ch2+ Ch3 Shadow
Ch1+Ch2	Valid				
Ch2+Ch3		Valid			
Ch3+Ch4			Valid		
Ch1+Ch2 +Ch3	Valid	Valid		Valid	
Ch2+Ch3 +Ch4		Valid	Valid		Valid
Ch1+Ch2 +Ch3+Ch 4	Valid	Valid	Valid	Valid	

Taking Ch1 Shadow as an example, the following explains the procedure for applying the Drop Shadow effect.

- 1 Press [Ch1 Shadow], turning it on.

The Drop Shadow effect is enabled, and channel 2 becomes the channel for the shadow to the image. You can adjust the position and density of the shadow with the knobs.

Notes

The flex shadow function cannot be enabled when Drop Shadow is enabled.

However, the flex shadow function is not supported on the MVE-8000A.

- 2 Set the parameters.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Position H	Horizontal shadow position	-8.00 to +8.000 ^{a)} -32.00 to +32.000 ^{b)}
2	Position V	Vertical shadow position	-8.00 to +8.000 ^{a)} -32.00 to +32.000 ^{b)}
3	Density	Density of shadow	0.00 to 100.00

a) Setting for SD 4:3, SD 16:9

b) Setting for HD 4:3, HD 16:9

- 3 In the <Ch1 Shadow Source> group, select the shadow source signal.

Video: Select Ch2 video input as the shadow.

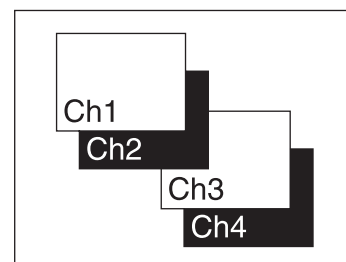
Flat Color: Select a matte color as the shadow.

- 4 When you select Flat Color in step 3, adjust the parameters.

Knob	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Luminance	Luminance	0.00 to 100.00
2	Saturation	Saturation	0.00 to 100.00
3	Hue	Hue	359.99 to 0.00

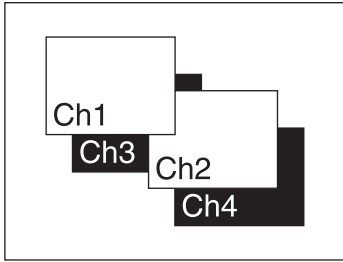
To combine the video images after applying a shadow

Use the Combiner function to select channel 1 + channel 2 and channel 3 + channel 4, then turn [Ch 1 Shadow] and [Ch 3 Shadow] on.



To apply a shadow after combining the video images

Use the Combiner function to select channel 1 + channel 2 + channel 3 + channel 4, then turn [Ch 1 + Ch 2 Shadow] on.



Appendix (Volume 1)

Wipe Pattern List










Interpreting the illustrations for patterns

The black part of the pattern represents the old video, and the white part the new video, with the wipe taking place in the direction of the arrow.





















Standard Wipes

1		2		3		4		5		6	
7		8		9		10		11		12	
13		14		15		16		17		18	
19		20		21		22		23		24	

Enhanced Wipes

26		27		29		49		300		301	
302		303		304							





Rotary Wipes

100		101		102		103		104		105	
106		107		150		151		156		158	
160		162		516		518		604		606	
624		661									

Mosaic Wipes

200		201		202		203		206		207	
208		209		210		211		212		213	
220		221		222		223		224		225	
226		227		228		229		230		231	
232		233		234		235		236		237	
238		239		240		241		242		243	
244		245		246		247		250		251	
252		253		254		255		256		257	
260		261		262		263		264		265	
266		267		268		269					

Random/Diamond Dust Wipes

270		271		272		273		274	
-----	---	-----	---	-----	---	-----	---	-----	---



DME Wipe Pattern List

Notes

When 3M/E mode or 4M/E mode is selected on the MVS-7000X, there are cases in which utility bus 1 (U1) appears

instead of utility bus 2 (U2) and utility bus 2 (U2) does not appear.

DME Wipe Patterns Available in One-Channel Mode

Slide

1001		1002		1003		1004		1005		1006	
1007		1008									

Split

1011		1012		1013	
------	--	------	--	------	--

Squeeze

1021		1022		1023		1024		1025		1026	
1027		1028		1029		1030		1031			

Door

1041		1042		1043		1044		1045		1046	
1047		1048									

2D trans

1051		1052		1053		1054		1055		1056	
1057		1058		1061		1062		1063		1064	
1068											

3D trans

1071		1072		1074		1076		1077		1088	
1091		1092		1093		1094					

Appendix (Volume 1)

Flip tumble

1101		1102		1103		1104		1109		1110	
1121		1122		1124		1131		1132		1133	
1135											

Frame in-out

1201		1202		1203		1204		1205		1206	
1207		1208		1221		1222		1223		1224	

Picture-in-picture

1251	
------	--

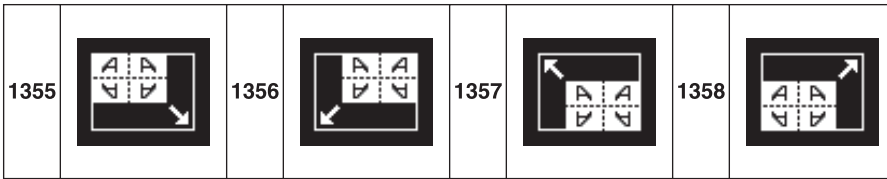
Page turn

1301		1302		1303		1304		1305		1306	
1307		1308		1309		1310		1311		1312	
1313		1315		1316		1317		1318		1341	
1342		1343		1344		1345					

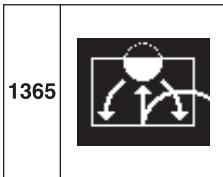
Page roll

1321		1322		1323		1324		1325		1326	
1327		1328		1329		1330		1331		1332	
1333		1335		1336		1337		1338		1346	
1347		1348		1349		1350					

Mirror



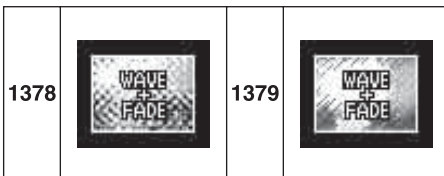
Sphere



Character trail



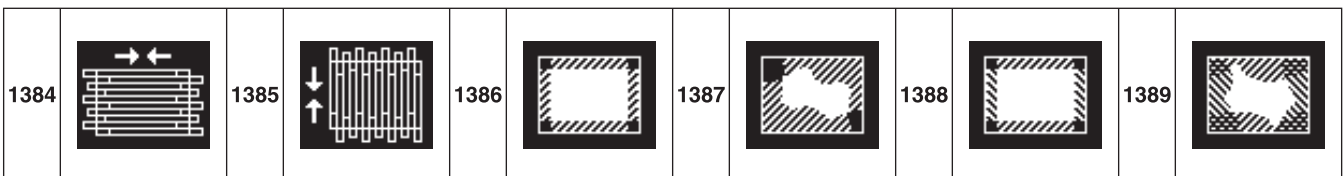
Wave



Ripple



Split slide



Sparkle

1391		1393		1394		1396		1398		1399	
------	--	------	--	------	--	------	--	------	--	------	--

Mosaic

1701	
------	--

Defocus

1702	
------	--

User programmable DME

The illustrations for patterns 1901 to 1999 show an effect register number or register name.


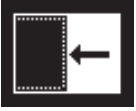


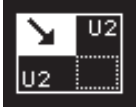
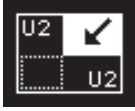
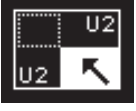
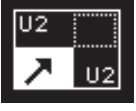
1901		...	1999	
------	--	-----	------	--

DME Wipe Patterns Available in Two-Channel Mode









Slide

2601		2602		2603		2604		2605		2606	
2607		2608									

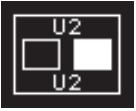

Squeeze

2621		2622		2623		2624		2625		2626	
2627		2628									

3D trans

2801		2802		2803		2804		2811		2812	
2813		2814									

Picture-in-picture

2651		2652	
------	---	------	---









Page turn

2701		2702		2703		2704		2705		2706	
2707		2708		2709		2710		2711		2712	
2713		2715		2716		2717		2718		2741	
2742		2743		2744		2745					









Page roll

2721		2722		2723		2724		2725		2726	
2727		2728		2729		2730		2731		2732	
2733		2735		2736		2737		2738		2746	
2747		2748		2749		2750					

Brick


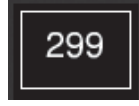
2801		2802		2803		2804		2811		2812	
2813		2814									

Frame in-out

2851		2852		2853		2854		2861		2862	
2863		2864									


User programmable DME

The illustrations for patterns 2901 to 2999 show an effect register number or register name.

2901		...	2999	
------	---	-----	------	---

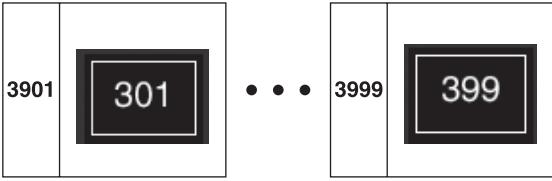
DME Wipe Patterns Available in Three-Channel Mode

Brick

3601	
------	---

User programmable DME

The illustrations for patterns 3901 to 3999 show an effect register number or register name.



Resizer DME Wipe Pattern List

Slide

7001		7002		7003		7004		7005		7006	
7007		7008									

Squeeze

7021		7022		7023		7024		7025		7026	
7027		7028		7029		7030		7031			

Frame in-out

7201		7202		7203		7204		7205		7206	
7207		7208		7221		7222		7223		7224	

Menu Tree

Recalling Menus

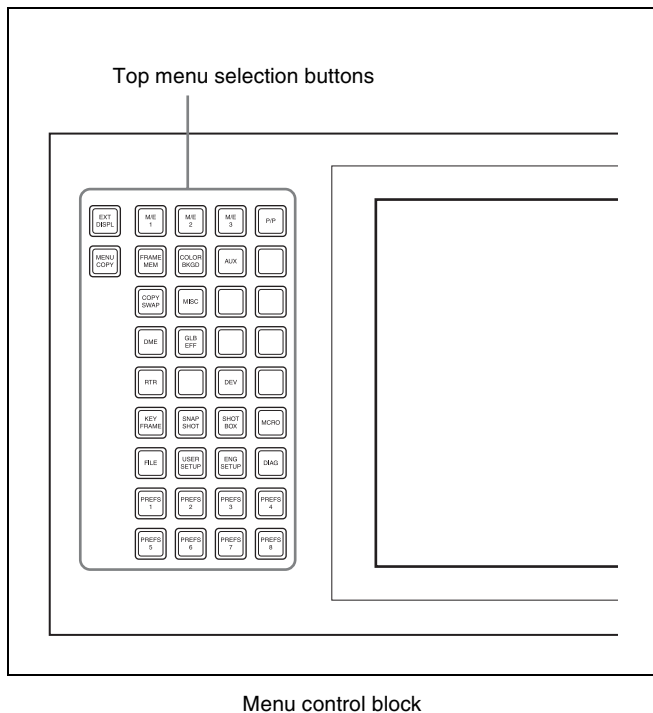
This section details the menu structure, and shows the top menu selection buttons in the menu control block which are used to access the menus.

Some menus can also be accessed by pressing other buttons twice in rapid succession.

For more details, see “Overview” (page 44).

Notes

Some menus may not appear, depending on the model.



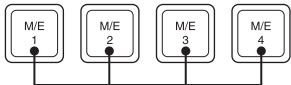
M/E-1 to M/E-4 Menus

The functions in the M/E-1, M/E-2, M/E-3, and M/E-4 menus are the same, but the menu page numbers are distinguished as follows.

M/E-1 menus: 11xx, M/E-2 menus: 12xx,

M/E-3 menus: 13xx, M/E-4 menus: 81xx

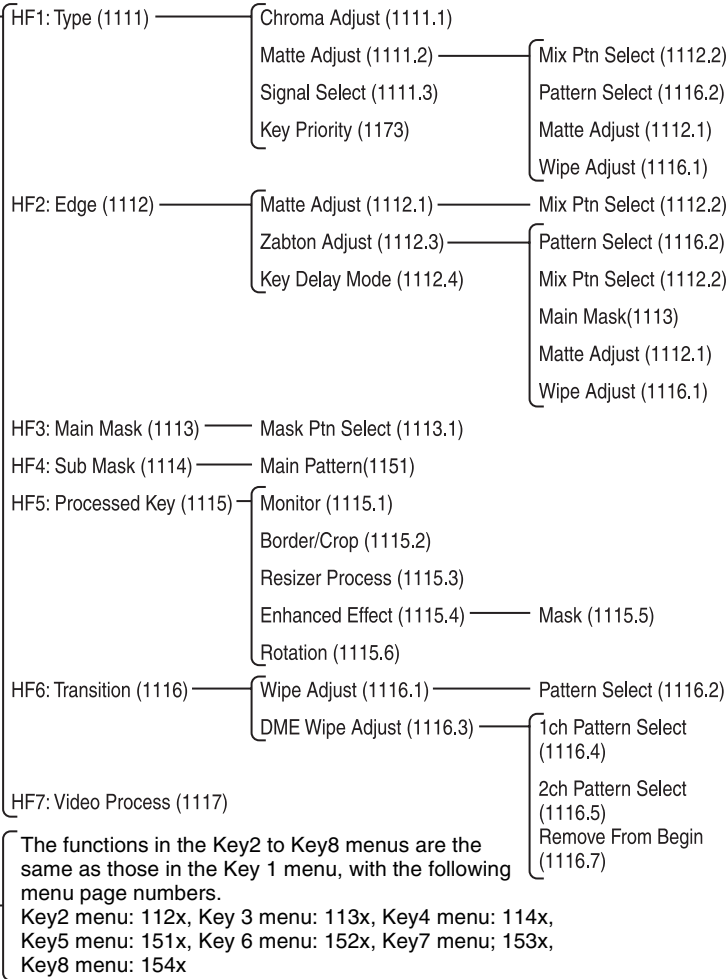
In this section, the numbers for the M/E-1 menus are given as examples.



[M/E 1], [M/E 2], [M/E 3], and [M/E 4] buttons

M/E-1

- VF1: Key1 ^{a)}
 - VF2: Key2 ^{a)}
 - VF3: Key3 ^{a)}
 - VF4: Key4 ^{a)}
 - VF5: Wipe
 - VF6: DME Wipe
 - VF7: Misc
- to next page



a) For VF1 to VF4, either of the groups Key1 to Key4 and Key5 to Key8 appears.



[M/E 1], [M/E 2], [M/E 3], and [M/E 4] buttons

M/E-1

- VF1: Key1
- VF2: Key2
- VF3: Key3
- VF4: Key4

to previous page

VF5: Wipe

- HF1: Main Pattern (1151)^{a)}
- HF2: Pattern Mix (1152)
- HF3: Sub Pattern (1153)
- HF4: Edge/Direction (1154)^{a)} - Matte Adjust (1154.1) ——— Mix Pattern Select (1154.2)
- HF5: Main Modify (1155)^{a)} — Multi Adjust (1155.1)
- HF6: Sub Modify (1156) — Multi Adjust (1156.1)
- HF7: Wipe Snapshot (1157)^{a)}

VF6: DME Wipe

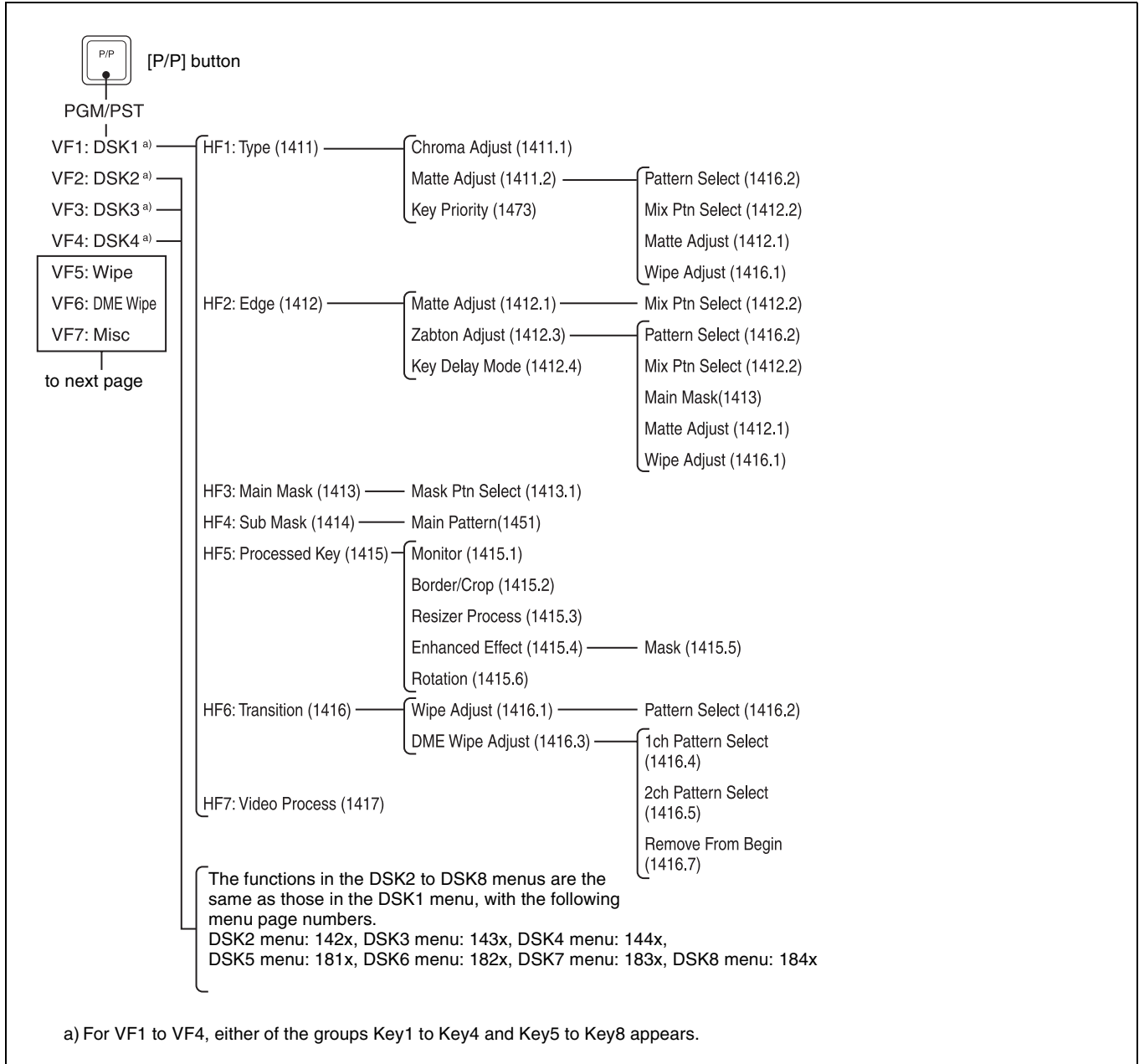
- HF1: 1ch (1161)^{a)}
- HF2: 2ch (1162)^{a)}
- HF3: 3ch (1163)^{a)}
- HF4: Edge/Direction (1164)^{a)}
- HF5: Modify (1165)^{a)} ——— Remove From Begin (1165.1)^{a)}
- HF7: DME Wipe Snapshot (1167)^{a)}

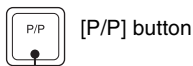
VF7: Misc

- HF1: Transition (1171)^{a)}
- HF2: Video Process (1172)
- HF3: Key Priority (1173)
- HF4: Next Key Priority (1174)
- HF5: Key Assign (1175)
- HF6: Clip Transition (1176)^{a)} — Clip (1176.1)^{a)}
- HF7: Snapshot (1177) — Transition (1171)^{a)}
- Snapshot (1177)^{a)}

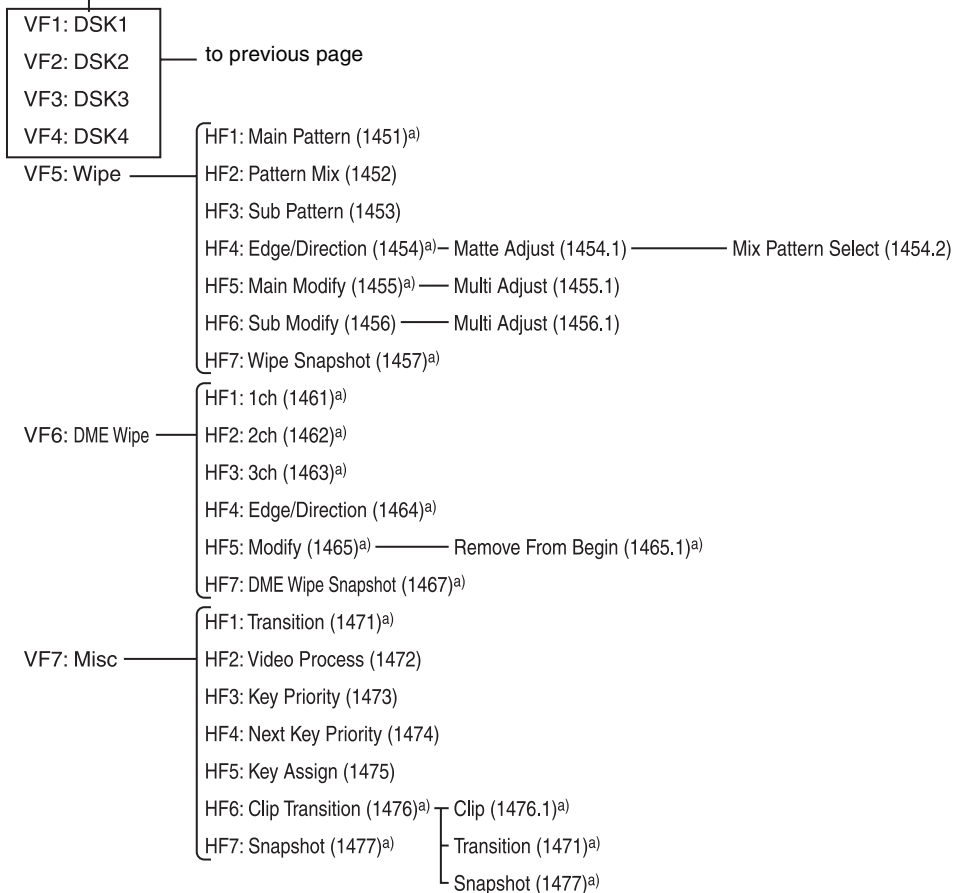
a) In Multi Program 2 mode, the menus for sub are displayed with 400 higher numbers than the above for main.

PGM/PST Menu





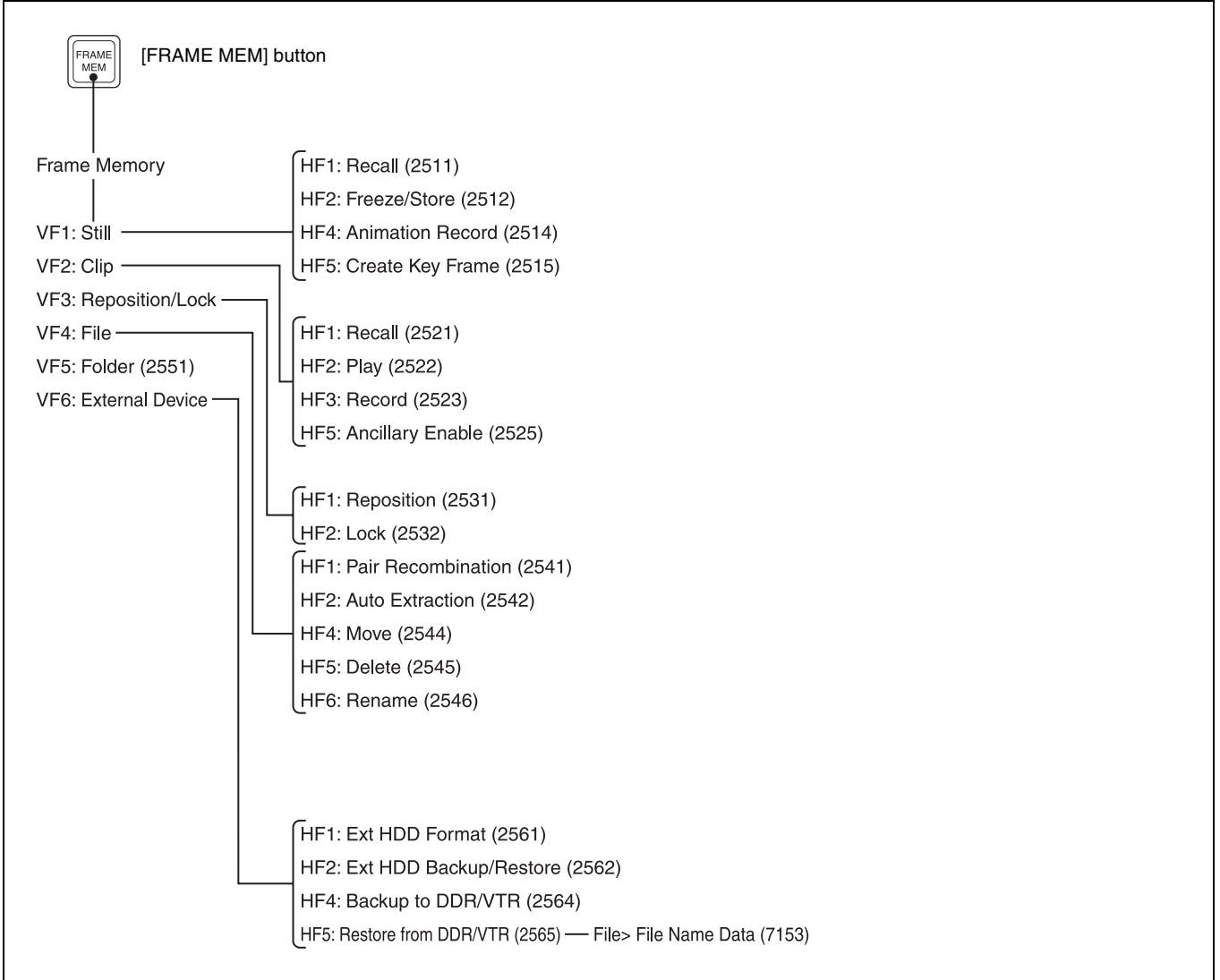
PGM/PST



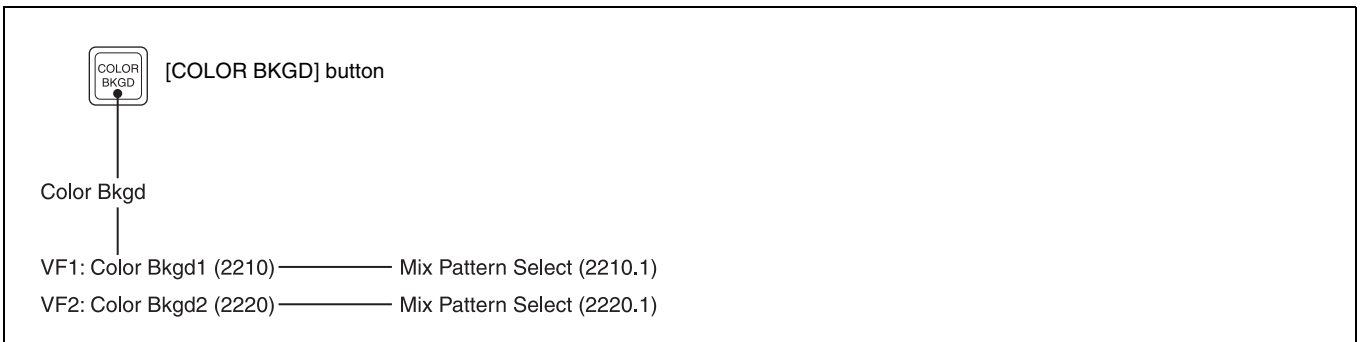
a) In Multi Program 2 mode, the menus for sub are displayed with 400 higher numbers than the aboves for main.



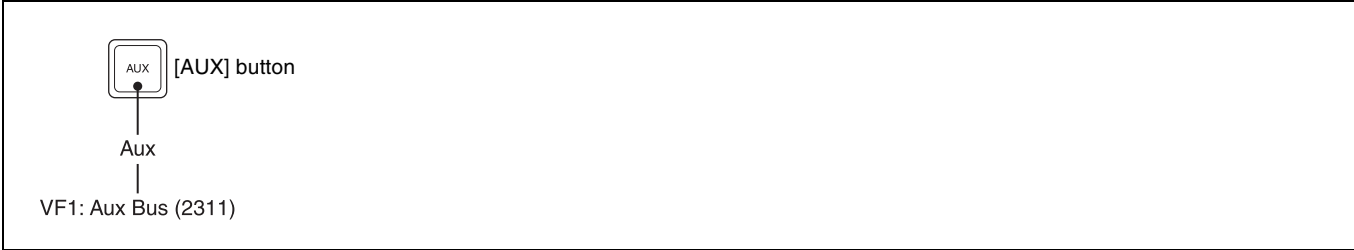
Frame Memory Menu



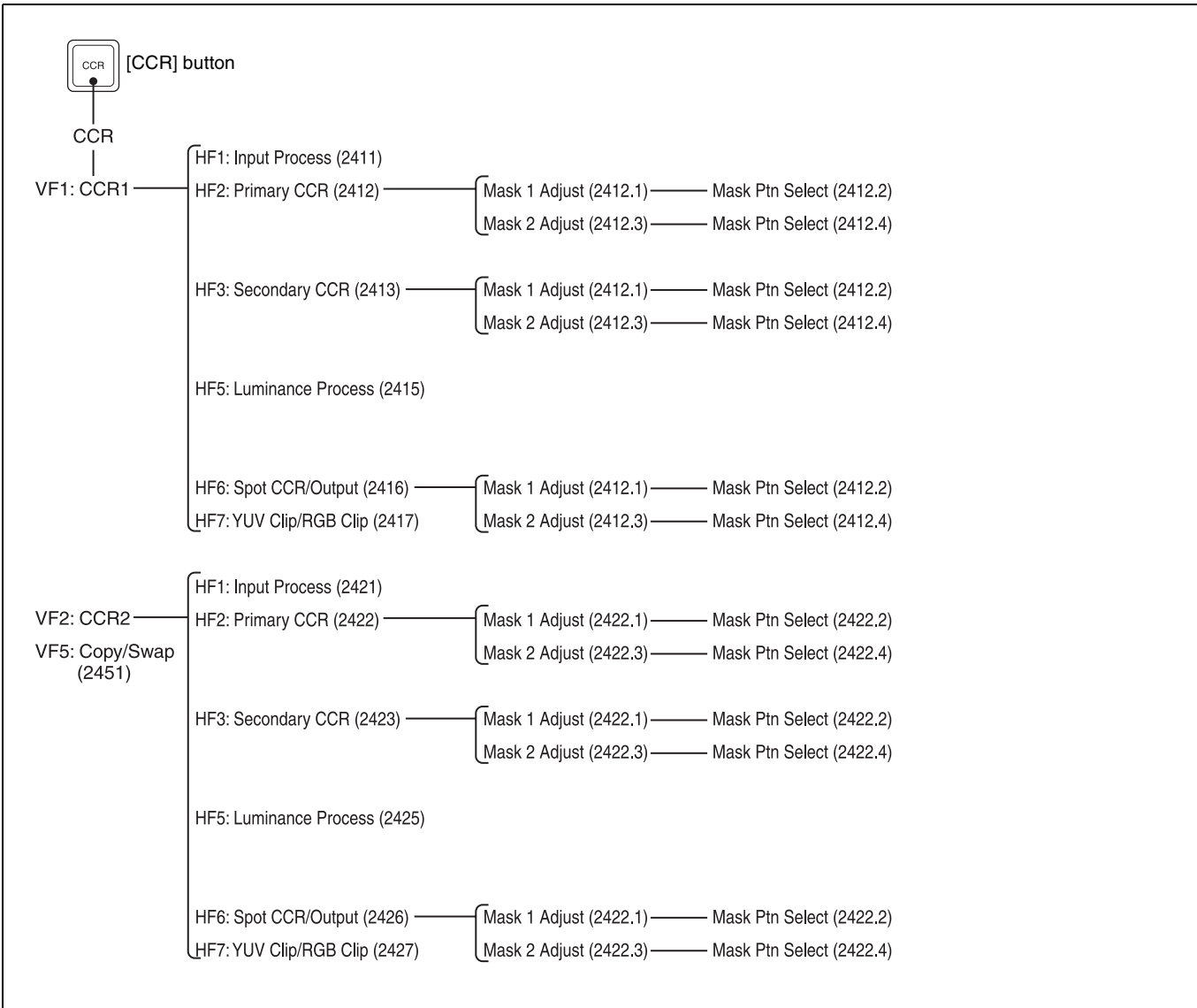
Color Bkgd Menu



AUX Menu



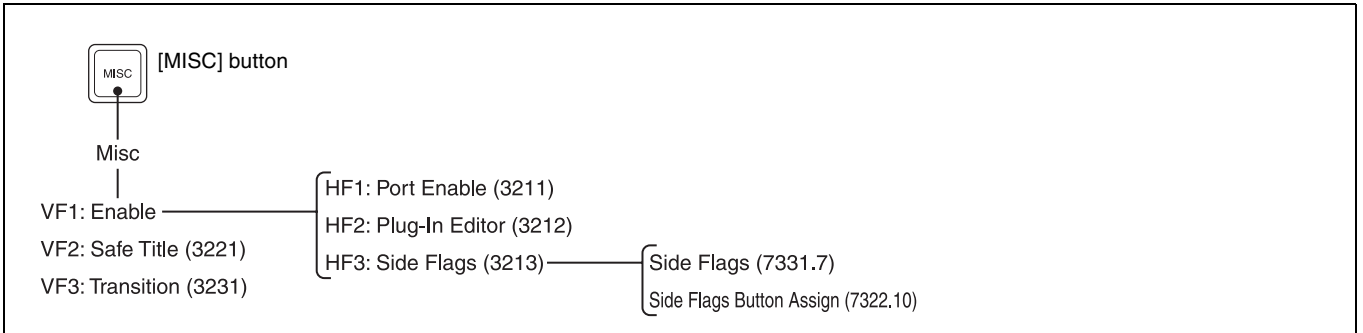
CCR Menu



Copy/Swap Menu



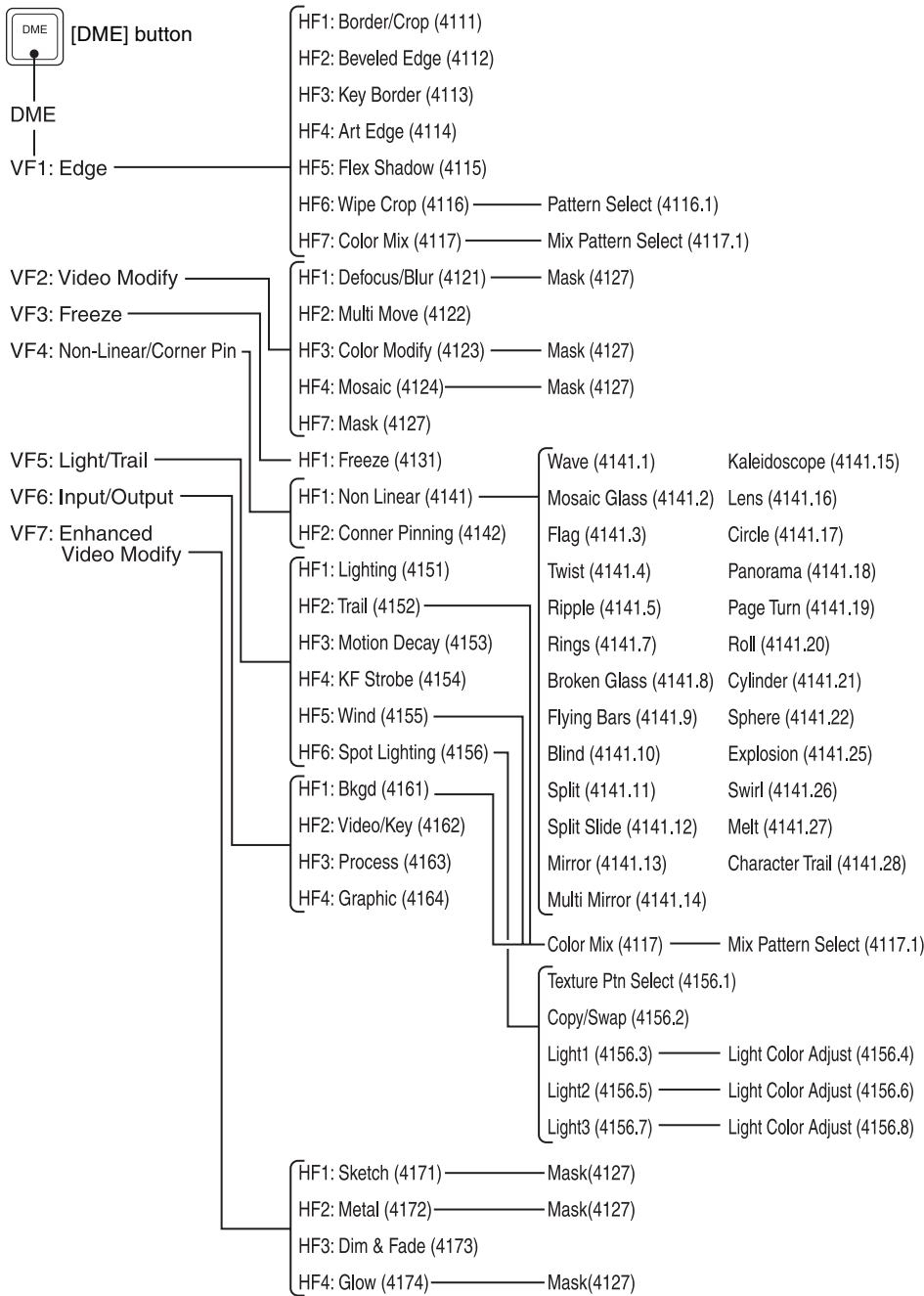
Misc Menu



Status Menu



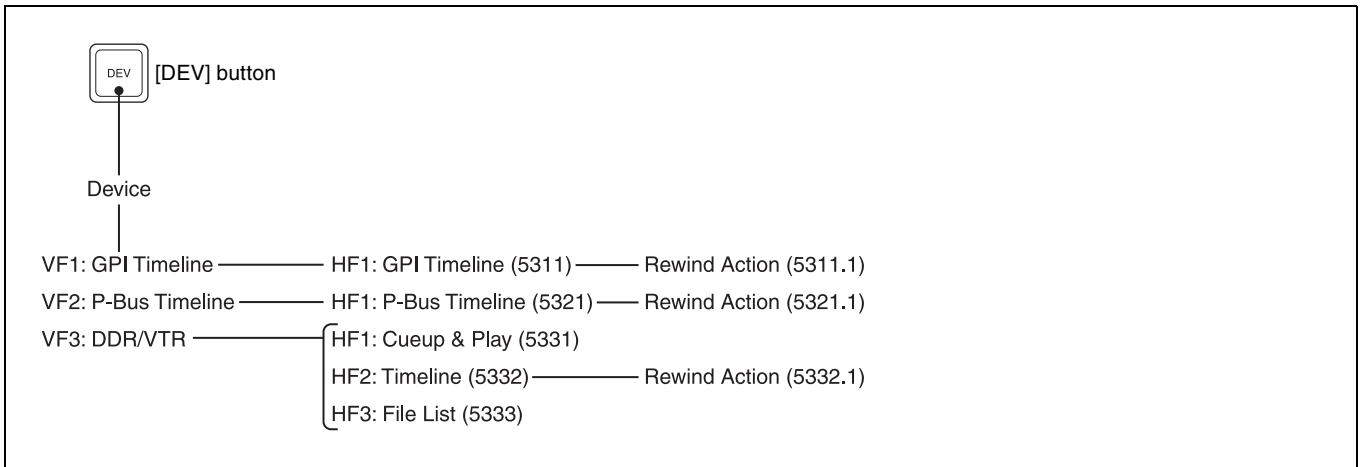
DME Menu



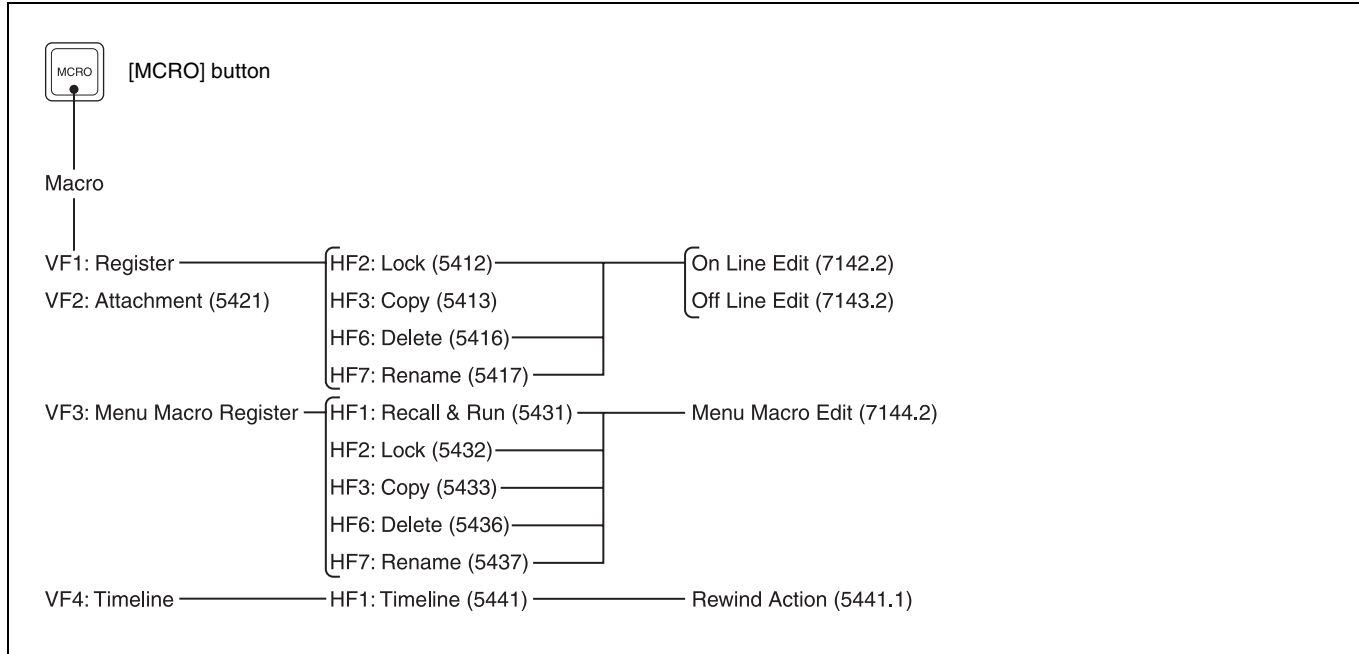
Global Effect Menu



Device Menu

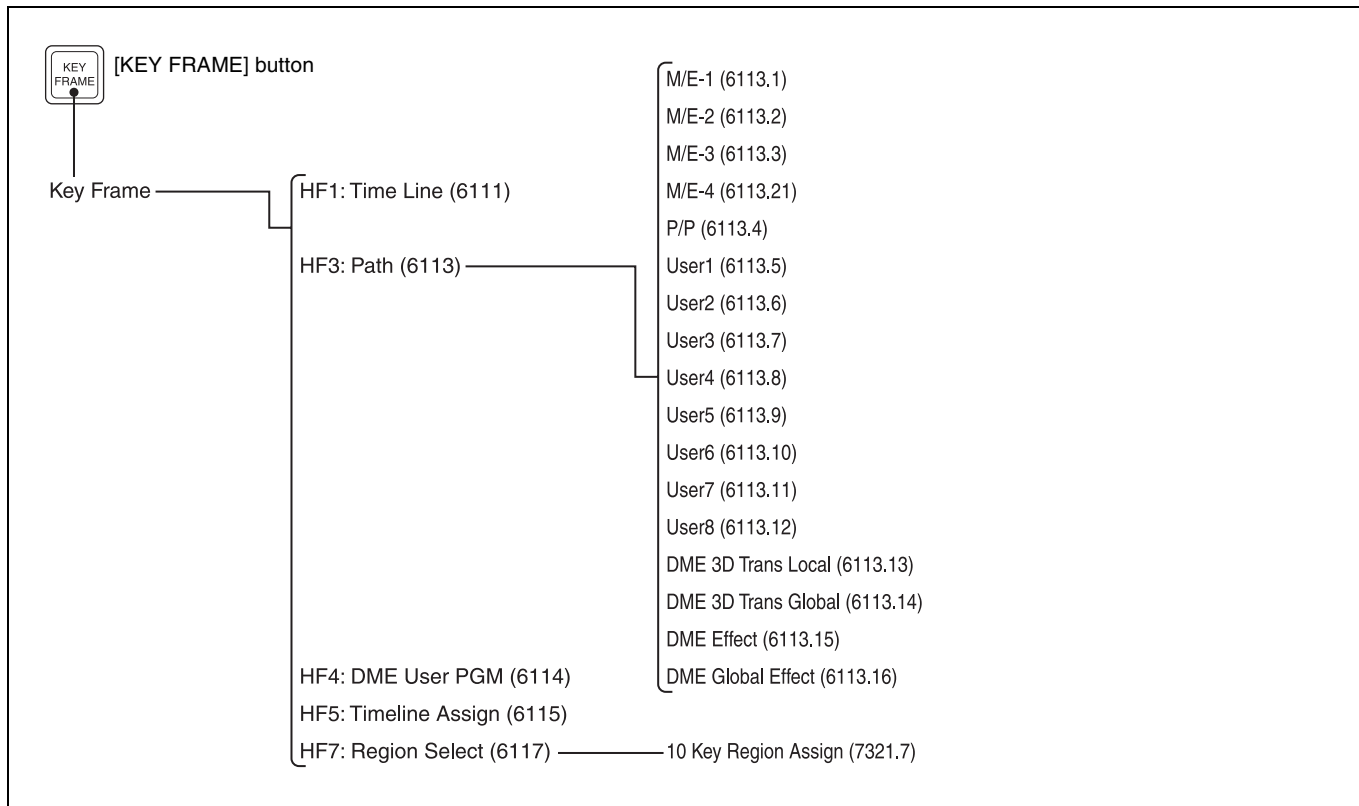


Macro Menu

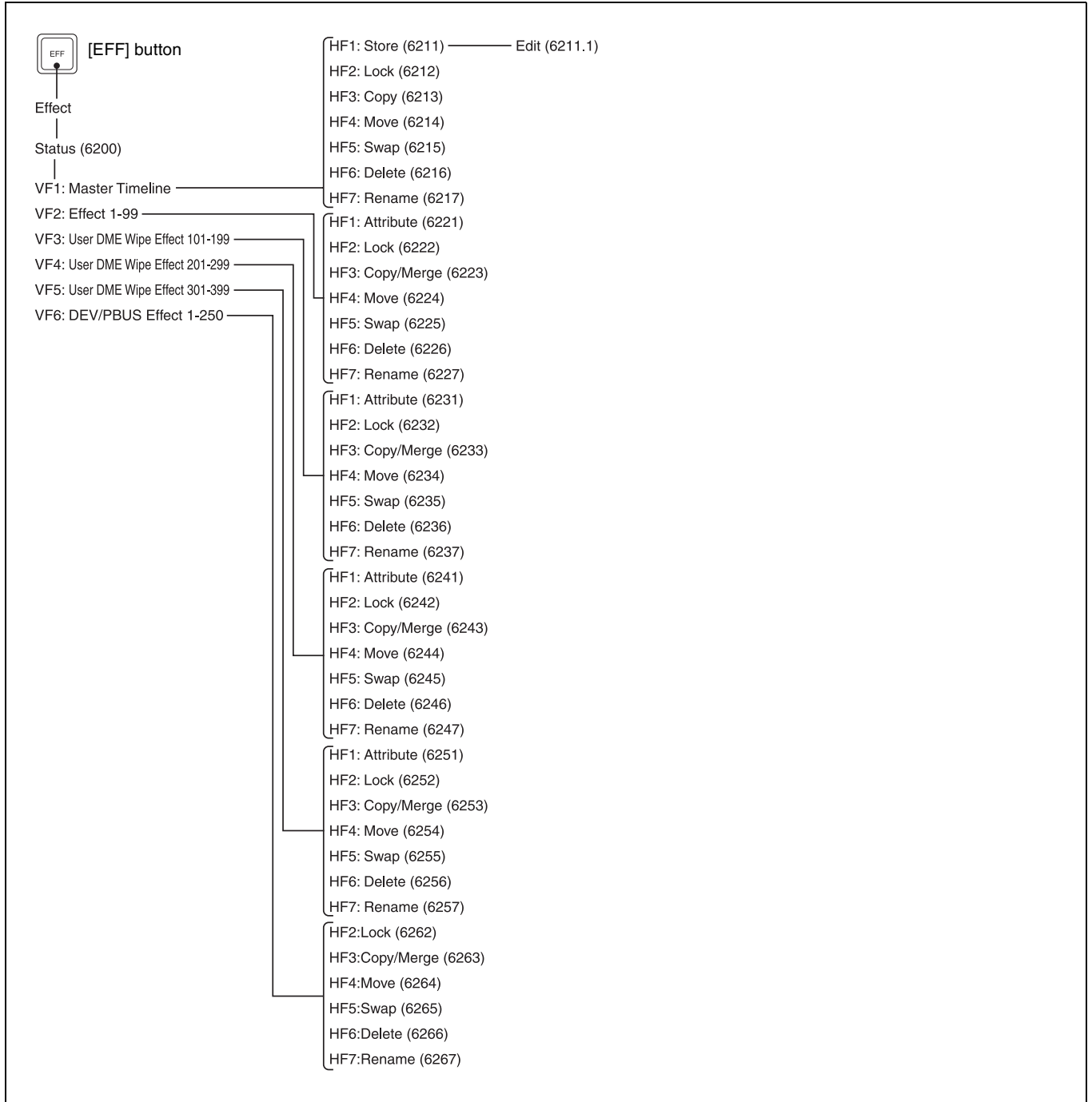


Appendix (Volume 1)

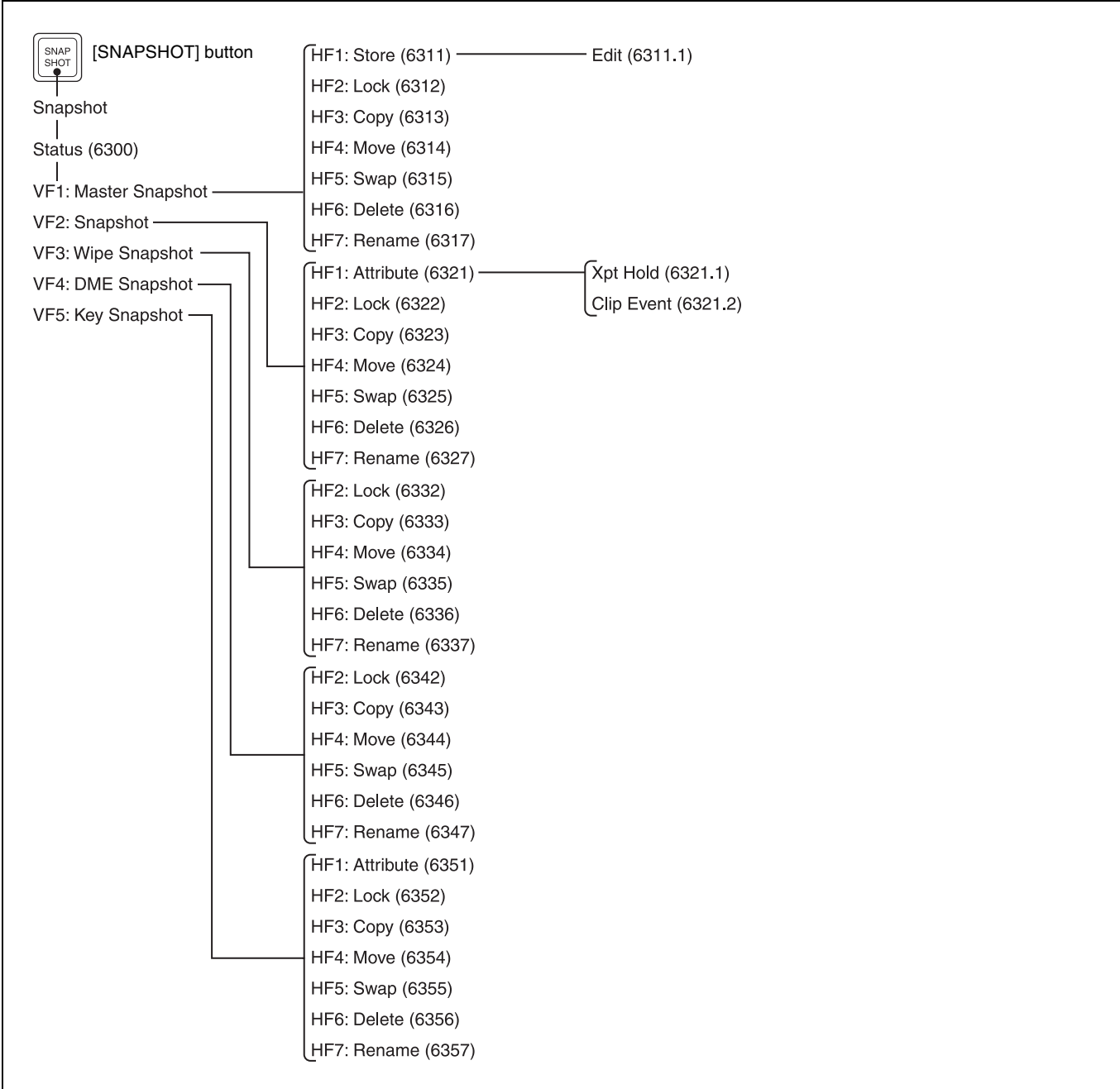
Key Frame Menu



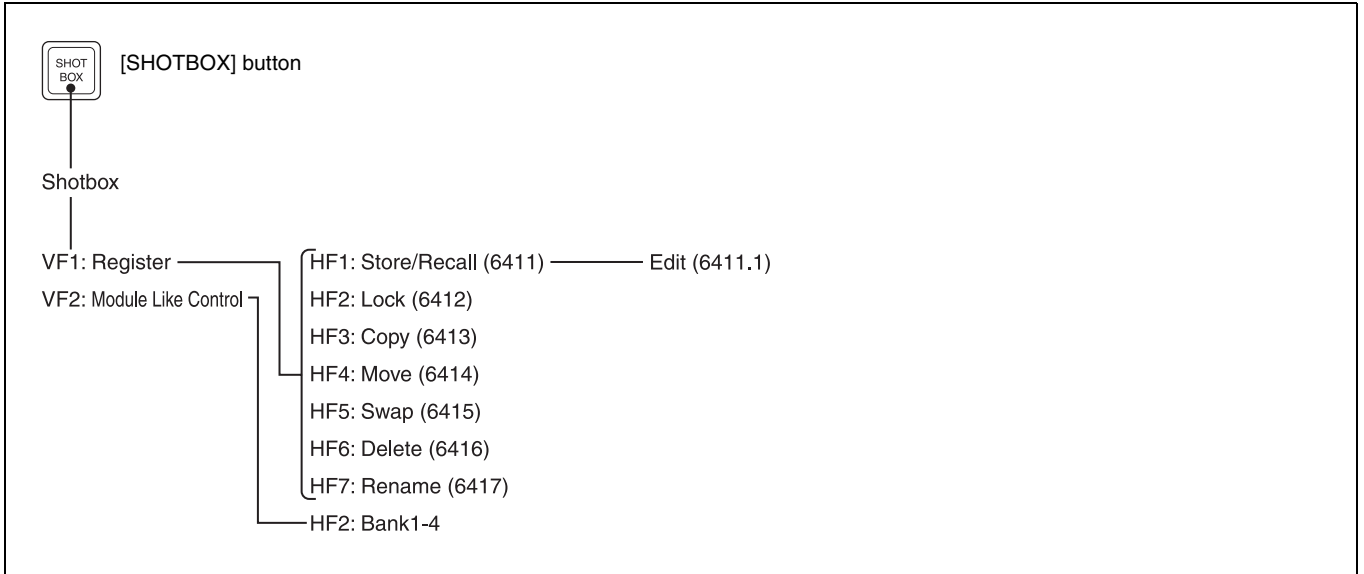
Effect Menu



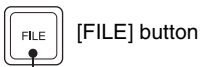
Snapshot Menu



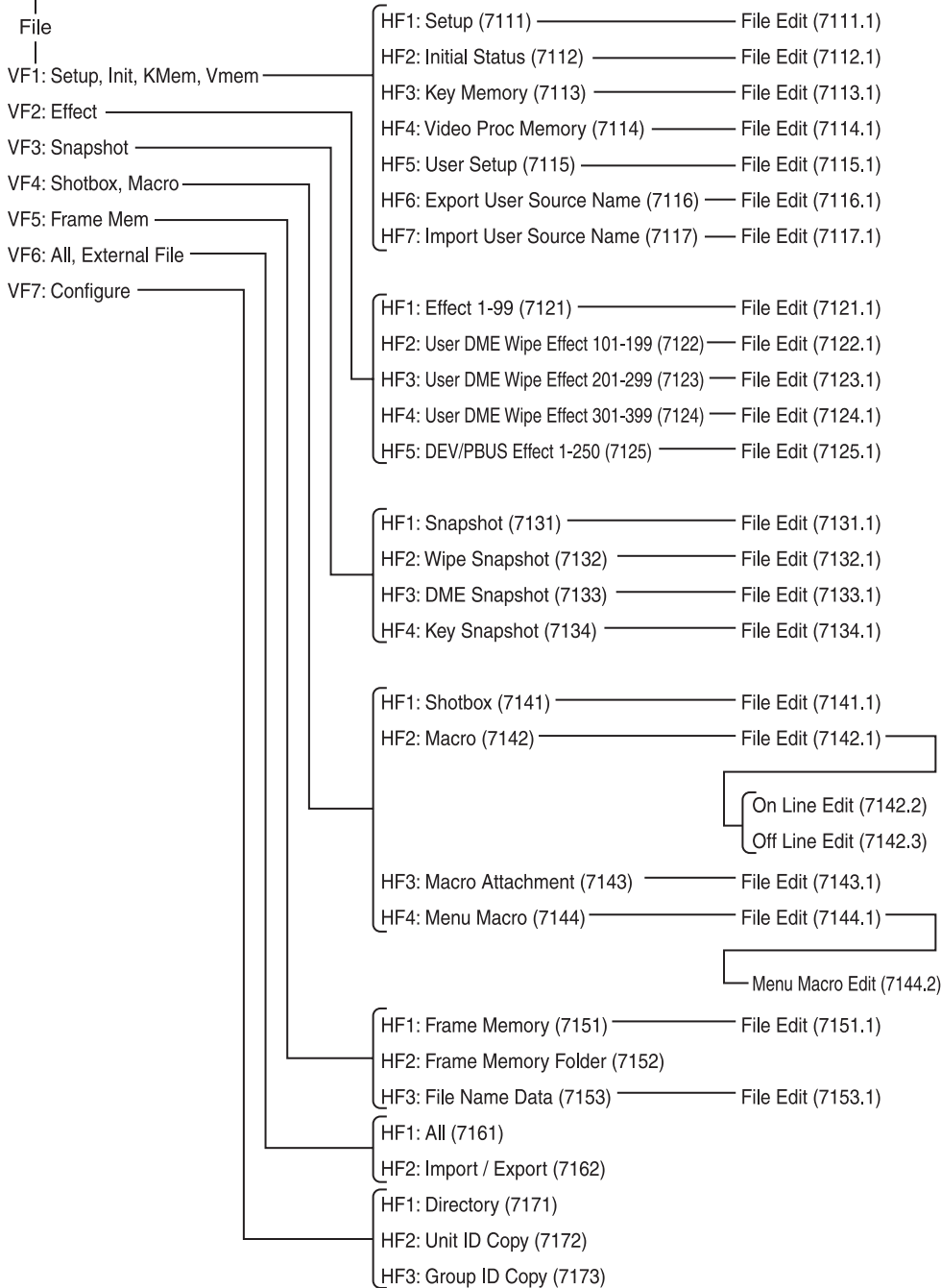
Shotbox Menu



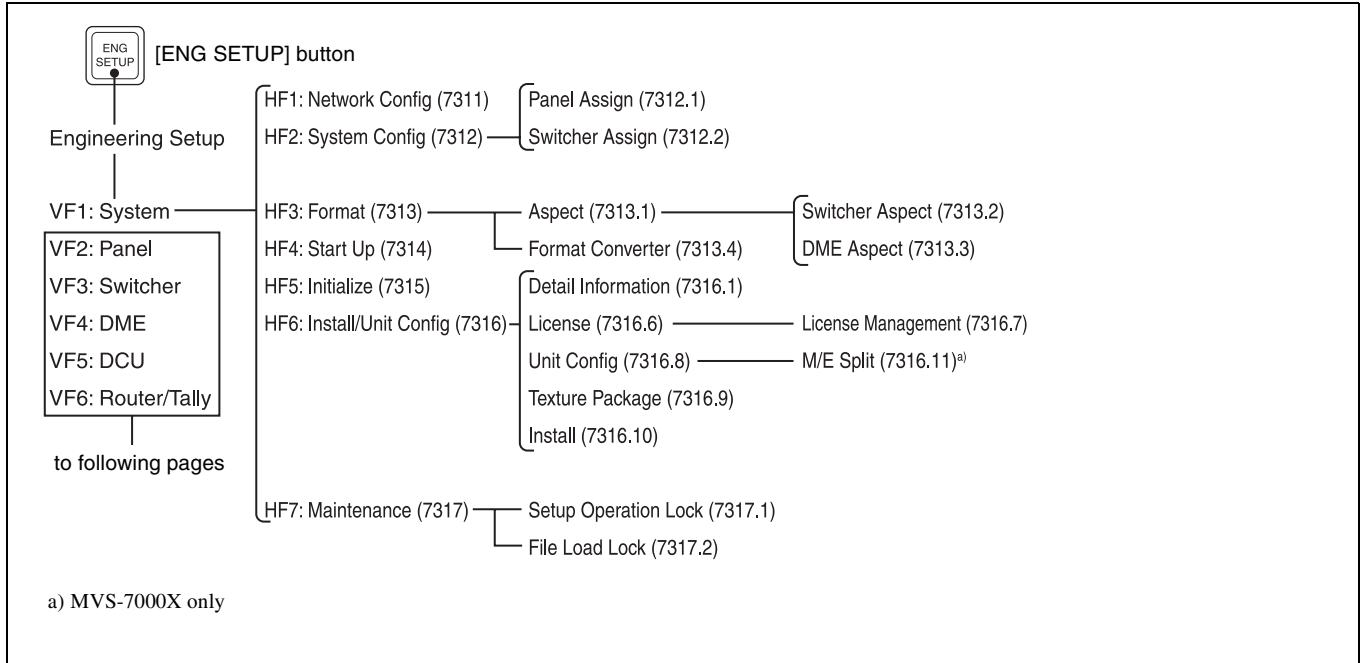
File Menu

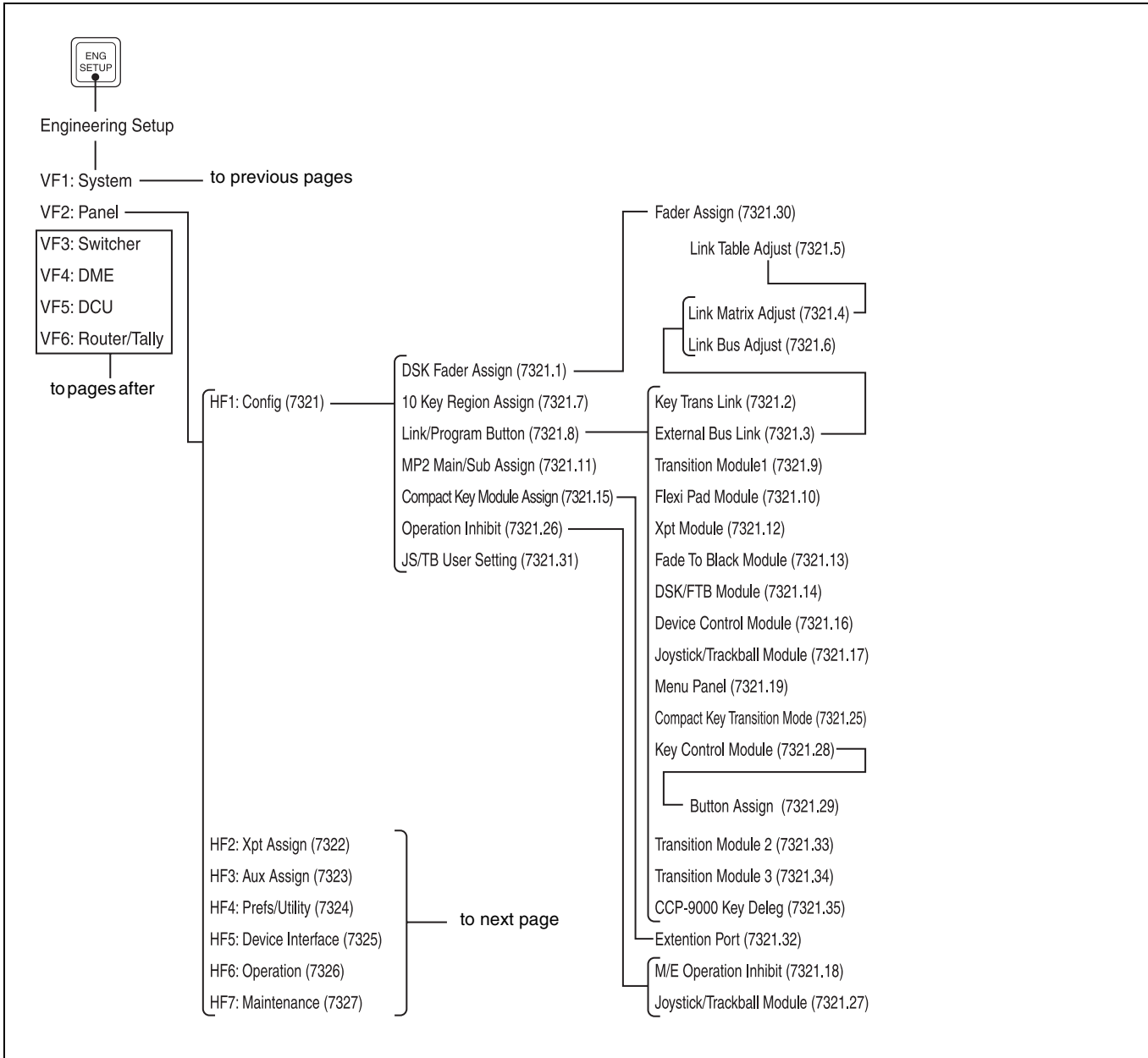


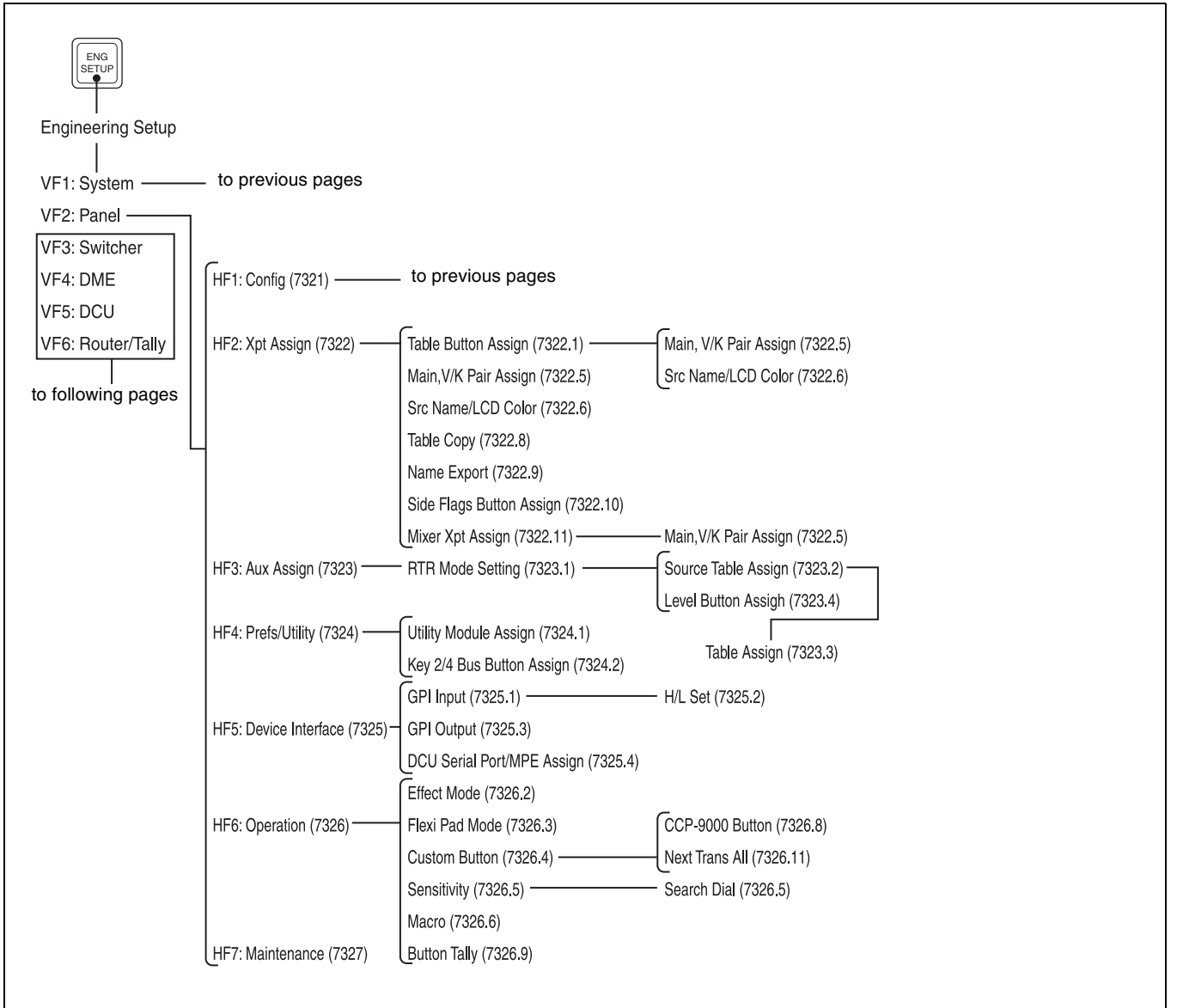
File



Engineering Setup Menu









[ENG SETUP] button

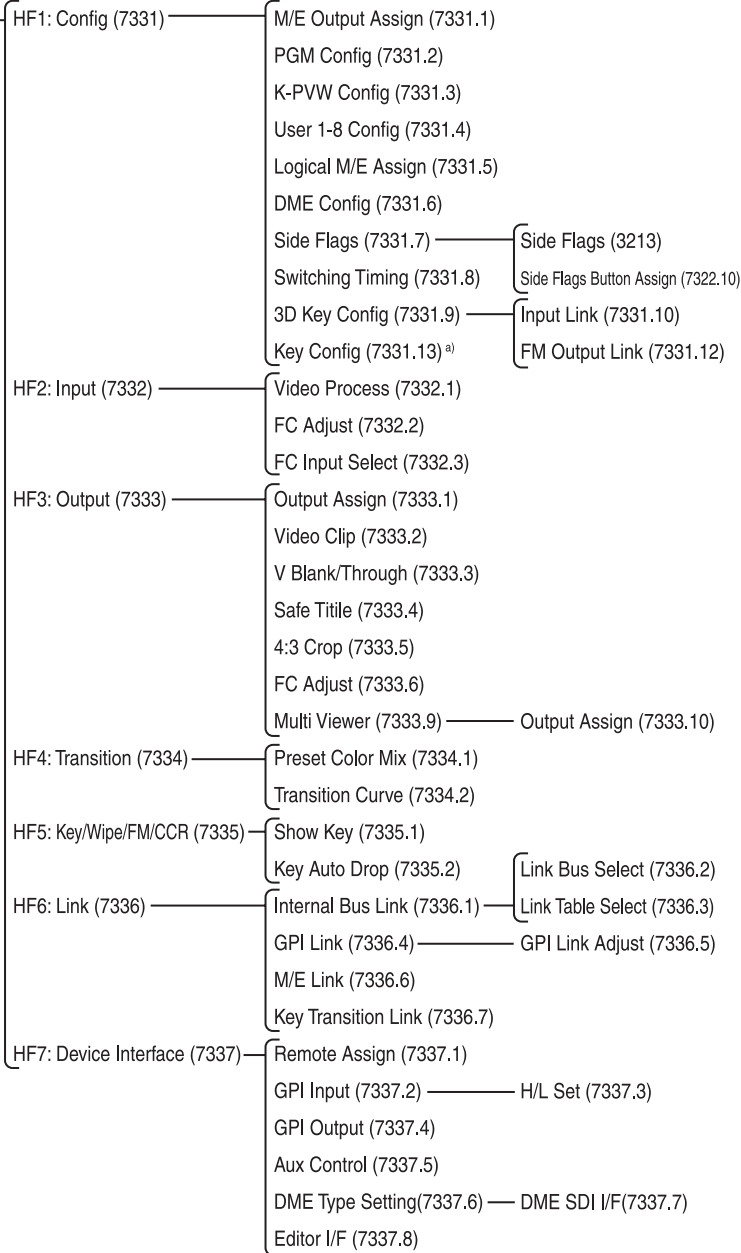
Engineering Setup

VF1: System
VF2: Panel

to previous pages

VF3: Switcher
VF4: DME
VF5: DCU
VF6: Router/Tally

to next page



a) MVS-7000X only

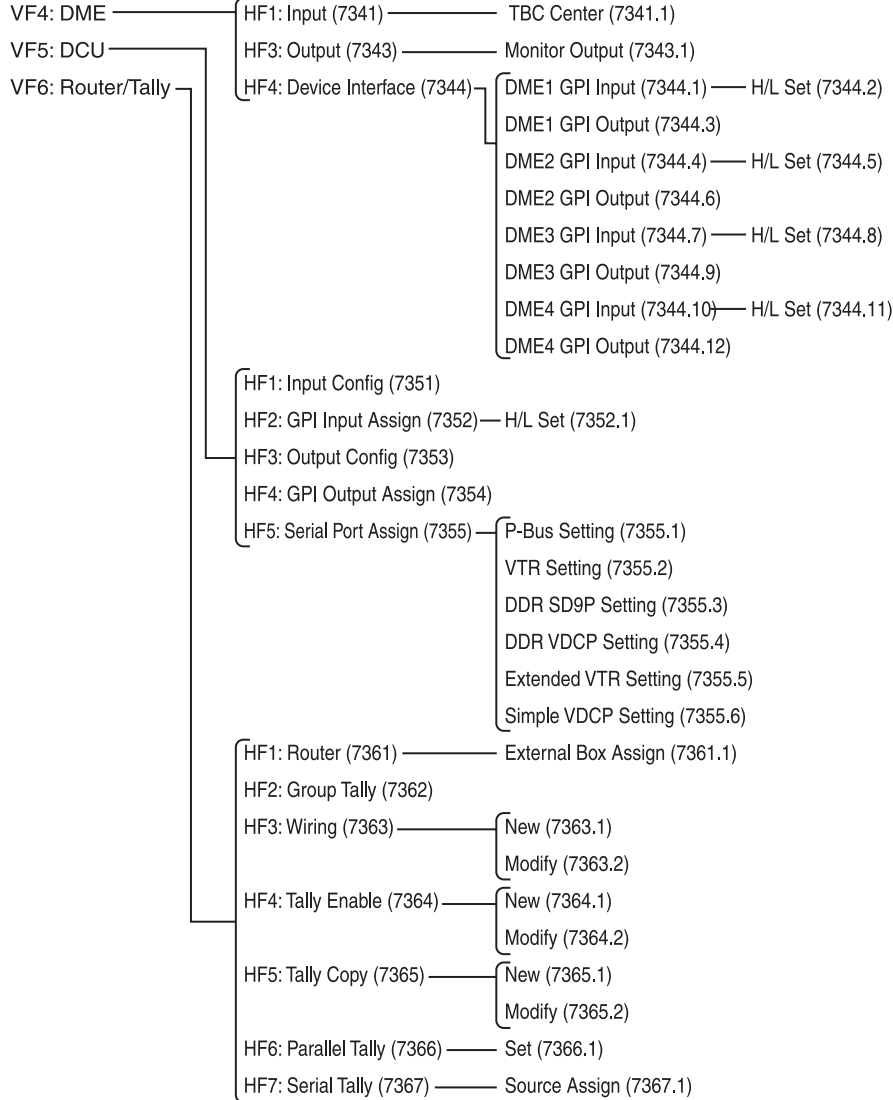


[ENG SETUP] button

Engineering Setup

- VF1: System
- VF2: Panel
- VF3: Switcher

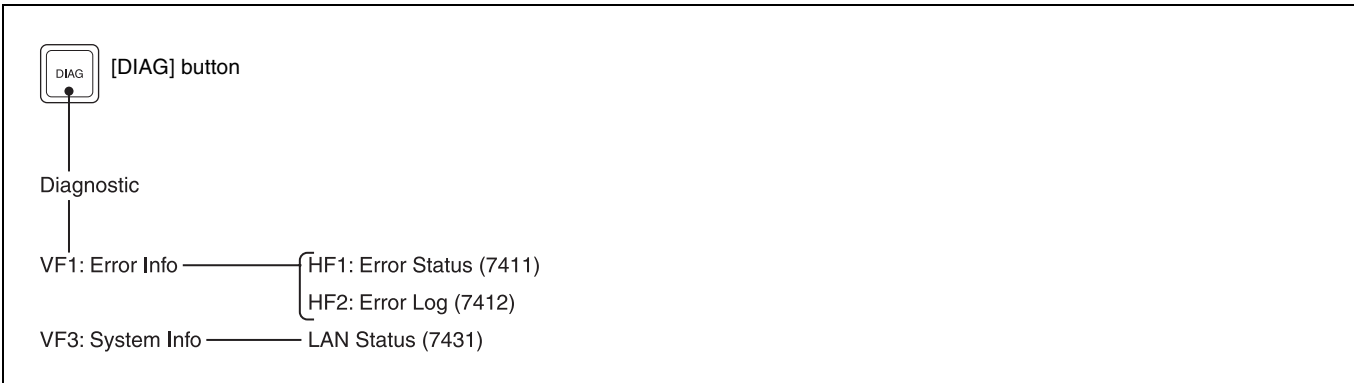
to previous pages



User Setup Menu



Diagnostic Menu



Using the M/E-4 Bank

Assigning a Button for M/E-4 Selection in the Setup Menu

- In the factory defaults for this system, M/E-4 is not assigned to buttons on the control panel.
- To select M/E-4, assign buttons in the Setup menu according to the following table.

Control block	Button	Menu number	Reference in User Guide “Control Panel Setup (Panel)” and “Cross-Point Settings (Xpt Assign Menu)” in Chapter 19 (Volume 2)
Cross-point control block	Reentry buttons	7322.1 7322.5	“Creating Cross-Point Assign Tables” Engineering Setup >Panel >Xpt Assign >Table Button Assign menu Engineering Setup >Panel >Xpt Assign >Main, V/K Pair Assign menu
Entire switcher bank	-	7321	“Interchanging the Bank Order or Disabling Operation” Engineering Setup >Panel >Config menu
Key control block	Delegation buttons	7321.29	“Assigning Functions to Key Control Block Buttons” Engineering Setup >Panel >Config >Link/Program Button >Key Control Module >Button Assign menu
Device control block	Region selection buttons	7321.17	“Assigning Functions to the Device Control Block” Engineering Setup >Panel >Config >Link/Program Button >Joystick/Trackball Module menu
Numeric keypad control block	Region selection buttons	7321.7	“Assigning a Region to the Region Selection Buttons in the Numeric Keypad Control Block” Engineering Setup >Panel >Config >10 Key Region Assign menu
Menu control block	Top menu selection buttons	7321.19	“Assigning Functions to the Menu Control Block Top Menu and User Preference Buttons” Engineering Setup >Panel >Config >Link/Program Button >Menu Panel menu

Using Keys 5 to 8

Notes

Keys 5 to 8 cannot be used when the signal format is 1080P.

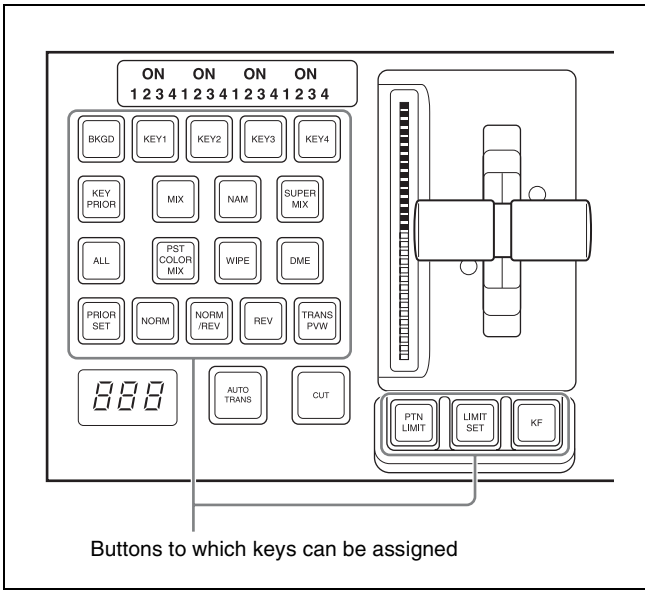
Assigning Buttons for Selection of Keys 5 to 8 in the Setup Menu

In the factory defaults for this system, keys 5 to 8 are not assigned to buttons on the control panel.

To select keys 5 to 8, assign buttons in the Setup menu according to the following table.

Control block	Button	Menu number	Reference in User Guide
Transition control block	Next transition selection buttons	7321.9	“Control Panel Setup (Panel)” and “Cross-Point Settings (Xpt Assign Menu)” in Chapter 19 (Volume 2) “Setting Transition Control Block Button Assignments” Engineering Setup >Panel >Config >Link/Program Button >Transition Module1 menu
Cross-point control block	SHIFT button	7322.1	“Creating Cross-Point Assign Tables” “Setting the action of the [SHIFT] button in the cross-point control block” Engineering Setup >Panel >Xpt Assign >Table Button Assign menu
Key control block	Delegation button	7321.35	“Assigning Functions to Key Control Block Buttons” Engineering Setup >Panel >Config >Link/Program Button >CCP-9000 Key Deleg menu
Transition control block	Independent key transition execution section	7321.34	“Setting Transition Control Block Button Assignments” Engineering Setup >Panel >Config >Link/Program Button >Transition Module3 menu
Downstream key control block	Key delegation buttons	7321.1	“Assigning the Key Delegation in the Downstream Key Control Block” Engineering Setup >Panel >Config >DSK Fader Assign menu
Device control block (joystick)	Operating buttons	7321.31	“Selecting the Module to be the Reference for Device Control Block” Engineering Setup >Panel >Config >JS/TB User Setting menu
Device control block (trackball)			

Selecting Keys 5 to 8 for Next Transition



To select keys 5 to 8 for the next transition, in addition to assigning [KEY5] to [KEY8] for the operation, it is also possible to make the selection with [KEY1/5], [KEY2/6], [KEY3/7], [KEY4/8], [SHIFT], and [ADD].

The following describes this method of operation.

First in the Setup menu, assign the following to any buttons:

[KEY1/5], [KEY2/6], [KEY3/7], [KEY4/8], [SHIFT], and [ADD]

By way of example, this is the procedure for [KEY1/5].

To select key 5

Press [SHIFT], turning it on, then press the [KEY1/5] button.

To select keys 1 and 5 simultaneously

- 1** Press the [KEY1/5] button alone.
This selects key 1.
- 2** Press [SHIFT], turning it on.
- 3** Holding down [ADD], press the [KEY1/5] button.
This selects keys 1 and 5 simultaneously.

Menus accessed by pressing a button twice

For relevant buttons other than the top menu selection buttons, pressing twice in rapid succession directly recalls

a related menu page. The following table lists these buttons of each control block, together with the menus they recall. (XX represents the HF menu recalled last in the VF menu.)

Cross-point control block

Buttons	Menus	See
FM1 to 8 signals assigned buttons	Frame Memory >Still >Recall	<i>page 156</i>
Color Bkgd1 signal assigned button	Color Bkgd >Color Bkgd1	<i>page 175</i>
Color Bkgd2 signal assigned button	Color Bkgd >Color Bkgd2	
CCR1 signal assigned button	CCR >CCR1 >XX	<i>page 186</i>
CCR2 signal assigned button	CCR >CCR2 >XX	
DME1 to DME4	DME >XX	<i>page 232</i>
KEY1 to KEY8 (DSK1 to DSK8)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • M/E-1 >Key1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8 >XX • PGM/PST >DSK1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8 >XX 	<i>page 85</i>

Transition control block

Buttons	Menus	See
KEY1 (DSK1)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • M/E-1 >Key1 >XX • PGM/PST >DSK1 >XX 	<i>page 85</i>
KEY2 (DSK2)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • M/E-1 >Key2 >XX • PGM/PST >DSK2 >XX 	
KEY3 (DSK3)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • M/E-1 >Key3 >XX • PGM/PST >DSK3 >XX 	
KEY4 (DSK4)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • M/E-1 >Key4 >XX • PGM/PST >DSK4 >XX 	
KEY5 (DSK5)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • M/E-1 >Key5 >XX • PGM/PST >DSK5 >XX 	
KEY6 (DSK6)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • M/E-1 >Key6 >XX • PGM/PST >DSK6 >XX 	
KEY7 (DSK7)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • M/E-1 >Key7 >XX • PGM/PST >DSK7 >XX 	
KEY8 (DSK8)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • M/E-1 >Key8 >XX • PGM/PST >DSK8 >XX 	
WIPE	M/E-1, PGM/PST >Wipe >Main Pattern	<i>page 117</i>
DME	M/E-1, PGM/PST >DME Wipe >XX	<i>page 137</i>
SUPER MIX	M/E-1, PGM/PST >Misc >Transition	<i>page 68</i>
PST COLOR MIX	M/E-1, PGM/PST >Misc >Transition	<i>page 68</i>
FM1&2 CLIP, FM3&4 CLIP, FM5&6 CLIP, FM7&8 CLIP	M/E-1, PGM/PST >Misc >Clip Transition	<i>page 166</i>
PRIOR SET	M/E-1, PGM/PST >Misc >Key Priority	<i>page 65</i>
KEY PRIOR	M/E-1, PGM/PST >Misc >Next Key Priority	<i>page 66</i>

Key control block ^{a)}

Buttons	Menus	See
KEY1	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> M/E-1 >Key1 >XX PGM/PST >DSK1 >XX 	<i>page 85</i>
KEY2	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> M/E-1 > Key2 > XX PGM/PST >DSK2 >XX 	
KEY3	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> M/E-1 >Key3 >XX PGM/PST >DSK3 >XX 	
KEY4	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> M/E-1 >Key4 >XX PGM/PST >DSK4 >XX 	
KEY5	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> M/E-1 >Key5 >XX PGM/PST >DSK5 >XX 	
KEY6	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> M/E-1 >Key6 >XX PGM/PST >DSK6 >XX 	
KEY7	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> M/E-1 >Key7 >XX PGM/PST >DSK7 >XX 	
KEY8	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> M/E-1 >Key8 >XX PGM/PST >DSK8 >XX 	
LUM	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> M/E-1 >Key1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8 >Type PGM/PST >DSK1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8 >Type 	<i>page 86</i>
LIN		
CVK		
PTN		
CRK	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> M/E-1 >Key 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8 >Type >Chroma Adjust PGM/PST >DSK1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8 >Type >Chroma Adjust 	<i>page 90</i>

a) The menu recalled depends on which of the M/E delegation buttons and key delegation buttons are selected in the key control block.

Numeric keypad control block

Buttons	Menus	See
EFF	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Effect >Effect 1-99 >XX ^{b)} Effect >Master Timeline >Store ^{c)} 	Chapter 13 (Volume 2)
SNAPSHOT	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Snapshot >Snapshot >XX ^{b)} Snapshot >Master Snapshot >Store ^{c)} 	Chapter 14 (Volume 2)
SHOTBOX	Shotbox >Register >Store/Recall	Chapter 15 (Volume 2)
MCRO	Macro >Register >XX	Chapter 16 (Volume 2)
TRANS RATE ^{a)}	Misc >Transition	<i>page 72</i>
STORE RCALL	Key Frame >Region Select ^{d)}	Chapter 13 (Volume 2)

a) The menu recalled depends on which of the M/E-1 bank and PGM/PST bank the numeric control block is delegated to.

b) When other than [MASTR] is selected with the region selection buttons.

c) When [MASTR] is selected with the region selection buttons.

d) When the [SNAPSHOT] button or [EFF] button is set to On, or lit green.

Downstream key control block ^{a)}

Buttons	Menus	See
DSK1	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> M/E-1 >Key1 >XX PGM/PST >DSK1 >XX 	page 85
DSK2	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> M/E-1 >Key2 >XX PGM/PST >DSK2 >XX 	
DSK3	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> M/E-1 >Key3 >XX PGM/PST >DSK3 >XX 	
DSK4	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> M/E-1 >Key4 >XX PGM/PST >DSK4 >XX 	
WIPE	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> M/E-1 >Key1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8 >Transition >DME Wipe Adjust >Pattern Select PGM/PST >DSK1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8 >Transition >Wipe Adjust >1ch Pattern Select 	page 129
DME	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> M/E-1 >Key1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8 >Transition >DME Wipe Adjust >Pattern Select PGM/PST >DSK1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8 >Transition >DME Wipe Adjust >1ch Pattern Select 	page 143
K-SS STORE ^{b)}	Snapshot >Key Snapshot >XX	Chapter 14 (Volume 2)

a) The menu recalled depends on which of keyers 1 to 8 the downstream key control block is delegated to. b) Recalling is possible only when the [K-SS] button is On.

Auxiliary bus control block

Buttons	Menus	See
FMS1, FMS2	Frame Memory >Still >Freeze/Store	page 154
FM1 to 8 signals assigned buttons	Frame Memory >Still >Recall	page 156
Color Bkgd1 signal assigned button	Color Bkgd >Color Bkgd1	page 175
Color Bkgd2 signal assigned button	Color Bkgd >Color Bkgd2	
CCR1 signal assigned button	CCR >CCR1 >XX	page 186
CCR2 signal assigned button	CCR >CCR2 >XX	

Device control block (trackball)

Buttons	Menus	See
DME1 to DME8 ^{a)}	DME >XX	page 232
DEV1 to DEV12 assigned buttons	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Device >DDR/VTR >Cueup & Play ^{b)} Device >DDR/VTR >Timeline ^{c)} 	Chapter 12 (Volume 2)
FM1CLIP to FM8CLIP assigned buttons	Frame Memory >Clip >Recall	–
K1RSZ to K8RSZ ^{d)}	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> M/E-1, 2, 3, 4 >Key1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8 >Processed Key PGM/PST >DSK1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8 >Processed Key 	page 108

a) When the three-dimensional transformation operation mode is enabled. c) When the [MENU] button is On.
 b) When the [MENU] button is Off. d) or the MVS-8000G in resizer control mode

Device control block (search dial)

Buttons	Menus	See
DEV1 to DEV12	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Device >DDR/VTR >Cueup & Play ^{a)} Device >DDR/VTR >Timeline ^{b)} 	Chapter 12 (Volume 2)
FM1CLIP to FM8CLIP assigned buttons	Frame Memory >Clip >Recall	–

a) When the [TIMELINE] button is Off. b) When the [TIMELINE] button is On.

Menus allowing a return to default settings

Top menu selection button name	VF number (HF number)	Menu number	Menu name
M/E1	VF1 ^{a)}	1110-series/1510-series	Key1/Key5 ^{b)}
	VF2 ^{a)}	1120-series/1520-series	Key2/Key6 ^{b)}
	VF3 ^{a)}	1130-series/1530-series	Key3/Key7 ^{b)}
	VF4 ^{a)}	1140-series/1540-series	Key4/Key8 ^{b)}
	VF5	1150-series	Wipe ^{b)}
	VF6	1160-series	DME Wipe ^{b)}
	VF7	1170-series	Misc ^{b)}
M/E2	VF1 ^{a)}	1210-series/1610-series	Key1/Key5 ^{b)}
	VF2 ^{a)}	1220-series/1620-series	Key2/Key6 ^{b)}
	VF3 ^{a)}	1230-series/1630-series	Key3/Key7 ^{b)}
	VF4 ^{a)}	1240-series/1640-series	Key4/Key8 ^{b)}
	VF5	1250-series	Wipe ^{b)}
	VF6	1260-series	DME Wipe ^{b)}
	VF7	1270-series	Misc ^{b)}
M/E3	VF1 ^{a)}	1310-series/1710-series	Key1/Key5 ^{b)}
	VF2 ^{a)}	1320-series/1720-series	Key2/Key6 ^{b)}
	VF3 ^{a)}	1330-series/1730-series	Key3/Key7 ^{b)}
	VF4 ^{a)}	1340-series/1740-series	Key4/Key8 ^{b)}
	VF5	1350-series	Wipe ^{b)}
	VF6	1360-series	DME Wipe ^{b)}
	VF7	1370-series	Misc ^{b)}
M/E4	VF1 ^{a)}	8110-series/8510-series	Key1/Key5 ^{b)}
	VF2 ^{a)}	8120-series/8520-series	Key2/Key6 ^{b)}
	VF3 ^{a)}	8130-series/8530-series	Key3/Key7 ^{b)}
	VF4 ^{a)}	8140-series/8540-series	Key4/Key8 ^{b)}
	VF5	8150-series	Wipe ^{b)}
	VF6	8160-series	DME Wipe ^{b)}
	VF7	8170-series	Misc ^{b)}
P/P	VF1 ^{a)}	1410-series/1810-series	DSK1/DSK5 ^{b)}
	VF2 ^{a)}	1420-series/1820-series	DSK2/DSK6 ^{b)}
	VF3 ^{a)}	1430-series/1830-series	DSK3/DSK7 ^{b)}
	VF4 ^{a)}	1440-series/1840-series	DSK4/DSK8 ^{b)}
	VF5	1450-series	Wipe ^{b)}
	VF6	1460-series	DME Wipe ^{b)}
	VF7	1470-series	Misc ^{b)}
COLOR BKGD	VF1	2210	Color Bkgd 1 ^{b)}
	VF2	2220	Color Bkgd 2 ^{b)}
CCR	VF1	2410-series	CCR1 ^{b)}
	VF2	2420-series	CCR2 ^{b)}

Top menu selection button name	VF number (HF number)	Menu number	Menu name
FRAME MEM	VF1	2510-series	Still ^{c)}
	VF2	2520-series	Clip ^{c)}
	VF3	2530-series	Reposition/Lock ^{c)}
	VF4	2540-series	File ^{c)}
	VF5	2550-series	Folder ^{c)}
AUX	VF1	2311	Aux Bus ^{c)}
DME	VF1	4110-series	Edge ^{c)}
	VF2	4120-series	Video Modify ^{c)}
	VF3	4131	Freeze ^{c)}
	VF4	4141	Non-Linear ^{c)}
	VF5	4150-series	Light/Trail ^{c)}
	VF6	4160-series	Input/Output ^{c)}
	VF7	4170-series	Enhanced Video Modify ^{b)}
GLB EFF	VF1	4210-series	Ch1–Ch4 ^{c)}
	VF2	4220-series	Ch5–Ch8 ^{c)}
KEY FRAME	(HF3)	6113	Path ^{c)}

a) VF1 to VF4 are shared between Key1 (DSK1) to Key4 (DSK4) and Key5 (DSK5) to Key8 (DSK8).

b) Menu to return to the default settings for particular functions or for particular knob parameters (for the relevant knob parameters, see page 344)

c) Menu to return to the default settings for particular knob parameters (for the relevant knob parameters, see page 344)

Knob parameters to which default recall does not apply

Menu number ^{a)}	Menu name	Button name	Knob	Parameter
1111	Type	[Luminance] and [Linear] in <Key Type> group	4	Filter
		[Color Vector] in <Key Type> group	1 2 (Parameter group [2/2])	Y Filter, C Filter
1111.1	Type >CRK Adjust	[Key Active]	5	Filter
		[Color Cancel] in <Color Cancel> group	5	Filter
1112.1	Edge >Matte	[Mix Color] in <Edge Matte> group	5	Pattern
		[Multi]	3	Invert Type
1113	Main Mask	[Pattern]	5	Pattern
		[Multi]	3	Invert Type
1116	Transition	[Wipe] in <ON Transition Type> group	1 5	Transition Rate Pattern
		[Wipe] in <OFF Transition Type> group	1 5	Transition Rate Pattern
		[Key Blink] and [Edge Blink] in <Blink> group	1	Blink Rate
		[Mix] in <Transition Type> group	1	Transition Type
		[Wipe] in <Transition Type> group	1 5	Transition Rate Pattern

Knob parameters to which default recall does not apply

Menu number ^{a)}	Menu name	Button name	Knob	Parameter
1116.1	Transition > Wipe Adjust	[Multi]	3	Invert Type
		[H] and [V] in <Pairing> group	1	Width
		[H], [V], and [Fringe] in <Modulation> group	4	Shape
1154	Edge/Direction	[Split] in <Edge> group	1	Split No
1154.1	Edge/Direction > Matte Adjust	[Mix Color] in <Edge Matte> group	3	Pattern
		[Multi]	3	Invert Type
1155	Main Modify	[H] and [V] in <Pairing> group	1	Width
		[H], [V], and [Fringe] in <Modulation> group	4	Shape
1164	Edge/Direction	[Independent Trans Rate] in <Pattern Limit Release> group	1	Transition Rate
1171	Transition	[Mix], [Nam], [Super Mix], [Preset Color Mix], [Wipe], [DME Wipe], and [FTB] in <Transition Type> group	1	Transition Rate

a) The menu numbers shown by way of example are those for M/E-1: the same applies for M/E-2, M/E-3, M/E-4, and P/P. Also, content applying to Key1 applies equally to Key2 to Key8.

Knob parameters subject to restriction on default recall











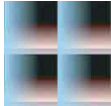
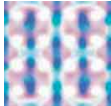
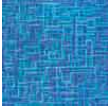





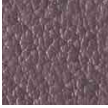









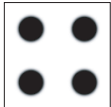
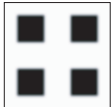
Menu number	Menu name	Button name	Knob	Parameter		
1111.1 ^{a)}	Type >CRK Adjust	[Sample Mark] in the <Auto> group	1 2	Position H Position V		
1112.1 ^{a)}	Edge >Matte Adjust	[Position]				
1113 ^{a)}	Main Mask	[Position]				
1116.1 ^{a)}	Transition >Wipe Adjust	[Position]				
1116.3 ^{a)}	Transition >DME Wipe Adjust	[Position]				
1154.1 ^{a)}	Edge Direction >Matte Adjust	[Position]	1 2	Position H Position V		
		[Position]				
		[Position] in the <Position> group				
		[Position]				
		[Position] in the <Position> group				
		[Position]				
		[Position]				
2122.2	Composite >Pattern Adjust	[Position]	1 2	Position H Position V		
2131	Reposition	[Normal]				
		[Black&White]				
2210	Color Bkgd1 ^{b)}	[Position]				
2412.1 ^{c)}	Primary CCR >Mask1 Adjust ^{d)}	[Position]				
4116	DME >Edge >Wipe Crop	[Position/Size]			5	Pattern
		[Position/Size]				
4127	DME >Video Modify >Mask	[Position/Size]				

- a) The menu numbers shown by way of example are those for M/E-1: the same applies to M/E-2, M/E-3, M/E-4, and P/P. Equally, content applying to Key1 applies equally to Key2 to Key8.
- b) The same applies to Color Bkgd2.
- c) The menu numbers shown by way of example are those for CCR1: the same applies to CCR2.
- d) The same applies to Mask2 Adjust.





SpotLighting

Texture Patterns

1		2		3		4		5		6	
7		8		9		10		11		12	
13		14		15		16		17		18	
19		20		21		22		23		24	
25		26		27		28		29		30	

Material provided by Digital Archive Japan, INC.

Shape Patterns

1		2	
---	---	---	---

Functional Differences With Models of DME

Function	Menu number	MVE-8000A	MVE-9000	MKS-7470X/7471X	See
Selection of signal to insert in the border	4111	Flat Color only	Flat Color Ext Video Mix Color	Flat Color Ext Video Mix Color	<i>page 233</i>
Key Border	4113	No	Cannot be turned on when Glow is on.	Cannot be turned on when Glow is on.	<i>page 236</i>
Art Edge	4114	No	Yes	Yes	<i>page 236</i>
Flex Shadow	4115	No	Yes	Yes ^{a)}	<i>page 240</i>
Wipe Crop	4116	No	Yes	Yes	<i>page 244</i>
Color Mix	4117	No	Yes	Yes	<i>page 246</i>
Defocus/Blur	4121	Cannot be turned on when Glow is on.	Yes	Yes	<i>page 247</i>
Mask	4127	Yes ^{b)}	Yes	Yes	<i>page 254</i>
Adjustment of entire image brightness in Lighting/Spotlighting (parameter [Total Ambient])	4151 4156	No	Yes	Yes	<i>page 273</i> <i>page 283</i>
Setting the bar mode of the highlight area	4151	No	Yes	Yes	<i>page 274</i>
Adjustment of color of the diffuse light area (parameter [Bar Diffuse Color])	4151	No	Yes	Yes	<i>page 275</i>
Selection of signal to insert in the trail afterimage portion	4152	Freeze Video Flat Color Hue Rotate	Without limitation	Without limitation	<i>page 275</i>
Combine process for Trail	4152	No	Yes	Yes	<i>page 277</i>
Defocus function for Trail	4152	No	Yes	Yes	<i>page 276</i>
Combine process for Keyframe Strobe	4154	No	Yes	Yes	<i>page 279</i>
Wind	4155	No	Yes	Yes	<i>page 279</i>
Spotlighting	4156	No	Yes	Yes	<i>page 280</i>
Selection of signal to insert in the background	4161	Flat Color only	Flat Color Ext Video Mix Color	Flat Color Ext Video Mix Color	<i>page 288</i>
Interpolation settings	4163	Yes (SD only)	Yes (both SD/HD)	Yes (both SD/HD)	<i>page 290</i>
Anti-moire filter	4163	Yes (HD only)	No	No	<i>page 291</i>
Flex shadow axis settings	4164	No	Yes	Yes	<i>page 231</i>
Dim and Fade	4173	No	Yes	Yes	<i>page 253</i>
Glow	4174	Cannot be turned on when Defocus/Blur is on.	Cannot be turned on when Key Border is on.	Cannot be turned on when Key Border is on.	<i>page 254</i>
Combiner depth settings (three-dimensional crossing function) (parameter [Depth])	4211	No	Yes	Yes	<i>page 296</i>

Function	Menu number	MVE-8000A	MVE-9000	MKS-7470X/7471X	See
Adding user texture patterns (for Spotlighting)	7316.9	No	Yes	No	"Adding User Texture Patterns" in Chapter 18 (Volume 2)
Setting AUX bus output/reentry input	7337.7	It is not possible to make settings for DME 1 to 8 Ext In.	It is not possible to make settings for DME 1 to 8 Ext In.	It is not possible to make settings for DME 1 to 8 Ext In.	"Setting the AUX Bus Output and Reentry Input" in Chapter 20 (Volume 2)
TBC window center position (Video/Key)	7341.1	Yes only when SDI interface is used.	Yes only when SDI interface is used.	No	"Setting the TBC Window Center Position" in Chapter 21 (Volume 2)
TBC window center position (Ext.In)		No	Yes	Yes	"Setting the TBC Window Center Position" in Chapter 21 (Volume 2)
Adjustment of monitor output video clip level	7343	Yes only when SDI interface is used.	Yes only when SDI interface is used.	No	"Adjusting the Monitor Output" in Chapter 21 (Volume 2)
Settings relating to usage of editor port	7344	Yes	Yes	No	"Interfacing With External Devices (Device Interface Menu)" in Chapter 19 (Volume 2)
1080P supported	7313.1	Yes	No	Yes	"Setting the Signal Format (Format Menu)" in Chapter 18 (Volume 2)

- a) [External] cannot be selected in the <Flex Shadow Source> group or [Ext Video] cannot be selected in the <Flex Shadow Fill> group.
- b) Effect groups 1 and 2 cannot be selected at the same time. Pattern 304 (Round Corner) is not supported.

Index

Numerics

3D 17, 204
3M/E Mode 211
4M/E Mode 211

A

Additive mix 89
Ancillary data 160, 165
Angle 124
Anti-moire filter 291
Art edge settings 236
Aspect ratio 125, 130
Audio mixer 60
Auto
 chroma key adjustments 90
 transition 73
AUTO DELEG button 36
Auto/manual transition combination 74
AUX
 bus settings 182
 delegation buttons 31
 menu operations 182
AUX menu 322
Auxiliary bus control block 31
Axis location 216

B

Background
 changing 12
 mask 84
 settings 288
Bank selection buttons 31, 41
Basic menu operations 44
Beveled edge settings 235
Blind settings 264
Blink
 function 99
Blur settings 248
Border 83
 parameters 104
 settings 233
Brick settings 297
Broken glass settings 263
BS button 50
Bus fixed mode
 fader operation 75
 wipe direction 76
Bus selection 57
Button
 numbers 59

C

Caps Lock button 50
CCR menu 322
Channel ID 218
Character Trail settings 272
Chroma key 83
 adjustments 90
 shadow 90
 shadow adjustment 92
 window 90
Circle settings 268
Clean mode 82
Clear button 49, 50
Clip function 160
Clip transition 61
 operations 166
Close button 49, 50
Color
 combination 175
 matte settings 68
 vector key 82
Color background
 selection 175
 setting operations 175
 settings menu 175
Color Bkgd menu 321
Color cancel 90
 adjustments 91
Color corrector 186
Color data
 copy 178
 swap 178
Color mix 175
 for edge fill matte 122
 for key fill 88
Color Mix settings 246
Combiner settings 294
Contrast settings 251
Control panel 20
 configuration 20
Coordinate axes 218
Copy 177, 178
Copy/Swap menu 323
Corner Pinnig 291
Crop settings 234
Cross-point
 button numbers 22
 buttons 22
 control block 21
Cut 62
Cylinder settings 269

D

Dead zone 148
Default recall button 47
Defocus settings 247

Del button 50
Delegation buttons 33
Detents 215
Device
 menu 325
Device control block
 joystick 25
 trackball 36
Diagnostic menu 336
Digital multi effects 17, 213
Dim and fade settings 253
Direction 121, 129, 139
Display 30, 35
DME 17
 applying to a key 97, 106
 channel selection buttons 35
 menu 324
 special effects 218
DME channel
 copy 178
 swap 178
DME override 180
DME patterns
 user programmable 146
DME wipe pattern 133
 edge modification 139
 groups 133
 selection 137
DME wipe pattern list
 for one-channel mode 305
 for two-channel mode 310
DME wipe settings 137
 for independent key transitions 143
DME wipes 15, 133
 copy 177
 direction 139
 modifiers 139
 modify clear 142
 position 139, 143
 resizer 145
 snapshot 146
 swap 177
Door 306
Downstream key control block 42
Drop border 83
 parameters 104
dual resizer effects 115
Duration
 setting buttons 28
Dust mix 119, 120

E

Edge
 fill 84
 modifiers 83
EDIT ENBL button 27

- Edit point specification buttons 27
- Editing buttons 27
- EFF LOOP button 29
- Effect
 - menu 327
 - resizer 112
- Effect execution direction selection
 - buttons 28
- Emboss 83
- Engineering Setup menu 331
- Enhanced wipes 302
- Enter button 49, 50
- Explosion settings 270
- External
 - processed key 98, 107
- External devices 18
- External hard disk drive 170

F

- File menu 330
- Files 19
 - deleting 169
 - renaming 169
- Film effect 256
- Fine mode 229
- Flag settings 259
- Flex shadow settings 240
- Flip tumble 307
- Flying bar settings 264
- Frame
 - in-out 307, 315
 - Memory menu 321
- Frame input mode 71
- Frame memory
 - clip function 160
 - continuously capturing still
 - images (record) 158
 - extracting images 173
 - feed 98, 107
 - pair file processing 168
 - recalling a continuous sequence of
 - still images (animation) 158
- Frame memory operations 151
 - capturing an input image 154
 - clip 161
 - input image selection 153
 - menu display 151
 - preparations 151
 - selecting frame memory 154
 - selecting outputs 154
- Freeze settings 256
- Fringe 127
- FULL LINK 119
- Function
 - button area 47
 - selection buttons 30

- Functions assignable to joystick 229

G

- Global
 - coordinate space 213
 - Effect menu 325
 - effect operations 293
- Glow settings 254
- Graphics
 - outputting to the monitor 232
- Graphics display 217, 231
- Grid 218

H

- Hard disk 170
 - partition 170
- Hard freeze effect 256
- HDD 170
- HF buttons 47

I

- Image
 - data management 168
 - extracting 173
- Image file
 - deletion 169
 - renaming 169
- Independent key transition 13, 77
 - DME wipe settings 143
 - type 80
 - type selection buttons 42
 - wipe modifiers 129
 - wipe settings 129
- Independent key transition execution
 - section 25, 42
- Independent key transition rate 80
 - setting by a menu operation 80
 - setting in the numeric keypad
 - control block 80
- Input
 - string 50
 - value 49
- Interpolation settings 290
- Invert settings 289
- Item display 49, 50

J

- Joystick 26

K

- Kaleidoscope settings 267
- Key 14
 - border settings 236
 - control block 33

- default 85
- delegation buttons 42
- deleting 12
- density settings 290
- edge modifications 93, 104
- Frame menu 326
 - inserting 12
 - mask 84
 - memory 84
 - modifier buttons 34
 - modifiers 83
 - modify clear 99
 - output destination 98
 - output status display 66
 - signal adjustments 91
 - source selection 290
 - status display 25
 - using keys 5 to 8 338
- Key active 90
 - adjustment 91
- KEY button 31
- Key fill
 - selection 87
 - selection buttons 34
- Key priority 64
 - display 66
 - for keys 1 to 8 66
 - setting by a menu operation 65
 - setting in the transition control
 - block 64
- Key row delegation buttons 22
- Key setting
 - using menus 85
 - with the cross-point control block 100
- Key snapshot 116
 - buttons 43
 - recalling 116
 - saving 116
 - setting buttons 43
- Key source
 - name display 43
 - selection 87
 - selection buttons 34
- Key type
 - selection buttons 34
 - setting 86
- Keyer
 - copy 177
 - swap 177
- Keyframe 18
 - control block 26
 - status 47
 - strobe settings 278
- KF button 25
- Knob 32, 35
 - parameter buttons 47

L

Left button 50
 Lens settings 267
 Lighting settings 273
 Line feed button 50
 Linear key 82
 Local coordinate space 213
 Location
 size 216
 XYZ 215
 Lock function 157
 Luminance key 82

M

M/E
 copy 177
 swap 177
 M/E configuration switching 210
 M/E-1 to M/E-4 menus 316
 Macro 18
 attachment 19
 menu 326
 timeline 19
 Magnitude 124
 MAIN and SUB delegation button 200
 Main mask 84
 using 96, 105
 Main menu site 52
 Main/sub modifier link 119
 Manual transition 74
 Mask settings 254
 Masks 84, 96, 105
 Matte data
 copy 178
 swap 178
 Max./min. value indication 49
 Melt settings 271
 Memory
 recall buttons 41
 “Memory Stick”/USB connections
 block 32
 “Memory Sticks” 32
 Menu
 accessing 44, 45
 control block 31
 display 32
 organization 44
 page number button 46
 screen 46
 shortcut menu 53
 shutting down 48
 switching between the main menu
 sites 52
 title button 46
 top menu list 44
 MENU button 26, 39
 Menu tree 316
 Metal settings 253
 Minus button 49
 Mirror settings 266
 Misc menu operations 179
 Mix 61, 118
 Mixing images 296
 MKS-8031 36
 MKS-8032 42
 MKS-8033 41
 MKS-8035 33
 MKS-8036A 39
 Mode selection buttons 29
 Modulation 126
 Monitor output
 graphics 232
 Mono settings 250
 MORE button 35
 Morphing 119
 Mosaic
 glass settings 259
 settings 251
 wipes 303
 Motion decay settings 277
 Multi 125, 131
 mirror settings 266
 move settings 249
 Multi Program 2 16
 basic operation 199
 restriction 203
 MVE-8000A 226
 MVE-9000 227
 MVS-8000X Multi Format Switcher
 System 11

N

NAM 61
 Nega settings 251
 Negative NAM 118
 Next transition 61
 selecting 61
 selection buttons 23
 Non-additive mix 61
 Nonlinear effects settings 257
 Non-Sync state 74
 Normal
 edge 105
 mix 89
 Numeric keypad 30
 control block 29

O

ON AIR indicators 35
 One-stroke mode 68
 One-time mode 68
 Operating buttons 26

Operation

 buttons 37
 modes 150
 Outline 83
 parameters 104
 Output
 destination specification buttons
 35
 OVERRIDE button 36

P

Page Roll 308
 Page turn 308
 settings 268
 Pair file processing 168
 Pair mode 150
 Pairing 126
 Panorama settings 268
 Parameter group button 47
 Pattern limit 72
 buttons 24
 setting by a menu operation 72
 setting with the fader lever 72
 transition 73
 Pattern mix 118
 types 118
 Perspective 217
 PGM/PST
 menu 319
 Picture-in-picture 307, 311
 Plane function 89
 Positioner 123, 129, 139, 143
 Positive NAM 118
 Posterization 250
 Preset color mix 61
 Preview 76
 Previous page button 47
 PRIOR SET button 25

R

Random/diamond dust wipes 304
 Recording
 to DDR 172
 to VTR 172
 Regions
 selection buttons 29
 Related manuals 10
 Replication 131
 Resizer DME wipe 145
 Resizer DME wipe patterns 315
 Right button 50
 Ripple settings 260
 Rotary wipes 302
 Rotation 124, 130, 216
 Rotation of key 110
 RUN CTRL button 29

S

Search dial 39
SEMI LINK 119
Separate sides settings 288
Sepia settings 250
Setup 19
Shadow 83
 parameters 104
Shadow settings 299
Shaped video settings 288
SHIFT button 22
Shift button 50
Shortcut 53
Shotbox 18
Shotbox menu 329
SHOW KEY button 35
Show key function 107
Side flags
 DME wipe action 196
 MISC menu 195
 wipe action 196
Signal
 assignment to buttons 58
 name display 60
 selection 57
Sketch settings 251
Skew 217
Slide 305, 310, 315
Snapshot 18
 menu 328
Soft edge 83, 129
Softening
 edge 105
 wipe pattern edge 129
Solarization 250
Source
 coordinate space 213
 name displays 22
Space button 50
Speed 124
Sphere settings 270
Spin 216
Spiral 127
Split 121, 305
 settings 265
 slide settings 265
Spotlighting settings 280
Spring 127
Squeeze 305, 311, 315
Standard wipe patterns 117
Standard wipes 301
Status area 47
Status menu 182, 323
STOP NEXT KF button 29
Sub (subsidiary) mask 84
 using 97, 106
Subsidiary menu site 52

Super mix 61
 settings 68
Swap 177, 178
Swirl settings 270

T

Target coordinate space 213
TC button 49
Three-dimensional
 coordinate space 213
 parameter display 218
 parameters 214
 transformations 213
Three-dimensional parameters
 display 230
 entering 230
 values 230
Three-dimensional transformation
 213
Time
 strobe effect 256
Time offset execution 78
Timecode input mode 71
Top menu list 44
Top menu selection buttons 31
TRACE button 36
Trail settings 275
TRANS PVW button 24
Transformation operation modes 215
Transition
 control block 22, 79
 execution 70
 next 61
 preview 76
Transition execution
 section 24
 with the fader lever 74
Transition indicator
 function 70
Transition rate 70
 setting by a menu operation 72
 setting in the MISC menu 181
 setting in the numeric keypad
 control block 71
Transition type 61
 selecting by a menu operation 67
 selection buttons 23
Trim button 49
Twist settings 259

U

User preference button 32
User programmable DME 310, 313
 Notes on keyframe creation 147
 patterns 146
 transition mode 146

Utility 18
Utility/shotbox control block 41

V

V/K mode 150
VF buttons 47
Video
 processing 56, 99
 signal adjustment 90
Video process 184
 memory 184
 settings 184
Virtual image cancellation 232

W

Wave settings 257
Wind settings 279
Window adjustment 90, 92
Wipe 14, 61
 copy 177
 enhanced 117
 modify clear 128
 mosaic 117
 pattern list 301
 random/diamond dust 117
 rotary 117
 standard 117
 swap 177
Wipe Crop settings 244
Wipe direction 121, 129
 selection buttons 24
Wipe modifiers 120
Wipe pattern
 aspect ratio 125, 130
 edge modification 121
 key 83
 modulation 126
 replication 125, 131
 rotation 124
 selection 117
 types 117
Wipe pattern/modifier combinations
 128
Wipe position 123, 129
Wipe settings 117
 for independent key transitions
 129
Wipe snapshot 131
Wire frames 217
Working buffer clearing 231
Wrap Around 232

X

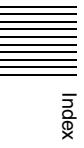
XPT HOLD
 button 22

Y

Y balance 90
adjustment 92

Z

Zabton 83, 95, 105
Z-ring 38



The material contained in this manual consists of information that is the property of Sony Corporation and is intended solely for use by the purchasers of the equipment described in this manual.

Sony Corporation expressly prohibits the duplication of any portion of this manual or the use thereof for any purpose other than the operation or maintenance of the equipment described in this manual without the express written permission of Sony Corporation.